Evaluation of Herbal Medicinal Products
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part 1  Overview of various types of traditional medicine</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 The worldwide phenomenon of increased use of herbal products: opportunities and threats</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Developing herbal medicinal products with quality, safety and efficacy: from field to bedside, with particular reference to the situation in India</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Natural remedies from Turkey: perspectives of safety and efficacy</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Traditional Chinese medicines: the challenge of acceptance by Western medicine</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Traditional Chinese medicines: evaluation of botanical extracts and dietary supplements</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Synergy and polyvalence: paradigms to explain the activity of herbal products</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 From clinical evidence to mechanism of action: the development of standardised phytomedicines</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part 2 Pharmacological evaluation for some therapeutic areas</th>
<th>105</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8 Herbal medicines for functional gastrointestinal disorders: study methods for quality, safety and efficacy</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Therapy and prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma using herbal drugs</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10 Testing of herbal products used to treat infections 133
11 Natural products research in *Helicobacter pylori* infections 149
12 Evaluation of the efficacy of herbal medicinal products used to treat cardiovascular diseases 160
13 Herbal medicinal products as antiangiogenic agents: perspectives and evaluation 174
14 Herbs affecting the central nervous system 187
15 Herbs used to treat respiratory conditions other than infections 203
16 Immunomodulatory herbal medicinal products: establishing standards and activity, with particular reference to herbs used in Ayurveda 215
17 Tests on Indian and Peruvian medicinal plants used for wound healing 228
18 Evidence of the efficacy of herbal medicinal products used for conditions associated with inflammation 243
19 Tests for antioxidant activity and their relevance to herbal medicinal products 261
20 Herbal medicinal products affecting memory and cognitive disorders 282
21 Evaluation of herbal medicinal products against herpes virus diseases 295
22 Herbal medicinal products for tinnitus: perspectives and evaluation 314
23 Traditional herbs for healthcare – turmeric: a case history 322
24 Safety and efficacy of Hachimi-jio-gan: a Chinese preparation to counteract oxidative damage 340

**Part 3  Product development** 357

25 Essential oils in the treatment of skin diseases: aspects of efficacy and toxicology 359
26 Shelf-life of herbal remedies: challenges and approaches 369
Part 4 Evaluation of quality and safety

27 Authentication and quality assessment of botanicals and botanical products used in clinical research

28 Quality control of Chinese herbal drugs

29 Clinical trials as signposts to efficacy

30 Toxicological evaluation of herbal medicines: approaches and perspectives

31 Safety evaluation of herbal medicines

Index
It would be impossible in one book to cover every possible aspect of the evaluation of herbal medicinal products. Apart from the large number of plant species used throughout the world for medicinal purposes, there are many disease states, geographical regions and cultural considerations.

Consequently, some will be disappointed that a topic has not been included, which they think important, while others will think that a particular geographical area, disease state or analytical method has been overemphasised or neglected!

We make no pretence of claiming that this volume is comprehensive, and recognise that there are many interesting and exciting developments in analytical approaches and biological studies which are barely mentioned.

However, we hope that this collection of articles gives a sufficient overview of approaches to the evaluation of herbal medicinal products to enable others to produce similar articles to make the picture more complete.

Our aim is to improve the level of understanding of the various avenues that are needed to provide a fully rounded evaluation of these materials, so that they can be used with greater confidence, because of improved quality and an increasing scientifically sound evidence base.

Pulok K Mukherjee
Peter J Houghton
Contributors

Bolanle A Adeniyi
Departments of Pharmacy Practice, and Medicinal Chemistry and Pharmacognosy, UIC PAHO/WHO Collaborating Center for Traditional Medicine, University of Illinois at Chicago, College of Pharmacy, 833 South Wood Street, Chicago, IL 60612, USA

O P Agarwal
Indian Council of Medical Research, Ansari Nagar, New Delhi 110 029, India

K F H Nazeer Ahmed
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

Stanley O Aniagu
Molecular Pathobiology Group, School of Biosciences, University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Rudolf Bauer
Institute of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Department of Pharmacognosy, Universitätsplatz 4/1, 8010 Graz, Austria

Ezra Bejar
Herbalife International, Century City, CA 90067, USA

Albert J J van den Berg
Section Medicinal Chemistry and Chemical Biology, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Faculty of Sciences, Utrecht University, Utrecht, The Netherlands and b PhytoGeniX BV, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Cees J Beukelman
Section Medicinal Chemistry and Chemical Biology, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Faculty of Sciences, Utrecht University, Utrecht, The Netherlands and b PhytoGeniX BV, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Sujit K Bhattacharya
ICMR Virus Unit, I D & B G Hospital Campus, Beliaghata, Kolkata 700 010, India

Tuhin Kanti Biswas
J B Roy State Ayurvedic Medical College and Hospital, 170–172, Raja Dinendra Street, Kolkata 700 004, India

Shrabana Chakraborty
ICMR Virus Unit, I D & B G Hospital Campus, Beliaghata, Kolkata 700 010, India

Sekhar Chakraborty
ICMR Virus Unit, I D & B G Hospital Campus, Beliaghata, Kolkata 700 010, India

Debprasad Chattopadhyay
ICMR Virus Unit, I D & B G Hospital Campus, Beliaghata, Kolkata 700 010, India

Raymond Cooper
PhytoScience Inc, PO Box 1935, Los Altos CA 94023, USA

Larry H Danziger
Departments of Pharmacy Practice, and Medicinal Chemistry and Pharmacognosy, UIC PAHO/WHO Collaborating Center for Traditional Medicine, University of Illinois at Chicago, College of Pharmacy, 833 South Wood Street, Chicago, IL 60612, USA
Cynthia L Darlington  
Department of Pharmacology and Toxicology, School of Medical Sciences, University of Otago Medical School, Dunedin, New Zealand

Sonali Das  
ICMR Virus Unit, I D & B G Hospital Campus, Beliaghata, Kolkata 700 010, India

Rajendra M Dobriyal  
Herbal Research Labs, Hindustan Unilever Research Center, 64 Main Road, Whitefield, Bangalore 560 066, India

Brian J Doyle  
Departments of Pharmacy Practice, and Medicinal Chemistry and Pharmacognosy, UIC PAHO/WHO Collaborating Center for Traditional Medicine, University of Illinois at Chicago, College of Pharmacy, 833 South Wood Street, Chicago, IL 60612, USA

Cristobal Fraga  
Department of Physiology, University of Santiago de Compostela, Spain

A Gantait  
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

Anwarul Hassan Gilani  
Natural Product Research Division, Department of Biological and Biomedical Sciences, Aga Khan University, Karachi 74800, Pakistan

R Govindarajan  
National Botanical Research Institute, Rana Pratap Marg, Lucknow 226 001, India

Wandee Gritsanapan  
Department of Pharmacognosy, Faculty of Pharmacy, Mahidol University, 447 Sri-Ayuthaya Road, Ratchatevi, Bangkok 10400, Thailand

S Bart A Halkes  
Section Medicinal Chemistry and Chemical Biology, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Faculty of Sciences, Utrecht University, Utrecht, The Netherlands and b PhytoGeniX BV, Utrecht, The Netherlands

K B Harikumar  
Amala Cancer Research Centre, Thrissur 680 555, Kerala, India

P J Houghton  
Department of Pharmacy, King’s College London, Franklin Wilkins Building, 150 Stamford Street, London SE1 9NH, UK

Tianan Jiang  
Life Extension Inc, 1100 West Commercial Boulevard, Fort Lauderdale, FL 33309, USA

Ki Sung Kang  
Institute of Natural Medicine, University of Toyama, 2630 Sugitani, Toyama, 930-0194, Japan

David O Kennedy  
Brain, Performance and Nutrition Research Centre, Northumbria University, Newcastle upon Tyne NE1 8ST, UK

Arif-ullah Khan  
Natural Product Research Division, Department of Biological and Biomedical Sciences, Aga Khan University, Karachi 74800, Pakistan

Burt H Kroes  
Medicinal Chemistry and Chemical Biology Section, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Faculty of Sciences, Utrecht University, Utrecht, The Netherlands

N Satheesh Kumar  
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

V Kumar  
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

Ramadasan Kuttan  
Amala Cancer Research Centre, Thrissur 680 555, Kerala, India
Talash Anne Likimani  
Herbalife International, Century City, CA 90067, USA

Chang-Xiao Liu  
Tianjin Institute of Pharmaceutical Research, Tianjin 300193, China

Tracie Locklear  
Departments of Pharmacy Practice, and Medicinal Chemistry and Pharmacognosy, UIC PAHO/WHO Collaborating Center for Traditional Medicine, University of Illinois at Chicago, College of Pharmacy, 833 South Wood Street, Chicago, IL 60612, USA

Gail B Mahady  
Departments of Pharmacy Practice, and Medicinal Chemistry and Pharmacognosy, UIC PAHO/WHO Collaborating Center for Traditional Medicine, University of Illinois at Chicago, College of Pharmacy, 833 South Wood Street, Chicago, IL 60612, USA

Mohua Maulik  
Indian Council of Medical Research, New Delhi, India

Subir Kumar Maulik  
Department of Pharmacology, All India Institute of Medical Sciences, New Delhi, India

Royce Mohan  
Departments of Ophthalmology & Visual Science and Pharmaceutical Sciences, Angiogenesis Discovery Research, Lexington, KY 40536-0305, USA

Kakali Mukherjee  
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

Pulok K Mukherjee  
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

DB Anantha Narayana  
Herbal Research Labs, Hindustan Unilever Research Center, 64, Main Road, Whitefield, Bangalore 560 066, India

Lara O Orafidiya  
Department of Pharmaceutics, Obafemi Awolowo University, Ile-Ife, Nigeria

Srikanta Pandit  
J B Roy State Ayurvedic Medical College and Hospital, Kolkata 700 004, India

Alexander G Panossian  
Swedish Herbal Institute Research and Development, Gothenburg, Sweden

Bhushan Patwardhan  
Interdisciplinary School of Health Sciences, University of Pune, Pune, India

Roman Perez-Fernández  
Department of Physiology, University of Santiago de Compostela, Spain

Werayut Pothitirat  
Department of Pharmacognosy, Faculty of Pharmacy, Mahidol University, 447 Sri-Ayuthaya Road, Ratchatevi, Bangkok 10400, Thailand

K C Preethi  
Amala Cancer Research Centre, Thissur 680 555, Kerala, India

P Pushpangadan  
Amity Institute for Herbal and Biotech Products Development, Mannamoola, Peroorkada, Trivandrum-5, Kerala, India

Gulam Nabi Qazi  
Hamdard University, Hamdard Nagar, New Delhi, India

Sujay Rai  
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

Vietla S Rao  
Department of Physiology and Pharmacology, Faculty of Medicine, Federal University of Ceara, Rua Cel Nunes de Melo-1127, Porangabussu; Fortaleza, CE, Brazil
José-Luis Ríos
Departament de Farmacologia, Facultat de Farmàcia, Universitat de València, Spain

B P Saha
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

Kumar N Satheesh
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

Samuel Seoane
Department of Physiology, University of Santiago de Compostela, Spain

Christine M Slover
Departments of Pharmacy Practice, and Medicinal Chemistry and Pharmacognosy, UIC PAHO/WHO Collaborating Center for Traditional Medicine, University of Illinois at Chicago, College of Pharmacy, 833 South Wood Street, Chicago, IL 60612, USA

Paul F Smith
Dept. of Pharmacology and Toxicology, School of Medical Sciences, University of Otago Medical School, Dunedin, New Zealand

Nai-Ning Song
Tianjin Institute of Pharmaceutical Research, Tianjin 300193, China

Roy Upton
Registered Herbalist, Executive Director, American Herbal Pharmacopoeia, Scotts Valley, CA, USA

Ashok Vaidya
ICMR Advanced Centre of Reverse Pharmacology, MRC-KHS, Vile Parle, Mumbai, India

M Venkatesh
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

Eva M Vigo
Department of Physiology, University of Santiago de Compostela, Spain

A Wahile
School of Natural Product Studies, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700 032, India

Eva M Wenzig
Institute of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Department of Pharmacognosy, Universitätsplatz 4/1, 8010 Graz, Austria

Jenneke A Wijbenga
Scientific Institute Dutch Pharmacists, The Hague, The Netherlands

Georg C Wikman
Swedish Herbal Institute Research and Development, Gothenburg, Sweden

Edwin van den Worm
Section Medicinal Chemistry and Chemical Biology, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Faculty of Sciences, Utrecht University, Utrecht, The Netherlands

Pei-Gen Xiao
Institute of Medicinal Plants, Chinese Academy of Medical Science, Beijing, 100094, China

Noriko Yamabe
Institute of Natural Medicine, University of Toyama, 2630 Sugitani, Toyama, 930-0194, Japan

Erdem Yesilada
Yeditepe University, Faculty of Pharmacy, Kayisdagi, 34755 Istanbul, Turkey

Takako Yokozawa
Institute of Natural Medicine, University of Toyama, 2630 Sugitani, Toyama, 930-0194, Japan

Yiwen Zheng
Department of Pharmacology and Toxicology, School of Medical Sciences, University of Otago Medical School, Dunedin, New Zealand
Adverse drug reaction (ADR)  In the pre-approval clinical experience with a new medicinal product or its new usages, particularly as the therapeutic dose(s) may not be established, all noxious and unintended responses to a medicinal product related to any dose should be considered adverse drug reactions. The phrase ‘responses to a medicinal product’ means that a causal relationship between a medicinal product and an adverse event is at least a reasonable possibility, i.e., the relationship cannot be ruled out.

Adverse event (AE)  An AE is any untoward medical occurrence in a patient or clinical investigation subject who has been administered a pharmaceutical product but which does not necessarily have a causal relationship with this treatment. An AE can therefore be any unfavourable and unintended sign (including an abnormal laboratory finding), symptom, or disease temporally associated with the use of a medicinal (investigational) product, whether or not related to the medicinal (investigational) product (see the ICH guidance for Clinical Safety Data Management: definitions and standards for expedited reporting, E2A, 1994).

Botanicals  Plant-based or -derived ingredients. Any product that is made from plants or herbs. Botanicals are obtained from plant material and may include leaves, roots, bark and/or seeds. The plant material is typically processed by milling and/or extraction to produce the botanical dietary ingredient, aroma, herbal medicinal product or traditional herbal medicine.

Clinical trial/study  Any investigation in human subjects intended to discover or verify the clinical pharmacological, and/or other pharmacodynamic effects of an investigational product(s), and/or to identify any adverse reactions to an investigational product(s), and/or to study absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion of an investigational product(s) with the object of ascertaining its safety and/or efficacy. The terms ‘clinical trial’ and ‘clinical study’ are synonymous.

Dietary supplement  A product taken by mouth that contains a ‘dietary ingredient’ intended to supplement the diet. The ‘dietary ingredients’ in these products may include: vitamins, minerals, herbs or other botanicals, amino acids, and substances such as enzymes, organ tissues, glandulars, and metabolites. Dietary supplements can also be extracts or concentrates, and may be found in many forms such as tablets, capsules, soft gels, gel caps, liquids, or powders. They can also be in other forms (such as a bar) but if they are, information on their label must not represent the product as a conventional food or as a sole item of a meal or diet.

Directive 99/83/EEC on ‘well-established use’ The Directive permitted the use of bibliographic references in place of pharmacological and toxicological testing of HMPs and the results of clinical trials for products that have already been on sale in the European Union as a medicinal product, for not less than 10 years. Volume 2A of the Notice to Applicants clarifies the legal background of bibliographic applications as follows: ‘Where the constituent or constituents of the medicinal product have a well-established medicinal use, with recognised efficacy and an acceptable level of safety, demonstrated by detailed references to published literature’.
Good clinical practice (GCP) A standard for the design, conduct, performance, monitoring, auditing, recording, analyses, and reporting of clinical trials, which provides assurance that the data and reported results are credible and accurate, and that the rights, integrity, and confidentiality of trial subjects are protected.

Herbal medicinal product (HMP) Any medicinal product (q.v.) exclusively containing as active ingredients one or more herbal substances or one or more herbal preparations, or one or more such herbal substances in combination with one or more such herbal preparations.

Herbal preparations Preparations obtained by subjecting herbal substances to treatments such as extraction, distillation, expression, fractionation, purification, concentration or fermentation. These include comminuted or powdered herbal substances, tinctures, extracts, essential oils, expressed juices and processed exudates.

Herbal substances All mainly whole, fragmented or cut plants, plant parts, algae, fungi, lichen in an unprocessed, usually dried form, but sometimes fresh. Certain exudates that have not been subjected to a specific treatment are also considered to be herbal substances. Herbal substances are precisely defined by the plant part used and the botanical name according to the binomial system (genus, species, variety and author).

Independent Ethics Committee (IEC) An independent body (a review board or a committee, institutional, regional, national, or supranational), constituted of medical/scientific professionals and nonmedical/non-scientific members, whose responsibility it is to ensure the protection of the rights, safety, and well-being of human subjects involved in a trial and to provide public assurance of that protection, by, among other things, reviewing and approving/providing favourable opinion on the trial protocol, the suitability of the investigator(s), facilities, and the methods and material to be used in obtaining and documenting informed consent of the trial subjects.

Medicinal product ‘[Any substance] ... presented for treating or preventing disease ... [and which may be] administered ... with a view to ... restoring, correcting or modifying physiological functions.’

Multicentre trial A clinical trial conducted according to a single protocol but at more than one site and, therefore, carried out by more than one investigator.

Protocol A document that describes the objective(s), design, methodology, statistical considerations, and organisation of a trial. The protocol usually also gives the background and rationale for the trial, but these could be provided in other protocol referenced documents. Throughout the ICH Good Clinical Practice: consolidated guideline E6(R1) (1996) GCP guidance, the term ‘protocol’ refers to protocol and protocol amendments.

Quality assurance (QA) All those planned and systematic actions that are established to ensure that the trial or experiment is performed and the data are generated, documented (recorded), and reported in compliance with good clinical practice (GCP) or good laboratory practice (GLP) and the applicable regulatory requirement(s).

Quality control (QC) The operational techniques and activities undertaken within the quality-assurance system to verify that the requirements for the quality of the trial-related activities have been fulfilled.

Randomisation The process of assigning trial subjects to treatment or control groups, using an element of chance to determine the assignments in order to reduce bias.

Regulatory Authorities Bodies having the power to regulate. In the ICH GCP guidance the expression ‘Regulatory Authorities’ includes the authorities that review submitted clinical data and those that conduct inspections. These bodies are sometimes referred to as Competent Authorities.

Serious adverse event (SAE) or serious adverse drug reaction (serious ADR) Any untoward medical occurrence that at any dose:

- results in death
- is life-threatening
- requires inpatient hospitalisation or prolongation of existing hospitalisation
• results in persistent or significant
disability/incapacity or
• is a congenital anomaly/birth defect.

Source documents Original documents, data, and records (e.g., hospital records, clinical and office charts, laboratory notes, memoranda, subjects’ diaries or evaluation checklists, pharmacy dispensing records, recorded data from automated instruments, copies or transcriptions certified after verification as being accurate and complete, microfiches, photographic negatives, microfilm or magnetic media, radiographs, subject files, and records kept at the pharmacy, at the laboratories, and at medico-technical departments involved in the clinical trial).

Traditional herbal medicinal products HMPs fulfilling certain criteria:
• used exclusively for traditional indications
• for use without the supervision of a medical practitioner
• not subject to prescription control
• for oral or external use or inhalation
• a qualifying period of time has elapsed – the 30-year requirement
• traditional use data show safety and efficacy to be plausible in the proposed conditions of use
• combinations with vitamins and minerals where their presence is ancillary to the herb.

Well-being (of the trial subjects) The physical and mental integrity of the subjects participating in a clinical trial.
Part I

Overview of various types of traditional medicine
Introduction

One of the phenomena of the last three decades has been the huge increase in use of ‘herbal products’. These can be defined as plants, parts of plants or extracts from plants that are used in healthcare or in combating disease. To avoid confusion with culinary herbs, herbs and plant extracts that have some association with medical uses are referred to as ‘herbal medicinal products’ (HMPs). Many of the plant species used have been used for centuries in a limited part of the world but the increase in global travel and communications has resulted in many of these now being used worldwide. HMPs form the largest part of what is sometimes called complementary and alternative medicine (CAM), and are at one end of a continuum from ‘healthy foods’ through ‘nutraceuticals’ to ‘herbal medicinal products’, i.e. products that have mainly a use in treating or preventing disease. A similar strand of continuity exists between purely cosmetic agents, products that address an aesthetically unpleasant skin condition with medical dimensions, e.g. sun-protection agents and topical preparations for treating skin diseases and other conditions.

It is somewhat ironic that this ‘return to nature’, as far as medicinal substances are concerned, has occurred at a time when medicine has become increasingly technologically sophisticated, both in the equipment and products used for diagnosis and treatment, and also in the design and research into the mechanisms underlying disease. Such research has led to the introduction of ‘designer drugs’ with selective actions and high potency and, for many disease states, the fruit of this is evident in the majority of patients who survive longer or lead more pleasant lives than would have been the case two generations ago.

However, it should not be forgotten that these advances in medicine and therapy are easily available
to only a minority in the world as a whole. In many places, mainly in developing countries, but also in pockets in every affluent society, herbal products are the major, if not the only, source of medication, for economic or geographical reasons. This is in contrast to the more affluent areas of the globe where they are used as a matter of choice rather than necessity. Several different reasons have been put forward for the resurgence of interest in and use of HMPs. These include a reaction against the serious side-effects sometimes observed when orthodox drugs are used, especially the more potent ones; the inability of Western medicine to treat some diseases satisfactorily, especially chronic conditions such as eczema and arthritis, and the generally mistaken idea that ‘natural’ must be better or safe.

The sales figures for HMPs indicate their widespread and increasing use, e.g. US$ 257 million in the USA in 2004 (Blumenthal, 2005), record sales in 2006 from Boots, a UK chain of pharmacies (Newswire, 2006). Medicinal plants and herbs are increasingly seen as high-value crops and a growing number of species are under cultivation (Cavaliere, 2007). However, many HMPs are still obtained from wild, as opposed to cultivated, plants, and this is causing much concern in conservation circles, both from the narrow perspective of species becoming rare or extinct, but also from the wider perspective of habitat and environmental damage.

The increase in interest in and use of HMPs is not only reflected in rising sales figures for these products but in other areas as well. Some good-quality, thoroughly researched reference books have appeared in recent years and editions subsequent to the first have appeared quite rapidly. A selection is shown in Table 1.1. It should be noted that, although they share some common features with ‘classic’ pharmacognosy texts, they are distinct in concentrating more on reports of pharmacological and clinical studies, including toxicity studies, than botanical or chemical descriptions.

The need for new editions is due to the rapid increase in scientific research, and consequent publication of research papers in refereed journals dealing with medicinal plants. In recent years several new titles, e.g. *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*, *Phytotherapy Research*, *Phytomedicine* have joined long-running publications such as *Planta Medica*, *Phytochemistry* and *Journal of Natural Products*. For practically all such titles, the impact factor, a controversial indicator of citation and scientific importance of a journal, has risen steadily in recent

### Table 1.1 A selection of reference books dealing with herbal products

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Authors/Editors</th>
<th>Publishers</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>British Herbal Compendium Vol. 2</em></td>
<td>Bradley P</td>
<td>British Herbal Medicine Association, Bournemouth, UK</td>
<td>2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ESCOP Monographs 2nd edn.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Thieme, Stuttgart, Germany</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Potter’s Herbal Cyclopedia</em></td>
<td>Williamson EM</td>
<td>Daniel, Saffron Walden, UK</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Herbal Drugs and Phytopharmaceuticals 3rd edn.</em></td>
<td>Wichtl M</td>
<td>Medpharm Press, Stuttgart</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>PDR for Herbal Medicines 2nd edn.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medical Economics Company, New Jersey, USA</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
years. A good example of this is the *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*, for which the impact factor has doubled in the past ten years.

There is also increasing interest from legislators, funding bodies for research and organisations concerned with health policy and regulatory affairs. Government funding has been made available in the USA for the NIH (National Institutes of Health) to carry out clinical trials on some widely used herbs, e.g. *Ginkgo* and *Echinacea*. In the European Union a new category of licensed medicines, based on traditional use, was introduced in 2005 under the Traditional Medicines Directive and, under the Framework 7 programme funding, has been included for collaborative research into traditional Chinese medicine. In the UK, the House of Lords (the Upper Chamber of Parliament) conducted a wide-ranging consultation under its Commission on Complementary and Alternative Medicine, which was published in 2000 and this was followed by some funding from UK government for CAM research, although not in the areas recommended as priority by the report (Anon., 2003). Many national governments in developing countries are showing interest in the inclusion of formulations based on traditional herbal medicines into their healthcare programmes, but probably the greatest commercial thrust is coming from the Far East, especially from the Peoples’ Republic of China, where US$3.6 million has been allocated for the modernisation of TCM as a focal point in the current Five Year Plan (Normile, 2003).

India has produced a well-regarded healthcare system and traditional medicines play a vital role in primary healthcare. Ayurveda is one of the oldest systems of the world and Ayurvedic physicians prefer to dispense drugs prepared by their own hands; they do not rely upon the products manufactured by pharmaceutical industries. Owing to commercial orientation and increasing demand for natural products, a few pharmacies are preparing unethical products, which results in an embarrassing position for physicians and patients. To overcome this, there is a need to fix certain standards for these natural products. Provisions relating to the manufacture and control of Ayurvedic, Siddha and Unani (ASU) drugs have been prescribed in the Drugs and Cosmetics Act 1940. In addition to these specifications, the Government of India has recently introduced regulations for Good Manufacturing Practice (GMP) on ASU products in Gazette Notification of Government of India, Extraordinary (dated 23 June, 2000 vide GSR No 560E). This is an important step in improving the quality and standards of ASU drugs being manufactured in about 9000 licensed ASU pharmacies in the country and in reassuring the public that these medicaments are effective and safe (Mukherjee, 2002; Mukherjee and Wahile, 2006).

It is against this background that this book has been conceived and the timeliness of producing such a volume is emphasised when the opportunities and threats that the current situation presents are considered.

**Establishing standards for herbal products: the place of pharmacopoeial monographs**

It has often been stated that any assessment of safety or efficacy of any pharmaceutical must also take into account the quality of the material used. Standards for minimum acceptable quality are conventionally laid down in pharmacopoeial monographs, which provide a summary of the acceptable substance and give details of relevant tests to determine its identity, the presence and acceptable levels of impurities and to check that the levels of ‘actives’ are sufficient to achieve the desired effect (and, in some instances, are low enough to prevent toxic effects). Any sample should be checked against all the tests specified, and should comply with them, before it can be labelled as being of pharmacopoeial quality.

It is important to note that the term ‘monograph’ is used for two somewhat different types of specifications. A pharmacopoeial monograph, e.g. as found in the British or European pharmacopoeias, gives only details of the tests to be used to establish quality, with perhaps very brief notes about its use. The other type of monograph is more concerned with comprehensive information about a plant and will include information about its chemical constituents, pharmacology, toxicology and clinical studies and usage.

Pharmacopoeial monographs deal with all types of pharmaceuticals and those dealing with medicinal
plant material have been included since the earliest editions of official monographs, i.e. those recognised legally at a national or international level. It is fascinating to trace the evolution of a monograph for one particular medicinal plant since it reflects developments in analytical techniques, the increasing knowledge of the chemical compounds present and the growing body of knowledge that links the compounds present to the desired biological or clinical effect.

However, the monographs of earlier pharmacopoeias dealt with ‘classic’ plant drugs but did not cover many of the herbal products that are now used and with which this book is concerned. Many new monographs have had to be written, and many are also awaiting construction, because of this. The problem is accentuated because of international trade and the speed with which a new product may become established without adequate standards being available. Although pharmacopoeias may have been compiled for such drugs, they have often not covered all the possible aspects seen in a good-quality monograph. Examples included the early editions of the British herbal pharmacopoeia and the Chinese pharmacopeia, which were concerned almost exclusively with macroscopical and microscopical tests to determine the correct botanical identity, with sometimes some thin-layer chromatography for identity based on chemical profile, but not always of those compounds considered to be responsible for the activity, and therefore the efficacy. Tests for impurities were limited to such crude assessments as ash values and assay procedures were almost entirely absent.

More recent editions of the British Pharmacopoeia and European Pharmacopoeia have included monographs for many more herbal drugs and more sophisticated chromatographic methods, especially liquid chromatography, have been introduced for both identity tests, tests for impurities and for assay procedures. These approaches are dealt with to some extent in this book, but it should be noted that tests involving biological activity are very unusual in pharmacopoeial monographs, so greater attention is paid to tests for biological activity relevant to the reputation and claims for treating particular diseases associated with the herbal drug in question, since collation of these aspects in a book is not common.

The proper use of traditional medicine

In addition to so many benefits, there are also risks associated with the different types of traditional and complementary medicines. A number of reports have revealed examples of incorrect use of traditional medicines by consumers, including incidents of overdose, unknowing use of suspect or counterfeit herbal medicines, and unintentional injuries caused by unqualified practitioners. Although consumers today have widespread access to various traditional and complementary treatments and therapies, they often do not have enough information on what to check when using them, to avoid unnecessary harm. In this context, the World Health Organization has developed guidelines, which provide governments and other stakeholders with the general principles and activities necessary for the development of reliable consumer information. The document will also be a useful reference to consumers in guiding them on the information they need to have, to choose a traditional or complementary therapy that is safe and effective. Although consumer information cannot compensate for poor products or inadequate practices, it can help consumers gain increased knowledge about the benefits and potential risks of therapies and where to find reliable sources of information.

Types of consumer information required may vary from country to country, depending on a number of factors such as cultural and traditional influences, health system structure and the pattern of traditional and complementary medicine use. It also outlines the general principles and activities for ensuring reliable information, such as how to develop reliable knowledge, how to disseminate the information and regulatory measures to be followed for information and advertisement. It also suggests the topics to be considered when developing consumer information promoting proper use of traditional and complementary medicines, i.e. where and how to find good information, therapeutic claims and corresponding levels of evidence (quality, precautions, adverse events, toxic therapies, interaction and contraindication and dosages), procedure-based therapies, practitioners, pricing and health insurance coverage.
Opportunities

As mentioned above, there has probably not been a time in the past hundred years or more when the potential of herbal medicine as a source of novel chemical entities for drug lead molecules and novel types of medicines has aroused so much interest and therefore presented opportunities for their introduction as part of mainstream medicine.

Increasing acceptance medically of ‘polypharmacy’ in treatment

The introduction of combination therapies for many major diseases in Western medicine has removed something of the stigma of ‘polypharmacy’ from herbal medication. This was highlighted by a serious proposal in the British Medical Journal to introduce the ‘polypill’, containing a mixture of six different pharmaceuticals, to reduce the risk of cardiovascular disease by 80% in patients over 55 (Wald and Law, 2003). This article received much publicity and was hailed by the editor as possibly the most important paper for 50 years. Extra interest was added in the fact that three of the drugs incorporated in the ‘polypill’ were at doses of only a half those recommended therapeutically, thus raising the possibility of synergism occurring.

Synergy and polyvalency

Synergy occurs when two compounds are given together to give a greater pharmacological effect than would be expected from their activities at the same dose when given alone. More details are given in Chapter 6. Recent developments in quantifying and demonstrating synergism mathematically (Berenbaum, 1989) are likely to stimulate more research and for synergism in herbal extracts to be taken more seriously. Polyvalency, also discussed more fully in Chapter 6, occurs when the overall effect observed can be ascribed to a mixture of activities caused by different components in the extract. Such a multitargeted approach, inherent in polyvalency, increases the likelihood of some sort of positive response for patients with a presenting symptom which might be due to any one of a variety of factors. In addition, polyvalency is less likely to result in resistance developing in target infectious or parasitic organisms. It has been noted that the defence mechanisms of plants usually rely on a mixture of weakly active compounds rather than a single, very potent product and this has been suggested as a paradigm for treatment of human disease (Schmidt et al., 2007).

Increased awareness of prevention strategies

Another paradigm shift in orthodox medicine has been the attention paid to drugs that activate or protect the defence, protective and repair mechanisms of the body rather than destroy the damaging agents (Wagner, 2003). An example of this is the great amount of interest in antioxidants. These are hypothesised to prevent the attack and damage caused by reactive oxygen species to cell membranes, enzymes and DNA, which is currently considered to be an important aspect of the aetiology of many diseases, including cancer, neurodegenerative disease and inflammatory conditions. This approach of aiding the natural means of defence and stimulating repair has long been a salient feature of Western herbalism, so the attitude of mainstream clinicians and researchers to HMPs, which might display less rapid and less spectacular results characteristic of such effects, is likely to be more sympathetic than would have been the case a generation ago.

Increasing clinical evidence for efficacy

Another opportunity for herbal products is the clinical efficacy that has been demonstrated for some preparations in disease states where conventional therapy is less than ideal, either because it is not very effective or because associated side-effects and toxicity occur. Several such disease states are chronic and the effects of long-term use of xenobiotics are unknown. Although many studies in recent years have demonstrated this for HMPs unfamiliar to Western orthodox medicine (see Table 1.2), it should not be forgotten that some have held pride of place as the preferred medication for a long time, Senna as a laxative probably being the best example. The success of a Chinese formula in treating severe atopic eczema in children (Sheehan, Atherton et al., 1992) was
probably the trigger for the huge increase in use of TCM in the UK over the past 15 years. Continued high sales of HMPs such as St John’s wort, Saw Palmetto and Ginkgo suggest that many people derive real benefit from using them. It has been pointed out that there is an increasing body of evidence for the efficacy of some HMPs (Ernst, 2000) and this is bound to stimulate more clinical trials by groups previously not interested in this type of medication. Trials on HMPs have been collated in several recent publications and the major ones of these are listed in Table 1.2.

As evidence for the efficacy of extracts increases, the debate has intensified between viewing extracts of plants in their own right as medicines or of using them as sources for active compounds for development into more conventional single chemical entity (SCE) pharmaceuticals (Mills and Canter, 2007). Probably both views are correct, depending on the particular case in point. The pharmaceutical industry appears to go through cycles of interest and uninterest in natural products as a source of lead molecules, the rises in interest usually being stimulated by the success of SCE compounds such as paclitaxel or artemisinin. At present there is much concern about the decreasing portfolio of promising molecules as far as most major pharmaceutical companies are concerned and the natural world is once again receiving interest (Rouhi, 2003; Schmidt et al., 2007).

The anti-inflammatory diterpenes from *Tripterygium wilfordii* have been highlighted as interesting leads, as have the antidiabetic flavonoids from *Artemisia dracunculus* (Schmidt et al., 2007) but attention is also being paid to sources of novel compounds from organisms other than the flowering plants, such as microorganisms, insects and marine organisms (Rouhi, 2003).

On the other hand, despite much research, the search for one active compound in an extract that clearly shows activity has often been fruitless. In this latter situation, the regulatory and analytical systems discriminate against the adoption of such extracts as bona fide medicinal substances on a par with SCEs. Robust and meaningful analytical approaches, as well as results from good clinical studies, of many such HMP extracts are needed to strengthen the case for closely defined mixtures to be accepted as well as SCE drugs. Progress is being made, as noted in an interesting paper (Tyler, 1999) which addressed many of the points to be considered before HMPs would be taken seriously by mainstream medicine.

**Consumer choice**

An important consideration in the market economies that dominate most of the Western world is consumer choice. The attraction of ‘natural’ medicines, chiefly plant extracts, for consumers has several irrational

---

### Table 1.2  A selection of monographs and papers dealing with clinical trials on herbal products (see also books mentioned in Table 1.1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Authors/Editors</th>
<th>Journal or Publisher</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Handbook of Clinically Tested Herbal Remedies Vols 1 &amp; 2</em></td>
<td>Barrett M</td>
<td>Haworth Herbal Press, New York, USA</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cochrane Reviews</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.cochrane.org/reviews/">http://www.cochrane.org/reviews/</a></td>
<td>Various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The clinical efficacy of herbal treatments — an overview of recent systematic reviews</em></td>
<td>Ernst E</td>
<td><em>Pharmaceutical Journal</em> 262: 85–87</td>
<td>1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The efficacy of herbal medicine — an overview</em></td>
<td>Ernst E</td>
<td><em>Fundamental and Clinical Pharmacology</em> 19: 405–409</td>
<td>2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Quality control of herbal drugs</em></td>
<td>Pulok K Mukherjee</td>
<td>Business Horizons Ltd, New Delhi</td>
<td>2002</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
aspects (e.g. that ‘chemical’ means ‘bad’) but it is not surprising, in view of the cost and safety concerns of many drugs produced by the pharmaceutical industry, that HMPs are generally viewed as much safer, even if not so potent, alternatives. There is therefore scope and opportunity for commercial promotion of HMPs and this has been very noticeable over the past twenty years, not only in the pharmaceutical arena but also in cosmetics and foods.

Threats

Extravagant claims

The mistaken idea that ‘natural is completely safe’, as well as ‘natural’ being a more ‘comfortable’ word than ‘synthetic’, has been exploited to the full by advertisers and commerce in many parts of the world. Medicinal claims are allowed in many developed countries for products licensed as medicines only but, in less-controlled environments, extravagant claims are made. Even in developed countries, clever wording and innuendoes can raise expectations of what using a product will achieve. Such ‘hype’ is particularly noticeable in advertisements for cosmetic and personal care products but is often encountered in areas of commerce notoriously difficult to control, such as mail order sales over the internet. All these instances raise the spectre of ‘snake oil’ and associated practices, where often worthless materials were sold with quasi-miraculous claims, which were such a feature of 19th century frontier life in the USA. It is probably true to say that legislation in many countries still has this type of unsubstantiated claim very much in mind in its general attitudes to herbal medicines. The scientific establishment usually reacts in scepticism and cynicism against extravagant claims with the result that ‘the baby is thrown out with the bathwater’ and potentially useful herbs are dismissed by those in positions of authority without much thought or serious scientific investigation.

Lack of sufficient evidence base

Medical, pharmaceutical and other scientific organisations may not have such a prejudiced view as that expressed above, but are frequently frustrated by the lack of good evidence for claims made. Scientific, ‘evidence-based’ grounds are often not substantial enough to the use of a herb for a condition in which it is purported to bring about relief. Placebo-controlled, randomised, double-blind crossover clinical trials are still reckoned as the gold standard for proving efficacy and, although, as noted above, an increasing number are being reported for herbal materials (see Table 1.2), good-quality studies exist for a comparatively small number and meta-analyses for even fewer. In many reported trials reported numbers are quite small, no placebo or equivalent drug is used to compare and endpoints are not clearly defined. For several widely used HMPs, e.g. Echinacea, the clinical evidence for efficacy is equivocal and the failure of some well-publicised trials to demonstrate any significant effect, e.g. on St John’s wort carried out by the National Institutes of Health in the USA (Hypericum Depression Trial Study Group, 2002), has been seen as one of the causes of the downturn in sales in recent years of some HMPs.

Poor-quality materials

The lack of standards for HMPs in many countries means that wide variability exists in the quality of plant material used to make commercial products. In extreme cases, the incorrect species or part of the plant is used, but more often the material consists of the correct plant material with low amounts of the compounds considered to be responsible for the biological activity. In these situations, it is unlikely that the recommended dose of plant material will have sufficient amounts present for any clinical effect and, in some cases, it might be possible that resistance or immunity builds up. Poor quality might also occur if the HMP is contaminated with mould, insects or other infestations that produce toxic effects.

Such contamination of herbal material has been documented throughout history but, in recent years another type has occurred. The so-called ‘herbal’ material is mixed with, or replaced by, synthetic pharmaceuticals that show the activity claimed for the herbal. The most common cases are the addition of steroids such as betamethasone to anti-inflammatory ‘herbal’ topical preparations for skin complaints, such as eczema, and incorporation of large amounts of sildenafil in ‘herbal’ tablets for male impotence.
It is not surprising that such blatant cases of adulteration make many medical practitioners wary of using or recommending herbal products. The situation is compounded in many developed countries by the general lack of personnel with skills in knowing how to analyse such products or having expertise in performing and interpreting the analyses. With such ignorance, it is not difficult for poor-quality material to enter the market without being detected.

A common criticism of many clinical studies carried out on HMPs is that those running the trials do not appreciate the need to define the material being tested in terms of its botanical identity, freedom from possible contaminants and in the profile and amounts of the major constituents present. If these trials are reported in the literature, they mean very little if the material is not defined, because it would be impossible to obtain consistent replicate results without knowing if the plant materials used were of similar profile. Ideally, they should be ‘standardised’, i.e. the concentrations of ‘active’ compounds are defined within fairly strict limits and the relative amounts of the different ingredients is the same for every batch.

**Concerns over safety**

Safety is closely linked with good quality. HMPs are generally regarded as ‘safe’ by the public because they are ‘natural’, and consequently instances of adverse effects arising from their use attract attention. In recent years there have been some serious cases of harm occurring to those taking HMPs, probably the most notorious being the irreparable kidney damage induced in women in Belgium who were taking a Chinese herbal mixture as a slimming aid (Vanherweghem et al., 1993). Such events have often led to HMPs being restricted in their sale or being taken off the market completely. In many cases the observed toxicity is not actually due to the true herb itself, but has occurred because the wrong plant was used, or some other toxic substance was added to a HMP formulation. The severe renal damage that occurred in the case noted above is an example of use of the wrong plant and is thought to be due to a confusion over the Chinese names of the herbs. The roots of *Stephania tetranda*, known as ‘fang ji’ should have been used in the formula, but appear to have been substituted with *Aristolochia fangchi* roots, known as ‘fang chi’, which contain the cytotoxic and nephrotoxic aristolochic acids. Numerous cases of toxicity have been reported because of the presence of heavy metals, such as lead, mercury and arsenic, often added because these materials are used therapeutically in some Asian systems of medicine. Another serious problem, referred to above, is the undeclared addition of synthetic, ‘orthodox’ pharmaceuticals to allegedly herbal products with the resulting risks of adverse effects, build-up of resistance or interaction with other medication.

However, it is important to accept that even if the correct herbal material is used, with no added substances, safety may be compromised. There is a variety of reasons for this, including the herb containing a level of actives higher than usual, the presence of bioactive compounds other than those having the desired activity and interaction with other medication. This last aspect has attracted quite a lot of attention in recent years with the huge increase in the use of HMPs by those also on orthodox medication. Interaction may be additive, where an exaggeration of the activity caused by the conventional medicine is noted, leading to overdose, or there may be a negative interaction, where the herb has an opposite effect to the orthodox drug, and so decreases its activity to a level where its efficacy is severely compromised.

The presence of other ingredients in the formula of a HMP may affect the plasma levels of the actives. If absorption from the gut into the bloodstream is reduced by compounds such as tannins, the levels may be too low for a therapeutic effect, while the presence of some other substances, e.g. black pepper (*Piper nigrum* fruits) may accelerate absorption and cause the bioactive substances in the blood to reach dangerously high levels. Similar negative and positive effects occur when metabolising enzymes in the liver are up-regulated or inhibited respectively or when excretion through the kidneys is increased or decreased.

**Legislative and commercial pressures**

The regulatory status of HMPs varies quite widely across the world and it is impossible to summarise briefly. In the developed world, the procedures for medicines to be ‘officially’ recognised have generally
been designed with SCE drugs in mind and required studies in adsorption, metabolism and excretion are difficult to apply to HMPs. The problem also exists of allowing for variation in content between batches, while also defining the extract in terms of minimum levels of ‘active’ ingredients, often complicated by the fact that the actives may comprise a variety of compounds and are often not completely known. New developments in defining extracts by metabolomics are providing a fresh approach to this but, as yet, these advances have not been adopted by regulatory authorities. (Metabolomics – are the study and portrayal of all the secondary metabolites present in a plant extract by methods linking analysis with chemometrics and principal-component analysis.)

If HMPs are to be awarded a status on a par with SCE medicines, then considerable costs have to be incurred in doing the necessary work to construct the portfolio of data required by regulators. With SCE medicines, this is carried out by the large pharmaceutical companies, who are able to recoup the sums extended by sales of the medicine for its first few years, and protection from competitors marketing a similar product by patents and intellectual property rights (IPR).

This is much more difficult for products consisting of plant parts or crude extracts, and the situation is complicated by the fact that any IPR for traditional medicines should take the original owners of the information and use into consideration. Much has been written in the past two decades on ‘biopiracy’ in the context of traditional medicines and is discussed comprehensively in three special issues of Journal of Ethnopharmacology (volume 51, issues 1–3, 1996) and updated more recently (Soejarto et al., 2005). Protection against this was a major part of the Convention on Biological Diversity signed in Rio de Janeiro in 1992, but it has proved to be somewhat controversial, since claims have been made that it has prevented, rather than stimulated, research and development of traditional medicines on a scientific basis. The uncertainty of gaining IPR on a product is one reason why many pharmaceutical companies avoid introducing extracts and herbal formulas into their portfolio of products. The consequence of this is that many products sold in developed countries are not marketed as ‘medicines’ but terms such as ‘food supplements’ are used. This not only reduces the perceived risks in the eyes of the public but also means that the product is subject to less stringent quality-control measures. Definition of a product as other than a medicine also broadens the range of outlets from where they can be obtained. In the UK, for example, as well as in many other countries, many ‘conventional’ medicines can only be obtained from a pharmacy, but products classed as ‘food supplements’ can be obtained from supermarkets and grocery stores.

In less-regulated and less-developed economies, the problems are different, since much supply at a local level is done as a family business, and consumerism is not a major factor, as most purchasers and users are in close contact socially with the suppliers. However, urbanisation breaks this immediate link and its dramatic increase in most developing countries has been matched by a rise in trade based on ‘processed’ herbs and HMPs very similar to that seen in developed countries. The huge problem posed by ‘fake drugs’ in many developing countries includes HMPs, and cheap substitutes and adulterated material are often encountered, as noted above. The concern that arises from this is being expressed in legislation, but often it is the enforcement of this legislation that is a problem, rather than its enactment (Harding, 2006).

Threats to conservation

The rise in use of HMPs has meant that increased amounts of plant material are required to satisfy consumer demand. Although many herbs and medicinal plants are cultivated, particularly now in countries such as India and China, the majority are gathered from the wild in developing countries, and are a valuable source of extra income for the local population, many of whom are subsistence farmers. Sustainable harvesting may be practised for plants used within a particular cultural group, and often is reflected in religious and other restrictions and rituals. However, when an outside market opens up, with the prospect of financial gain, and perhaps for plants not used by the group, these traditional controls may be discarded. What is also serious is the fact that collectors who may invade the area are unsympathetic to the local sustainable practices and consequently overcollect, possibly leading to extinction of the
species in that area and destruction of the habitat. Such overcollection has made several medicinal plant species very rare in the wild in many parts of the world and efforts to reverse the situation, or prevent it happening, have been the focus of conservation organisations such as Worldwide Fund for Nature.

Shortages arising from overcollection, or from natural disasters in major growing areas, will inevitably lead to uncertainty over supply, with consequent higher prices and general volatility in the market. Shortages of genuine material also increase the risk of poor-quality, worthless or even dangerous material being supplied instead of the authentic products.

Cultivation is one obvious answer to some of these problems but it is not always possible to activate immediately on agronomic grounds. Not all medicinal species are easily adapted to plantation agriculture, since they may flourish best in association with a variety of other species.

Conclusions

Herbal medicinal products occupy a significant place in consumer consciousness in the developed world and are important in healthcare in most developing countries. There is increasing interest from the medical and scientific communities in giving them a place in evidence-based medicine, and this is consolidated by a more sympathetic attitude on the part of regulatory authorities than has previously been the case.

However, major obstacles exist in both the developed and developing world, to the acceptance by scientists, the medical establishment, legislators and regulators, of HMPs as substances equivalent to ‘orthodox’ medicines. Many of the concerns which need to be addressed come under the categories of quality, safety and efficacy. This book has been conceived as a way of bringing contemporary attitudes, discoveries and knowledge in these fields to the attention of health professionals and other scientists, as well as the informed general public. It is hoped that the recognition of what is already known will not only stimulate interest in use and acceptance of more HMPs but also encourage greater research to give a firmer scientific foundation to the use of many others.

Acknowledgement

The authors wish to express their gratitude to the Commonwealth Scholarship Commission, Association of Commonwealth Universities, UK, for the Commonwealth Academic Staff Fellowship Award to Dr. Pulok K. Mukherjee.

References


History records the fact that almost every culture around the world has noted the contribution of herbs and their use as foods and medicines. The oldest prescriptions, found on Babylonian clay tablets and the hieratic writing of ancient Egypt on papyrus, display numerous ancient pharmaceutical and medicinal uses of botanicals and foods. It should be noted that, until the 19th century, almost nothing was known about the composition of food, and the nutritional requirements of humans and food were accepted mainly on the basis of the history of use. While some herbal medicinal products (HMPs) have long been used both as foods and medicine, others have no significant history of use as food ingredients. The present insights into the nutrient composition of food and the nutritional requirements of humans are significant and are having a considerable impact on feeding habits. HMPs may be parts of plants, simple extracts or isolated active constituents, although usually the last group is not included in the definition of HMP. HMPs are regulated either as food or as medicinal products according to the regulations of a particular country and in the latter case often with simplified registration procedures. These differences in regulatory status are caused by differences in traditional use, in cultural and historical background, in scientific substantiation and in enforcement of current legislation (Bast et al., 2002).
Studies on chemical ecology can identify materials of potential benefit to humanity, either in terms of agriculture or pharmaceutical development. The current view of many ecologists is that, although secondary metabolites may not have been produced mainly for the defence of the organism, a large subset of them are maintained because they do improve the fitness of the produce to survive. Acceptance of this idea makes it clear that secondary metabolites are characterised by a high degree of biological activity. This worldwide botanical cornucopia includes many reliable medicines. The World Health Organization (WHO) records the fact that 80% of the world population still relies on botanical medicines (Mukherjee et al., 1998a; Mukherjee, 2002a).

Because of commercial orientation and the increasing demand for natural products, a paucity of well-qualified and trained personnel in herbal industries and the lack of harmonised regulations in various countries, the quality of the herbal products available in the market is unreliable and sometimes misleading. Therefore, it is essential that the information provided to healthcare professionals and consumers be unbiased, accurate, trusted and guarantees optimum quality, safety and efficacy.

**Development of biologically active plant products**

Although traditional medicines have been used for centuries by many civilisations in the world, scientific research and development in phytotherapy have suffered through lack of patent protection and diversity and the relatively small scale of the industries involved, compared with the conventional pharmaceutical industries. Moreover, traditional medicines are extensively used in the treatment of various ailments, but evidence-based recommendations are lacking. Established guidelines for assessing the efficacy and safety of phytomedicine, although scientifically consistent, are claimed by some to impose impracticable financial demands on licence holders. To prove the efficacy of the herbal drugs, good clinical research is needed but to produce the results carrying sufficient statistical weight is expensive and laborious and the cost of undertaking research studies may not be justified commercially. It is difficult to patent herbs and the size of the market is not comparable with most patentable conventional drugs. Being a mixture of complex chemicals, the herbs as a whole will have different properties from that of any single constituent acting alone. The action of the latter will not predict the effect of the former, particularly if the experimental evidence is based on work done on laboratory animals.

The strategy for deriving a single molecule as a therapeutic product is fairly well known. There are some steps such as synthesis or isolation from a natural source, identifying hits through in-vitro and in-vivo screening, converting hits into leads and then lead optimisation, pharmacokinetic study of the optimised lead, toxicological evaluation and eventual subjection to the various phases of clinical trials. However, in the case of HMPs, the strategy for developing them as licensed medicines is not well understood, largely because hardly any HMPs have successfully been introduced as such, especially in Western countries. Each country has its own strategy for product development, since the window of opportunity in herbal medicine is very large, but difficulties abound, not least that herbal products are generally kept as a trade secret, and knowledge of useful herbs is not always shared, something that has to happen if HMPs are to be viewed seriously as important in healthcare globally. A well-accepted product development strategy should be introduced, so that new HMPs can be developed and evaluated. This is essential, because the European Union, to use as an example, now requires much from the herbal product manufacturers, as described in their recent guidelines, but has not come up with a road map that will help the producers of HMPs in developing countries to meet their expectations (Mukherjee and Wahile, 2006a).

Herbal extracts are complex mixtures, so high sensitivity and miniaturised assays are required, together with innovative technologies, e.g. immunochemical and enzymatic methods coupled with online chemoanalytical systems, high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC)-based assays used directly for a wide range of mechanism-based and cellular assays. Many pharmaceutical companies now prefer prefractionated extracts or pure compounds libraries in lead discovery, because of the low ‘hit’ rate in high-throughput screening technology (HTS, see p. 53)
with crude extracts (Bindseil et al., 2001). The most fruitful approach has been suggested to be a combination of pure compounds, fractions and extracts and a differential use thereof, depending on the target and the screening format (Potterat and Hamburger, 2008).

**Limitations of traditional experience in developing HMPs**

Although many conventional drugs or their precursors are derived from plants, there is a basic difference between administering a pure chemical substance and the same chemical in a plant matrix. Herbal products represent a number of unique problems in quality control because of the nature of herbal ingredients present therein. The constituents responsible for the claimed therapeutic effects are often unknown and the complex composition of drugs that are used in the form of whole plant, plant parts or the extracts obtained therefrom raises unique standardisation problems.

Another limitation concerns safety. Herbal prescribers and their consumers are less likely to detect some types of adverse reactions to herbal medicines than other types of medicine. Recognition will be particularly difficult, when the signs and symptoms are not unusual in the population and could thus be ascribed to alternative causes. Although long-standing experience may tell much about striking and predictable acute toxicity, it is a less reliable tool for the detection of reactions that occur uncommonly, develop very gradually or need a prolonged latency period, or that are inconspicuous (De Smet, 1995). An appealing example of inconspicuous toxicity is the fact that traditional eye medicines may damage the eye by a direct action of toxic substances introduced into the conjunctival sac, by the introduction of microorganisms leading to infection, by physical trauma resulting from the application, or indirectly by delaying the patient’s presentation to a clinic for therapy. Epidemiological research has shown that a quarter of the corneal ulcers and childhood blindness in rural Africa is associated with the instillation of traditional eye medicines (Yorston and Foster, 1994; Courtright et al., 1994; Lewallen and Courtright, 1995).

Safety claims on herbal medicines cannot be based on traditional empiricism. Not all HMPs have firm roots in traditional practices, and this may well be an underestimated issue. When traditional source plants are extracted in a non-traditional way (e.g. by resorting to a non-polar solvent such as hexane), the question arises whether this non-traditional extract is just as safe as the traditional one. Until recently, the ostrich fern (*Matteuccia struthiopteris*) was generally considered to be a non-toxic, edible plant with a history of use as a spring vegetable that went back to the 1700s. However, recent observations of serious gastrointestinal toxicity following the consumption of lightly sautéed or blanched ostrich fern shoots suggest that this vegetable is only safe when it is thoroughly cooked before use (Srinivasan, 2006). Sometimes a compound found as a herbal ingredient may have no medicinal tradition at all, and its route of administration or dose level may be quite different from that used in a traditional setting. A troubling example is that high-dose supplements of beta-carotene, taken alone or with vitamin A or vitamin E, increase rather than decrease the incidence of lung cancer in people at high risk of this disease although there was some epidemiological evidence that a diet rich in plants containing carotenoids was associated with a decreased occurrence of cancer (Marwick, 1996). Moreover, the administration form also differs based on the application pattern, e.g. most of the Ayurvedic and Siddha preparations of the Indian systems of medicine are used in traditional medicine by mixing the same with different solvents or adjuvants called ‘Anupan’ such as milk, honey, etc. While exploring those, the same drug may be used with other anupan which does not comply with the traditional concepts, and so the chances of adverse reaction, or less activity than the original HMP cannot be overlooked (Mukherjee, 2001, 2002b).

**Establishing the quality of herbal products**

Definition and characterisation of the material is necessary prior to the assessment of the relevance of available efficacy and safety data. It is also important that the material used and available commercially should be consistent with the evaluated material,
because any significant change in quality would trigger the need for a re-evaluation of the relevance of the safety and efficacy data. There is a general, worldwide consensus on how to control the quality of herbal medicinal products, although considerable effort is necessary to guarantee a constant and adequate quality. Specifications and analysis of the preparations of multi-component drugs involve complicated factors and use of herbal materials of good quality, along with proper control of the manufacturing processes, are prerequisites for quality control. Several parameters for quality control of herbal medicine are given in Figure 2.1. In the Indian situation, where preparations of the herbal drugs are based on the selected prescriptions, manufacturers are requested to obtain the approval of statutory authorities by submitting a form containing the name, components and their specifications, the method of preparation, dosage and applications, efficacy, method and period of storage, specification and testing methods for the preparation. In the case of preparations not based on the selected prescriptions, and those combining herbal drugs or their extracts with synthetic drugs, the basis of the composition and literature or records to clarify the efficacy and safety are also requested redundant (Bast et al., 2002; Srikumaran, 2006).

Evidence to support the safety of a botanical product may come from a wide variety of data, including documented traditional use, experimental studies, clinical trials and other human data such as case reports and epidemiological data.

Scientific monographs from the European Scientific Cooperative On Phytotherapy and the World Health Organization, for example, offer a valuable and updated overview on published scientific literature, which may be used in support of the demonstration of the safety and efficacy of a botanical product in a bibliographical application. These monographs may help to avoid duplication of work and bring about gradual harmonisation in the evaluation of medicinal products. In principle, human clinical data provide the most reliable source of information to assess the benefit and safety of a product, but old reports and studies that do not agree with the current state of the art, where studies are placebo-controlled, should be viewed sceptically and it should be established by expert judgement whether

Figure 2.1 Quality control methods in evaluating herbal medicinal products.
the bibliographic data can demonstrate a sufficient level of safety and efficacy (Barnes, 2003a).

Documentation on traditional use may include:

- proper identification of the botanical used
- determination of parts used
- preparation process of the botanical ingredients
- formulation of the traditional product
- mode (route, schedule, and dose) of administration of the preparation
- indications of use of the botanical/preparation
- traditional geographical areas and populations in which such use occurred
- time span and extent of use of the botanical product
- contraindications and adverse effects that have been associated with use in humans and animals.

Quality control of herbal medicines is a critical and essential issue to be considered in assuring the therapeutic efficacy, safety and to rationalise the use of HMPs in healthcare. The challenges faced in the quality control of herbal drug preparations are described further in Figure 2.2 and also discussed in Chapters 27 and 28.

In traditional herbal medicines in the Indian subcontinent, the quality control aspect has been considered from inception by the religious experts or the medicine men using the herb for diseases, and later by the physicians known as vaidyas and hakims. However, modern concepts require necessary changes in their approach. For example, the quality control of traditional herbal medicines, the traditional methods of preparations are studied and documented and then this information is interpreted properly in terms of modern assessment (Mukherjee, 2002b). Adulterants, and more often, the incorrect identification of the herbs, are the causes of low quality in herbals.

Although a consumer of an officially approved herbal medicine should not have to be concerned about the correct identity of the ingredients, this is a primary concern when an individual goes out into the field to collect his own herbs. Austrian physicians recently described a case of a very young boy who developed veno-occlusive disease of the liver after long-term consumption of a tea prepared from *Adenostyles alliariae*. This herb had been erroneously gathered by the boy’s parents instead of coltsfoot (*Tussilago farfara*) and it contains a greater amount of hepatotoxic pyrrolizidine alkaloids than coltsfoot (De Smet, 1989; Sperl *et al.*, 1995). Botanical misidentification can be problematic not only with self-collected plants, but also with commercially

---

**Figure 2.2** Challenges in quality control of herbal medicines.
available materials. German researchers recently exposed, for instance, that *Sarothamni scoparii* flos does not always originate from *Sarothamus scoparius* (‘Besenginster’) but may also come from *Spartium junceum* (‘Spanischer Ginster’) (Schier et al., 1994). Because the flowers of *Spartium junceum* are rich in toxic quinolizidine alkaloids of the cytisine type (Greinwald et al., 1990), this adulteration could cause poisoning and thus be clinically relevant. Problems with the botanical quality of crude plant drugs may be even more pertinent in the case of traditional Chinese and Indian systems of medicine. The quality of prepackaged herbal products may also be a problem, in particular in countries where those products are not generally categorised as medicines. As a result, they remain exempt from governmental approval processes so that their quality is essentially uncontrolled and this is the prevailing situation in so many developed and developing countries (Tyler, 1995; Mukherjee et al., 2006c).

Herbal medicines should be free not only from botanical contaminants, but also from residual pesticides or fumigating agents and from pathogenic microorganisms or microbial toxins. There are evidences, for instance, that medicinal plant materials from India and Sri Lanka can be contaminated with toxigenic fungi (*Aspergillus, Fusarium*). Since aflatoxin B has sometimes been recovered from such materials in potentially unsafe amounts, it would certainly be prudent to improve their storage conditions (Abeywickrama and Bean, 1991). Of great practical concern is the presence, intentionally or by accident, of toxic metals (such as lead and arsenic) or conventional pharmaceuticals (e.g. corticosteroids and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs) in certain herbal medicines of Asian origin (De Smet, 1996). Although these hazards have been denounced for more than two decades now, they continue to pose an occasional threat to public health (Gertmner et al., 1995; Shaw et al., 1995). The contamination of herbal medicines with pharmaceuticals is not necessarily limited to products of Oriental origin but it is higher because, in these cases, of the lower stringencies of rules and regulation governing the quality of the herbals in different countries (Natori et al., 1980; Espinoza et al., 1995).

There are various aspects which have to be considered for optimising the quality of HMPs.

**Good agricultural practices**

Good agricultural practice (GAP) aims to meet consumer needs for products that are of high quality, safe and produced in an environmentally and socially responsible way.

WHO has developed a series of technical guidelines relating to the quality control of medicinal plants grown in commercial plantations. These facilitate technical support for development of methodology to monitor or to ensure product safety, efficiency and quality, preparation of guidelines, and promotion of exchange of information (WHO, 2003). The guidelines cover techniques and measures required for the appropriate cultivation and collection of medicinal plants, documentation of necessary data and information during their processing. Good agricultural and collection practices for medicinal plants are only the first steps in quality assurance but play an important role in the protection of natural resources of medicinal plants for sustainable use.

GAP includes identification and authentication of cultivated medicinal plants, certification of seeds and other propagation materials, intensive care and management of cultivation, harvesting during the optimal season to ensure best quality of herbals and adequate knowledge of growers and producers on these aspects. The quality of the herbal medicines may be affected based on the methods adopted in the cultivation and harvesting methods of herbs. Auditing notebooks for the interpretation of the technical requirements of GAP to the specific situation of each farm are very important and these do not involve much investment and financial constraints as organisational burdens for farmers, especially those regarding the management of information. Various steps are to be followed for the achievement of GAP, combining scientific expertise and a comprehensive knowledge of herbal plant cultivation for translation into operational guidelines relevant to the regional context (WHO, 2003).

**Good collection practices**

Between 70% and 90% of the plant species used medicinally are commercially obtained by collecting the drugs in the natural habitat. The practice of collecting plant materials is not uniform throughout
the world and good collection practice (GCP) is an important criterion in this respect and should be carried out as part of GAP. Collection practices should ensure the long-term survival of wild populations and their associated habitats and management plans should provide a framework for setting sustainable harvest levels and describing appropriate practices that are suitable for each medicinal plant species and plant part used. GCP should also include collection of permits from government authorities and land owners, technical planning with knowledge of geographical distribution, population density of the target medicinal plant species and essential information on the target species.

**Macroscopical and microscopical evaluation**

Organoleptic evaluation of herbal drugs is a primary means that includes evaluation parameters such as colour, size, odour and taste, and surface characteristics (texture and fracture).

Macromorphological evaluation is different for different parts of crude drugs – e.g. for crude drugs from barks, they are nature of curvature, surface characteristics, fracture characteristics and characteristics of transverse surfaces. Similarly microscopical evaluation is still of great importance in evaluation of crude drugs and nowadays a range of techniques are applied. More details on botanical techniques are given in Chapters 27 and 28.

**Good manufacturing practices**

Requirements and methods for quality control of finished herbal products, particularly for combining/mixing herbal products, are far more complex than for chemical drugs. Unlike conventional drugs, which are usually produced from synthetic materials by means of reproducible manufacturing techniques and procedures, herbal drugs are prepared from materials of natural origin obtained from various regions, varying climatic conditions and times of collection. However, alterations to quality might also arise during the processing stage by which the HMP is produced, so good manufacturing practice (GMP) is one of the most important tools to ensure the quality of the manufactured herbal drugs. To promote and improve the quality of herbal medicines, WHO has developed GMP guidelines for the manufacture of herbal medicines (WHO, 1996; 2002), which direct that materials should be handled in a fashion that is not detrimental to the product. After the arrival of the product for processing, the herbal material should not come directly into contact with humans and it should not be exposed to sun. Because of the high degree of initial microbial contamination of herbal materials, specific and detailed requirements have been developed to cover microbial contamination of equipment, air, surfaces, personnel and also for utilities, ancillary and supporting systems (Mukherjee et al., 2005). The guidelines emphasise minimising the use of water for cleaning the herbal material and recommend an air duster or air shower. The presence of other plant materials of different species or different plant parts should be avoided during the process to avoid contamination, and the time limit mentioned in the master record should not be exceeded, to ensure the quality. The methods followed for standardisation should be documented and the blending process should be adequately controlled and documented and should be tested for conformity to the established specification. Any one specification batch should not be blended with other batches for the purpose of meeting specifications, except for standardisation of the content of the constituents with known pharmaceutical therapeutic effect. Where particular physical attributes are critical, blending should be validated to show uniformity of the combined batch and the validation should include testing of these critical attributes.

The WHO 2002 guidelines emphasise that operations on different products should not be carried out simultaneously or consecutively in the same room unless there is no risk of cross-contamination and when dry materials are used in production, special precaution should be taken to prevent the generation and dissemination of dust.

**Standardisation of chemical aspects using marker analysis**

For standardisation and quality assurance purposes, three attributes, i.e. authentication, purity and assay
are desirable. Authentication, as the name suggests, relates to proving that the material is true, that is, it corresponds to the claimed identity. Purity pertains to evaluating that there are no adulterants present in the plant material and it can be evaluated by classic pharmacognostic procedures such as microscopy, ash values and other tests, for example, extractive values. The assay part of standardisation is chemical and biological profiling by which the chemical and biological effects could be assessed and effective doses are established. Safety for use could also be assessed through this parameter. In biological assays, the drug activity is evaluated through a pharmacological model but this is seldom used because biological testing is highly subjective in nature, subject to much variation in response and there are strict regulatory controls on animal testing. Therefore, the development of standardisation procedures for quality control through biological assays is significant but difficult (Bauer, 1998; Mukherjee, 2003b).

Chemical studies, on the other hand, are versatile and can be put to good use in standardisation, and are still the major technical approach used. Fingerprints can be generated for qualitative assessment. As far as quantitative assessment is concerned, the concentrations of the secondary metabolites, which are considered to be the active constituents of herbal drugs, are studied and used to provide standardisation procedures. The compounds in question are called ‘marker’ compounds. Of these marker compounds, some are therapeutically active, and others may not be active, but when used should be present in abundant quantity (Shu, 1998; Mukherjee, 2002a). Marker analysis may help in different ways, e.g. to assess potency, anticipate the active constituents, and ensure the quality and consistency of botanical raw materials and finished products. They may also help in detecting the adulterants and monitoring decomposition, essential in the stability study of herbals and deciding the shelf-life of a product (Tamizhmani, 2003). Several aspects on this context are illustrated in Figure 2.3.

Chromatographic testing of herbal medicines can be carried out for two purposes: identification and potency determination. Among the chromatographic methods for analysis of marker components, thin-layer chromatography is significant because it is simple, cost-effective, reproducible and visualisable. Further, fingerprinting of the chromatographic patterns and quantitative analysis of markers is possible using a densitometric scanner. The use of chromatographic fingerprinting for herbal drugs serves not only in identification but also assessment

![Figure 2.3](image-url) Importance of marker analysis in drug development from natural resources.

- Quality control of raw materials
  - Easy, cost-effective, reproducible and fast method to evaluate grade and quality of the raw material
  - To quantify contents in formulation and to verify labelled claims
  - For stability studies of formulation
  - Quantitative analysis of biomarker can be used to evaluate the quantity of biologically active chemical entities required to produce specific pharmacological activity
  - Can be used to calculate dose of formulation required
  - Useful to evaluate quality, toxicity, stability and overdoses
  - Could produce supportive data for pharmacovigilance studies

- Quality control of formulations

- Validation of therapeutic doses

- Post-marketing surveillance and pharmacovigilance studies

- Marker analysis
  Uniform standardisation tool to evaluate natural health products
of the stability of the chemical constituents observed by chromatography (Mukherjee et al., 2006b). Marker compounds and chromatographic profiles may be used to evaluate the quality of products from herbal growers and suppliers, to standardise raw materials, and control formulation and tablet content uniformity.

Unfortunately, the development of a biomarker for this paradigm is not an easy task because of the complex interplay of many variables in this approach. The biomarkers may act in combination with other chemical entities, via poorly understood mechanisms of synergy or antagonism, to be responsible for the efficacy of the standardised extracts for any particular therapeutic area or disease (Mills and Kerry, 2000). To define any molecule as a biomarker entails thorough research, and theoretically several biomarkers are desirable to be relevant for the rational use of any given standardised extract (Keug et al., 1996; Lazarowych, 1998).

**Minimising risk**

This consideration introduces the second step that should be taken towards safer herbal medicines. Herbal producers and sellers should ban unsafe remedies and discourage unsafe practices, but, unfortunately, the introduction of herbal medicine-like products into the market in many developing countries is not adequately monitored. This unsatisfactory situation could be greatly improved by the creation of a special licensing system for herbal medicines, such as is being developed in Europe. Such a system would not only help to exclude preparations from herbs with known toxicity, but would also provide a valuable tool to improve HMP quality, particularly since health problems arising from use of HMPs are often due to contaminants rather than the declared ingredients (WHO, 2000; Mukherjee, 2002b).

Not only the quality of a finished herbal product is important, but also the quality of the consumer information about that product. Understandable warnings in the package insert can certainly help to reduce the risk of inappropriate uses and adverse reactions (De Smet, 1994, 1996). The German health authorities have limited the indication of herbal anthranoid laxatives to constipation that has not responded to bulk-forming therapy. In addition, they have imposed restrictions to the laxative use of most anthranoid-containing herbs, that is, not to be used for more than 1–2 weeks without medical advice, not to be used in children under 12 years of age, and not to be used during pregnancy or lactation. This example illustrates that herbal health risks do not always require a full ban of specific herbal ingredients but can sometimes be reduced by appropriate warnings in the product information.

A striking feature of certain restrictive measures is that they are limited to one particular herb, without taking into account that the toxic constituents of that herb also occur in other medicinal plants. For instance, when the German health authorities announced their ban of herbal medicines prepared from the madder root, *Rubia tinctorum* (Pressedienst, 1993) because of its mutagenic anthranoids, they paid no attention to the occurrence of these compounds in other rubiaceous plants that serve as medicines in the Far East, e.g. *Morinda umbellata*, *Rubia cordifolia*, *Hymenodictyon excelsum* and *Damnacanthus indicus* (Kawasaki et al., 1992).

**Safety of herbal products**

**How safe are HMPs?**

Very few herbal drugs have been subjected to systematic toxicological and nutritional assessment, yet, because of their long history, customary preparation and use and absence of evidence of harm, they are generally regarded as safe to consume. This long ‘history of safe use’ of herbal drugs forms the benchmark for the comparative safety assessment of newer herbal products. Apart from these observations, the other important factors in establishing a history of safe use are the results of animal studies and observations from human exposure (Walker, 2004). With the availability of herbal drugs from the fieldside to the bedside, via the internet site, care must be taken to ensure the safety of herbal drugs, since the regulations for herbal drugs are increasing day by day. Chapter 30 also deals with toxicological aspects of HMPs.

While the safety of some herbal medicines can be compromised by deficient product quality, other herbal products are dangerous, even if they have
excellent quality. Yohimbe products rich in yohim- bine will be less safe for over-the-counter use than products containing no or negligible amounts of this alkaloid (De Smet, 1994b). Likewise, the Chinese *Tripterygium* preparations that occasionally surface in the Netherlands, will particularly entail the risk of serious health problems (e.g. gastrointestinal disturbances, skin rashes, immunosuppression, blood disturbances, amenorrhoea, and oligospermia), when their quality is immaculate because of high levels of compounds with a narrow therapeutic index (De Smet, 1995).

The problems of the safety of herbals should not be ignored (De Smet, 1993). The information collected during the pre-marketing phase of any drug is inevitably incomplete with regard to possible adverse reactions; tests in animals are insufficiently predictive of human safety; in clinical trials patients are selected and limited in number; the conditions of use differ from those in clinical practice and the duration of trials is limited; and information about rare but serious adverse reactions, chronic toxicity, use in special groups (such as children, the elderly or pregnant women) or drug interactions is often incomplete or not available. Because the general public think that herbal remedies are 100% safe, they often take them without any medical advice and treat them like food. Consequently, the occurrences of side-effects, toxicity and drug interaction are not documented (Mukherjee et al., 2006a). Phyto-pharmacovigilance is needed in every country, because there are differences between countries (and even regions within countries) in the occurrence of adverse drug reactions, and other drug-related problems and methods of data acquisition, handling and evaluation have to be developed, including the collection of consumer comments regarding non-prescription products.

**Toxicity of herbals**

All xenobiotics are toxic if they accumulate beyond the normal level in to the physiological system, as in the incident in the 1990s in Singapore, Hong Kong and also in Belgium, when women treated with a Chinese herbal preparation suffered from renal failure caused by the presence of the toxic material aristolochic acid, in a plant drug marketed and indicated for slimming (Meyer et al., 2000). Therefore the importance of controlling the correct identification of herbal preparation should be taken into account from the very beginning (Schiltera, 2003; Khan, 2006). In addition to the problem of incorrect plant identification, some mixtures may be toxic, particularly if they are misused.

**Risk assessment**

Generally, for herbs or complex extracts, it is not possible to make a risk assessment on the basis of a single active component, because more than one may be of toxicological significance and matrix effects may affect bioavailability. The risk assessment/safety evaluation relates to the material as consumed; thus data applicable to the finished products are of major importance. Detailed analytical and other data are required to give assurance that the material tested provides relevant information, bearing in mind the possibility of matrix effects, e.g. on bioavailability, absorption and pharmacokinetic behaviour (Kroes, 2004).

Continual review and assessment of the safety of botanicals is needed, with an emphasis on surveillance of the use of these products to identify unknown hazards or risks and address them expeditiously.

**Herbal toxicity and the consumer**

The chance that a herbal medicine produces an adverse reaction depends not only on the herbal medicine and its dosage but also on consumer-bound parameters, such as age, genetics and concomitant diseases. For instance, the risk that the alkaloid berberine in Chinese *Coptis* species elicits jaundice seems to be most substantial in infants who are deficient in glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (Yung et al., 1990; Chan, 1993).

**Herb–drug interactions**

Herb–drug interactions may have little or no effect in patients and some are harmless. For those drug–drug interactions that are potentially harmful, the effects may only occur in a small proportion of patients. However, serious interactions can occur and these may be life-threatening.

An overview of the adverse drug interactions between herbal preparations and conventional
medicines has been described by De Smet et al. (1996) and many other possibilities are listed in Barnes et al. (2006). Although it is sometimes the conventional medicine that increases the toxicity of a herbal compound, it is more likely that a herbal preparation interferes with the effects of a conventional drug. For instance, the root of *Salvia miltiorrhiza* (Danshen), which has been used traditionally in China for the treatment of coronary diseases, can enhance the anticoagulant activity of warfarin when both drugs are taken together (Lo et al., 1994). Herbal laxative preparations reportedly caused abdominal pain and diarrhoea in some patients. Any laxative or bulk-forming agents will speed intestinal transit, and thus may interfere with the absorption of almost any intestinally absorbed drug, thus eliminating drugs too quickly and diminishing their therapeutic effect because of reduced plasma concentrations. Patients with impaired renal or liver functions or who are elderly are at most risk from drug interactions and may be more prone to adverse effects (Chavez, 2006). Healthcare professionals providing pharmaceutical medicines for the treatment of diseases should be aware that concomitant use of herbal remedies can cause problems. Similarly herbalists treating patients should be aware of potential herb–drug interactions. There is limited information available in the literature concerning the interaction of herbal medicines and conventional medicines and much of it is speculative rather than arising from reports.

**Establishing the efficacy of herbal products**

Many complementary medicines, particularly herbal medicines, have a long history of traditional use. However, the efficacies of most of these are unproven. The lack of evidence does not necessarily mean that complementary medicines lack efficacy or are unsafe, but that rigorous clinical investigation has not yet been undertaken and that extensive surveillance of the use of these drugs has not yet been carried out.

Even though some standardised herbal extracts have undergone extensive clinical investigation, evidence of efficacy should be considered to be extract-specific. At most, evidence should be extrapolated only to preparations of the same herb with a very similar profile of constituents (Busse, 2000; Barnes, 2003a).

**Clinical research and efficacy studies**

One of the fundamental dogmas of clinical pharmacology is the rigorous assessment of the mechanism of action of drugs, their efficacy, kinetics and safety using evidence from well-designed studies. The safety and efficacy of the herbal products may also be determined by the pattern and concentration of the chemical components that they contain. Any evidence of efficacy, safety and quality for herbal medicines has until recently been anecdotal, or empirical at best, and rarely based on rigorous prospective randomised controlled trials. The situation is now changing but most clinical trials of herbal medicine have focused on either standardised extracts of single herbs or standardised formulas, reflecting increased sponsorship of such studies by manufacturers in the increasingly important over-the-counter market. Evidence from clinical studies of single herb extracts or standardised formulas cannot be generalised to individualised herbal medicine, and claims by practitioners that the latter has an evidence base requires confirmation (Scholten, 2001). In addition, no references to pharmacological and clinical data obtained with ‘concentrated extracts of different composition’ should be made for traditional preparations. This would generate the wrong impression that safety and efficacy are comparable.

**Phytoequivalence**

Herbal medicinal products (HMPs), after meeting the standards of quality and safety, have to face the pharmacological basis for efficacy. Pharmacological study can be pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic. In recent years numerous studies investigating the pharmacodynamic effects of HMPs have been performed but not much information is available on pharmacokinetics.

Considering phytoequivalence, one of the problems that the herbal industry faces is that of ensuring consistency in raw material availability and quality. Because of a lack of sufficient amounts of raw material,
pharmaceutical companies may use an equivalent substitute herb, where the same marker is present in sufficient concentration. There is much debate on whether such a replacement is justified. One school of thought argues that, as the marker compound is considered responsible for biological activity, the original herb can be substituted by one containing the same amount of marker compound. The other school of thought contends that, as well as the marker compound, other constituents which are naturally present affect the activity, and these may not be present in the substitute herb. It is our view that an indiscriminate use of substituted material where the marker compound is present in sufficient quantity must be prevented unless bioequivalence studies are undertaken, as is done for generic single chemical entity drugs.

The pharmacokinetic study of HMPs is extraordinarily complex, owing to the presence of many components in a mixture. Concentrations of single compounds are low and plasma concentration of those constituents is often in the range of micro- to picograms per litre, so the analytical techniques to be employed should be sensitive enough to detect the presence of the compounds at that level. Modern instruments such as gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS)/MS or HPLC-MS/MS are used to accomplish this target (Bhattaram et al., 2002). However, different compounds have different bioavailabilities and so will complicate the design of pharmacokinetic studies. Different approaches are possible for the study of phytoequivalence depending on the types of preparations. If the constituent responsible for an activity is known, then equivalence studies could be performed in the same way as with allopathic drugs. However, if the constituents responsible for activity are not known, then only data acquired with defined chemical constituents can be used, but this is insufficient – data obtained with bioassays or pharmacological studies are more reliable.

Comparison of a phytogeneric and an innovator formulation can only be extrapolated if the following are performed (Loew and Kaszkin, 2002):

- pharmaceutical equivalence
- biopharmaceutical equivalence
- bioequivalence with different end points
- clinical studies.

The constituents of an extract can be divided into active and accompanying substances or coeffectors. Coeffectors may have an influence on the physicochemical properties such as stability, solubility, or the half-life of the active compounds. There are several examples in the literature showing improvement of solubility and bioavailability of single compounds because of the presence of coeffectors. Saponins increase the absorption of corticosteroids, some antibiotics, flavones, phytosterols, and silicic acid. The concentration of kavain and yangonin in mouse brain samples is higher after administration of a *Piper methysticum* extract than after administration of the purified single compounds in the same amount.

The improved bioavailability of ascorbic acid from a citrus extract compared with pure ascorbic acid is explained by an increased absorption and an improved stability of vitamin C in the presence of several flavonoids contained in the citrus extract. However, the mechanism of interaction and the coeffectors were not identified. One approach to identify the chemical structure of a coeffector was recently performed by Butterweck et al. (1998; 2003) in studies on *Hypericum perforatum* and its constituent hypericin. A better understanding of the pharmacokinetics and bioavailability of natural compounds can help in designing a rational dosage regimen, and potential botanical product–drug interactions can be predicted (Butterweck and Derendorf, 2006).

Once activity is established by clinical trials, it is necessary to standardise that activity to make certain that a uniform amount of it is present in each dosage unit. This can be a very complex matter with herbal products, the activity of which is not due to a single chemical entity but to a mixture of constituents, some of which have not yet been identified. At the present time, most herbal products are standardised on the basis of the concentration of a single active or marker compound in a concentrated extract. If the active or the marker compound is present in appropriate quantity, it is assumed that all the other necessary components are also represented and uniform activity is assured (Mukherjee et al., 2006a). However, the use of pharmacological and clinical methods, linked to a qualitative and quantitative chemical profile of all the significant constituents by some method such as HPLC-MS or GC-MS, is the better approach to achieve phytoequivalence.
Without rigorous phytoequivalence studies, the results of a clinical trial performed with a particular brand of herbal medicine product cannot be easily or reliably extrapolated to other brands of herbal medicine products.

The need for herbal pharmacovigilance

Herbal pharmacovigilance should be explored in every way for safer herbal medicinal products for the community. There is no standard procedure evidence for recording and monitoring of adverse drug reactions in most countries. In this context, instead of mistaking the absence of reliable evidence as the green signal for commercial exploitation, herbal pharmacovigilance lends a note of caution. By analogy with conventional pharmacovigilance, herbal pharmacovigilance aims at the detection of serious adverse reactions, at the quantification of their incidence, and at the identification of contributive and modifying factors. A classic and inexpensive tool of pharmacovigilance is spontaneous reporting, on a voluntary basis, by health professionals, consumers or other parties who observe or experience a suspected or possible adverse reaction during daily practice (Barnes, 2003b; Kayne, 2006). Such reporting should come not only from healthcare providers, but also from herbal prescribers and herbal manufacturers. Herbal companies should be legally bound to report suspected adverse reactions to their products to the competent authorities, just as is now required from synthetic drug manufacturers. All should recognise that the reporting of suspected adverse reactions to their herbal medicines is an act of courage, which will eventually increase rather than decrease the respectability of professional herbalists and HMP manufacturers.

This problem can be exemplified by the situation regarding the hepatotoxic potential of the wall germander (*Teucrium chamaedrys*). There was animal evidence to suggest that the hepatotoxicity of the wall germander resided in its terpenoids and other medicinally used *Teucrium* species contain similar terpenoids (Kouzi *et al.*, 1994), but no one used this to question the safety of this herb in humans. Eventually a report on hepatitis associated with the use of *Teucrium polium* was published (Mattei *et al.*, 1995), but it required further clarification by the European Commission before the hepatotoxicity of this herb was established.

Traditional experience can bring such dose-dependencies to light and it may help to identify means of processing that reduce the likelihood of acute problems. However, not all adverse reactions occur immediately after they are administered and the importance of delayed reactions has recently been underlined by a retrospective study, covering clinical safety trials, which linked the occurrence of muscular weakness caused by hypokalaemia with long-term use of herbal anthranoid laxatives.

Herbal pharmacovigilance, however, is not a negative tool but a neutral one, especially when it identifies a new serious herbal health risk. Pharmacovigilance can also be reassuring, however, by providing evidence that certain herbal health risks are absent or negligibly small. Thus, it can help to boost one of the major claimed features of phytotherapeutics, namely their relative safety when compared with conventional pharmaceuticals.

Acknowledgement

The authors are thankful to the All India Council for Technical Education, New Delhi, Government of India for financial support through a research grant.

References


Barnes J (2003b). Quality, Efficacy and Safety of Complementary Medicines: fashions, facts and the


Introduction

Although recently developed tools, such as computer-aided molecular drug design or high-throughput screening techniques, have increased the success rate in the discovery of novel bioactive molecules, traditional remedies are still among the most reliable sources in the discovery and development of new medicines.

During the history of humankind, the Middle East has played a key role in the development of contemporary medicine. From Hippocrates to Dioscorides, Avicenna to Rhazes, many pioneers of medicine lived and practised in the area. The historical development of traditional Islamic medicine that prevailed in the middle and southern parts of the region is well-summarised in the reports of Abu-Rabia (2005), Brewer (2004) and Saad et al. (2005).

The rich traditional and cultural diversities, which originated from the widespread nomadic lifestyle once common in the region, have generated a vast wealth of traditional knowledge. The wide range of climatic zones from subtropical to continental or maritime to desert in the region has produced a large flora, e.g. the Anatolian peninsula records about 11 000 higher plant taxa and more than 1100 are noted for their uses as medicinal remedies (Yesilada and Sezik, 2003), whereas the number of plant species reported in the region from Syria and Iraq down to the Arabian peninsula is only about 2600, of which 700 are noted as medicinal plants (Saad et al., 2005). The number of plant-originated substances that are sold in akhtar (attarah) shops in Jordan was reported to be around 286 (Lev and Amar, 2002).

Ethnobotanical information shows diversity, depending upon the locality where the survey was carried out. In cities or towns, the main addresses for supplying the plant remedies are akhtar shops, spice shops or bazaars, where mainly unani medicine is practised. Along with the local or nationwide remedies, some imported plant materials, such as ginseng, may even be purchased from these places. For example,
ud-ül kahir (Anacyclus pyrethrum, Asteraceae) or misvaq (Salvadora persica, Salvadoraceae) do not grow in Anatolia (the Asian part of Turkey), but those plants are imported and sold in akhtar shops in Turkey. In villages or in small towns, the villagers prefer to collect wild plants growing in the vicinity, instead of purchasing from akhtars. Knowledge of the utilisation of these plant remedies in these small settlement units is generally acquired from ancestors, and has been practised over a long period, remaining mostly undocumented. Consequently, the list of herbal materials and usages suggested by the herbalists in Turkey (Baser et al., 1986) were found to be remarkably different compared with those reported as folk medicine (Yesilada and Sezik, 2003).

Although a number of attempts have been made to document the regional wealth of ethnobotanical knowledge in the Middle East, most were carried out using the traditional healers or materials sold in akhtars as a source of information (Azaizeh et al., 2003). As an exception, particularly in the past two decades, the ethnobotanical characteristics of Turkish folk medicine have been investigated and documented by several research groups in Turkey through scientific field surveys (Yesilada and Sezik, 2003). With regards to the general status of folk medicine in the middle and southern parts of the Middle-East, Yesilada (2005) and Saad et al. (2005) brought attention to the insufficient amount of scientific research for documents and evaluation of the folkloric information in their reports. Moreover, they also pointed out that, owing to various factors, such as over-harvesting of wild species, detrimental climatic and environmental changes, migration from urban to larger centres, and the modernisation of the society, there is rapid disappearance of this wealth of heritage and they urged scientists to document the real folklore information as soon as possible.

Apart from these factors, the central parts of the region have faced drastic changes in recent decades, e.g. wars, political and military events, and extensive immigrations, so the sociocultural mapping in the region has been affected severely. In Israel, Jewish immigrants from all over the world, as well as minorities, mainly Arabs in origin, have at least partially maintained their culture and tradition, including traditional medicine. Because of the mutual interactions between these diverse cultures, the present traditional knowledge of healing in Israel might possibly be a reflection of cross-cultural influences (Lev, 2006).

Azaizeh et al. (2003) pointed out the practitioners’ lack of knowledge of plant identification and of good treatments, which indicates that the material prescribed and practised by these practitioners might be false and might have unwanted toxic effects. However, peasants or nomadic people have acquired knowledge from their ancestors, and are more experienced in the application of herbal remedies, but make less use of written material; so documentation to preserve this folkloric herbal information is extremely important.

To demonstrate the regional richness of the traditional health heritage, some particular examples of the appraisal of Turkish traditional medicine are summarised below.

### Evaluation of the herbal remedies used in diabetes mellitus

Diabetes mellitus is of growing public concern worldwide because it causes severe complications, including blindness, and cardiac and kidney diseases. Owing to the requirement for lifelong, continuous medication, traditional remedies have found widespread application in combating complications of diabetes in particular, especially in rural areas or in the patients who do not have medical insurance to cover the high costs of conventional drugs. According to a rough estimate, over 1200 plant species have been recorded in use worldwide for their alleged hypoglycaemic activity (Marles and Farnsworth, 1995).

In a recent study, Otoom et al. (2006) reported the results of a cross-sectional study in the management of diabetes in Jordan. The study was conducted by interviewing 310 patients living in cities. It was found that 31% of those interviewed had used herbal products (96 patients) and the most commonly used herbs by patients in Jordan were listed. Furthermore, it was found that 47.9% used herbs on a daily basis, following advice from friends, and that 86.5% were satisfied with the results in diabetes control. Some of the crude herbal drugs cited were also included in the list of herbal materials sold by herb dealers (akhtars) in Turkey (Baser et al., 1986), even in other remote...
Islamic countries such as Morocco (Tahraoui et al., 2007). The hypoglycaemic activity of several of the herbs mentioned has some scientific basis (Mukherjee et al., 2006). An unusual amino acid, 4-hydroxyisoleucine, with significant antidiabetic and antidyshlipidaemic activities, was isolated from the seeds of fenugreek (Fowden et al., 1973; Narender et al., 2006). Broca et al. (2000) reported that the major isomer of this amino acid, that is 2S, 3R, 4S, induces insulin secretion through a direct effect on pancreatic beta cells in rats and humans. Recently, the soluble dietary fibre fraction of fenugreek has been reported for its hypoglycaemic, insulinaemic, hypolipidaemic and antiplatelet effects in a type II diabetes model (Hannan et al., 2003).

Thymoquinone was isolated as the active antidiabetic component of black cumin oil (El-Mahmoudy et al., 2005). The hyperglycaemic and hypoinsulinaemic responses to streptozotocin were significantly abrogated in rats co-treated with thymoquinone, and this abrogating effect has persisted for one month after stopping treatment. It was emphasised that the protective value of thymoquinone against the development of type I diabetes mellitus is achieved via nitric oxide inhibitory pathway.

The effect of stinging nettle, Urtica dioica on lowering blood glucose has been noted in old writings such as those of Avicenna. Bnouhamm et al. (2003) demonstrated that aqueous extract of the leaves had a significant antihyperglycaemic effect, which might be caused in part by the reduction of intestinal glucose absorption. Farzami et al. (2003) isolated an active fraction F1 from the aqueous extract with a significant effect on insulin secretion from the Langerhans islets. This extract was also shown to improve the blood lipid profile in rats fed with a high-fat diet, since significant decreases in total cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, low-density/high-density lipoprotein cholesterol ratio and plasma total apo B were observed. Although the active ingredients of U. dioica are still unknown, Kavalali et al. (2003) reported that the lectin fraction from Urtica pilulifera L., which acts through increasing the insulin secretion from the islets, is the active component in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats.

However, the active ingredients in the other remedies against diabetes listed above for Jordan have not been defined so far. Some examples of ethnopharmacological studies from Turkish traditional remedies, which have been used to alleviate diabetes symptoms, are given below.

**Gentiana olivieri** (Oliver’s gentian)

In east and south-east Anatolia, a macerate called afat, prepared from the flowering aerial parts of Gentiana olivieri Afan (Gentianaceae), is locally popular for lowering the blood glucose in type II diabetes, and dried herbs are sold in akhtar shops and bazaars (Baser et al., 1986). A scientific investigation was conducted on the material to evaluate this information (Sezik et al., 2005). Although tea prepared from the plant is used in folk medicine, the activity of the aqueous extract was not noteworthy, but the methanol extract showed potent hypoglycaemic activity in the oral glucose tolerance test. The methanol extract was then submitted to bioassay-guided fractionation procedures by using successive chromatographical techniques to give a C-glycosylflavone, isoorientin, as the active ingredient. The antidiabetic activity of the compound was potent, providing 77% inhibition in blood glucose concentration, when administered for 15 days to streptozotocin-diabetic rats at a dose of 15 mg/kg body weight. Isoorientin also showed potent anti-hypertriglyceridaemic (50% inhibition) and anti-hypercholesterolaemic (35% inhibition) activities. The authors suggested that the effect of isoorientin on type II diabetes might be due to its potent antioxidant activity, which was previously reported by Orhan et al. (2003). The presence of the chemically stable sugar moiety in the molecule may facilitate the transport and accumulation in beta cells of the Langerhans islets and restore the oxidative damage. As another possible mechanism, isoorientin may sensitize the insulin receptor to insulin or stimulate the stem cells of islets of Langerhans in the pancreas of streptozotocin-diabetic rats, so restoring plasma levels of insulin or it may result in the improvement of carbohydrate metabolic enzymes towards the re-establishment of normal blood glucose levels.

**Myrtus communis** (myrtle)

A tea prepared from Myrtus communis L. (Myrtaceae) leaves or the volatile oil, obtained from the leaves by steam distillation, is used to lower blood glucose level (Baytop, 1999). Elfellah et al.
1984) reported a potent hypoglycaemic activity for ethanol/water extract of the leaves in streptozotocin-inducted diabetic mice but this was inactive in normoglycaemic mice. Önal et al. (2005) reported that the aqueous extract of the leaves had $\alpha$-glucosidase inhibitory activity in vitro as potent as acarbose, a well-known $\alpha$-glucosidase inhibitory agent.

The hypoglycaemic activity of the volatile oil (myrtle oil) in normal and alloxan-diabetic rabbits was investigated by Sepici et al. (2004; 2007). Myrtle oil was inactive in normoglycaemic rabbits as expected, but a good hypoglycaemic activity was observed 4 h after the administration to diabetic animals in 50 mg/kg dose. A more pronounced effect was observed on subacute administration for a week. In addition to hypoglycaemic activity, myrtle oil also showed a mild hypotriglyceridemic activity, but did not affect serum insulin concentration in normal and alloxan diabetic rabbits. The authors claimed that the reduction in blood glucose level may be due to the reversible inhibition of $\alpha$-glycosidases present in the brush-border of the small intestinal mucosa, a higher rate of glycolysis as envisaged by the higher activity of glycokinese, as one of the key enzymes of glycolysis, and an enhanced rate of glycogenesis, as evidenced by the higher amount of liver glycogen present after myrtle oil administration.

**Evaluation of the anti-inflammatory and antinociceptive potential of Turkish medicinal plants**

Inflammatory conditions are the most common disorders frequently treated with traditional remedies. In particular rural people are exposed to several forms of inflammatory diseases during daily life: abscesses and inflammatory wounds, as well as rheumatic or back pain. Consequently, home-made remedies of either plant or animal origin are frequently employed to alleviate these symptoms. To emphasise the importance and effectiveness of the traditional remedies, several examples of ethnopharmacological studies are given below.

**Ecballium elaterium** (squirting cucumber)

*Ecballium elaterium* A. Rich., squirting cucumber (Cucurbitaceae), is a widespread plant particular to Eastern Mediterranean territories and a well-known remedy since the time of Hippocrates. The fruit juice, elaterium, was used as a powerful hydragogue cathartic agent as well as a diuretic in kidney inflammations. However, frequent uses or larger doses should be avoided since they lead to severe effects on the gastrointestinal system. Dioscorides described other applications for the powdered elaterium (precipitated part of the fruit juice) which, when mixed with milk and dropped into nostrils, ‘cleared away icterus’ and a ‘headache of long continuance’ (Guenther, 1934). In Middle-Eastern societies, including Turkey, the use against jaundice and liver cirrhosis has been widely practised since antiquity, through intranasal aspiration of the fruit juice, and a potent antihepatotoxic activity was reported due to its cucurbitacin B, a triterpenoid constituent (Agil et al., 1999). Pre- and post-treatment with elaterium (dried fruit juice) and cucurbitacin B reduced carbon tetrachloride-induced hepatotoxicity, as evidenced by the reduction in the abnormally increased alanine aminotransferase enzyme level.

Post-treatment administration of cucurbitacin B caused a significant reduction in the degree of steatosis observed in a control group of animals, which were treated only with carbon tetrachloride. It is concluded that elaterium and cucurbitacin B had preventive and curative effects against carbon tetrachloride-induced hepatotoxicity.

In Turkey, a similar application for the fresh fruit juice into nostrils has been suggested for the treatment of sinusitis, as a popular folk remedy throughout the Anatolian peninsula. This application of fruit juice is uncommon in any other country except Turkey and the east Aegean islands. However, the medical case described by Dioscorides as ‘headache of long continuance’ is known to be the main symptom of sinusitis. Since Dioscorides was born and lived in southern Anatolia (Anazarba), it has been speculated that this application has been practised for at least 2000 years in Anatolia.

Despite widespread application, this practice often causes life-threatening uvular oedema (Eray et al., 1999; Satar et al., 2001) because of the high cytotoxicity of cucurbitacins contained in the fruit juice. Raikhlin-Eisenkraft and Bentur (2000) described the symptoms of 13 patients who were exposed to the undiluted fruit juice: Within minutes of exposure,
the patients exhibited irritation of mucous membranes of various degrees of severity, manifested as oedema of pharynx, dyspnoea, drooling, dysphagia, vomiting, conjunctivitis, corneal oedema and erosion, depending on the route of the exposure. Recovery began within several to 24 hours after administration of oxygen, steroids, antihistamines and β-2-agonists.

To solve this problem, Sezik et al. (1984) carried out clinical studies on volunteers to determine a proper and non-toxic dose of the drug for the treatment of sinusitis, and through the application of properly diluted juice into voluntary patients, they observed a good recovery in 87% of the treated patients with acute maxillary sinusitis. To disclose its efficacy several successive studies have been carried out. The fruit juice showed a potent inhibitory activity against acetic acid-induced vascular permeability in mice and through bioassay-guided fractionation and isolation procedures, cucurbitacin B was isolated and defined as the main anti-inflammatory principle (Yesilada et al., 1988). The anti-inflammatory profile of the fruit juice and cucurbitacin B were further evaluated using several in-vivo models on bradykinin-, serotonin-, and carrageenin-induced hind-paw oedema models in mice (Yesilada et al., 1989). Results of the study suggested that some constituents other than cucurbitacin B could contribute to the anti-inflammatory activity of the fruit juice. However, the other cucurbitacins, i.e. E, I and D, were found to be completely inactive for anti-inflammatory activity (Yesilada et al., 1988). Further studies still need to be conducted on cucurbitacin B to evaluate its potential histopathological toxicity on nasal aspiration and effects on cytokine profile, to disclose efficiency in sinusitis treatment.

Cistus laurifolius (rockrose)

Rockrose, Cistus laurifolius L. (Cistaceae), is a widespread plant in Mediterranean countries and is used as a remedy for a great many ailments. An aqueous extract from the flowers of the plant is suggested to treat ulcers, while a warm decoction of the leaves is used as a bath to relieve rheumatic pain or wilted fresh leaves are applied on joints (Yesilada et al., 1995). To prove its efficiency in rheumatic disorders, methanolic and aqueous extracts and fractions obtained from the leaves were tested against interleukin (IL)-1α, IL-1β and tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α. Methanolic extract and lipophilic solvent fractions (i.e. hexane and chloroform) showed a significant inhibitory activity against IL-1α and 1β, but proved to be ineffective on TNF-α (Yesilada et al., 1997c). The aqueous extract of the plant was also found to possess significant in-vivo antinociceptive activity (Ark et al., 2004).

Sambucus nigra and S. ebulus (elderberry)

Flowers or aerial parts of Sambucus species (Caprifoliaceae) are used in traditional medicines for various ailments and act as diuretics, laxatives, diaphoretics and expectorants. In Turkey, there are two species: S. nigra and S. ebulus. Leaves of both species are known as karabekim or Black Physician by the inhabitants in some districts, referring to their diverse biological activities and the blackish appearance of stems during drying, caused by their rich coumarin content and black fruits. In particular, black fruits are used for the treatment of haemorrhoids, the leaves of both species against snake bite, or a bath prepared from the fresh herbs or leaves is used to palliate rheumatic and catarrhal symptoms (Sezik et al., 1991). It has also been reported that S. ebulus herb is used in the treatment of gastric ulcers (Sezik et al., 1992). A potent anti-inflammatory activity was determined against carrageenin-induced inflammations for the ethanolic extract of S. nigra leaves (Yesilada and Sezik, 1990). Methanol extract as well as chloroform and n-butanol fractions showed remarkable inhibitory activity on TNF-α, but remained ineffective on IL-1α and 1β (Yesilada and Sezik, 1990).

Anti-inflammatory activity of S. ebulus aerial parts was evaluated by Yesilada (1997a) by using in-vitro (phospholipase A2-inhibitory activity) and in-vivo test models (carrageenin- and serotonin-induced hindpaw oedema, adjuvant-induced arthritis). The methanol extract and its n-butanol fraction were found to possess significant anti-inflammatory activity. Through bioassay-guided fractionation and isolation procedures on butanol fraction, chlorogenic acid was isolated as the anti-inflammatory principle. However, this was not the sole active ingredient, since the chloroform and remaining aqueous fractions were also found to possess significant activity. It was noteworthy that methanol extract and butanol fraction showed remarkable activity in the
carrageenin-induced paw oedema model when applied topically, which supported the traditional application mode: a poultice prepared from the leaves is applied externally to the affected joint. The methanol extract showed a more pronounced inhibitory activity than aqueous extract against IL-1α and 1β. This extract was further fractionated through successive solvent extractions. The hexane fraction and, to a lesser degree, the chloroform fraction showed inhibitory effects on IL-1α, 1β and TNF-α (Yesilada et al., 1997c). These data also supported the folkloric application that non-polar ingredient(s) might be active. However, in a recent study, Ebrahimzadeh et al. (2006) reported that the hexane extract from the leaves did not show any anti-inflammatory activity against the carrageenin-induced oedema model. This is probably due to the inconvenience of the carrageenin model in revealing the activity. In a previous study, the hexane fraction was also found ineffective against paw oedema models (Yesilada, 1997a). In Iran, rhizomes of the plant have also been used for similar purposes and Ahmadiani et al. (1998) evaluated possible analgesic and anti-inflammatory effects of S. ebulus rhizome on chronic (formalin test) and acute (tail flick) pain models in rats. Accordingly, a significant analgesic activity was reported for methanol extract at 100 and 200 mg/kg intraperitoneal doses, which act through a central mechanism.

Daphne oleoides

In Turkish folk medicine, Daphne oleoides Schreber ssp. oleoides (Thymelaeaceae) leaves are used externally in rheumatism and oedema, and abdominal pain, while the roots have uses against high fever in malaria. Roots of the plant were shown to possess potent inhibitory activity on macrophage-derived cytokines, IL-1α and TNF-α biosynthesis (Yesilada et al., 1997c). In particular, the methanol extract and its hexane and chloroform fractions were very active on these cytokines. This result is in good agreement with the recommended folkloric utilisation route of the material. The poultice obtained by boiling the whole plant is applied to the body, while the patient also takes a bath using the warm aqueous extract for the treatment of rheumatism. Since lipophilic compounds could pass the skin barrier easily, such an application seems reasonable. In a subsequent study, through activity-guided isolation procedures and chemical isolation techniques, 17 compounds were isolated and their structures were elucidated (Yesilada et al., 2001): diterpenoids-genkwadaphnin and 1,2-dehydrodaphnetoxin and a coumarin derivative, daphnetin showed potent inhibitory activity and were found to be the main active ingredients. Other compounds present were shown to possess moderate inhibitory activity and may have a contributory role in the effect of the remedy.

Veronica anagallis-aquatica (water speedwell)

The high humidity and low temperatures in winter in northwest Anatolia in Turkey are associated with a high incidence of rheumatic disorders, and herbal remedies are frequently used to alleviate such symptoms. Veronica anagallis-aquatica L. (Scrophulariaceae) is one of these remedies; aerial parts are boiled in milk and the poultice thus obtained is applied to the abdomen for abdominal pain or its warm decoction (without removing the boiled herbs) is used as a bath remedy to alleviate rheumatic pain (Fujita et al., 1995). To evaluate this information, antinociceptive and anti-inflammatory activities of the aerial parts were studied using p-benzoquinone-induced writhing reflexes and carrageenin-induced paw oedema tests, respectively. Through bioassay-guided fractionation and isolation procedures, iridoid glucosides were isolated as the active antinociceptive and anti-inflammatory principles, which supported the folkloric utilisation (Küpeli et al., 2005). The activity of these molecules was found to be independent of their hydroxyl substitution in benzyl group, but dose-dependent. These compounds were also found to be safe and did not induce any apparent toxicity or gastric damage.

Nerium oleander (oleander)

Despite the widespread distribution of oleander, Nerium oleander L., (Apocynaceae) in the Mediterranean region, it has seldom been reported as a folk remedy because of its poisonous constituents. During our expeditions in northwest Anatolia, a local woman described how fresh oleander flowers are put in alcohol in the summer and kept as a homemade remedy to alleviate the severe pain and paralysis that intermittently occurred in her legs. We did not rate this application at first, but while referring
to the database of Turkish folk medicine (TUHIB), we found a similar use described by another informer in Antalya (South Anatolia), in which flowers kept for 40 days in olive oil are applied to joints to treat rheumatic pain (Yesilada, 2002). Moreover, leaves or flowers are used to stop pain or eczema, and the sap obtained from fresh leaves for abscess or rheumatism was also recorded. To evaluate this information, both aqueous and ethanol extracts of oleander leaves were tested and both were shown to possess significant antinociceptive activity against \( p \)-benzoquinone-induced writhings, that of the ethanol extract being more pronounced (Erdemoglu et al., 2003). However, both extracts of leaves were shown to induce gastric ulcerogenicity in mice and they were ineffective against carrageenin-induced paw oedema. Nonetheless, either fresh or dried flowers of oleander exhibited a potent antinociceptive activity and the activity of ethanol extract was more remarkable even than that of aspirin, the reference drug, without inducing any visual gastric toxicity. The ethanol extracts of fresh or dried flowers also showed a potent anti-inflammatory activity, but the aqueous extract was found to be ineffective. Experimental results have clearly confirmed that liposoluble fractions of flowers, similar to ethanol or olive oil extracts used in folk medicine, possess remarkable antinociceptive and anti-inflammatory activities (Erdemoglu et al., 2003).

**Berberis crataegina** (barberry)

In Urgut bazaar (Uzbekistan), on a herb dealer’s counter, we found some small, packed, black, tough material that was recommended for lumbago. This was the concentrated aqueous root extract of zirk (*Berberis asiatica*). Various *Berberis* species (*Berberidaceae*) have been used for the treatment of various inflammatory diseases in Eastern traditional medicines (from the Middle East to central Asia). In Azerbaijan, *Berberis vulgaris* L. barks are used for fever and rheumatism (Damirov et al., 1988), whereas in Uzbekistan, *B. oblonga* roots find uses for low back pain (Sezik et al., 2005) and in Pakistan, *B. lycium* Royle is used to treat rheumatism and muscular pain (Ikram et al., 1966). However, the active constituents have not been defined thus far.

To evaluate this information, a study was conducted on the roots of *B. crataegina*, a common plant in Anatolia. Extracts and fractions from the roots were shown to possess a potent inhibitory effect against carrageenin- and serotonin-induced hind-paw oedema, acetic-acid-induced increased vascular permeability, castor-oil-induced diarrhoea and Freund’s complete adjuvant (FCA)-induced arthritis models (Yesilada and Küpeli, 2002). Through bioassay-guided fractionation procedures berberine was isolated as the main active ingredient. This compound also showed antinociceptive activity, which was assessed by the inhibitory activity on acetic-acid-induced writhing reflexes and antipyretic activity on FCA-induced increased fever. In a follow-up study, anti-inflammatory, antinociceptive and antipyretic effects of six isoquinoline alkaloids, namely berberine, berbamine, palmatine, oxyacanthine, magnoflorine and columbamine were compared (Küpeli et al., 2002). All alkaloids inhibited inflammation in varying degrees, and berberine, berbamine and palmatine were shown to possess significant and dose-dependent inhibitory activity against serotonin-induced hind-paw oedema on oral and topical applications and acetic-acid-induced increase in vascular permeability on oral administration. Moreover, these three alkaloids were also shown to possess dose-dependent antinociceptive and antipyretic activity. However, all alkaloids induced gastric lesions in varying degrees.

**Studies on the gastro-protective and antiulcer activity of Turkish folk remedies**

Field expeditions in Turkey have revealed that a high number of plant remedies have been used as folk remedies against gastrointestinal complaints, i.e. gastric pain, abdominal pain, indigestion, haemorrhoids, constipation, diarrhoea, etc. Among these, we interpreted the complaints of ‘gastric pain’ as a possible sign of peptic ulcer in contemporary pathological terms, and so have studied extracts of some of these plants for the assessment of antiulcer activity using several in-vivo models.

Experimental material was selected according to the results of preliminary bioassay tests (Yesilada et
al., 1993; Gürbüz et al., 2002; 2003; 2005). Those possessing significant antiulcer activity have been processed further for the evaluation of the activity.

**Cistus laurifolius** (rockrose)

Flowers and flower buds of *Cistus laurifolius* L. (Cistaceae) are used in the treatment of peptic ulcers in South Anatolia (Honda et al., 1996). Interestingly, the same use for this plant was also described in *Materia Medica* by Dioscorides (Guenther, 1934). Dioscorides (AD 20–79) was born and lived in Anazarba, a town near Adana province, indicating that this application had been practised for at least 2000 years in the same region.

The suggested application was as follows: the aqueous extract, prepared by boiling, is kept in a cool place (nowadays preferably in a refrigerator). The patient drinks this remedy whenever she or he feels thirsty, without limitation, instead of water. In a preliminary testing against water immersion and restraint-induced stress ulcer model in rats, the methanolic extract showed toxicity because of the extraction of resinous constituents. Although the inner surface of the mucous membrane of the stomach was free from ulcers, there were some haemorrhagic lesions on the outer muscular layer (Yesilada et al., 1993). These animals also suffered from severe diarrhoea. In a lower dosage, however, the methanol extract was found to be totally ineffective. On the other hand, the aqueous extract showed a potent and dose-dependent antiulcer activity. At a high dose (1020 mg/kg) 100% inhibition was observed in ulcer score, while activity decreased to 65% at a half-dose (520 mg/kg). These results strongly supported the traditional means of application.

In a follow-up study, the aqueous extract was further fractionated through solvent extraction with *n*-butanol (saturated with water) and water. The latter was also precipitated with ethanol to give H2O-precipitate and a H2O-upper layer. The H2O-precipitate fraction showed a potent antiulcer activity against water immersion and restraint-induced stress ulcer model in rats (98.6% inhibition at 183 mg/kg dose), while the other two fractions were found to be toxic in equal dose levels. In a half-dose administration, however, fractions were not toxic but the activity was poor (Yesilada et al., 1997b). The active fraction also showed similar activity on subcutaneous administration revealing that the activity was not due to any local effect, i.e. by protection of gastric mucosa from the irritating factors, etc.

To evaluate the activity profile of the H2O-precipitate, a wide range of in-vivo experimental models have been tested. Models and inhibitory percentages were found as follows: pyloric ligation-induced ulcerogenesis (94.6%), indometacin-induced ulcerogenesis (84.6%), cysteamine-induced duodenal lesions (82.8%) and ethanol-induced ulcerogenesis (59.1%). Test material was found ineffective against serotonin-induced ulcerogenesis. In-vivo results were also confirmed by histopathological examination. As for biochemical parameters no effect on gastric secretion volume was observed but there was a significant change in the gastric acidity.

Results have clearly supported the traditional means of preparation of the remedy and its application. The polysaccharide fraction and probably the major constituents present showed its activity partially through modulating the gastric prostaglandin level and neutralising the gastric acid.

**Spartium junceum** (Spanish broom)

Interesting information also recorded in southern Anatolia was that an infusion of flowers of Spanish broom, *Spartium junceum* L. (Fabaceae), is used for the treatment of gastric ulcers (Yesilada et al., 1993). Since the plant is known to contain cytisine-type alkaloids, which are reportedly toxic at a higher dose (Baytop, 1999), we considered that this might be a false interpretation. However, a preliminary testing of methanol and aqueous extracts showed remarkable and dose-dependent inhibitory rates against water immersion and restraint-induced stress ulcer models (Yesilada et al., 1993).

To evaluate the antiulcerogenic activity, flowers were first extracted with methanol and then the plant residue was re-extracted with water (E-H2O). The methanol extract was further submitted to successive solvent extractions to obtain hexane, ethylacetate and remaining H2O fractions. Hexane and ethylacetate fractions possessed weak activity, while the remaining H2O fraction was found to be toxic to rats, all experimental animals had died within 15 min after administration. E-H2O extract exerted very high inhibitory activity (100%) on stress-ulcer. This
later extract was subjected to further processing through Amberlite ion-exchange and then Sephadex LH-20 column chromatography to yield an active fraction (Yesilada et al., 2000a).

This active fraction showed remarkable activity against stress-induced (94.6%), ethanol-induced (100%) and pyloric ligation-induced (83.9%) ulcers. Also the gastric juice volume, gastric pH, gastric acidity and peptic activity were inhibited significantly. This active fraction yielded a new triterpene saponin, named spartitrioside, showing 98.3% inhibition against the stress ulcer model (Yesilada and Takaishi, 1999).

Recently the role of active oxygen species in the pathogenesis of various gastric mucosal injuries activity has been widely discussed. Some antioxidants were reported to show an in-vivo protective effect against acute mucosal injuries induced by active oxygen species. To evaluate the role of antioxidant principles on the antiulcerogenic activity of Spartium junceum flowers, free-radical scavenging activity was studied. Through activity-guided fractionation and isolation procedures, several flavonoid glycosides with antioxidant activity were isolated (Yesilada et al., 2000b). This study also revealed that flavonoid components in the extract may make a contribution to the antiulcerogenic activity of the flowers because of their potent antioxidant activity.

**Centaurea solstitialis ssp. solstitialis**

(yellow starthistle)

In Turkey, fresh spiny flowers of *Centaurea solstitialis* L. spp. solstitialis (CSS) (Asteraceae) are recommended by the local people to be swallowed while soft, after rolling up into pills in the hand, for the treatment of peptic ulcers as a folk remedy (Yesilada et al., 1995). A potent antiulcerogenic activity of the aqueous and methanolic extracts from spiny flowers was found against a water immersion and immobilisation-induced stress ulcer model in rats (Yesilada et al., 1993). The chloroform fraction of the methanol extract from the aerial parts of CSS was also shown to possess potent inhibitory activity against *Helicobacter pylori* (Yesilada et al., 1999). The ethanolic (80%) extract from flowering herb was subjected to successive fractionation procedures. Among the successive solvent extractions with organic solvents, the chloroform extract showed the highest inhibition (99.5%) against ethanol-induced ulcerogenesis (Yesilada et al., 2004). Two sesquiterpene lactones were found as active components but other solvent extracts and fractions were also found to possess antiulcerogenic activity, so more work needs to be done in this context.

**Momordica charantia**

(*bitter melon*)

*Momordica charantia* L. (Cucurbitaceae) fruits are purported to possess a wide range of biological activities, in particular detailed investigations have been carried out on antidiabetic activities and the fruits have been proven to possess remarkable hypoglycaemic properties, both in vivo and in clinical studies (Dans et al., 2007). Although the plant is not native to Turkey, the fruits are frequently used in folk medicine in the western parts of Anatolia. However, most of the medicinal features of the fruits known worldwide are not recognised in the Turkish folk medicine. The matured fruits are used externally for the rapid healing of wounds and internally for the treatment of peptic ulcers (Baytop, 1999). Whole matured fruits are sliced and put inside a jar of virgin olive oil or almond oil and left in sunshine until the seeds melted after about 2 or 3 weeks, when they are homogenised by pressing with a spoon. The ointment is kept at home to use when necessary for the rapid healing of wounds, abscesses and eczematous skin by applying twice a day, externally, or administered orally on an empty stomach every morning before breakfast against peptic ulcers. Because of its popularity, the plant is cultivated in the fields in the Marmara region.

However, in a previous study, the antiulcerogenic activity of the oily extract of the fruit, as well as solvent extracts with hexane, chloroform, ethanol and water, were found to be ineffective against immobilisation plus cold-induced stress and indometacin-induced ulcer models in rats (Yildirim, 1994). The author suggested that the healing effect of the fruit might be due to its oily vehicle or even to a placebo effect.

Considering the possibility that the model employed by these researchers may not be the correct activity assessment of the material, we carried out further experiments using another experimental model based on cytoprotective activity, i.e. the ethanol-induced ulcerogenesis model, in rats (Gürbüz
The olive oil extract of fruits showed a dose-dependent and significant antiulcerogenic activity. The dried fruits were also found to be remarkably active when mixed with filtered honey; 100% inhibition was observed compared with honey as vehicle control. In both experiments the vehicles themselves, i.e. olive oil and honey, also exhibited some inhibitory activity against this model of ulcer, 58.1% and 94.3%, respectively, when compared with ulcer index obtained through the administration of 0.5% carboxymethyl cellulose suspension.

A high concentration of carotenoids was detected in the active ethanol extract of *M. charantia* fruits. Carotenoids are known to possess potent antioxidant activity and have been reported to prevent the gastric mucosa from the development of injury induced by various noxious agents (Kiraly et al., 1992). For the evaluation of the role of antioxidant components, the active ethanol extract was also tested in the diethylthiocarbamate-induced (DDC) ulcerogenesis model, and found to give 78.4% inhibition of gastric lesions. On the other hand, the activities of active ethanol extract and olive oil extract were tested in a more severe gastric ulcer model, hydrochloric acid plus ethanol-induced ulcerogenesis in indomethacin-pretreated rats. The olive oil extract was ineffective against this model but the ethanol extract showed 45.8% inhibition. Moreover, chloroform fraction of the fruits showed some inhibitory activity against standard and clinical strains of *Helicobacter pylori* (Yesilada et al., 1999b).

**Hypericum perforatum (St John’s wort)**

St John’s wort, *Hypericum perforatum* L. (Guttiferae), has recently gained much attention because of its proven effects in psychiatric problems, particularly as an antidepressant. Oily preparations of the material are also claimed to be effective internally in dyspeptic complaints, and externally for the treatment and post-therapy of acute and contused injuries, myalgia and first-degree burns (Blumenthal, 1998). In the akhtar shops in Turkey, the plant is recommended as an antidepressant, against bed-wetting in children and as a treatment for diarrhoea (Baser et al., 1986). However, in Turkish folk medicine, people use the plant for a different purpose: the oily extract or tea prepared from these species are popularly used for the treatment of gastric ailments, i.e. internally for peptic ulcers and externally for wound healing (Yesilada et al., 1993).

To evaluate this information, the antiulcerogenic effect of the ethanol extract from the flowering herbs of *H. perforatum* was studied and a dose-dependent and significant (82.8–97.8% inhibition) activity was observed against ethanol-induced ulcerogenesis in rats (Yesilada and Gürbüz, 1998). The extract was then fractionated by successive solvent extractions and ether fraction showed the highest inhibitory rate (86% inhibition), but more polar fractions were also found to possess some activity (between 49 and 71% inhibition), suggesting that different components of the plant may have a role in the antiulcerogenic activity. Moreover, chloroform and butanol fractions showed a considerable anti-*Helicobacter* activity.

**Antihepatotoxic activity of Turkish folk remedies**

The liver is the vital organ in the body for the metabolic, secretory and excretory functions. Because of the negative effects of chemotherapeutics, pesticides or environmental toxins, etc. on its functioning, supportive therapies are frequently required. Although conventional medicine does not provide many remedies against liver disorders, folk remedies have long been used for such purposes. Since lay people generally could not distinguish and define an activity related to this organ, a wide variety of parameters should be evaluated for the selection of such remedies, i.e. folk remedies used to treat anaemia, liver insufficiency, allergies and as a blood-purifier or panacea.

To select remedies with a hepatoprotective effect, a preliminary screening study was carried out on seven plant materials selected using the above criteria (Aktay et al., 2000). Four out of seven were found to possess remarkable antihepatotoxic activity against carbon tetrachloride-induced hepatotoxicity, which was also confirmed by histopathological examination. Activity was assessed by monitoring the changes in plasma and hepatic tissue malondialdehyde (evidence of lipid peroxidation) as well as plasma enzyme levels; alanine transferase (ALT) and aspartate transferase (AST). Among these plants, the ethanol extract from the flowering herbs of *Gentiana olivieri*
Griseb. (Gentianaceae) and Fumaria vailantii Lois. (Fumariaceae) were found to possess pronounced activity.

*Gentiana olivieri* extract was then submitted to bioassay-guided fractionation procedures using the above-mentioned methods for antihapatotoxic activity assessment (Orhan et al., 2003). A C-glycosylflavone, isoorientin, was isolated as an active component of the plant. This compound significantly reduced the hepatotoxicity induced by carbon tetrachloride in rats on subacute administration for 5 days. Isoorientin showed 75.0% and 80.8% inhibition, respectively, on increased plasma ALT and AST levels, and significantly reduced the tissue glutathione level after hepatotoxin challenge.

**Conclusions**

A list of natural remedies found in the akhtar shops (herbalists) in Turkey was reported by Baser et al. (1986). In addition, detailed field surveys were conducted on Turkish folk medicine for compilation of plant remedies used by rural people in villages or towns, either by our research team or by several other researchers, and the results have been published in international or national journals (Yesilada and Sezik, 2003). If the lists of remedies are compared, striking discrepancies can be distinguished between the uses suggested by herbalists and those in folk medicines (Table 3.1). (The sample plants are selected from those examined in this chapter.) Therefore, in our published studies on Turkish ethnobotany, the knowledge obtained from herbalists or traditional healers and those from rural people has always been treated separately.

Lists of plant- and animal-originated or inorganic drugs in the shops of herbalists in some Middle Eastern countries, i.e. Syria and Yemen (Honda et al., 1990), Iran and Egypt (Ahmed et al., 1979) and Jordan (Lev and Amar, 2002), have been published by several authors. Furthermore, there are several studies reporting the results of interviews with traditional healers (Ali-Shtayeh et al., 2000). However, there seems to be a great deficiency in the documentation of herbal folklore from rural inhabitants. Therefore, it is important to conduct field studies in nomadic or rural societies, to document this knowledge before it vanishes because of the pressures of modernisation.

Plants offer a wide range of active constituents for exploring new leading drug molecules. Traditional medicines, either supplied from traditional healers, herbalists or rural people, are accepted as the most reliable and logical route to realise this goal. The Middle East, as the origin of the oldest civilisations in history, as well as in cultural diversity, has harboured a vast heritage of traditional remedies. Documentation and, in particular, appraisal of this knowledge through advanced ethnopharmacological

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plant name</th>
<th>Use in akhtars</th>
<th>Use in Turkish folk medicine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cistus sp.</td>
<td>Headache or earache</td>
<td>To treat peptic ulcer or against rheumatic pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spartium junceum</td>
<td>To pass kidney stones</td>
<td>Gastric pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centaurea sp.</td>
<td>Bloating</td>
<td>Against fever, headache, peptic ulcer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berberis sp.</td>
<td>Liver and gall disorders</td>
<td>Rheumatic pain, low-back pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerium oleander</td>
<td>Pain</td>
<td>Paralysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daphne sp.</td>
<td>Not found</td>
<td>Rheumatism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veronica sp.</td>
<td>Not found</td>
<td>Rheumatism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypericum sp.</td>
<td>Depressions, diarrhoea</td>
<td>Peptic ulcer, wound healing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sambucus nigra</td>
<td>Rheumatism</td>
<td>Rheumatism, haemorrhoids, gastric pain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
surveys may lead to the discovery of new drug candidates to improve the quality of human life as well as effective armaments to combat diseases.

References


Introduction

Chinese materia medica is an important part of Chinese traditional and herbal medicine and Chinese civilisation. The first book on Chinese materia medica, *Herbal Classics of the Divine Plowman* (*Shen-nong Bencao Jing*), known as ‘the canon of materia medica’ was composed in the second century BC under the pseudonym of Shennong, ‘the Holy Farmer’. China remains one of the leading nations in the use of medicinal plants and recently developments have occurred so that medicinal plants still play an outstanding role in official health services in China. More than five thousand species have been identified as medicinal plants in China and the last edition of the Chinese pharmacopoeia (PRC Pharmacopoeia Committee, 2005) recorded more than 1146 Chinese drugs originating from medicinal plants, although it should be noted that the division between foods and medicine is less than in many other cultures (Liu and Xiao, 1992; Liu et al., 2000).

The discovery of drugs is accredited to the emperor Shennong, who tried hundreds of herbs and tested seventy poisons in a day. The first book on Chinese materia medica, believed to have been written about 2000 years ago, is named *Shennong Bencao Jing* (*Shennong Herbs*). It represents a systematic account of all knowledge related to the application of drugs in that period in Chinese history. Unfortunately, the original text was lost long ago and what is available today is a script re-edited during the Ming and Qing dynasties from quotations contained in many other classics.


Commonly used Chinese materia medica comprise about 500 species (Liu and Xiao, 1986, 1992, 2000). The plants’ phyla contain over 11,000 medicinal plant species (Table 4.1).

The 2000 edition of the PRC’s pharmacopoeia listed 531 kinds of drugs from a variety of plant families. Those containing over 100 medicinal plant species are listed in Table 4.2; genera with over 15 medicinal plant species, and so a higher proportion of therapeutic members, are listed in Table 4.3.

The large numbers of species mentioned is due to the wide range of habitats in China and the fact that China has a long history in the effective use of traditional Chinese medicine. The Chinese government has emphasised the systematisation of traditional Chinese medicines (TCM) and raising it to higher levels, so TCMs and their preparations are now widely accepted throughout the PRC.

### Table 4.1 An overview of Chinese medicinal plants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Number of medicinal plant species</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thallophytes</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bryophytes</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pteridophytes</td>
<td>455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gymnosperms</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angiosperms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dicotyledons</td>
<td>8598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monocotyledons</td>
<td>1429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>11 118</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 4.2 Families containing over 100 medicinal plant species mentioned in the Chinese pharmacopoeia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Medicinal species/genera</th>
<th>Example of important medicinally used genera</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compositae</td>
<td>778/155</td>
<td>Artemisia, Senecio, Aster, Saussurea, Atractylodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>160/39</td>
<td>Euphorbia, Glochidion, Croton, Mallotus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>436/75</td>
<td>Fritillaria, Polygonatum, Smilax, Ophiopogon, Veratrum, Allium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leguminosae</td>
<td>490/107</td>
<td>Cassia, Sophora, Crotalaria, Glycyrrhiza, Indigofera, Astrapogon, Aconitum, Delphinium, Thalictrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>358/46</td>
<td>Crataegus, Prunus, Rosa, Chuenomeles, Rubus, Potentilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papaveraceae</td>
<td>287/76</td>
<td>Dendrobium, Gastrodia, Habenaria, Liparis, Bletilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>123/8</td>
<td>Rheum, Polygonum, Fagopyrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranunculaceae</td>
<td>420/34</td>
<td>Clematis, Anemone, Captis, Salvia, Rabdosia, Nepeta, Clinopodium, Scutellaria, Thymus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>360/39</td>
<td>Dendrobium, Gastrodia, Habenaria, Liparis, Bletilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>219/59</td>
<td>Uncaria, Hedyotis (Oldenlandia), Morinda, Rubia, Gardenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saxifragaceae</td>
<td>155/24</td>
<td>Astilbe, Bergenia, Hydrangea, Saxifrage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umbelliferae</td>
<td>234/55</td>
<td>Angelica, Heracleum, Bupleurum, Ferul, Ligamicum, Peucedanum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sustainability of resources of medicinal materials

The pathways of development of resources

Medicinal resources are the basis of development and application of TCM. The resources included in Chinese crude drugs are geo-authentic (Di Dao) crude drugs; conservation and implementation; introduction; acclimatisation and cultivation; and good agricultural practice (GAP). Geo-authentic crude drugs comprise part of Chinese crude drugs, but should be differentiated from ‘ordinary’ Chinese crude drugs in that they have specific germ plasma, production sites, and/or specific production techniques and processing methods.

Owing to the destruction of forests, overgrazing of meadows, expansion of industry and urbanisation, as well as excessive collection in the wild of rare and endangered plants or animals, the natural resources of medicinal plants or animals are being reduced day by day. There has therefore been an urgent need to draw up necessary plans for medicinal resource utilisation and conservation.

Conservation and implementation

Although abundant and rich, resources of medicinal plants are not unlimited and must be protected by law as well as by people. Collection of any medicinal plant should be guided by precise knowledge of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genus</th>
<th>Species/total species</th>
<th>Main ethnopharmacological data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aconitum</td>
<td>46/167</td>
<td>Anodyne; antirheumatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aralia</td>
<td>19/30</td>
<td>Dispelling; internal cold; arrow poison; asthmolytic; cardiotonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aristolochia</td>
<td>31/39</td>
<td>General tonic; antirheumatic; promote circulation for various infections; snakebite; abdominal treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berberis</td>
<td>67/200</td>
<td>Antidysentery; various infections; antipyretic; antidote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codonopsis</td>
<td>26/50</td>
<td>Tonic; invigorates the functions of the digestive system; for weakness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corydalis</td>
<td>73/150</td>
<td>Anodyne; treatment of coronary heart diseases; febrile and detoxicant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delphinium</td>
<td>35/113</td>
<td>Anodyne; antirheumatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dendrobium</td>
<td>35/60</td>
<td>Tonic; for febrile diseases with thirst and dry mouth; dry cough and chronic tidal fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypericum</td>
<td>16/50</td>
<td>Antimicrobial; emenogogue; treatment of hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysimachia</td>
<td>28/50</td>
<td>Invigorating blood circulation and eliminating blood stasis; asthmolytic; for menstrual disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabdosia</td>
<td>30/90</td>
<td>Antimicrobial; anticancer; febrifugal; detoxicant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvia</td>
<td>41/78</td>
<td>Antimicrobial; treatment of coronary heart disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swertia</td>
<td>22/70</td>
<td>Treatment of hepatitis; bitter-ionic; febrifugal and detoxicant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thalictrum</td>
<td>39/67</td>
<td>Antipyretic; antimicrobial; for various infections; anticancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentiana</td>
<td>53/247</td>
<td>Antipyretic; antidote; stomachic; anti-inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scutellaria</td>
<td>33/102</td>
<td>Antipyretic; antidote; promote circulation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the species, including its locality, time of matura-
tion, the parts to be collected, and its conservation
needs. Steps should be taken to avoid over-
exploitation and excessive collection. The gathering
of rare and endangered species, such as *Panax
ginseng* C.A. Mey., *Coptis chinensis* Franch.,
*Gastrodia elata* Bl. and *Paris polyphylla* Sm., should
be prohibited and gene banks of medicinal plants
have already been set up in some instances to
preserve the gene pool.

**Introduction and acclimatisation**

Several plants listed in the ancient Chinese materia
medica were actually of foreign origin and even
today are imported to some extent, e.g. American
ginseng from North America. To meet the market
demand, several botanical gardens in China have
introduced these plants for acclimatisation, aimed at
eventual plantations, e.g. *Panax quinquefolium* L.,
*Amomum kravanh* L. and *Strychnos nux-vomica* L.
This policy also includes non-official crude drugs of
wild origin, which have been used by people for
practical medication, e.g. *Schisandra chinensis*
Baill., *Gentiana scabra* L., *Cistanche desreticola*
Murr., *Asarum sieboldii* Miq., *Scutellaria baicalensis*
Georgi.

**Cultivation**

The increasing use of medicinal plants in China
necessitates cultivation of the most commonly used
ones to guarantee supplies. About 100 species of
medicinal plants are under cultivation, covering some
460 000 hectares (Liu and Xiao, 1995). The most
important cultivated medicinal plants are *Panax
ginseng* C.A. Mey., *Panax notoginseng* (Burt.) F.H.
Chen, *Astragalus mongbolicus* Koidz., *Angelica
sinensis* (Oliv.) Diels, *Coptis chinensis* Franch.,
*Codonopsis pilosula* (Franch.) Nannf., *Rehmannia
glutinosa* Libosch. f. hueichingensis (Chao et Schih)
Hsiao, *Paeonia suffruticosa* Andr., *Cinnamomum
cassia* Bl., *Amomum villosum* Lour. and *Atractylodes
macrocephala* Koidz.

Several wild-growing medicinal plants, which are
needed in vast quantities, are not cultivated, e.g.
*Glycyrrhiza uralensis* Fisch., *Rheum palmatum* L.,
*Poria cocos* (Schw.) Wolf, *Dioscorea nipponica*
Makino. As an approach to GAP, modern biological
technology has been used for tissue culture in propa-
gating *Lithospermum erythrorhizon* Sieb. et Zucc.,
*Panax quinquefolium* L., *Corydalis yanhusuo* and
*Scopolia tangutica* Maxim.

**Sustainability for resources**

Sustainability of medicinal plant materials will
become an important future criterion for success in
the application of TCMs as a major marketed entity,
since taking a plant from only wild sources, such as
the forests or the meadows, can almost eliminate that
plant, if cultural techniques for crop development are
not introduced.

In the nationwide general investigation for medi-
cinal plant materials in 1983, 12 809 kinds of plant
resources in China were counted. However, the
number decreased by half in less than 20 years so
that, in an investigation done in 2001, there only
remained about 6000 kinds of medicinal plant
materials according to ingredients for prescription.
Since medicinal plant materials are basic items in
the modernisation of TCM, it is necessary to achieve
the continuous use of the resources. To ensure the
quality and quantity of TCMs, the need for stan-
dardised culturing of medicinal plants has emerged.
In 2002, the Chinese State Food and Drug
Administration (SFDA), formulated a guideline for
good agricultural practice for Chinese crude drugs
(SFDA, 2002). In 2004 the World Health
Organization (WHO) issued a set of guidelines for
good agricultural and collection practices for medi-
cinal plants (GACP) (World Health Organization,
2004). These guidelines are specially aimed at the
protection of medicinal plants or animals and the
promotion of their cultivation, collection, and use in
a sustainable manner which conserves the medicinal
resource and the environment. There now are 448
bases for growing medicinal plants under GAP
distributed in the 24 provinces. In 18 selected
provinces, the area under fully controlled cultivation
reaches nearly a million square kilometres.

The GAP policy was passed by the SFDA in 2002
and is designed to regulate the production of Chinese
crude drugs, ensure their quality and facilitate the
standardisation and modernisation of TCMs. GAP is applicable to producers of Chinese crude drugs for the entire production process of Chinese crude drugs.

Producers should adopt standardised management and quality control measures to ensure continuing resources of natural crude drugs and protect the ecological environment, as well as to achieve sustainable utilisation based on the principle of ‘maximum sustainable yield’.

The environmental conditions of production sites for Chinese crude drugs should meet the requirements of the related national standards for atmospheric conditions, air quality, soil quality and irrigation. According to the growing needs for medicinal plants, appropriate areas for cultivation should be determined and standard operating procedures for cultivation should be formulated. Types, period and amount of fertilisation should be determined subject to the nutritional requirements of medicinal plants and soil fertility. Organic manure should be the main fertilising agent, and fertilisers should be applied sparingly in accordance with the growing needs of plants. Field management should be strengthened in accordance with the characteristic changing of medicinal plants and their parts for use, furthermore topping, deflowering, pruning, shading and other measures should be carried out appropriately to adjust the growth of plants, so as to increase the yield of the crude drugs and maintain the consistency of quality.

Integrated pest management should be adopted for the control of diseases and pests. If necessary, minimum effective input of certain high-efficacy, hypotoxic and low-residue pesticides can be used according to the Regulations for Pesticides Management of the PRC, so as to reduce residues of pesticides, avoid heavy metal contamination and protect the ecological environment.

Collection of wild and semi-wild medicinal plants or animals should conform to the principle of ‘maximum sustainable yield’. Fostering, rotation and conservation should be planned and carried out to benefit propagation and renewal of resources. Appropriate collection periods (season and years) and methods should be determined in accordance with the quality and yield of the plants with reference to traditional experience, etc. After being collected, the medicinal parts should be selected, washed, cut or trimmed. Those that need drying should use appropriate methods and techniques, with controlled temperature and humidity. Contamination should be prevented and degradation of active constituents should be avoided.

Producers should establish a quality management department that is responsible for supervision and quality control for the entire production process, and should have adequate staff, premises, instruments and equipment to meet the requirements of the scale of production and species identification. This department is responsible for monitoring the environment, hygiene, testing production and packaging materials, as well as the crude drugs. All of these must be adequately documented.

**Traditional processing of Chinese crude drugs and pharmacological effects**

The processing of Chinese crude drugs means preparing Chinese materia medica with techniques according to the theories of traditional Chinese medicine, to meet clinical requirements of dispensing prescriptions and making ready-made medicines.

The processing of Chinese crude drugs is a complicated job, which may consist of cleansing, cutting into smaller pieces with a guillotine, reducing toxicity, changing their property, enhancing therapeutic activities, improving unpleasant taste or smell, and separating different parts of a drug for different uses. Cleansing and trimming includes selecting, sieving, winnowing, brushing, wiping or scraping, digging, squeezing, rubbing, tearing and peeling, striking, embracing, rolling and tying, washing, floating, soaking, rinsing, filtering, moistening and retting. Refining of prescribed powder medicines may be achieved by burning over flames, drying over a small fire, sunning, airing, staining, etc. Cooking includes stir-frying, scalding, simmering or baking in hot ashes, roasting, broiling with fluid substances in a pan, calcining, quenching, steaming, boiling, reproducing, reducing into powder after removal of oil or reparation of frost-like powder fermentation, germination, efflorescence and squeezing juice.
Safety aspects

Recent trends in the scope of pharmacovigilance

Pharmacovigilance is a science and activity relating to the detection, assessment, understanding and prevention of adverse effects or any other possible drug-related problems. Signal-reported information is a possible causal relationship between an adverse event and a drug, which was unknown or incompletely documented previously. Usually more than a single report is required to generate a signal, depending upon the seriousness of the event and the quality of the information.

The Erice Declaration sets out the principles of good communication practices in pharmacovigilance. It states that industrialists, doctors, and patients had different — but not contradictory — points of view when questions of drug safety are at issue. Trust and partnerships between the groups were considered important, and a wider public debate was deemed desirable, to help the public better understand risk. Crisis management is also an important matter where communication plays a major role. Several aspects of the communication of benefit–risk information were outlined in the Declaration. During drug therapy, adverse events are frequent. Frequently, several drugs are given at the same time as combined therapy, and concurrent medicines are provided simultaneously for opportunistic infections. All of these factors make the evaluation of the safety of the compound complicated. The numbers of patients in clinical trials and the duration of treatment should be maximised, while exclusions should be minimised. Safety data should be collected and analysed, and the relevance of surrogate markers be questioned. Post-authorisation safety surveillance is important and has to be planned in advance.

Adverse event/adverse experiences

These are defined as any untoward medical occurrence that may present during treatment with a pharmaceutical product but that does not necessarily have a causal relationship with this treatment.

Side-effects

These may be the many unintended effects of a pharmaceutical product occurring at doses normally used in humans, which are related to the pharmacological properties of the drug. Essential elements of this definition are the pharmacological nature of the effect, which means that the phenomenon is unintended, and there is no overt overdose.

Adverse reactions

These are responses to a drug which are noxious and unintended, occurring at doses normally used in humans for the prophylaxis, diagnosis, therapy of disease, or for modification of physiological function. Pharmacovigilance concerns cover herbal medicines and any significant enhancement of health system performance can be achieved by preventing adverse events in particular, and improving patients’ safety and healthcare quality in general.

To develop global norms, the following aspects should be emphasised:

- the development of standards and guidelines for definition, measurement and reporting of adverse events
- the provision of support to countries in developing reporting systems taking preventive action
- the promotion of framing of evidence-based policies, including global standards that will improve patient care, with particular emphasis on such aspects as product safety, safe clinical practice and safe use of medicinal products and medical devices
- the creation of a culture of safety within healthcare organisations.

In recent years, extensive attention has been paid to the safety of traditional Chinese medicine in China and throughout the world. Despite the large numbers of plants used in TCM, less than 1% are classified as toxic. Traditionally, there existed ‘18 incompatible medicinal herbs’ and ‘19 mutual restraining medicinal herbs’, which were the sum of clinical experience for drug inter-reaction and coadministration of herbs. Severe side-effects may occur when two incompatible or mutual restraining drugs are used in coadministration.

The TCM materials that have attracted attention because of its toxicity are species of Aristolochia. Clinically, the renal toxicity induced...
by *Caulis aristolochiae manshuriensis* was first reported over 40 years ago (Wu, 1964) and later by Zhou *et al.* in 1979 and 1988. The renal toxicity induced by medicinal plants was called Chinese herb nephropathy by foreign researchers and it was concluded that the nephropathy was mainly induced by the aristolochic acid contained in *Akebia quinata* Decne. and *Cocculus laurifolius* DC. Therefore, in some investigations, it was suggested that ‘Chinese herb nephropathy’ be renamed aristolochic acid nephropathy. Recent studies showed that aristolochic acid present in *Aristolochia debilis* Sibe. et Zucc. and *Aristolochia fumigata* YC Wuex LD Chow et SM Hwang induces renal toxicity. The report produced enormous effects in the TCM market all over the world.

Safety issues may arise from the following conditions:

- overdose administration
- administration for a long time
- unsuitable combinations with other drugs
- use of different drugs from related species, e.g. *Bupleurum longnirudium* is used instead of *Bupleurum chinensis* or *Bupleurum scorzomerifolium*, *Aristolochia fumigata* YC Wuex LD Chow et SM Hwang used instead of *Stephania tetrandra* S. Moore
- preparation of the herbs
- the patient’s individual differences in drug reaction, pharmacogenes, metabolism, and allergic functions.

Facing these issues, Chinese researchers have applied modern scientific methods to understand the safety of TCM, such as fingerprint techniques to control quality and production practice. In clinical studies, doctors must implement GCP ethically and in clinical therapy, carry out individual therapeutic principles according to the theory of TCM. In basic research on the safety of TCM, toxicology, toxicokinetics and pharmacokinetics, metabolomics and metabonomics methods are used to test the toxicity, effectivity and mechanism of action, enzyme inhibition and induction methods to investigate drug–drug reactions. The induction and inhibition of TCM on cytochrome P450 activities is of particular importance. The information from these studies suggests that TCM with conventional therapeutic products may increase the plasma levels of some therapeutic agents, which would increase the risk for serious drug adverse events in patients. Conversely, the interaction between TCM and conventional therapies may also affect the safety profile of the TCM, highlighting a need for healthcare professionals to recognize and understand the potential risk of TCM herb–drug interactions (Ge *et al.*, 2005; Liu, 2005; Lu *et al.*, 2005).

**Conventional recognition of the safety of Chinese herbal medicines**

In *Shennong’s Canon of Chinese Materia Medica* (AD 1000), the 365 sorts of Chinese drugs recorded were divided according to their toxicity and property into three groups:

- Group 1 (120 drugs) comprises those that are least toxic, are non-toxic, of high safety, beneficial to the human body, suitable to be taken frequently, and functioning as nourishing and tonic agents. Examples include *Radix Ginseng*, *Radix Salviae Miltiorrhiza*, *Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae*, *Colla Corli Asini* and *Radix Glycyrrhizae*.
- Group 2 (120 drugs) could or could not be toxic, meaning that if the drugs are correctly used, they are non-toxic. Examples are *Radix Lithospermi* and *Radix Trichosanthis*.
- Group 3 (another 120 drugs) are usually toxic and not suitable for long-term intake, and include *Radix Dichroae* and *Radix Pulsatillae*.

This recognition of the toxicity and safety of Chinese drugs has been successful in clinical practice, and handed down from generation to generation. Among the 534 kinds of Chinese herbal drugs in the present pharmacopoeia of the PRC, there are 49 with high toxicity, e.g. *Semen Strychni*, *Rhizoma Pinelliae*, *Caulis Aristolochiae Manshuriensis*, *Radix Aconiti*, *Radix Sophorae Tonkinensis* and *Rhizoma Anemones Raddeaneae*, and 22 with slight toxicity, e.g. *Radix Zanthoxyli*, *Rhizoma Dryopteris Crassi rhizomatis* and *Cortex Meliae*, the other 463 being non-toxic. However, this conventional recognition of the toxicity and safety of Chinese drugs is based on
traditional experience and can no longer meet the
demands of modern society (Xiao and Liu, 2004), so
a re-evaluation is necessary.

Understanding of the safety matters of
Chinese medicines

As the case stands, TCMs do have adverse effects. A
total of 6061 cases of intoxication and adverse effects
from Chinese drugs were reported between 1915 and
1994, among which 2217 cases were reported in the
1980s, and 3272 in the four years from 1991 to 1994
(Yuan, 2000). Therefore, wide attention has been
paid to this problem and many papers have been
published (Wang and Lu, 1999; Wang and Ren,
2002; Yu et al., 2003).

Because the quality of TCM is very variable,
quality and standardisation of Chinese drugs are
stressed as of major importance in the National
Program for Modernisation of Traditional Chinese
Medicine (2002–2010). Application of various codes
of good practice has established a good basis for
safe usage of Chinese herbal medicines. In 2001, the
Chinese government released its Drug Administration
Act and Drug Registration Regulation to standardise
the research, development and marketing of new
drugs of chemical products and traditional Chinese
medicines, which specified documents with scientific
test data (SFDA, 2002).

Measures for strengthening the safety of
Chinese medicines

Unfortunately publicity for TCM preparations is
sometimes one-sided and promotes them as ‘pure
natural drugs without any toxic adverse effect’.
To repudiate this, the potential toxic side-effects
and adverse reactions should be stressed, and
commonly used herbs should comply with accept-
able processes of purification and production of
dosage forms.

A five-grade evaluation system for safety, which
may act as a reference for further study, correction
and supplementation is put forward below.

Grade I

- Herbs that have been regarded as foods for a
  long time, but have some medical function,
  where LD_{50} was not detected in animal studies,
  or the maximum tolerant dosage is more than
  10 g/kg.
- Long-term toxicity (30 days feeding) was not
detected, with no evident adverse effect and
toxicity when 100 times the human adult dosage
was administered.
- The ‘three-genesis’ test (carcinogenesis,
teratogenesis and mutagenesis) was negative.

Inclusion of herbs in this grade is based on
Ingredients of Foods in China (Yang et al., 2002).

Grade II

- Herbs that have served both as foods or
  medications historically, with LD_{50} more than
  10 g/kg.
- Long-term toxicity could not be detected
  (30 days feeding), with no evident adverse effect
  and toxicity when 100 times the human adult
dosage was administered.
- The three-genesis test was negative.

Inclusion of herbs in this grade is based on Document
file No. 51 (Ministry of Health, 2002).

Grade III

- This grade includes herbs taken as health-giving
  food for a long time, such as drug diet or drug
  tea, which have some therapeutic functions and
effects. No toxic-adverse effects were found
when more than 2 g/kg of the extract or more
than 5 g/kg of crude drug was administered.
- Long-term toxicity could be detected (30 days
  feeding): mild, nonfatal, reversible adverse effect,
  and toxicity could be detected when 100 times
  the human adult dosage was administrated.
- The three-genesis test was negative.

Inclusion of herbs in this grade is based on Document
file No. 51 (Ministry of Health, 2002).

Grade IV

- Herbs that have evident medical function or
effect, possess active ingredients of intensive
pharmaceutical effect, are liable to lead to toxic
adverse effects when improperly used; LD_{50} could
be detected.
• Long-term toxicity could be detected (30 days feeding) when the dosage is less than 2–5 g/kg; nonfatal, non-incapacitant adverse reaction could be caused by 50 times the dosage for human adults, but no evident toxic adverse effect is found in administration of 30 times the dosage for human adults.

• Some types could induce a positive reaction in the three-genesis test.

**Grade V**

• Drugs with evident toxic adverse effects, being mildly, moderately or potently toxic when given by different routes, containing ingredients (such as digitoxin) with potent toxicity, easy to induce toxic-adverse effect; LD$_{50}$ of the extract less than 1 g/kg, and that of the crude drug less than 2 g/kg.

• Long-term toxicity (30 days feeding) could be detected; 30 times the dosage for human adults could induce toxic adverse, or even fatal, incapacitant and irreversible reaction.

• Positive reaction to the three-genesis test; maternal perinatal toxicity tests show mother–child inter-generational toxicity.

According to the principles of evidence-based medicine, the causes and characteristics of adverse reactions to Chinese herbs should be determined by literature review and meta-analyses, to work out methods and programmes for prevention. Ideally large sample sizes and multifactor statistical management of the results should be used.

China established a nationwide adverse drug reaction surveillance system in 2003 and up to 2007, case reports concerning adverse reactions to Chinese drugs accounted for 10–14% of the total, which is significantly lower than those about chemical agents, reflecting that, as to safety, Chinese drugs are still better than chemical agents. The system of circulating information about adverse reaction of drugs was created at that time, with six issues released so far, and reported eight Chinese drugs with adverse reaction and one kind containing aristolochic acids. Renal damage by Longdan Xiegan pill has been notified, for which active measures were taken by the State Bureau of Foods and Drugs Supervision and Administration.

On an international level, China is involved with the WHO Forum on Harmonization of Herbal Medicine (FHM) and also with a technical cooperation programme with WHO, the *Guidance for Safety of Commonly Used Chinese Herbal Medicines (Chinese Diagram)*.

**Research and development of new drugs**

Many pharmacologically active compounds from plants have the potential to become single chemical entity drugs. About 140 new drugs have originated directly or indirectly from Chinese medicinal plants by means of modern scientific methods, demonstrating that these herbs are an important source of new drugs.

Alkaloids are an important group and include the benzylisoquinoline type, potentially serving as the basis of new drugs for analgesic, sedative, antimicrobial and cardiovascular ailments. The tropane-type alkaloids such as anisodamine and anisodine isolated from *Scopolia* are attractive for their effect on microcirculatory systems. The diterpene-type alkaloids isolated from *Aconitum* and *Delphinium* provide a starting point in the quest for more effective anodyne, antiarrhythmia and cardiotonic drugs, while the alkaloids related to harringtonine have potential antileukaemic action. Among phenolic compounds, several flavonoids such as scutellarin, icariin, isorhanetin and puerarin, and the coumarins such as daphnetin and daphnoretin, need to be considered for their cardiovascular activity. Within the terpenoids, many monoterpenes display effects against respiratory problems and can perhaps be used in the development of more favourable remedial medicines. Several peroxide substances, such as quinhuosu (artemisin-in) and yingzhaosu A, hold promise as antimalarial agents.

Since 1949 there have been many scientific reports on Chinese medicinal plants, and this forms a solid platform for further work (Xiao, 1983; 1986; 1988; Xiao and Fu, 1986; Liu and Xiao, 1992; 1993; 2000; Xiao and Liu, 1999; Liu, 1987; Liu *et al.*, 2000).
Pathways for research and development from TCMs

The numerous prescriptions, folk drugs and herbal drugs play an important role in maintaining people’s health. They are also the resources for research and development of new drugs; pathways for discovery and development of new drugs from Chinese traditional and herbal drugs are discussed below.

Research conducted under the guidance of experiences of TCMs

There is no record of the term ‘chronic mylocytic leukaemia’ in the classics of TCM. However, based on the theories and methods of TCM diagnosis, this condition can be diagnosed and treated according to the symptoms involved. A complex prescription, ‘Dnggui-Luhui’ pills, has been used for this purpose and was confirmed with a clinical trial on 22 patients. The prescription consists of:

- Angelica sinensis (root)
- Aloe vera (dried juice)
- Gentiana acabra (fructus)
- Gardenia jasminoides (root)
- Scutellaria baicalensis (root)
- Phellodendron amurense (stem bark)
- Coptis chinensis (rhizome)
- Rheum palmatum (root and rhizome)
- Indigo Naturalis, a product derived from the leaves of Saphicacanthus cusia
- Aucklandis lappa (root).

Subsequent experimentation conducted with the animal model of leukaemia 7212 (L7212) in mice revealed that only Indigo Naturalis among the ingredients of the prescription was effective, but that it was accompanied with some side-effects.

In an effort to increase the therapeutic effect and reduce the side-effects, further study of Indigo Naturalis has been done. Indirubin was identified as the active anticancer principle. The compound showed various inhibitory activities against leukaemia in animal studies and toxicological studies showed that, when it was given daily for a month at an oral dose of 100–500 mg/kg, no toxicological reactions were observed. A clinical trial was carried out in 314 cases of chronic myelocytic leukaemia and 82 patients achieved complete remission with a further 87 having partial remission and other beneficial effects, although side-effects such as abdominal pain and diarrhoea sometimes occurred. Indirubin has been shown to have similar therapeutic effect as myleran in the treatment of chronic myelocytic leukaemia. It possesses neither serious side-effects nor inhibition of bone marrow.

It is not necessary to repeat here the story of the development of artemisinin from the Chinese traditional antimalarial drug, *Artemisia annua*, to a globally accepted antimalarial.

Exploration of ancient literature of TCM in modern clinical studies

In the ancient classic *Shanghanlun* (Treatise on Febrile Diseases, edited by Zhang Zhong-Jing), it was recorded that Gegen Decoction, a decoction of the root of *Pueraria lobata*, was recommended for the treatment of stiffness and soreness in the neck. A series of clinical trials of preparation of *Pueraria lobata* gave satisfactory results and the active isoflavone components of this plant were isolated, e.g. daidzin and puerarin. Pharmacological studies revealed that either the total isoflavone or the single compound puerarin was capable of increasing the cerebral and coronary blood flow, decreasing the oxygen consumption of the myocardium, increasing the blood oxygen supply and depressing the production of lactic acid by the blood oxygen-deficient heart muscle, all of which could help explain its effects.

‘Wuweizi’ (Fructus *Schizandra Chinensis*), a Chinese traditional drug commonly used as an astringent, was found in clinical use to exhibit therapeutic effects on certain types of hepatitis, particularly in lowering the elevated serum glutamic pyruvic transaminase (SGPT) levels. This effect immediately aroused the interest of doctors as well as pharmacologists. It was found that the active principles responsible for lowering elevated SGPT levels were a series of lignans, of which schizandren B, schizandrol B and schizandrin C showed the best protective activity against liver damage induced by chemical substances.
‘Lingzhicao’ (Ganoderma), a fungus, has been regarded as a panacea in TCM and widely used in folklore for neurasthenia, chronic hepatitis, cardiovascular disease and chronic ulcers of the digestive system. Clinical studies of the water-soluble preparation of *Ganoderma capense* showed that it had a satisfactory effect on progressive muscular dystrophy and atrophic myotonia.

**Drugs used by smaller ethnic groups in the PRC**

*Scopolia tangutica* Maxim. (‘Tangchom Nagbo’) is a drug used by the doctors of traditional Tibetan medicine in Qinghai. Overdosage of this medicine causes the symptoms characteristic of atropine-like toxicity. Phytochemical investigation revealed that besides hyoscyamine and scopolamine, the plant contained the tropane alkaloids anisodamine and anisidine. Both are weaker in action than atropine and scopolamine in the central and peripheral nervous systems. Clinically anisodamine has been used for the treatment of septic shock from toxic baricary dysentery, fulminant epidemic meningitis and haemorrhagic enteritis. Anisidine is used for the treatment of migraine and diseases of the fundus oculi caused by vascular spasm, organophosphorus poisoning, and acute paralysis caused by cerebral vascular accident, it is also being used as the chief component in Chinese traditional anaesthesia.

**Active compounds isolated from TCMs**

Of about 250 pharmacologically active compounds that have been reported from Chinese materia medica, 100 or so have been subjected to systematic chemical, pharmacological and clinical studies.

Table 4.4 shows the chemical nature of these pharmacologically active principles from Chinese medicinal plants (Liu *et al.*, 2000).

**Classification of pharmacological activities**

About 140 single chemical entity drugs have been discovered directly or indirectly from Chinese materia medica plants by means of modern scientific methods. By pharmacological classification, 36 affect the cardiovascular system, 23 are anticancer drugs, 21 affect the nervous system, 15 the respiratory system, 18 are antimicrobials, 14 are used for the digestive system, 9 for eliminating parasites, 5 for contraception, and 1 as an eye medicine (Liu and Yaniv, 2005).

**Recent trends in research and development**

**Quality assurance of TCM products**

Developing a new preparation from a medicinal product used for a long time in traditional Chinese medicine to meet present-day international standards of quality, safety and efficacy, and quality standardisation is a very important guarantee.

Table 4.5 shows the most important methods used in quality and standardisation. Great progress in quality studies has been achieved through the application of specific and selective methods, using a combination of high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) with ultraviolet, mass spectrometry (MS), or nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR). The standardisation methods are used to establish stan-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical type</th>
<th>Number of compounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alkaloids</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terpenes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monoterpenes</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sesquiterpenes</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diterpenes</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triterpenes</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac glucosides</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenolic compounds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinones</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flavonoids</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coumarins</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lignans</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenyl propanoids</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acids and miscellaneous</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>571</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Molecular–biological technical application in pharmacological profiles

The development and introduction of molecular biological methods with highly selective and sensitive bioassays into the screening of plant extracts or compounds from TCMs has revolutionised research. New methods on aspects such as gene, receptor and signal transduction levels provide a much better understanding of the mechanisms of action of an active compound. The new methods have revealed that the pharmacological potential of plant extracts and their preparations is greater than previously supposed.

High-throughput screening technology (HTS) is a relatively new approach, developed in the 1990s. The technology is based on the theoretical principles of drug discovery through application of multidisciplinary knowledge and integration of various advanced technologies, thereby forming a rapid, effective, and large-scale drug screening system. With the application of technology platforms based on molecular and cell biology, many new therapeutic targets, such as genes, receptors, and enzymes, have been identified and validated for drug discovery. The HTS system applied in natural product research can decrease the amount of testing samples that are difficult to isolate and purify, by using microgram quantities. Therefore, the technology is an effective tool in the early stage of drug discovery and development form TCMs.

In modern research into TCM, more screening and isolation efforts are necessary to evaluate the pharmacological and pharmacokinetic profile of extracts, preparations or active compounds. An example is the recent studies on a fixed herbal complex that has a reputation in TCM for the prevention and therapy of stroke. The herbal complex consists of eight herbs (root of *Salvia miltiorrhiza*, Rhizoma Ligustici (*Cum Chuanxiong*), root of *Paeonia rubra*, root of *Angelica pubescens*, root of *Stephania tetrandra*, ramulus of *Uncaria rhynchophylla*, rhizome of *Gastrodia elata*, and root of *Panax ginseng*).

As a result of the detailed chemical and pharmacological studies, the researchers were able to assign defined pharmacological effects to the individual herbs and their major active compounds, which in turn had a direct relevance for stroke prevention and therapy (Gong and Sucher, 1999). The clinical efficacy of this herb complex was explained by a pharmacokinetic or pharmacodynamic synergism.

Achievements in single chemical entity drug discovery and development

**Salvicine**

Salvicine, a diterpenoid compound, is a new topo-isomerase II inhibitor and induces topo II-mediated DNA breaks (Meng *et al.*, 2001) (Figure 4.1). It is a structurally modified derivative of a natural product from the Chinese traditional medicine *Salvia prionitis* Hance (Labiatae) (Huang *et al.*, 1990). Its pharmacological activity was evaluated against a panel of human tumour cells (Meng *et al.*, 2001) and xenografts (Qing *et al.*, 1999). Salvicine is equipotent to etoposide against three leukaemia cell lines (Zhang *et al.*, 1999). Additionally, salvicine has a prominent cytotoxic effect on multidrug-resistant cell lines. Salvicine, like most chemotherapeutic drugs, exerts

---

**Table 4.5 Application of modern analytical methods in the quality assessment and standardisation of traditional Chinese medicines**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method classification</th>
<th>Analytical method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chromatography</td>
<td>Thin-layer chromatography (TLC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thin-layer electrophoresis (TLE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gas chromatography (GC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capillary electrophoresis (CE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capillary electrochromatography (CEC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Isotachophoresis (ITP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass spectrometry</td>
<td>Mass spectrometry (MS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear magnetic resonance</td>
<td>Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination</td>
<td>HPLC coupled with MS, with MS/MS, with NMR, with UV/MS/NMR/FT-ICR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
its antitumour effect by inducing cancer cell apoptosis, and salvicine is equally effective at inducing apoptosis in K562 and K562/A02 cells (Qing et al., 2001) and in HL60 cells (Meng et al., 2001; Liu et al., 2002). This compound has now entered clinical trials in patients with cancer.

**Schiprizine**

Schiprizine, or ZT-1 a derivative of huperzine A (Hup A), is a novel potent cholinesterase (ChE) inhibitor, which is rapidly transformed into the active metabolite Hup A, from a Chinese club moss (Figure 4.2). ZT-1 was selected from over 100 Hup A derivatives initially identified at our institute and in-vitro pharmacological tests have shown that it produces a marked concentration-dependent inhibition of acetylcholinesterase. In-vivo investigations have shown that ZT-1 is equipotent to Hup A and more potent than donepezil and tacrine (Zhu et al., 1999, 2000; Anon., 2004). The preclinical studies have been finished in China and Phase I clinical trials have also been completed in Switzerland and China (Wei et al., 2006; Xu et al., 2005). A clinical Phase II trial, for the treatment of Alzheimer’s disease, is being conducted in patients with mild-to-moderate symptoms (Anon., 2004).

**Bromotetrandrine**

*Stephania tetrandra*, containing bisbenzylisoquinoline alkaloids, has been used as an anti-inflammatory and analgesic medicine in the PRC (Figure 4.3). Recent studies have shown that the alkaloids enhanced the cytotoxicity of anticancer drugs in P-glycoprotein-dependent tumour cells. The multidrug resistance of the constituent tetrandrine and its derivatives showed that bromotetrandrine BrTet showed significant reversal of multidrug resistance *in vitro* and *in vivo* (Wang et al., 2005), and clinical trials are in progress (Xiao et al., 2004, 2005; Jin et al., 2005).

**Kanglaite injection prepared from Coix seeds**

Coix seeds come from *Coix Lacryma-jobi* L. subsp. *Ma-yuen* (Romanet) T. Koyama (family Gramineae). In traditional Chinese medicine, coix seeds serve several functions, e.g. they stimulate function of the spleen and lung, remove heat (which helps in the drainage of pus) and induce diuresis but latterly an extract (Kanglaite) has been developed as an

---

**Figure 4.1** Salvicine.

**Figure 4.2** The chemical structures of schiprzine (ZT-1) and huperzine A.
anticancer drug. The mechanism of action of kanglaite injection is as follows. The drug:

- inhibits the mitosis of tumour cells during G2/M phases
- induces apoptosis of tumour cells
- affects the genetic expression of tumour cells by up-regulating FAS/Apo-1 gene expression and down-regulating Bc1–2 gene expression
- inhibits tumour angiogenesis
- counteracts the cachexia of cancers
- reverses the multiresistance of tumour cells to anticancer drugs and the resistance modification in some chemotherapeutics.

Kanglaite injection has been successfully applied in the treatment of a variety of malignant tumours. The prospective, randomised and large-scale clinical studies have been carried out in 1408 cases. Clinical studies have shown that kanglaite could not only inhibit cancer cells but also enhance immunity. Moreover, kanglaite has synergistic and toxicity-reducing effects when combined with chemo- or radiotherapy. It could also relieve pain, improve the patient’s quality of life and extend survival time (Li, 1998; Qian, 1998; Shen, 1998; Jin, 1999; Li, 2006).

**Berbamine**

Berbamine is a bisbenzylisoquinoline alkaloid (Figure 4.4) from *Berberis* spp. (Liu *et al.*, 1991). From an economical viewpoint it was valuable that *Berberis* resources were comprehensively utilised to develop new drugs and new pharmacological activities (Liu, 2000b). Pharmacological studies showed that berbamine possesses a significant leukogenic effect in rats and dogs injured by anticancer agents and radioactivity and in clinical trials, a transleukogenic effect was demonstrated in 405 patients with leucopenia. It is also used as an adjuvant to chemotherapy or radiotherapy to protect the haematogenic function of bone marrow.

![Figure 4.3 Chemical structure of bromotetrandrine. (R₁ = Br, R₂ = H).](image1)

![Figure 4.4 Chemical structure of berbamine.](image2)
Challenges in modern research and development

As well as its exploitation within China as a source of novel, single chemical entity drugs, TCM has also attracted interest internationally.

The first challenge: discovery and development of new drugs from TCMs

TCM development has entered a new stage of research with development from tradition to science. A major difference between the old and present-day drug development is probably that in the past, people tested the medicines directly on humans, whereas nowadays the starting point is screening at the molecular or cellular level.

The effectiveness of TCM products in the treatment of a variety of ailments and diseases has been established empirically over thousands of years. Novel standardisation methods will significantly raise the medical potential and quality of TCM. Utilising DNA fingerprinting techniques and developing cutting-edge genechip-based applications will assure standardisation for the quality of botanicals and products of TCM. Using modern molecular biology techniques, different species of commonly used TCM are being studied to identify species-specific markers. Application of this information will mean that different genera of these drugs, as well as different families and species, can be distinguished.

For example, using distinct complementary DNA sequence information derived from *Fritillaria cirrhosa* D. Don and *Fritillaria thunbergii* Miq., a silicon-based genechip was manufactured, which contained different oligonucleotide probes corresponding to the different species of *Fritillaria* plants. Thus, the genechip was used to demonstrate its capability to detect the sequence-specific probes correctly. This is useful in the development of genechip technology as a standardisation tool for other phytopharmaceutical materials. This standardisation tool can also be applied to drug discovery research. Genechip technology will be an important part of research for biologically active fractions and compounds. We envisage that the successful development of TCM will gain its own niche in today’s fast-changing pharmaceutical industry.

A process system of discovery and development of new drugs from TCM has been established in many institutions in China. Figure 4.5 presents a basic process for the study of new drugs from medicinal plants used in TCM (Liu et al., 2007).

In drug discovery, the active compounds obtained by in-vitro or in-vivo bioassay are isolated and then pharmacology, toxicity and safety, as well as clinical trials of the selected active compounds are performed. Where possible, an active compound and its analogues are subjected to structure–activity relationship studies to obtain more effective and safe compounds. In a traditional medicine system, pharmacological evaluation of extracts or active compounds may lead to the establishment of standardised extracts or pure compounds. In this case, these substances and their formulations can be used in pharmacology, toxicity and clinical trials.

Using the above methods in combination with clinical trials and in-vitro and in-vivo pharmacological studies, related data can be obtained about the activity of medicinal plants and their extracts. Moreover, using the systems biology approach for the organism and combining this with metabolomics data for different extracts of the medicinal plant or fractions, compound–activity relationships can be discerned. Metabolomics/metabonomics of medicinal plants is rapidly developing and it will be a key technology in the system biology in studies of activity, action mechanism, drug interaction, drug safety and relationships of medicinal plants with the environment.

The second challenge: safety of TCM products

In many parts of the world, phytotherapeutical products are only over-the-counter products. The clinical safety and interactions of these products have become an issue, one which requires careful monitoring and reporting, followed by substantial scientific study and communication to effect public awareness and enhance safety. In the PRC, the government has also issued a set of guidelines for studies of the safety and efficacy of TCM products (SFDA, 2005) and a basic process for evaluation of TCMs for facilitating the regulation and registration of TCM products has been introduced (Liu et al.,
These aims are an important start, but are not adequate for the continuous improvement of TCM products in healthcare. A comprehensive programme for safety evaluation of products based on traditional medicines is needed for consumers in the PRC and worldwide. The first key factor is to obtain standardised and controlled products or preparations of TCM of good quality for safety evaluation studies. They must be free of contaminants such as insects, herbicides and pesticides, solvent residues, heavy metals, aflatoxins and other toxic microbial metabolites and radioactivity (Liu et al., 2007).

**The third challenge: application of modern techniques and methods**

Studies in TCM must face the challenge of the application of modern technological advances. Modern techniques and methods are rapidly developing and now it is possible to measure gene expression, the proteome and metabolomics/metabonomics. These methods open a complete new world of possibilities to study the activity, mechanism of action, safety and efficacy of TCM. It will give researchers opportunities to better understand the mode of action by comparing the changes in the transcriptome, proteome and metabolomic/metabonomic patterns in comparison with those observed with known drugs. In system biological studies, the application of metabolomic methods to analyse urine samples makes it possible to identify biomarkers by nuclear magnetic resonance or liquid chromatography-MS/MS analyses, thus allowing the diagnosis of a variety of diseases, the measurement of possible liver or kidney toxicity, and the mechanism of action.

Metabolomics will be a key technology in the systems biology approach to studies of medicinal...
plants. Chromatography, mass spectrometry and nuclear magnetic resonance spectrometry methods are currently being used in metabolomics by measuring a selected group of metabolites in an organism qualitatively and quantitatively, and measuring fingerprints of metabolites and identifying all compounds in cells, organism, or parts of medicinal plants. This systems biology approach is a major challenge for the coming years in studying TCM and the development of such ‘-omics’ can influence several areas of drug discovery and development.

Metabonomics can be applied at any stage in drug discovery and development processes, for example:

- predictive biomarkers for drug-related effects in animal models
- understanding the biochemical mechanisms of action to target-organ or to target-organ pathologies in animals to humans
- developing biomarkers for toxicities in non-clinical development
- predictive biomarkers for drug-related effects in humans during Phase II and Phase III clinical trials (Liu, 2004a, 2004b, 2005c, 2005d; Liu et al., 2004).

Metabonomics technology has been applied in studies of the mechanism of action of complex Gensing (‘Shen-Mai’) injection for the treatment of cardiac disease and Complex Uncaria stem mixture for the treatment of hyperactivity syndrome in children (Liu, 2004a; Huang et al., 2005; Wu, 2005).

Chinese medicine and pharmacology are a great treasure house, and efforts should be made to explore them and to raise them to a higher level. Recalling the research and development of new drugs from Chinese traditional and herbal drugs, it can be seen that exploration and research with natural drugs is an important pathway for new drug research.

References

Chen CH (1984). Biological activities and medicinal poten-

Deng SX, Mo YJ (1979). Pharmacological studies on Gastrodia eleta Bleime. I. The sedative and anticonvol-
Hu BZ, Xu RS, Chen GJ et al. (1979). The structure, identifi-
Huang YR, Wei GL, Xiao SH et al. (2005). Studies on phar-
dynamics and its biochemical mechanism of Uncaria-stem mixture for treating children’s hyperactiv-
tivity syndrome by metabonomic method. Chin Trad Herb Drugs 36 (3): 301–305.
Kin KC, Wang YE, Hsu B (1964). Some neuropharmacolog-
Li C, Du FF, Chen Y, Xu et al. (2004). A sensitive method for the determination of the novel cholinesterase


Ministry of Health PR China (2002). Concerning further standard administration on raw materials of health good (No. 51, Appendix 1–3).


Introduction

Although rich in folklore and used over many centuries, traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) has not been thoroughly examined using Western-developed biological criteria, nor has it been clinically evaluated in great detail outside of China and Asia. This is changing as more TCM plants are becoming accepted globally (Chen et al., 2006; Wei et al., 2006). In this review, several specific examples of TCM plants have been chosen that are gaining widespread interest in the wellness and medical arena and are now being sold as dietary or nutritional supplements worldwide. At least two of the top 10 selling botanical products are derived from TCM, including *Camellia sinensis*, green tea; *Panax ginseng*, ginseng, *Ginkgo biloba*, ginkgo, and *Allium sativum*, garlic (Blumenthal et al., 2001).

These plants require different model systems to evaluate their therapeutic potential and are represented herein. Although each one has been well studied, there have been conflicting clinical data, suggesting a lack of specific activity or inappropriate preparation. We review several studies describing new mechanisms of action applied to each one of these botanicals, which may eventually lead to a positive clinical outcome or the potential for a better understanding of their respective modes of action.

Evidence-based approach

In many cases the exact chemical constituent and amount in the plant needed to give a defined and specific biological effect has yet to be verified. These then have to be limited to a biological effect that in turn is relevant to a therapeutic or nutritional target. This approach may be achieved by determining the structural analyses of natural compounds present in the selected botanical, followed by pharmacological
testing, to identify biological fingerprints of the plant extracts and their effective concentration.

Various in-vitro/in-vivo bio-assays have been employed for evaluation of botanicals to determine the mechanism of their action and thereby to fix parameters of pharmacological, microbiological and allied standardisation methodology, leading to a more effective role in healthcare. These bioassays may include whole animal models, as well as organs, tissues, cells, receptors, enzymes or cell parts. Botanical extracts can only be declared pharmacologically active if a reliable correlation can be made between a measurable active principle and its declared medicinal effect. Clinical confirmation of pharmacological activity can only then be ascertained when unequivocal effects of standardised extracts are demonstrated in clinical trials (Awang and Bejar, 2001).

**Green tea**

There is an abundance of evidence linking specific molecular targets to green tea extracts (Cooper *et al.*, 2005a, b). This review provides further evidence that green tea, and specifically EGCg (epigallocatechin gallate), possesses more biological effects than solely as an antioxidant.

The major polyphenol, belonging to the family of catechins and found in green tea is (−)-EGCg, with lesser amounts of catechin (C), epicatechin (EC), gallocatechin (GC), gallocatechin gallate (GCG), epigallocatechin (EGC), and epicatechin gallate (ECG). These polyphenols are among the dietary factors that may play a role in cancer protection, and have recently been shown to have potent antioxidant and antitumour effects (Hara, 2001). Green tea polyphenols have been reported to protect in varying degrees against certain cancers, including colon, rectal, bladder (Kemberling *et al.*, 2003), breast (Seely *et al.*, 2005), stomach, pancreatic, lung, oesophageal and prostate (Adhami *et al.*, 2003).

**Epidemiological observations**

Anticancer effects for tea are indicated both from animal in-vivo studies and from human epidemiological observations (Imai *et al.*, 1997). Numerous studies were examined by Bushman (1998) to show an inverse association between tea consumption and cancer of the colon, urinary bladder, stomach, oesophagus, lung and pancreas. These studies are reviewed by Cooper *et al.* (2005b).

Studies have attempted to link green tea to antioxidant benefits including protection against the damage caused by cigarette smoke, pollution, stress, and other toxins (Mitscher, 1998; Benzie *et al.*, 1999). Further research from Palermo *et al.* (2003) suggested that the combination of EGCg and EGC in green tea may reduce the risk of cancer in smokers by shutting down in vitro the activity of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor known to activate cancer-activating genes. The fact that both EGCg and EGC shut down this receptor may demonstrate a different mechanism of action for green tea’s anticancer benefits, and most likely the compounds act through many different pathways. These researchers indicated that green tea’s inhibitory effects were present when levels of EGCg and EGC reached typical in a cup of green tea. However, the metabolism will affect activity; therefore the in-vitro research may not be indicative of green tea’s activity after ingestion.

**Anticancer mechanisms of action**

Various responses of specific cellular targets relating to cancer and EGCg have been recently reviewed (Cooper *et al.*, 2005b). Through in-vitro cell culture experiments and animal studies, many potential mechanisms have been proposed for the chemopreventive effect of green tea and/or EGCg (Lambert *et al.*, 2003). However, the exact mechanism(s) of anticarcinogenic activity remains to be found.

Researchers working with cancer cell lines have related the anticancer activity of EGCg to growth inhibition (Ahmad and Mukhtar, 1999; Morre *et al.*, 2000); and regulation of cell cycle progression and induction of apoptosis (Morre *et al.*, 2000) in place of a non-specific antioxidant function.

Published animal and in-vitro research shows that EGCg is protective against bladder cancer (Kemberling *et al.*, 2003). These researchers noted that EGCg inhibited the growth of bladder tumours both in vivo and in vitro with the AY-27 rat transitional cell cancer and the L1210 mouse leukaemia cell lines. When the cancer cell lines were exposed to
increasing concentrations of EGCg for 30 min to 48 h, researchers noted both time- and dose-dependent responses. After 2 h, there was 100% cell death in the AY-27 cell line at concentrations greater than 100 mmol/L, and strong banding on the DNA ladder assay was observed with the mouse leukaemia cell line. The research group implanted tumours in the rats' bladders and either offered no treatment or injected 200 mmol/L of EGCg into the rats' bladders, 30 minutes after tumour implantation. After three weeks, the rats' bladders were analysed and 64% of the EGCg-treated animals had not developed tumours.

EGCg has been implicated in blocking DNA transcription of a number of genes in selective cancer cell lines. For example, in the human epidermal carcinoma cell line A431, EGCg inhibits both DNA and protein synthesis of the growth factor receptors: epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R), platelet-derived growth factor receptor (PDGF-R), and fibroblast growth factor receptor (FGF-R) (Liang et al., 1997). EGCg has also been implicated in blocking transcription of nitric oxide (NO) synthase by inhibiting the binding of transcription factor NF-κB to the NO synthase promoter (Chan et al., 1997; Lin and Lin, 1997). In the tumour cell line JB6, EGCg inhibits AP-1 transcriptional activity (Dong et al., 1997). It also inhibits the activity of transcription factors AP-1 and NF-κB and the synthesis of nitric oxide (Yang et al., 2001). In certain benign cell types, however, green tea can have different effects on AP-1-related activities (Ahmad et al., 2000; Balasubramanian et al., 2002). These results suggest that EGCg may prevent cancer at the level of gene transcription, i.e. by blocking the DNA synthesis of genes involved in signal transduction pathways. This has led to many other studies to look at the effect of EGCg on apoptosis, or programmed cell death.

Green tea has been shown to inhibit angiogenesis in both in-vitro proliferation studies and in-vivo angiogenesis assays. Researchers showed that green tea decreases the levels of two important angiogenic factors, VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor), and bFGF as well as aFGF (basic and acidic fibroblast growth factor) in breast cancer (Sartippour et al., 2004). Green tea polyphenols may cause reduced expression of proteins known to be associated with the metastatic spread of cancer cells, and contribute to minimising tumour development by governing the amount of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) in the serum of the prostate cancer mouse model. By reducing the amount of VEGF, the polyphenols work to minimise nutrients flowing to, and supporting tumour growth. It has been shown that the polyphenols present in green tea help prevent the spread of prostate cancer by targeting molecular pathways that shut down the proliferation and spread of tumour cells, as well as inhibiting the growth of tumour-nurturing blood vessels.

Other studies suggest that one mechanism involves the suppression of interleukin (IL)-8 production by endothelial cells (Tang and Meydani, 2001). EGCg reduces urokinase (Jankun et al., 1997), matrix metalloproteinases (MMP-2 and MMP-9) (Annabi et al., 2002), and inhibits PDGF (platelet derived growth factor) signalling (Sachinidis et al., 2000). Tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α gene expression has been shown to be inhibited by EGCg (Yang et al., 1998). It has also been demonstrated that EGCg, EGC and ECG inhibit cyclo-oxygenase (COX)-dependent arachidonic acid metabolism (Hong et al., 2001).

Adhami et al. (2004) looked at the role of green tea polyphenols in modulating the insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1)-driven molecular pathway in prostate tumour cells in a mouse model for human prostate cancer. They suggested that the IGF-I/IGFBP-3 signalling pathway is a prime pathway for green tea polyphenol-mediated inhibition of prostate cancer that limits the progression of cancer through inhibition of angiogenesis and metastasis.

In other postulated mechanisms, the effects of EGCg on the growth inhibition and induction of apoptosis in cancer cells has been studied extensively. A differential growth-inhibitory effect was reported in human colorectal cancer cells CaCo-2 (Salucci et al., 2002), breast cancer cells Hs578T, and their non-cancer cell counterparts (Ahmad and Mukhtar, 1999), as well as HeLa (cervical carcinoma) and BT-20 mammary cancer and MCF-10A mammary non-cancer cells (Morré et al., 2000). EGCg has been implicated in the growth arrest and subsequent induction of apoptosis following cell growth. Inhibition has also been shown in virally transformed fibroblast cells WI-38, human epidermal carcinoma cells A431, lung cancer tumour cells H611, prostate
cancer cell lines LNCaP, PC-3, DU145, human carcinoma keratinocytes HaCaT, and mouse lymphoma cells LY-R (Yang et al., 1998; Ahmad and Mukhtar, 1999). In studies where the apoptotic response was studied in cancer cells versus their non-cancer counterparts, e.g. human carcinoma keratinocytes (HaCaT versus normal human epidermal keratinocytes), the apoptotic response to EGCg was reported to be specific to the cancer cells (Ahmad et al., 1997). A similar conclusion was reached for human breast cancer cells (Morré et al., 2000).

It has been suggested that EGCg-induced apoptosis may result from either cell cycle arrest and/or H$_2$O$_2$ production (Ahmad et al., 1997; Yang et al., 1998). EGCg may be involved in the growth regulation of human epidermal carcinoma cells A431 by causing cell cycle arrest of the G$_0$ to G$_1$ phase (Ahmad et al., 1997). In the EGCg-induced inhibition of human lung cancer cells, involvement of the tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α pathway was suggested. Alternatively, the EGCg-induced apoptosis of the lung cancer tumour cells H611 was inhibited by catalase, suggesting that H$_2$O$_2$ production is a probable contributor to apoptosis (Yang et al., 1998). Despite the abundance of evidence from these studies, the efficacy of EGCg as a single agent therapy for the prevention of cancer is still unclear. Moreover, the efficacy of EGCg as a therapeutic drug to treat or reverse cancer in a patient is unknown.

**Inhibition of tNOX**

A cell surface protein with NADH oxidase activity (tNOX), which exhibits protein disulfide-thiol interchange activity has been identified as the potential target for the anticancer action of green tea catechins and especially EGCg (Morré et al., 2000). The expression of tNOX is restricted to cancer cells (Morré et al., 1995) where it appears to represent an oncofetal antigen (Cho et al., 2002). As a result of stable translation, tNOX, when expressed in COS cells or non-cancer mammary epithelial cells, increases both the growth rate and final cell size of the cells. With HeLa cells transfected with tNOX-directed antisense, a normal growth phenotype is restored and sensitivity to growth inhibition by EGCg is lost (Chueh et al., 2004).

The cancer specificity of tNOX resides in expression of a tNOX protein splice variant that is uniquely both drug inhibited and associated with human cancer (Chueh et al., 2002). It is absent from normal cells and tissues. Activity is correlated with cancer growth and, when blocked, cancer cells fail to enlarge following division and eventually die through apoptosis. Previous studies have utilised tNOX of cancer cell lines to model synergistic polyphenol compositions with utility in cancer prevention and/or treatment. EGCg is so far the safest and most effective polyphenol tNOX blocker found. EGCg blocks tNOX activity and growth of tumour cells without adverse effects on normal cells. The efficacy of EGCg can be enhanced 10-fold without effect on normal cells by combination with other non-gallate catechins such as (−)-epicatechin (EC) (Morré et al., 2003). Furthermore, in animal studies, a catechin composition containing 40% EC, 58.5% ECG and 1.5% EGCg has been identified as being tenfold more efficacious than EGCg alone by evaluations using tNOX assays, growth of cells in culture and growth of transplanted mouse mammary tumours with the catechins administered intratumorally. Based on cell culture studies, a total catechin level surrounding the tumour in situ of 100 nmol/L would seem to be necessary to achieve growth stasis and to initiate apoptosis. Based on mean elimination half lives, the ratio of 1.7 : 5 : 1 for EGCg : EC : ECG is suggested.

Although there are significant amounts of data reporting on the cellular, subcellular biochemical and molecular responses to green and black tea, including signal transduction and telomere shortening (Yang, 2002), responses to EGCg are generally in the micro- or low millimolar ranges (in contrast to tNOX), suggesting these effects are neither cancer cell specific nor realistically attainable in tissue through dietary supplementation. In contrast, tNOX inhibition is the only biochemical parameter thus far reported where inhibitions are achieved at nanomolar concentrations of EGCg (EC$_{50}$ of 5nmol/L) and where the dose response of inhibition of activity and inhibition of growth of cancer cells are correlated. This observation therefore suggests that tNOX is the primary target protein to explain cancer-cell-specific catechin inhibition of growth (Morre et al., 2003).

Several studies in animals show promise of tea catechins as adjunct cancer therapy (Suganuma et al.,
1998; Sugiyama and Sadzuka, 1998). In preliminary human studies on patients (compassionate intervention) with severe head and neck carcinomas who were treated with a commercial preparation of a dietary supplement, Capsibiol-T (www.capsibiol-T.com), containing a mixture of decaffeinated green tea and red pepper (Capsicum sp.), the results to date indicate a positive role of this herbal mixture in clinical use. The use of Capsibiol-T as an adjunct with conventional cancer treatment was indicative of survival benefits both for cancer protection and for slowing the growth and metastatic spread of established cancers. This study (Fernandez and Ganzon, 2003) suggests a role of green tea as an aid for the prevention and control of cancer growth, metastasis and/or recurrence, and clearly warrants more clinical studies to determine a definitive role in cancer therapy.

**Ginseng**

Ginsenosides are the major active compounds of ginseng (Panax ginseng). In the various Panax species, more than 30 ginsenosides have been identified. The type, number and site of attachment of the sugars impart structural and functional variation among the ginsenosides (Attele et al., 1999); and based on their structural differences, they can be classified into three categories (Liberti 1978).

Table 5.1 provides a listing of various pharmacological effects these ginseng compounds impart and several of these mechanisms are reviewed in detail below.

### Ginsenoside variation and standardisation

Ginsenoside content is standardised to 1.5–7% (on average at 4%). Dosages used in clinical studies are typically around 200 mg a day of extract, equivalent to 0.5–2 g of dried root per day administered for 2–4 months.

The content and profile of ginsenosides differ between ginseng species and can differ among raw samples and commercial products of the same species (Vuksan, 2000). Asian ginseng (Panax ginseng) has a

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Compounds responsible</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Platelet inhibition</td>
<td>Various ginsenosides (Ro, Rg₁, and Rg₂) and polyacetylenes</td>
<td>Kuo <em>et al</em>., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td>Rg₁, Rb₁, Rd</td>
<td>Chang <em>et al</em>., 1999; Kitts <em>et al</em>., 2000; Yokozawa <em>et al</em>., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular protection</td>
<td>Rb₁</td>
<td>Zhan <em>et al</em>., 1994; Zhou <em>et al</em>., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angiogenesis (wound-healing)</td>
<td>Ginsenosides Re, Rg₁ (Rb₁ inhibits angiogenesis)</td>
<td>Huang <em>et al</em>., 2005; Sengupta <em>et al</em>., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitric oxide release</td>
<td>Rb₁, Rg₁, Rg₂, polysaccharides</td>
<td>Kim <em>et al</em>., 1992; Kang <em>et al</em>., 1995; Chen, 1996; Kim <em>et al</em>., 1999; Friedl <em>et al</em>., 2001; Lu <em>et al</em>., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihypertensive</td>
<td>Rg₁</td>
<td>Kim <em>et al</em>., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour inhibition</td>
<td>Polyacetylenes, polysaccharides, Rb₁, Rg₁, Rg₂, Rg₃</td>
<td>Helms <em>et al</em>., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunomodulation</td>
<td>Rg₁, Rg₂, polysaccharides</td>
<td>Joo <em>et al</em>., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroprotection</td>
<td>Ginsenosides Rb₁, Rg₁, Rg₂</td>
<td>Chen <em>et al</em>., 2003; Bao <em>et al</em>., 2005; Radad <em>et al</em>., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory enhancing</td>
<td>Rb₁, Rc, Rd, Re, Rf, Rg₁, Rg₂, Rh₁</td>
<td>Rudarkewich <em>et al</em>., 2001; Bao <em>et al</em>., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihyperglycaemic</td>
<td>Rb₁, Rc, Rd, Re, Rf, Rg₁, Rg₂, Rh₁</td>
<td>Sievenpiper <em>et al</em>., 2004; Xie <em>et al</em>., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiallergic</td>
<td>Rh₁, Rh₂</td>
<td>Friedl <em>et al</em>., 2001; Park <em>et al</em>., 2004</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
different ginsenoside profile than American ginseng (*Panax quinquefolius* L.). For the genus *Panax*, the pharmacologically active marker compounds are ginsenosides, while *P. quinquefolius* does not contain the ginsenoside Rf. Likewise, 24(R)-pseudoginsenoside F11 is specific to American ginseng. Thus, data from studies of *Panax ginseng* may not be applicable to other commercially available *Panax* species referred to by the general name ginseng. These include American ginseng (*Panax quinquefolius* L.), Japanese ginseng (*P. japonicus* C.A. Meyer) and Siberian ginseng (*Eleutherococcus senticosus* and *P. notoginseng*).

Among *Panax* species, significant variation exists in both the types and ratios of ginsenosides. The most abundant ginsenosides in *P. ginseng* are Rb1 and Rg1, which generally occur in a ratio from 1 to 3. For example, in *P. quinquefolius*, the Rb1 : Rg1 ratio is approximately 6 : 1; and Rb1 and Rb2 ginsenosides have been well documented to be higher and lower in concentration than those in *P. ginseng*. Variability in concentration suggests that standardisation is necessary for quality assurance (Cui et al., 1996; Harkey et al., 2001). However, it may be too simplistic to determine ginseng’s biological activity by ginsenosides alone. For example, polysaccharides isolated from the aqueous extract of *Panax ginseng* root powder showed strong stimulation of inducible nitric oxide (NO) synthesis, whereas the fraction containing triterpenic ginsenosides does not show any stimulation of NO release (Friedl et al., 2001). It seems questionable to qualify commercially available ginseng preparations solely via their ginsenoside content. Cell culture systems that provide activity-based tests could better serve as an effective means to provide specific predication about the overall effects.

**Ratio of Rg1 and Rb1 and the yin and the yang**

Ginsenosides are associated with the pharmacological activity of *Panax* species, yet, the two key ginsenosides, Rb1 and Rg1, may mechanistically exert opposing activity: Rg1 is a weak stimulant of the central nervous system (which is considered to be ‘yang’, i.e. more stimulating and energising), whereas Rb1 is a depressant of the central nervous system (which is considered to be more ‘yin’, i.e. more balanced, calming and less stimulating). The extract from *Panax ginseng*, which has a predominance of Rb1, exerted a preventive effect in multiple cancer models (Yun et al., 2001). For example, American ginseng has a lower ratio of ginsenoside Rg1 to Rb1 than Asian ginseng (Li, 1996), and is thus considered to be more ‘yin’ (i.e. more balanced and less stimulating) than Asian ginseng (Hobbs et al., 1996). In contrast, Sanqí ginseng is considered the key ingredient for the treatment of trauma injuries and for promoting microcirculation (Lee et al., 2000), which would be consistent with the proangiogenic activity of its predominant ginsenoside, Rg1. There are reports of both wound-healing and antitumour effects of ginseng extract through opposing activities on the vascular system. Sengupta et al. (2004) demonstrated that the dominance of Rg1 leads to angiogenesis, whereas Rb1 exerts an opposing effect. Reconstituting an extract by adding Rg1 and Rb1 in a defined ratio could alter the angiogenic outcome. Thus the administration of an extract with a greater percentage of Rg1 than Rb1 might result in the induction of significant angiogenesis. In contrast, the over-abundance of Rb1 may only inhibit Rg1-induced neovascularisation (Sengupta et al., 2004).

In addition, Rb1 and Rg1 exert opposite effects on modulating the immune function and inflammation in a dose-dependent manner (Joo et al., 2005). Whereas Rg1 stimulated NO and pro-inflammatory cytokines (IL-1β, IL-6, and TNF-α), Rb1 exerted a significant inhibitory effect on this pro-inflammatory repertoire. In addition, the genetic expression of bcl-2 and bax, both of which have been implicated in apoptosis, was regulated by treatment with Rb1 and Rg1. When combined treatment with equal doses of Rb1 and Rg1 was administered, Rb1 significantly counteracted the stimulatory effects of Rg1, as shown in a NO assay. The existence of opposing active principles in ginseng emphasises the importance of standardisation through compositional analysis, and the need for standardising herbal therapy.

**Adaptogen and effects on exercise performance**

*Panax ginseng* is considered a tonic or adaptogen that enhances physical performance, relieves fatigue, promotes vitality and increases resistance to stress.
Chinese traditional medicine considers ginseng to have beneficial effects on physical capacity, alertness, and power of concentration, especially in the elderly and those recovering from illness (Fulder, 1990, Tang et al., 1992). It is also used by athletes to enhance their ‘energy level’ (Bahrke and Morgan, 2000).

Although the mechanism underlying the alleged ergogenicity of ginseng on physical performance has not been defined, theories include stimulation of the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal cortex axis and increased resistance to the stress of exercise, enhanced myocardial metabolism, increased haemoglobin levels, vasodilation, increased oxygen extraction by muscles, reduced oxidative stress, and improved mitochondrial metabolism in the muscle, all of which theoretically could enhance aerobic exercise performance (Kim et al., 2005).

A careful study by Pieralisi et al. (1991), using a double-blind crossover design, indicated that ginseng significantly increased workload and oxygen uptake in normal subjects. At a fixed workload, ginseng decreased oxygen consumption, carbon dioxide production, and plasma lactate. Chinese ginseng improved maximal oxygen uptake (VO2max), post-exercise recovery (heart rate lowered 6 beats/min for the 6 min after exercise), pectoral strength (by 22% as measured by a dynamometer), and quadriceps strength (by 18% as measured by dynamometer) (McNaughton et al., 1989). Administration of ginseng or its components enhanced exercise endurance by altering fuel homeostasis during exercise, increased free fatty acid utilisation in preference over glucose for cellular energy demands in rats and mice (Bahrke and Morgan, 2000; Bucci, 2000). However, based on a review of the ergogenic properties of ginseng, most clinical trials investigating the value of Panax ginseng in enhancing physical performance have shown no clinical effect (Bahrke and Morgan, 2000). For example, two studies found no effects of ginseng on physical performance. The first study showed that 8 weeks of supplementation with a standardised ginseng extract of 200 mg a day failed to affect work performance and energy metabolism in a group of healthy women (Engels et al., 1996). The second study, examined the effects of doses of 200 and 400 mg of standardised ginseng extract compared with a placebo, given to 36 healthy men and found no effect of ginseng at either dose on physiological or psychological parameters such as oxygen consumption, respiratory exchange ratio, minute ventilation, blood lactic acid concentrations, heart rate and perceived exertion (Engels et al., 1997). In another small study 28 healthy, adult subjects were given a standardised ginseng extract for 21 days, but no ergogenic effects were found (Allen et al., 1998).

An examination of available data reveals most of the variation in results arises from a dose–response and duration effect, differences between subjects’ age, and the variability in the quality of the supplement and/or different methods of study. Properly controlled studies exhibiting statistically significant improvements in physical or psychomotor performance almost invariably used higher doses (usually standardised to ginsenoside content equivalent to 2 g dried root daily), longer durations of study (±8 week), and larger subject numbers, indicating greater statistical power (Buettner et al., 2006). With lower doses, short durations, and small subject numbers, studies show no significant differences in performance, physiologic, or psychomotor measurements (Morris et al., 1996; Engels and Wirth, 1997; Allen et al., 1998).

Forgo et al. (1982) studied 120 subjects aged 30–60 years for 12 weeks in a double-blind study. Subjects were given either placebo or 200 mg/day of a standardised ginseng extract. Supplementation was associated with significantly reduced reaction times for those subjects aged 40–60 years but not for those aged 30–39 years. Men in this youngest group showed no significant effect from ginseng on pulmonary functions (vital capacity, forced expiratory volume, maximum expiratory flow, and maximum breathing capacity). Women aged 30–39 years and both sexes aged 40–60 years showed significant improvements in all four measurements of pulmonary function after 12 weeks of supplementation. No significant changes by age or sex were found for serum concentrations of luteinising hormone, testosterone or oestradiol. As with pulmonary function, subjective self-assessment showed significant improvements in women of all ages but only in men aged 40–60 years. Importantly, changes became significant after 6 weeks of supplementation and were more significant at 12 weeks, suggesting a slow-acting effect. Thus, studies lasting fewer than
12 weeks (Morris et al., 1996; Engels and Wirth, 1997; Allen et al., 1998) may not have been long enough to show a significant effect. For example, in a study with 31 healthy men who took 200 or 400 mg of extract daily for 8 weeks, no change in physiological or maximal exercise (Engels and Wirth, 1997) was found. In addition, there was no ergogenic effect on peak aerobic exercise performance following a 3-week supplementation period of 200 mg of 7% Panax ginseng in healthy young adults with moderate exercise capacities and unrestricted diets (Allen et al., 1998).

Ginseng exhibits effective antioxidant, free-radical scavenging activity, and inhibits lipid peroxidation (Fu and Ji, 2003). Intense exercise may increase the production of free radicals or reactive oxygen species. A free radical prefers to steal electrons from the lipid membrane of a cell, initiating a free-radical attack on the cell known as lipid peroxidation. Kanter et al. (1988) have demonstrated that post-exercise plasma creatine kinase (CK) elevations may be related to an exercise-induced lipid peroxidation. Low physiological levels of NO could act as an antioxidant, protecting the muscle from any deleterious effect of exhaustive exercise (Perez et al., 2002).

NO production after a single bout of exercise may reflect a systemic inflammatory response to heavy exercise. In a recent study on rats, ginseng treatment (11 mg/kg) protected muscles from eccentric exercise injuries and reduced NO concentrations in vastus and rectus (Cabral de Oliveira et al., 2005). Hsu et al. (2005) reported that oral supplementation with American ginseng (400 mg per capsule, 4 capsules daily) containing 8.7% ginsenosides Rb1 for 4 weeks in 13 male volunteers (aged 23 years) significantly reduced the leakage of plasma CK during exercise, but did not enhance aerobic work capacity. The reduction of plasma CK may be due to the fact that ginseng is effective for decreasing skeletal muscle cell membrane damage, induced by exercise during an exhaustive treadmill run. Thus, under appropriate conditions, ginseng root extracts may increase muscular strength and aerobic work capacity. Requirements are:

- sufficient daily dose (≥2000 mg P. ginseng root powder or an equivalent amount of root extract with standardised ginsenoside content)

- sufficient duration for effects to develop (≥8 wk)

- sufficient intensity of physical or mental activity (especially in untrained or older subjects)(Bucci, 2000).

Ginseng may exert greater benefits for untrained or older (>40 years) subjects and does not appear to exert any acute effects on physical performance.

### Role of nitric oxide

Studies have shown that ginseng and ginsenosides induce NO release, a primary vasodilator. Specifically in an animal model and in-vitro studies, ginseng causes vasorelaxation and prevents manifestations of oxygen free-radical injury by promoting release of NO by endothelial cells. Purified components of GS, Rb1, and especially Rg1, relax pulmonary vessels, and this effect is eliminated by nitro-L-arginine, an inhibitor of nitric oxide (NO) synthase (Chen et al., 1996). In support of this proposal, Kim et al. (1992) found that conversion of [14C]L-arginine to [14C]L-citrulline in confluent bovine aortic endothelial cells in culture was enhanced significantly by ginseng and by Rg1, but not by Rb. A single injection (intraperitoneal) of ginseng extract (200 mg/kg) increased the levels of nitrites, nitrates and cGMP in rat serum and urine (Han and Kim, 1996). These effects were reversed by inhibition of NO synthase and restored by L-arginine. Similar action was observed in the rat kidney, isolated glomeruli, and cortical tubules and the action was blocked by inhibition of NO synthase. Ginseng extract appears to stimulate NO production in the kidney and thus may protect against ischaemia by increasing renal blood flow (Han and Kim, 1996). Kang et al. (1995) found that addition of ginseng to a high-cholesterol diet fed to rabbits preserved most of the normal dilatation of preconstricted aortic rings in response to acetylcholine. Interestingly, ginseng did not change endothelium-dependent relaxation to acetylcholine in animals receiving a normal diet. The mechanism of this effect is unknown but could reflect enhanced NO production or some enhancement of the guanylate cyclase pathway. Therefore, it would be appropriate to determine whether ginsenoside affects expression of NO synthase and guanylyl cyclase genes.
Several observations suggest that release of NO by ginseng may underlie the antioxidant effect of the extract. Wink et al. (1993) showed that NO-releasing agents protected Chinese hamster lung fibroblasts (V79 cells) from oxy-radical damage caused by hypoxanthine/xanthine oxidase, implying that NO, even at low concentrations, need not be cytotoxic.

The study also assessed whether similar actions would be seen after digestion designed to mimic the pH exposure after oral ingestion. Both digested and undigested ginseng dilated preconstricted perfused lung and preserved acetylcholine dilation following free-radical injury (Rimar et al., 1996). Ginsenosides Rg and Rb were much less effective vasodilators after similar digestion, suggesting that standardised extracts of ginseng may be more effective after oral administration than individual ginsenosides. It has been noted that ginsenosides from the protopanaxatriol group (e.g. Re and Rg), but not the protopanaxadiol group (e.g. Rb and Rc), enhanced the release of NO from endothelial cells (Kang, 1995). Kim et al. (1999) also showed that Rg, mediated endothelium-dependent relaxation through eNOS activation in rat arteries.

The relaxing blood vessels may contribute to the antifatigue and blood-pressure-lowering effects of ginseng. In a human study, a single administration of a ginseng water extract (500 mg/kg) increased NO levels in exhaled breath and concomitantly decreased mean blood pressure (Han et al., 2005). Ginseng also improves the vascular endothelial dysfunction in patients with hypertension possibly through increasing synthesis of NO (Sung et al., 2000). In some studies, total root extract was more effective than isolated ginsenosides. However, it appears that direct effects of ginseng on physical performance by enhancing the release of NO from endothelial cells in humans have not been conclusively linked.

Recent studies, therefore, suggest that some cardiovascular protection effects of ginseng may be explained by the enhanced presence of NO. Evidence has been offered that:

- ginseng enhances formation of citrulline from added arginine, implying enhanced synthesis of NO
- known inhibitors of NO synthase, including oxyhaemoglobin and substituted arginine derivatives, block both the action of ginseng on citrulline formation from arginine and Ach-induced vascular relaxation of preconstricted tissue
- when used, arginine reverses the action of NO synthase inhibitors
- when measured, tissue cGMP has been increased by ginseng
- some of the effects can be potentiated by the presence of arginine in ginseng extracts. It was found that 5mg/mL of a commercial ginseng extract may provide an average of 1 μmol/L arginine in the assays; this is enough to account for all inhibition of NO synthase (Bejar et al., 2003).

Using a pulmonary model in which endothelial injury is caused by a variety of reduced oxygen species, the protective action of ginseng is shown. Ginsenoside (50 or 200 μg/mL) prevented these vascular effects and also reduced the pulmonary oedema that follows free-radical injury (Kim et al., 1992). The latter effect was eliminated by 100 μmol/L nitro-L-arginine, an inhibitor of NO synthase. These data are consistent with the proposal that ginseng causes vasorelaxation and prevents manifestations of oxygen free-radical injury by promoting release of NO.

Effects on central nervous system

Recently, it has been shown that ginsenosides exert beneficial effects on ageing, central nervous system (CNS) disorders and neurodegenerative diseases in animal models (Bao et al., 2005; Radad et al., 2006). Rats treated orally with ginseng root extract (G115) 20 mg/kg per day for 3 days showed improved performance in behavioural tests designed to assess memory enhancement and retention. Ginseng also attenuated a pentylenetetrazole-induced decrease in rat brain monoamine oxidase activity, proposed as an endogenous marker for anxiety, confirming its tranquillising or anti-anxiety effect. In fact, actions of white and red ginseng after 5 days of treatment were comparable with those of diazepam (Bhattacharya and Mitra, 1991).

Some evidence is presented on the use of Panax ginseng and cognitive function. In one study, 112 healthy subjects over age 40 were given 400 mg of a
standardised ginseng product or placebo for 8 weeks. Those taking the ginseng experienced improved reaction times and abstract thinking. No changes were seen in concentration, memory or subjective experience (Sorensen and Sonne, 1996). Results of two other small studies, each with about 30 young, healthy subjects who received 200 mg of a standardised ginseng product (G115 extract, Ginsana, Pharmaton) daily for 8 weeks, showed improvement in attention processing, auditory reaction time, social functioning and aspects of mental health (D’Angelo et al., 1986; Ellis and Reddy, 2002). However, some of these effects, which were present at 4 weeks, disappeared by 8 weeks. Another small study of 20 healthy young subjects, who received a single dose of 400 mg ginseng extract found improvement in cognition, memory, speed of memory tasks and improvements in accuracy of memory tasks (Kennedy et al., 2002). In another double-blind, placebo-controlled study, no effect on psychological wellbeing was found in 83 healthy subjects who took 200–400 mg a day of a standardised ginseng extract for 8 weeks (Cardinal et al., 2001).

The mechanisms of ginseng’s actions on the CNS are not entirely clear. A number of studies has shown that some ginsenosides can modulate the activities of various important neurotransmitters such as choline, serotonin, acetylcholine, dopamine and their precursors in the brain. The ginsenoside Rb1 has been shown to prevent memory loss in rats caused by a cholinergic agent in rats. Ginsenosides Rb1 and Rg1 can modulate acetylcholine release and re-uptake and the number of choline uptake sites, especially in the hippocampus (Benishin et al., 1992). They also increase choline acetyltransferase levels in rat brains (Salim et al., 1997), indirectly leading to an increase in acetylcholine synthesis. Rb1 increases the maximum velocity of choline re-uptake in the hippocampus and cortex of rat brain, involved in memory and learning function, suggesting that ginsenosides Rb1 may improve central cholinergic function in humans and thus may be used to treat memory deficit (Rudakewich, 2001).

Scientific evidence suggests ginseng extract acts as an unspecific inhibitor for monamine-noradrenaline (NET), dopamine (DET) and serotonin (SERT) transporters (Bao et al., 2005; Radad et al., 2006). This inhibition of the transporters would result in an increase in the concentration of neurotransmitters in the brain, which may be linked to a mild central stimulant effect. It has also been reported that ginsenosides increase dopamine and noradrenaline in the cerebral cortex (Itoh et al., 1989), which may explain the favourable effects of ginseng extract upon attention, cognitive processing, integrated sensory motor function, and auditory reaction time in healthy subjects (D’Angelo et al., 1986). It has been shown that certain ginsenosides inhibit dopamine uptake into rat synaptosomes (Tsang et al., 1985) and consequently ginseng could potentially provide protection against MPP+ through blockade of its uptake by dopaminergic neurones (Van Kampen et al., 2003). Accordingly, ginseng total saponins can modulate dopaminergic activity at both pre-synaptic and post-synaptic receptors; and they can block behavioural sensitisation induced by psychostimulants such as morphine, cocaine, methamphetamines and nicotine (Shim et al., 2000; Radad et al., 2006). Furthermore, it was found that ginseng increased serotonin in the cortex, the ginseng saponins raised the levels of biogenic amines in normal rat brain, and ginsenoside Rg2 directly interacted with nicotinic receptor subtypes (Sala et al., 2002).

Ginseng administration leads to regulation of γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA)-ergic transmission in animals (Kimura et al., 1994; Choi et al., 2003). GABA₉ receptor is widely distributed in the CNS; many receptors are presynaptic and inhibit the release of other neurotransmitters. GABA₉ also mediates long-lasting synaptic hyperpolarisation, which leads to attenuation of nerve conduction. Compounds that activate GABA₉ receptor function tend to be good analgesics, while baclofen is a specific agonist. Total ginseng saponins were found to decrease baclofen binding. Ginsenoside Rc has shown some interaction on GABA receptors, which are involved in mood regulation and pain relief. The concentration of ginsenoside Rc may be above 2% in many extracts containing a high 9% ginsenoside concentration (Bejar et al., 2003). It has been reported that total saponin fraction (10 µg/mL) and all purified ginsenosides Rb1, Rb2, Rc, Re, Rf, and Rg1 inhibited high specific binding at a single concentration of 100 µmol/L for the specific [³H]muscimol. This binding reflects interaction with the GABA₉ agonist site of the GABA₉R. However, in contrast to
GABA<sub>A</sub>R reported results, not all ginsenosides, but only ginsenoside Rc, demonstrated inhibition at 100 μmol/L (Kimura <i>et al.</i>, 1994).

Ginsenosides Rg<sub>1</sub> (S) and Rg<sub>5</sub>/Rk<sub>1</sub> have been shown to significantly reverse memory dysfunction (Bao <i>et al.</i>, 2005). Ginsenosides Rg<sub>3</sub>(R), Rg<sub>3</sub>(S) or Rg<sub>1</sub>/Rk<sub>1</sub>, when orally administered for 4 days, significantly ameliorated the memory impairment induced by the single oral administration of ethanol or intraperitoneal injection of scopolamine. These ginsenosides protect against the excitotoxic and oxidative stress-induced neuroneal cell damage in primary cultured rat cortical cells. Among the ginsenosides tested, the Rg<sub>1</sub>/Rk<sub>1</sub> combination was the most effective and potent, suggesting Rg<sub>1</sub>/Rk<sub>1</sub> and Rg<sub>3</sub>(S) may have therapeutic potential for clinical management of memory loss.

More recent studies suggest the mechanisms by which ginseng improves cognitive performance may also be related to the glycemic properties of some <i>Panax</i> species (Reay <i>et al.</i>, 2005). In a double-blind, placebo-controlled, balanced crossover design study, 27 healthy young adults consumed capsules containing either ginseng (200 mg of extract G115) or a placebo and 30 minutes later a drink containing glucose or placebo. Both <i>Panax ginseng</i> and glucose enhanced the performance of a mental arithmetic task and ameliorated the increase in subjective feelings of mental fatigue experienced by participants, and cognitively demanding task performance. <i>Panax ginseng</i> caused a reduction in heart rate levels 1 hour following consumption when ingested without glucose. These results confirm that <i>Panax ginseng</i> may possess gluco-regulatory properties and can enhance cognitive performance.

There are few reports concerning the effect of ginseng on other neurodegenerative diseases. For example, two reports suggest that ginseng and its components prevent neuronal loss in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis models, and <i>Ginseng radix</i> has also been used for treatment of Alzheimer’s disease (Jiang <i>et al.</i>, 2000; Lee <i>et al.</i>, 2001).

**Effects of cardiovascular protection**

Cardiovascular effects of ginseng root and individual ginsenosides have been studied extensively. Many reports describe transient vasodilator actions, followed by vasoconstriction and increase in blood pressure. Several authors have implicated the adrenergic nervous system in the cardiovascular effects of ginseng (Zhang and Chen, 1987), and it was reported (Tachikawa <i>et al.</i>, 1995) that the panaxatriols, particularly Rg, reduced acetylcholine-evoked release of catecholamines from bovine adrenal chromaffin cells. Extrapolating from these data, the authors suggest that ginseng may reduce elevated circulating catecholamine concentrations associated with various forms of stress in humans. It has been suggested that these actions might reflect the interaction of ginseng with an endogenous vasoactive substance, and are associated with NO released from endothelial cells (see below) (Chen, 1996; Kim <i>et al.</i>, 1999; Friedl <i>et al.</i>, 2001; Radad <i>et al.</i>, 2006).

Ginsenoside Rb<sub>1</sub> bears various beneficial effects on the cardiovascular system. The treatment of rats with standardised ginseng extract (10 mg/mL of drinking water for 7 days) had cardioprotective effects that could be demonstrated in vivo (Maffei-Facino <i>et al.</i>, 1999). After treatment either with ginseng or water (as control), animals were exposed to hyperbaric hyperoxia (100% O<sub>2</sub>; 2.5 atm [253.3 kPa] for 6 h). Hearts from G115-treated rats showed significantly lower coronary vasoconstriction in response to angiotensin II than control hearts. Endothelial function in aortic rings from ginseng-treated animals was preserved, as evidenced by normal relaxation in response to acetylcholine and a modest vasoconstriction after inhibition of NO synthase. Both observations imply protection of endothelial function from oxygen radical damage. Therefore, this study confirms and extends data of Kim <i>et al.</i> (1992) by establishing that oral administration of a standardised ginseng provides significant antioxidant action and may also stimulate NO synthase.

The cardioprotective action of ginseng against ischaemia–reperfusion injury has been reported in a study of patients undergoing cardiopulmonary bypass for mitral valve surgery (Zhan <i>et al.</i>, 1994). Among 30 patients studied, 11 received a normal cardioplegic solution (used to suspend cardiac action during phases of the surgical procedure), 11 received a solution with ginseng extract (0.6 to
1.2 mg/kg) and 8 received a solution containing ginsenosides in total and Rb (0.3 to 0.6 mg/kg). Cardiac performance was monitored by the oesophageal Doppler technique and also by morphometric analysis of samples of left ventricular myocardium. Total ginseng extract enhanced recovery of cardiac haemodynamic performance and significantly lowered mitochondrial swelling during the period of ischaemia. Interestingly, total root extract in these studies was more effective than the individual ginsenosides used. Unfortunately, the nature of the ginseng extract (type, extraction technique) is not stated. Nevertheless, this study is intriguing and awaits independent confirmation.

Homocysteine is an independent risk factor for cardiovascular disease by its multiple effects on vascular cells and thrombosis factors, which may be involved in oxidative stress mechanisms. Ginseng compounds have effects of vasorelaxation and antioxidation. Recent studies showed that ginsenoside Rb1 can effectively block homocysteine-induced dysfunction of endothelium-dependent vasorelaxation as well as superoxide anion production and endothelial nitric oxide synthase (eNOS) down-regulation (Ohashi et al., 2005; Zhou et al., 2005). The findings suggest that ginseng and its active constituents may have potential clinical applications in protecting the endothelium against homocysteine and superoxide-associated injuries. The study provides some new aspects of ginsenosides on cardiovascular disease prevention.

**Effects on immune system and anti-inflammatory response**

Ginseng may support a healthy immune system. A study with 227 healthy volunteers demonstrated that giving 100 mg daily of a standardised extract for a period of 12 weeks enhanced the effect of the influenza vaccine. Subjects who received ginseng had a lower incidence of influenza and common cold, high antibody titres and higher natural killer cell activity: all indicating an improvement in immune system response (Scaglione et al., 1990). In a second study by the same research group, in 60 healthy volunteers 100 mg of standardised ginseng extract, given twice a day, improved a number of immune system response factors (chemotaxis, phagocytosis and increased white blood cell count) (Scaglione et al., 1990). During a double-blind investigation, a standardised extract of ginseng root was given orally to volunteers, resulting in reduced susceptibility to infectious respiratory tract diseases (Scaglione et al., 1996).

Macrophages constitute the first line of host defences in conferring immunity against infections. Macrophages are known to produce NO, and one of the most prominent functions of NO is its participation in antimicrobial and antiviral defence (Nathan et al., 1991). iNOS inhibitors have been shown to exacerbate infectious diseases (Chan et al., 1995), yet the enhancement of bacterial clearance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa-infected athymic rats by ginseng extract treatment has been shown (Song et al., 1997). iNOS stimulation by Panax ginseng might contribute to a decreased susceptibility to infections because of an enhanced NO release. Aqueous extracts of Panax ginseng root directly enhance transcriptional activity of the iNOS promoter via transcription factor NF-κB, leading to increased iNOS mRNA and protein levels (Friedl et al., 2001).

A fraction from an aqueous extract of Panax ginseng root powder possesses stimulating activity completely attributed to the polysaccharide-containing fraction. The fraction containing triterpenic ginsenosides did not display any stimulation of NO release. Experiments with polysaccharides isolated from these aqueous extracts confirmed the stimulating activity of these substances on the inducible NO synthase. The effect of very high NO output at the highest concentration induced a phenomenon of negative feedback control of iNOS mRNA levels. Ginsenoside Rg1 increased the number of Th cells and induced an augmentation of the production of IL-1 by macrophages (Kenarova et al., 1990); and enhanced the production of NO from interferon (IFN)-γ activated RAW cells (Fan et al., 1995). In contrast, ginsenosides Rh1 and Rh2 inhibited NO production in LPS/IFN-γ treated macrophages (Park et al., 1996). Ginsenoside Rg1 could enhance NO production and the expression of eNOS messenger RNA in TNF-α-stimulated human umbilical vein endothelial cells; and ginsenoside Rg1 regulates sets of genes in endothelial cells and protects endothelial cells from TNF-α activation (Lu et al., 2004).
**Panax ginseng** with anti-inflammatory and anti-allergic actions

The root of *Panax ginseng* has been also reported to possess anti-inflammatory and anti-allergic actions. Park *et al.* (2004) reported the antiallergic activity of ginsenosides isolated from ginseng in vitro and in vivo on rat peritoneal mast cells and on IgE-induced passive cutaneous anaphylaxis in mice. Ginsenoside Rh₁ potently inhibited histamine release from rat peritoneal mast cells and the IgE-mediated anaphylaxis reaction in mice. Rh₁ was also found to have a membrane-stabilising action. It also inhibited inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) and cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) protein expression in RAW 264.7 cells, and the activation of the transcription factor, NF-κB, in nuclear fractions (Friedl *et al.*, 2001).

**Effects on type 2 diabetes**

The effects of *Panax ginseng* show promise for managing type 2 diabetes. In a study with 36 patients with newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes, 100 or 200 mg of a standardised ginseng extract for 8 weeks improved fasting blood sugar levels. The 200 mg dose also resulted in improved haemoglobin A₁c values (a measurement of long-term blood sugar control) (Sotaniemi *et al.*, 1995). *Panax ginseng* (6 g/day for 6 weeks) also improved postprandial glycaemia and insulin sensitivity in type 2 diabetes (Vuksan *et al.*, 2000). American ginseng (3 g) decreased postprandial glycaemia acutely in healthy subjects and subjects with type 2 diabetes when taken orally (Sievenpiper *et al.*, 2004).

The mechanisms underlying improving blood glucose levels associated with ginseng extract and its major active components may be multifaceted. Firstly, ginseng extract may decrease food intake and reduce absorption of the source of carbohydrate (Attele *et al.*, 2002). Secondly, treatment with ginseng extract increased serum insulin levels (Kimura *et al.*, 1981), improved peripheral insulin sensitivity (Xie *et al.*, 2002), and stimulated cellular glucose uptake (Hasegawa *et al.*, 1994). Since ginsenosides are shown to release NO from vascular tissues (Chen, 1996), and NO is known to stimulate glucose-dependent secretion of insulin in rat islet cells (Spinas *et al.*, 1998), ginseng extract may affect glucose transport, which is mediated by NO and thus modulates NO-mediated insulin secretion (Roy *et al.*, 1998). Lastly, the antioxidant property of ginseng extract may be a significant mechanism of antidiabetic action.

**Ginkgo**

The constituents of the ginkgo leaf that are of primary interest are the phenolic and terpenoid compounds. For effectiveness, *Ginkgo biloba* extracts are recommended to be standardised to 24% ginkgo flavone glycosides and 6% terpene lactones (Stromgaard *et al.*, 2005). Generally, the ginkgolic acids are removed from ginkgo preparations.

The flavone glycosides neutralise free radicals and improve circulation by diluting small blood vessels, thereby believed to protect brain cells against damage by oxygen deprivation. The diterpene ginkgolides are believed to antagonise activities of inflammation and blood clotting associated with platelet-activating factor (Cooper, 2003; Nakanishi, 2005).

A combination of these chemical compounds and their actions are believed to be responsible for this herb's efficacy in improving blood circulation in the brain and application for use in slowing age-related cognitive decline. In a recent meta-analysis, researchers reviewed the efficacy and safety of *Ginkgo biloba* for the treatment of patients with dementia or cognitive decline. Thirty-three relevant clinical trials were selected for review and were all randomised, double-blind controlled studies (Birks and Evans, 2003). The daily dose of ginkgo extract used in these studies varied from 80 to 600 mg. All studies used a standardised extract containing 24% total flavone glycosides and 6% of ginkgolides. Treatment periods also varied from 3 to 52 weeks, with the majority being of 12 weeks' duration. Although most studies only reported the results of those who completed treatment, most studies indicated positive results compared with placebo. Several rating scales or tests were used to assess ginkgo's effect on cognition and included memory impairment, attention, concentration and speed of learning. In addition, the effect of ginkgo on activities of daily living and measures on mood and emotion were also
studied in some cases. Results of this meta-analysis suggest that a daily dose of 80–200 mg of a standardised extract of ginkgo over a 12-week period has beneficial effects on cognition compared with a placebo.

**Effects of ginkgo on memory and cognition**

The effects of ginkgo on memory and cognition have also been studied in healthy subjects (no known cognitive decline). Kennedy *et al.* (2000) examined the effects of three doses of a standardised extract of ginkgo (120, 240 and 360 mg) vs placebo in a double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover design study in healthy, young volunteers (age 19–24 years). Results indicated that ginkgo administration produced a number of significant time- and dose-specific changes in cognitive performance, especially noted in measurements of ‘speed of attention’ with doses of 240 and 360 mg (Kennedy *et al.*, 2000).

To demonstrate cognitive performance in healthy subjects, a large double-blind, placebo-controlled trial examined the effects of a standardised extract of ginkgo on neurological and memory processes of older, healthy adults. In this study 262 volunteers (male and female, 60 years and older) were randomised to receive 180 mg of ginkgo extract per day or a placebo for a duration of 6 weeks. Efficacy measures included a comparison of performance scores from baseline and 6 weeks on a series of standardised tests used to measure cognition and memory. Results indicated that the ginkgo treatment significantly improved tasks involving recall and recognition of visual and auditory material. Subjects taking ginkgo also reported subjective improvements in overall ability to remember compared with those taking a placebo (Mix and Crew, 2002).

Not all trials with healthy adult groups have resulted in positive effects. In a well-designed, 6-week, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial examining the effects of 120 mg of a standardised extract of ginkgo in 203 older men and women (60 and older), researchers found no effect of ginkgo treatment on measures of memory, attention and concentration using standardised neuropsychological tests. Limitations of this study may have impacted the results: the dose used was not high enough to elicit a response in healthy subjects or the duration of the study was too short at 6 weeks (Solomon *et al.*, 2002).

The main focus of the substantiated claims for a ginkgo extract at a 120 mg dose is centred on concentration and memory. These studies (Hofferberth *et al.*, 1989) all show significant improvements in memory and concentration versus placebo over 8–12-week periods of supplementation with *Ginkgo biloba* extract (GBE). Other cognitive function tests, mental performance tests, and psychometric exams, have also been utilised in clinical studies to show the effects of ginkgo. Three studies (Wesnes *et al.*, 1987; Rai *et al.*, 1991; Grässel, 1992), using either computer tests or exams, have independently shown significant improvements in memory and mental performance (speed in mental processing) versus placebo. Short-term effects of GBE have also been studied in normal, healthy volunteers, generally younger adults aged approximately 20–30 years. These studies have ranged from assessments conducted after 1–3 hours following acute (single-dose) ingestion of the product (Hindmarch, 1988). Furthermore, a 1995 double-blind crossover study out of New York compared GBE with two different Ginkgo extract products using computer electroencephalographic/brain-mapping techniques. GBE produced the most homogeneous CNS effects and was the only extract that could be classified as a cognitive activator (Itil and Martorano, 1995).

*Ginkgo biloba* has also been studied for its effectiveness as a treatment for Alzheimer’s disease. The ginkgolides have long been promoted as memory-enhancing components and even demonstrated to inhibit or eliminate the deadly effects of amyloid peptides. Ginkgolide A and ginkgolide J are the two ginkgolides that were shown to exhibit activity, however, ginkgolide J is the least abundant ginkgolide (Nakanishi, 2005). The efficacy of ginkgo for this purpose was reviewed in a meta-analysis by Oken *et al.* (1998). A review of 50 articles resulted in only four studies that met researchers’ inclusion criteria (clear diagnosis of Alzheimer’s disease, clearly stated exclusion criteria, use of stated standardised extract of 24 or 25% ginkgo-flavone glycosides, 6% terpene lactones, randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study and at least one outcome measure to
assess cognitive function). Of the four studies, a total of 212 subjects each received ginkgo (120 or 240 mg) or a placebo. The duration of these studies was 3–6 months and overall researchers concluded a significant effect of ginkgo treatment on objective measures of cognitive function in subjects with Alzheimer’s. This translated into a 3% difference in the Alzheimer’s disease assessment scale-cognitive subtest (Oken et al., 1998).

Ginkgo and GABA

γ-Aminobutyric acid (GABA) is the major inhibitory amino acid neurotransmitter in the mammalian CNS and present in about 40% of all neurones. GABA protects brain cells by interfering with deleterious activity triggered during trauma or ageing. GABA effects are mediated through three different GABA receptors: GABA_A, GABA_B, and GABA_C. The GABA_A receptor contains several sites of action referred to as the benzodiazepine, the GABA and the internal chloride channel sites. Drugs such as diazepam work by interacting in the benzodiazepine site, potentiating GABA activity, while the GABA and the chloride channel sites are considered targets for anticonvulsant medications.

Ginkgo extracts exhibit an interaction with benzodiazepine and GABA_A agonist sites which may elicit an anti-anxiety effect. Bilobalide, one of the active constituents in Ginkgo, seems also to play a major role in GABA modulation in the brain (van Beek et al., 1998). Ginkgo extract elicits antianxiety effects in a number of animal models and this has been observed in clinical trials.

Peripheral benzodiazepine receptor (stress regulation)

The peripheral benzodiazepine receptors (PBRs) were first described more than 20 years ago as benzodiazepine-binding sites in non-neuroneal tissue (Braestrup and Squires, 1977). Studies have demonstrated this mitochondrial receptor is implicated in regulating stress responses. Acute single forced swimming stress in rats is associated with a significant increase in PBR density in cerebral cortex, olfactory bulb, kidney, platelets, and lymphocytes (Novas et al., 1987). The same increase is observed in animals subjected to acute noise levels. In clinical studies, platelet PBRs were assessed in psychiatric residents who were completing the written part of a board-certification examination in comparison with age- and sex-matched controls. The platelet PBR density was significantly elevated immediately after the examination and showed a trend toward a decrease to normal range 10 days later. Similar changes were detected in anxiety levels, as measured by the appropriate rating scale (Karp et al., 1989). Thus, as shown in animal studies, acute stress in humans can lead to an increase in PBRs.

PBR is a key element in the formation of hormones transporting cholesterol essential for the synthesis of glucocorticoids. Research suggests that ginkgo decreases the levels of corticosterone by inhibiting production of PBR and the PBR channel itself. These findings may have an impact in a number of medical conditions such as panic disorder, post-traumatic stress disorder, and generalised anxiety disorder, where a large concentration of glucocorticoids has been found.

Research suggests that a standardised extract of ginkgo (761 EGB) and ginkgolides A and B decrease corticosterone levels by inhibiting production of PBR and the PBR channel itself (Amri et al., 1996). The 761 EGB extract and the ginkgolides reduced ligand binding to PBR with very high affinity (K_d values were 1.9, 2.3 and 2.1 nmol/L respectively).

Garlic

The applicable part of garlic Allium sativum L. (Alliaceae) is the bulb and the pharmacological effects of garlic are attributed to allicin, ajoene and other organosulphur constituents such as S-allyl-L-cysteine.

A wide variation exists in the chemical composition of garlic products, reflecting differences in processing (Lawson, 1998). The constituent profile of garlic is unique and complex, being particularly rich in sulphur-containing compounds. The main constituents of garlic include cysteine sulphoxides (0.6% to 1.9%) of which the most abundant is alliin (S-allylcysteine sulphone) representing up to 14 mg/g fresh weight of cloves (Ueda et al. 1991; Mütsch-Eckner et al. 1992), followed by S-methyl analogue (methiin) which occurs in quantities of up
to 2 mg/g, followed by S-trans-1-propenylcysteine sulphoxide (isoalliin) at about 0.5 mg/g (Koch and Lawson, 1996; Lawson et al., 2005). The glutamylcysteines (0.5% to 1.6%) are represented by S-allyl and the S-trans-1-propenyl analogues which are the most abundant (Lawson et al., 2005). Other organosulphur components include the scordinins, a family of structurally related compounds to the thioglyco-phosphopeptides (Kominato, 1969).

Garlic is also noted for its very high content of fructans or fructosans which account for up to 65% of its dry weight, total carbohydrate content can reach 77%. Free amino acids, of which arginine is the most prevalent, constitute 10–15 mg/g fresh weight in cloves (Ueda et al., 1991). More detailed information about the chemical complexity in garlic preparations can be found elsewhere (Lawson et al., 2005).

Numerous research papers describe the use of garlic as a cholesterol-lowering agent, and several as an immune-stimulating agent (Lawson et al., 2005). Other activities such as antiatherosclerotic, antithrombotic, anticancer and antioxidant, as well as antimicrobial and detoxifying effects of garlic are well documented in the literature and beyond the scope of the present review (Lawson et al., 2005).

**Use of garlic in cardiovascular disease models**

Garlic possesses pharmacological effects in a number of conditions including hypertension, hyperlipidaemia, prevention of coronary heart disease, as well as age-related vascular changes, atherosclerosis, reducing re-infarction and mortality rate post-myocardial infarction (World Health Organization, 1999).

A recent focus of attention is on the mechanism of action of how garlic lowers total cholesterol, low-density lipoproteins and triglycerides, and increases high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (Agarwal, 1998; Singh and Porter, 2006). There is substantial clinical evidence that shows the consumption of the equivalent of one half to one clove of garlic daily leads to a decrease of 9–12% in serum cholesterol and average decrease in serum triglycerides of about 13%. Over 50 clinical studies have been conducted on the lipid-lowering effects of garlic, at least 19 (including 1275 patients) have been included into two meta-analyses (Silagy and Neil, 1994) and are detailed elsewhere (Lawson et al., 2005). Clearly various garlic preparations exhibit different antilipidaemic effects. In rodents oral and intraperitoneal administration of raw garlic (50–500 mg/kg) has a very significant effect in reducing glucose, cholesterol and triglycerides, whereas boiled garlic has little effect on these parameters (Thomson et al., 2006).

In two separate studies, solvent-extracted garlic and sulphur compounds given to patients with hyperlipidaemia, lowered cholesterol levels and the researchers suggested the effects resembled those of HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (Gebhardt and Beck, 1996).

One of the constituents in fresh garlic and solvent extracts is S-allyl-L-cysteine, which is also present in large amounts in aged garlic extract (AGE). This typically contains 19% of the S-allylcysteine found in the original cloves (Lawson, 1998). This compound is a potent inhibitor of hepatic cholesterol synthesis (Yeh and Liu, 2001). Recent research suggests the site of inhibition is downstream of lanosterol synthesis, as HMG-CoA reductase does not appear to be affected (Singh and Porter, 2006).

Accumulation of methylsterols was detected by gas chromatography in cultured hepatoma cells treated with fresh garlic macerates, suggesting that 4a-methyl oxidase is the principal enzyme inhibited in cholesterol synthesis. It has been concluded that all garlic compounds sharing an allyl-disulphide, or allyl sulphydryl group appear to be inhibitors of the enzyme (Singh and Porter, 2006).

An additional benefit of allyl sulphides in garlic preparations is LDL oxidative prevention. Many compounds share this activity including S-allyl cysteine, S-allyl mercaptocysteine, alliin, allixin, and by N-acetyl-S-allyl cysteine, a metabolite of S-allyl cysteine (Lau, 2006).

For hypertension, garlic is thought to reduce blood pressure by two mechanisms:

- causing smooth muscle relaxation and vasodilation by activating production of endothelium-derived relaxation factor (EDRF, nitric oxide) (Pedraza-Chaverri et al., 1998)
- inhibition of angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) (Sendl et al., 1992), although the latter
Garlic elicits vasodilator (antihypertensive) effects through activation of nitric oxide synthase (NOS) and thereby enhances the production of nitric oxide (NO). As noted earlier, NO is responsible for multiple functions in the body (see under ginseng). Garlic powder preparations also have been shown to possess strong affinity for NOS, although high concentrations of arginine may account for part of the effect when tested in vitro.

Garlic compounds have been shown to elicit ACE inhibition, particularly the γ-glutamyl cysteines (GGC) (Sendl et al., 1992; Rahman and Lowe, 2006).

**Antioxidant and immune-stimulating effects**

AGE prevents endothelial cell depletion of glutathione and reduces levels of NO and peroxides in macrophages (Ide et al., 1999). Although AGE preparations elicit some immune stimulation effects and enhance natural killer (NK) cell activity (Ishikawa et al., 2006), other garlic preparations also support and enhance the immune function (Kyo et al., 1999, 2001; Lamm and Riggs, 2001).

Comparison of the effects of garlic preparations to bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) immunotherapy reveals many common mechanisms. These include stimulation of the proliferation of lymphocytes; enhancement of macrophage phagocytosis; increased infiltration of macrophages and lymphocytes into tumours transplanted into animals; induction of splenic hypertrophy; stimulation of cytotoxic enhancement of NK cell activity and lymphokine-activated killer cell activity (Lamm and Riggs, 2001).

Garlic powder demonstrated positive effects on the general immune system and phagocytosis. Oral administration (600 mg/day) of garlic powder for 3 months in a geriatric population increased the percentage of peripheral granulocytes able to effectively phagocytose *E. coli* in an ex vivo assay (Kyo et al., 1999).

Allicin itself was shown to stimulate[^1^] thymidine incorporation in mouse splenocytes and enhance cell-mediated cytotoxicity in human peripheral mononuclear cells. The immune stimulatory effect of allicin appears to be mediated by redox-sensitive signalling of key regulatory proteins, such as activation of p21ras, which transduces a variety of extra-cellular signals regulating cell growth and differentiation. Allicin’s immune-stimulatory properties may be responsible for some of the anticancer effects of garlic (Patya et al., 2004), although the bioavailability of allicin and its rapid conversion to other compounds is now in question (Amagase, 2006).

**Conclusions**

In conclusion, it is clear that TCM is gaining wide acceptance beyond China and Asia. Today, as these medicines are being ‘rediscovered’, and are accepted by wider population groups, one challenge is to adapt modern scientific, biological and clinical standards. TCM favours a combination of several herbs to generate a putative clinical effect. This multiherb approach poses a challenge to manufacturing and to investigators seeking to identify the biological actives and substantiate a ‘structure function’ claim. There is, therefore, a need to carefully define a clinical trial paradigm that addresses structure function claims without sacrificing scientific rigour, and it is anticipated that more in vitro and in vivo pharmacology will be needed that links a biological response to an identified chemical signal. In this chapter, using select examples we have demonstrated the importance of linking such chemical signals to biological effects, leading to a therapeutic use, and this approach in turn may lead to better crafted, well-defined herbal extracts that demonstrate efficacy in clinical studies.

**Acknowledgement**

The author wishes to thank Chi Hee Kim for editorial help.

**References**


Kumura T, Saunders PA, Kim HS, et al. (1994). Interactions of ginsenosides with ligand-bindings of GABA(A) and GABA(B) receptors. Gen Pharmacol 25: 193–199.


Introduction

The terms *synergy* and *polyvalence* are often used to explain the effects of the many constituents found in herbal medicinal products and their extracts, particularly where it is difficult to distinguish the ‘active ingredient’.

The concept of ‘active ingredient’ has been useful in elucidating the chemical basis for the biological effect of a large number of medicinal and poisonous plants. Many naturally occurring compounds such as atropine, morphine, digoxin, quinine and menthol, originally taken as part of the complex mixture occurring in a solvent extract or distilled oil, now have extensive clinical use as single compounds since they give a pharmacological effect similar to that given by an extract from the plant in which they occur. It would be true to say that, to a large extent, over the last 100 years ‘orthodox’ ‘Western’ medicine has valued plants only as a source of such potent compounds, whose activity could be clearly demonstrated at low doses. Any drug discovery from natural sources carried out by the pharmaceutical industry is still very much based on this paradigm.

However, there were many medicinal plant species from which active ingredients could not be isolated and/or gave no immediately obvious effects when their extracts were tested pharmacologically. These extracts consisted of complex mixtures of many different compounds and were either dismissed as inactive, with anecdotal reports of activity being explained by the placebo effect, or they declined in use because of difficulties in analysis, standardisation or making ‘user-friendly’ dosage forms. It is only in the past three decades that this group of plants has re-emerged in the developed world, arousing interest from the general public as alternatives to orthodox medicines or as complementary products used to maintain health or treat aspects of diseases in which orthodox medication has had only limited success. As well as the mainly European and North American herbal substances that have enjoyed this renaissance, there is now a vast array of medicinal plants from other parts of the world, many of which have become globalised and
become significant items of commerce. This increase in commerce and public use has stimulated much scientific and clinical interest and one aspect of research that has been generated is to explain the effects seen in terms of ingredients detected which, on their own as single compounds, have relatively weak activity. Such explanations are often couched in terms of synergy and polyvalence, but the meaning of these terms is often not fully understood, with consequent confusion in their use.

For example, synergy is often stated to occur when an extract of a plant gives a greater (or safer) response than an equivalent dose of the compound considered to be the ‘active’ one. An example of this is the much improved antispastic effect shown by cannabis extract compared with an equivalent dose of tetrahydrocannabinol (Baker et al., 2000; Williamson, 2001). However, in such an instance, it might well be that other active compounds are present, some as yet undiscovered. In whole organism or tissue studies, other compounds present may be active against a range of targets, all contributing to the observed effect. In this instance it is polyvalence, rather than synergy, which is occurring, and this topic is discussed below.

Another situation sometimes explained by synergy is the loss of activity seen when an active crude extract is fractionated and the resulting fractions, when tested for the same activity, do not show an enhanced effect, e.g. the loss of cytotoxic activity seen when extracts of Kigelia pinnata were fractionated (Houghton, 2000). The explanation given in such circumstances is that activity is reduced because two compounds, which act together synergistically, have been separated into two discrete fractions. However, it should be always borne in mind that the loss may be due to the ‘actives’ having decomposed during the fractionation process or that they have become bound to one of the materials used, e.g. the stationary phase in chromatography.

This chapter aims to define synergy and polyvalence, discuss ways in which they can be assessed and quantified and give some examples of herbal medicinal products where these processes have been shown to occur.

Synergy

Definition

The literal meaning of synergy is ‘working together’ but a useful definition is ‘an effect seen by a combination of substances that is greater than would have been expected from a consideration of individual contributions’ (Heinrich et al., 2004). More precise definitions, incorporating mathematical considerations, have been discussed by Berenbaum (1989), who favoured the use of isoboles (see below) in determining synergy, since these are concerned with the effect and not with the mechanisms involved. Synergy as applied to herbal products has been discussed well in seminal papers by Williamson (2001; 2002), who also included the attenuation of toxicity or adverse effects seen with a mixture compared with one of its constituents. Synergy in the present chapter is used in a ‘positive’ sense, i.e. an increase in effect greater than that predicted, but it should not be forgotten that an unexpected decrease in activity, sometimes called ‘negative synergy’ or ‘antagonism’ may also occur, particularly in some interactions between orthodox medication and some herbal products (Barnes et al., 2002).

In the case of the pharmacological or clinical effects of herbal material, two types of synergy are observed. In one case the activity of an active compound, or extract, is increased in the presence of another compound or extract which, on its own, has no effect in the system under test at the concentrations used. This has been demonstrated for the flavonoids present in Artemisia annua, source of the antimalarial drug artemisinin, which at 5 μmol/L, well below their IC50 value of about 25 μmol/L, gave rise to a three- to fivefold reduction in the IC50 value of artemisinin when they were added to the in-vitro antiplasmodial test used (Chiung-Sheue Chen Liu et al., 1992).

The more common situation is when all compounds concerned have activity but, in combination, this is much greater than expected. This is exemplified by the reduction in platelet aggregation observed for the total mixture of ginkgolides from Ginkgo biloba L., as opposed to that given by
individual compounds, because of their activity as platelet-activating factor antagonists (Williamson, 2002).

In some traditional medicine systems, mixtures of plants are used rather than one species and so the situation is even more complex, although the same concepts of synergy apply, i.e. the mixture of the two (or more) species gives a better activity than either species on its own. This has been demonstrated for a mixture of extracts of *Salvia chamaeleaugnea* Berg. and *Leonotis leonorus* (L.) R.Br. against Gram-positive bacteria (Kamatou *et al.*, 2006). This mixture was used traditionally in South Africa against infections.

### Measurement of synergy: use of isoboles and isobolograms

Various mathematical models have been used to describe and determine synergism (Berenbaum, 1989) but the use of isobolograms is the method that is reckoned to be the best and has been used in recent publications. Although many researchers use the method without considering the mathematics involved, proof of the validity of the method was given by Berenbaum (1989) and this has provided a sound basis for its use.

The *isobole* method is applicable under most conditions and, since it is the ultimate effect which is the factor used in the measurement, it is independent of the mechanisms of action involved. The isobole is a curve, constructed by plotting coordinates consisting of values representing the *fractional effect* for each of two components. The fractional effect is the ratio of the ‘effect’ caused by the two compounds in combination to that of one of the compounds alone. The effect is a measure of activity, e.g. minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) for antibacterial and antifungal compounds, concentration giving 50% inhibition (IC$_{50}$) for enzyme studies or studies on cytotoxicity, 50% binding coefficient for receptor-binding studies.

The fractional effect (FE) of two compounds (or extracts) X and Y for antibacterial studies, in terms of their MIC for bacterial growth, can be expressed as follows (Schelz *et al.*, 2006):

\[
FE^X = \frac{MIC_{(X \text{ with } Y)}}{MIC_{(X \text{ alone})}}
\]

\[
FE^Y = \frac{MIC_{(Y \text{ with } X)}}{MIC_{(Y \text{ alone})}}
\]

The sum of the two fractional effects is known as the FE index and is the correlation between the two test substances. Different authors interpret the FE index in different ways. According to Berenbaum (1989) synergism is said to occur if the FE index is $\leq 1.0$, if 1.0, an additive effect is reckoned to occur, and antagonism if the FE is greater than 1.0. Schelz (2006), however, stated that if the FE index is $\leq 0.5$, the effect is synergistic; if $>0.5$ to 1.0, the effect is additive, if $>1.0$ to 4.0 it is indifferent and if $>4.0$ the effect of the two substances is antagonistic.

If $FE^X$ and $FE^Y$ are calculated for a series of the two compounds in different ratios, then an isobologram (Figure 6.1) can be constructed using the two values as coordinates to express the FE index for each combination of the two compounds. If no synergism exists, the coordinate points form a straight line but, if synergism exists, the points occur between the straight line and the origin in a concave shape, whereas if they are ‘outside’ the straight line, and give a convex curve, antagonism exists. Note that for a set of different mixtures of the same compounds, not all the combinations may give the same effect, i.e. some may show synergy while others may not.

![Figure 6.1 Isobologram to show areas of synergy and antagonism.](image)

Synergy and polyvalence in the activity of herbal products | 87
This is exemplified in Table 6.1 in data for the antibacterial activity (expressed as MIC) of volatile (X) and non-volatile (Y) fractions from the South African herb *Tarchonanthus camphoratus* L. (Asteraceae) (Van Vuuren, 2007). The data are plotted as an isobologram in Figure 6.2. The mixtures consisting of concentration ratios 12.8 : 3.2, 11.2 : 4.8, 9.6 : 6.4 and 8.0 : 8.0 all show synergism as shown by their being in a concave distribution in Figure 6.2. The 14.4 : 1.6 mixture shows an additive effect while the 6.4 : 9.6, 4.8 : 11.2, 3.2 : 12.8, 1.6 : 14.4 mixtures all show antagonism since they are ‘outside’ the straight line, representing a mere additive response. These set of results demonstrate the point noted above; that some concentration ratios may display synergy while others do not. Such a situation demonstrates how complicated it is to try to predict the activity of a herbal extract where relative concentrations of compounds may vary widely between batches or chemical races of the plant.

**Polyvalence**

Polyvalence can be defined as the range of biological activities that an extract may exhibit which contribute to the overall effect observed clinically or in vivo. It is often confused with synergism but the distinction lies in the fact that synergism is strictly concerned with only one pharmacological function, rather than a range of activities resulting in an overall effect. As mentioned above for synergy, Williamson (2001) discussed the role played by polyvalence in the scientific evidence for the claims often made for herbal traditional medicines, that the overall effect is greater, and sometimes different, than might be predicted from the activities of the individual components.

It is unusual for a disease to be due to, or to be corrected by, a single factor, so it is unlikely that one compound alone would successfully treat the disease in the patient, even when the disease and its cause are unequivocally certain. This ‘silver bullet’ concept, which has driven the drug discovery process for the past 100 years, is now increasingly viewed as inadequate in many clinical situations (Walker, 2007). As a result, in orthodox Western medicine, a cocktail of drugs is now commonly employed against diseases such as HIV infection and cancer. A similar situation arises in the treatment of a disease such as hypertension, where symptoms may be reduced by using a diuretic or beta-blocker, but other drugs have to be employed to compensate for their side-effects, e.g. potassium supplements are given to overcome the hypokalaemia induced by diuretics. Similarly antiemetics are commonly given as part of the regimen in cancer chemotherapy.

---

**Figure 6.2** Isobologram to demonstrate synergy, additive and antagonistic antibacterial effects with different ratios of volatile and non-volatile fractions of the South African herb *Tarchonanthus camphoratus* L.
A similar situation can be seen in many different traditional systems where herbs are used. In some systems, e.g. TCM and Ayurvedic medicine, such adjuvant herbs are clearly recognised and classified. Thus, in a Chinese prescription of, say, ten different herbs, one is recognised as providing the major activity, i.e. ‘the monarch’, while two or three others have a similar activity, i.e. ‘the ministers’ and the fourth group is chiefly utilised because they reduce unwanted side-effects caused by the major active herbs, i.e. ‘the assistants’ (Xue et al., 2003).

In many traditions however, such differentiation has not been codified, and knowledge is pragmatic or empirical. The need for a herbal plant to be collected at a specific time of year, or processed in a particular way, may be associated with a high level of the actives, but may also coincide with the presence (or absence) of other compounds that affect the activity. Even where such matters are of little concern, pharmacological and biochemical research over the past 30 years has increasingly shown that most herbs have several types of constituents and a corresponding range of biological effects. It is too simplistic to talk about a herb having one ‘active ingredient’ and one ‘activity’. The spectrum of activities, i.e. the polyvalence and the variety of compounds responsible for the effects seen are discussed in the following paragraphs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concentration (mg/mL)</th>
<th>MIC (mg/mL)</th>
<th>Fractional effect*</th>
<th>FE index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In this instance the FE is calculated as follows:

\[
\text{FE}^X = \frac{\text{MIC}(X \text{ with } Y)}{\text{MIC}(X \text{ alone})}
\]

\[
\text{FE}^Y = \frac{\text{MIC}(Y \text{ with } X)}{\text{MIC}(Y \text{ alone})}.
\]

Worked example for 9.6 : 6.4 ratio mixture:

\[
\frac{2.4}{8} = 0.3
\]

\[
\frac{1.6}{4} = 0.4
\]

Table 6.1 Data for antibacterial activity (minimum inhibitory concentration, MIC) against *Escherichia coli* for different ratios of volatile (X) and non-volatile (Y) fractions from the South African herb *Tarchonanthus camphoratus* L.
Polyvalence can be due to the following:

- A variety of types of chemical compound is present, each type having a different biological effect.
- Compounds of one particular chemical type are present which have more than one biological effect relevant to treating the disease and/or improving the health of the patient.
- Compounds are present, which do not affect the cause or symptoms of the disease itself, but which modify the side-effects, absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of active constituents.

Each of these three points is considered in more detail below.

**A variety of types of chemical compound being present**

The leaves and flowers of many *Buddleja* species throughout the world are used to treat wounds and inflamed tissues (Houghton, 1984). In a study on some Chinese species of *Buddleja*, compounds extracted from the leaves of *B. asiatica* and flowers of *B. officinalis* were tested for their inhibitory effects on eicosanoid synthesis, a key part of the inflammatory process (Liao et al., 1999). Four major types of compounds, triterpenes, phenylethanoids, flavonoids and carotenoid glycosides were found to be present in the extracts. The triterpene δ-amyrone, the flavonoid aglycone acacetin and the carotenoid glycoside crocetin displayed inhibition of cyclooxygenase, while acacetin also inhibited lipoxygenase. These results suggested that an aqueous extract or poultice of the plant material, which is likely to contain these compounds, and is the form used traditionally, might well include anti-inflammatory effects as part of its portfolio of properties that would help wounds to heal.

Another example of polyvalence is the widely used anxiolytic and sleep-promoting herb valerian (*Valeriana officinalis*). This contains sesquiterpenes such as valerenic acid, which appear to inhibit γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) breakdown, thus causing a net increase of this CNS-depressant neurotransmitter (Riedel et al., 1982); the monoterpenes known as valepotriates which relax smooth muscle (Wagner and Jurcic, 1979); large amounts of free GABA, which might bind to the GABA receptors (Santos et al., 1994); lignans, e.g. 1-hydroxyxypinoresinol, which inhibit binding of serotonin to receptors (Bodesheim and Hölzl, 1997); and flavonoids, e.g. 6-methyldapigenin, which have been shown to bind to benzodiazepine receptors (Wasowski et al., 2002). All of these effects contribute to depression of CNS activity and to overall relaxation, thus aiding reduction in anxiety and promoting the onset of sleep (Houghton, 1989).

Ginkgo (the leaves of *Ginkgo biloba* L.) is an ancient Chinese medicinal plant which is now widely sold throughout the world to preserve good memory and cognitive function (Barnes et al., 2007). Clinical studies have given a considerable evidence base to its efficacy, which is generally ascribed to an improved blood flow in the microcirculation of the CNS and a concomitant reduction in damage caused by reactive oxygen species associated with ischaemia. Ginkgo contains flavonoids such as ginkgetin which are neuroprotective because of their antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activities (Kang et al., 2005), the diterpenoid ginkgolides, which are potent anticoagulants because of their ability to inhibit platelet aggregation, thereby increasing blood flow (Braquet et al., 1991) and the sesquiterpene biolobalide which has antioxidant properties (Joyeux et al., 1995). In addition, the ginkgolides are antioxidant as well as anticoagulant (Joyeux et al., 1995). All of these properties would increase blood flow and protect against oxidative damage.

St John’s Wort (*Hypericum perforatum* L.) contains a variety of compounds and work still needs to be done to fully ascertain the roles played by each. Its major use in modern phytotherapeutics is for treating mild-to-moderate depression. Extensive research into the compounds responsible for this has revealed that this herb is a good example of polyvalent complexity. It contains the naphthodianthrone hypericin, prenylated phloroglucinols (e.g. hyperforin) and flavonoids. Hyperforin has been shown to inhibit serotonin re-uptake, an activity common to synthetic antidepressants such as fluoxetine (Prozac) (Chatterjee et al., 1998), while there is evidence that hypericin inhibits binding to some subtypes of dopamine receptors (Butterveck et al., 2002).
Compounds of one particular type with more than one biological effect

An interesting example of polyvalency being due to the same group of compounds having different effects, all of which might contribute to the treatment of a disease, is afforded by the tanshinone diterpenes present in *Salvia miltiorrhiza*. This herb is used extensively in TCM and has been investigated as potentially useful in Alzheimer’s disease. The tanshinones were shown to have acetylcholinesterase inhibitory activity (Ren *et al.*, 2004), but are also potent cyclo-oxygenase inhibitors and therefore likely to have anti-inflammatory properties, thought to be associated with a reduction in incidence of Alzheimer’s disease (Paulus and Bauer, 1999). It should be noted that the tanshinones have some antioxidant effects, as have the group of compounds known as salvianolic acids, e.g. salvianolic acid B 16, which are also present in *S. miltiorrhiza* (Du *et al.*, 2000), and such antioxidants are thought to play a part in reducing the incidence of Alzheimer’s disease (Maxwell, 1995).

European *Salvia* species have been investigated for possible use in Alzheimer’s disease, based on traditional usage for poor memory in old age. The oil of *S. lavandulaefolia* has acetylcholinesterase-inhibitory effects because of the monoterpenes (Perry *et al.*, 2001), but also some anti-inflammatory and antioxidant action (Perry *et al.*, 2002; Houghton *et al.*, 2007a).

The phenylpropanoid compounds from southeastern Asian species of *Alpinia* also display at least two activities that support their traditional uses for prevention or treatment of cancer. Some of these compounds, especially 1’-acetoxychavicol, display direct cytotoxic activity against cancer cell lines (Lee and Houghton, 2005). However, they also up-regulate the cell’s self-defence systems, the increased production of the antioxidant glutathione (GSH) and the up-regulation of glutathione-S-transferase (GST), an enzyme involved in phase 2 metabolism and removal of reactive oxygen species and other harmful compounds. Using in vitro methods for detecting these activities, it has been shown that five species from Malaysia showed activity in at least one of the bioassays, the two most active being *Alpinia officinarum* and *A. galanga*, with 1’-acetoxychavicol being found to be the most active compound (Houghton *et al.*, 2007b).

Compounds present that modify the pharmacokinetics of active constituents

Pharmacokinetics is the term used to describe the absorption, metabolism and excretion of chemical substances in the body. These aspects are well-researched for single chemical entity pharmaceuticals since the data have to be presented for registration of the drug. Deviation from the norm can be due to genetic factors in the patient, e.g. ‘fast’ and ‘slow’ metabolisers, dietary factors and interactions with other medication. The same factors can apply with herbal products, but an extra dimension can occur because the plant material or extracts used can, in themselves, contain substances that modify the pharmacokinetics of the ‘actives’ present.

If the herbal material is taken orally, which is the most common situation, absorption occurs across the wall of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. This can be slowed down if the plant contains a large amount of polysaccharide polymers, a factor exploited in the use of guar gum in diabetes to reduce the absorption rate of glucose. The presence of high levels of tannins can also reduce the rate of absorption. A more rapid effect is noted with coffee than tea, even though a cup of each contains about the same amount of caffeine, because tea contains high levels of tannins which reduce absorption and provide a slower increase in caffeine levels in the blood by complexing with the caffeine (Heinrich *et al.*, 2004).

It has been shown that some hot spices, e.g. black pepper *Piper nigrum* and ginger *Zingiber officinale*, increase the transfer of many chemical substances across the gastrointestinal wall and it is of interest that black pepper is not only used as a drug in Ayurvedic medicine in its own right, but is also often added to mixtures containing other drugs (Atal *et al.*, 1981). Piperine, the major constituent of black pepper, has been shown to affect the uptake of several conventional drugs in humans (Bano *et al.*, 1991).

Once absorbed, the plasma levels of any drug are affected by its metabolism and excretion. Metabolism chiefly takes place in the liver, especially by the group of enzymes known as cytochrome P450.
(CYP), of which many sub-types exist. If these are up-regulated, plasma levels of active substances decrease more rapidly than might be expected, whereas the reverse may be seen if the enzymes are inhibited or the liver cells damaged in some way. Both effects have been noted with plant constituents, e.g. St John’s wort (Hypericum perforatum) is known to up-regulate CYP4A, leading to loss in efficacy of a wide range of drugs such as the immunosuppressant cyclosporin, the anti-HIV drugs and the contraceptive steroids (Mannel, 2004), while the furanocoumarins present in grapefruit juice are thought to be responsible for the high levels of the cardiotoxic antihistamine terfenadine which have had serious effects in some patients (Barnes et al., 2007). Most of the concern which has arisen over these effects has come from herb–drug interaction studies, but it should not be forgotten that the types of compounds affecting metabolism may coexist in a herb with the actives, or be constituents of a herb added to the ‘active’ according to a herbal prescription.

In addition, the constituents of a herb may not be very active per se, but may need to be metabolised to more active forms by gut or liver enzymes. This is true for many of the laxative herbs containing anthracene-derivative glycosides and it has been demonstrated that the activity of senna (Cassia acutifolia, Cassia angustifolia) is due to rheins formed by the activity of intestinal bacteria (Kobashi et al., 1980). Many flavonoids are probably also metabolised by gut bacteria but it should also be remembered that the CYP enzymes in the liver may also act as conversion agents from the ‘prodrug’ form found naturally to more active metabolites. Other compounds present in a particular plant, or another plant when the herbal substance is given in a mixture, may affect the enzyme activity of gut bacteria or liver enzymes, and consequently also the conversion process.

The duration of activity of a particular herb is also affected by the excretion which occurs in the urine through the kidneys, or by sweating. Reduced absorption might also take place if gastric transit time is decreased due to any laxative effect. If the glomerular filtration through the kidneys is increased due to a diuretic effect, then levels will drop rapidly and the same result will be obtained if sweating increases due to changes in temperature regulation or increased blood flow to the skin. It should be noted that, in European herbal treatment, increased diuresis and/or sweating is a major approach in eliminating ‘toxins’ from the body to restore health, so it would not be surprising to find herbs used which exert these effects, but which would also decrease the time over which the herb constituents reach effective levels in the blood. A recent review (Wright et al., 2007) has highlighted the large number of diuretic herbs in use, which must be seen as potential modifiers of pharmacological activity.

**Polyvalency and testing of herbal extracts for activity**

If polyvalency occurs, it should be noted that the use of only one bioassay for in vitro testing for clinically relevant activity should be treated with great caution, since this approach is usually much too reductionist (Houghton et al., 2007a). In cases of polyvalence, a battery of bioassays covering different aspects of the condition should be used, to elucidate a greater range of possible activities that could explain traditional usage. This must certainly be the case when a specific disease is diagnosed because of its presenting symptoms, but where these may be caused by a variety of factors. It would not be unusual to find that two different herbs, used for the same condition, have differing portfolios of activities.

**Conclusions**

Plant material or herbal extracts display much chemical complexity and it is only recently that advances in analytical procedures, coupled with sensitive bioassays, have allowed some teasing out of the factors that contribute to any overall effect. The interaction with such a complex mixture with the complicated array of biochemical pathways and other physiological processes, that exist in a delicate balance to maintain a healthy state in the human body, is a challenge for systems biology. The use of its approaches and techniques in seeking to understand what happens when a herb is taken is in its infancy but it appears likely that a greater understanding and demonstration of synergy and polyvalence in herbal extracts will be a feature of research in the next few years.
References


Introduction

In traditional medicine research, clinical experiences, observations or available data are starting points, whereas in ‘conventional’ ‘Western’ drug research, they come at the end of the drug discovery process. Thus, the first type of drug discovery follows a reverse pharmacology path (Vaidya et al., 2001; Vaidya, 2006), which is the subject of this chapter.

Whenever any botanicals or phytomedicines are used in medicinal preparations, issues related to their quality assurance remain vitally important. It is important to ensure that any processing is in accordance with current good manufacturing procedures for herbal products (Verpoorte et al., 2003). To understand various processes involved in a journey from clinical evidence to mechanism of action, it is important to know the various approaches involved in the development of phytomedicines and strategies of their therapeutic applications. Some of the important strategies include systems biology and reverse pharmacology approaches.

Systems biology approach

Traditional medicines have been developed through real-life experiences and direct observations on people with diseases, and represent highly complex biological systems. The typical conventional drug discovery pipeline includes preclinical studies on animal models and cell and tissue screens involving high-throughput assays. However, the numbers of new chemical/molecular entities that are approved are declining (Butcher et al., 2004). This situation calls for critical assessment of the current reductionist strategies, where only new chemical entities are valued as potential new drugs and molecular biological technology is primarily used for defining molecular targets and for creating new miniaturised screening tests. Such reductionism, where a whole
organism is broken down into groups of cells, subcells, molecules and molecular interactions undermines the importance of the system as a whole. While interacting with each other, macromolecules form complex networks organised into systems with properties that extend beyond individual functions. When multiple cell types and diverse pathways contribute to the disease, a single molecule may not be effective in the modulation of multiple targets and such conditions require combination therapy. Modern medicine has also developed combinations of drugs for addressing more than one therapeutic target (Morphy et al., 2004).

Systems biology attempts to provide predictive models of behaviour of such molecular systems to identify such functional interactions (Gannon, 2005), and is aptly summarised as follows: ‘Compared with the analytical procedure of classical science with resolution into component elements and one-way or linear causality as basic category, the investigation of organised wholes of many variables requires new categories of interaction, transaction, organisation, teleology’ (Ludwig von Bertalanffy, 1968).

A systems approach or ‘science of wholeness’ is actually central to the philosophy of several traditional medicine systems, particularly Ayurveda. Herbal extracts represent the ‘combinatorial chemistry of nature’ with a vast array of chemical compounds that can deal with multiple targets simultaneously, leading to synergistic and/or polyvalence systems effects.

Earlier drugs were created within the confines of a chemical paradigm of medicine and drug therapy but now the entry of a new informational paradigm into medicine can be seen, which is most prominently represented by proteomics and metabolomics.

Metabonomics is a systems approach for studying in-vivo metabolic profiles, which promises to provide information on drug toxicity, disease processes and gene function at several stages in the drug development process. It uses spectroscopic methods, e.g. nuclear magnetic resonance, liquid chromatography mass spectroscopy and gas chromatography mass spectroscopy for identifying and characterising certain metabolic changes in humans, then integrating the data outcome by bioinformatics software to create a metabolic profile for a single individual. Such integration of data types will also pave the way to understanding the relationships between gene function and metabolic control in health and disease. Systems biology thus offers the computational integration of data generated by the suite of genetic, transcriptomic, proteomic and metabolomic platforms to understand function through different levels of biomolecular organisation. This offers exciting new prospects for determining the causes of human disease and finding possible cures. Certainly the judicious use of ‘-omics’ data should give new insights and opportunities for the drug discovery process and for understanding drug toxicology.

This paradigm will bring two important changes in the therapy of diseases. Firstly, science will be able to study complex genomes and their functionality in complex organisms such as humans. Therefore, results from these studies no longer have to be translated into the context of medicine as they are already within this context. Secondly, drug therapy which used to be largely based on symptomatic relief, will now aim at targets emerging from the system that are closer to the causes of diseases. Therapeutic progress, which used to be indirect, conjectural and coincidental, is about to become more directed, definitive and intentional. The holistic approach to health differs from that of the conventional medicinal approach in that it takes into account the whole patient, rather than just focusing on the symptoms or the affected organ, so medicines are usually customised to an individual constitution. Traditional knowledge-driven drug development can follow a reverse pharmacology path and reduce time and cost of development.

**Reverse pharmacology approach**

A new chemical entity travels a path from laboratories to clinics, involving target identification, lead identification, lead optimisation, preclinical studies and then the four phases of clinical trials, which takes a long time, e.g. the average time from synthesis to approval of a new-drug application has increased significantly, from an average 7.9 years in the 1960s to 12.8 years in the 1990s. The drug development process is becoming more and more complex and capital intensive, and companies remain ‘target rich’ but ‘lead poor’, with lead discovery as a greater bottleneck. In such a situation, industrialisation of the drug development process is underway.
Although high-throughput screening and combinatorial chemical synthesis are being explored with high hopes, general experience points to the fact that in most companies, the investments in these technologies have not reaped the rewards in new lead discovery that were expected. Despite technological advances, genomics and bioinformatics predictions, the number of new molecular (chemical and biological) entities has actually dropped since the year 2002 to fewer than 20 per year. Approaches such as reverse pharmacology might help in reducing three major bottlenecks of costs, time and toxicity (Figure 7.1).

Reverse pharmacology, as an academic discipline, can be perceived to consist of three phases:

- robust documentation of clinical observations of the biodynamic effects of standardised Ayurvedic drugs by meticulous record keeping
- exploratory studies for tolerability, drug interactions, dose-range findings in ambulant patients with defined subsets of the disease and paraclinical studies in relevant in-vitro and in-vivo models to evaluate the target activity
- experimental studies, basic and clinical, at several levels of biological organisation, to identify and validate the reverse pharmacological correlates of Ayurvedic drug safety and efficacy (von Bertalanffy, 1968).

Such a creative research endeavour requires excellent teamwork by multisystem and multidisciplinary experts. Reverse pharmacology, for drug development, has been highly productive, and cost-effective too, in the recent past. Molecules such as the curcuminoi ds, reserpine and digoxin have emerged through knowledge of traditional medicines. The reverse pharmacology approach is cost-effective, as it travels back from clinical evidence so the cost of clinical trials, which is an expensive task, is reduced. Globally, this approach has now generated greater interest in Ayurveda and pharmacology. The scope of reverse pharmacology is to understand the mechanisms of action, at multiple levels of biology and to optimise safety, efficacy and acceptability of the leads.

**Figure 7.1** Reverse pharmacology path.
in natural products, based on relevant science. In this approach, the candidate drug travels a reverse path from clinic to laboratory rather than the classic laboratory to clinic path.

**Drug development for phytomedicines**

The future drug discovery and development particularly based on phytomedicines will be more often based on intent rather than coincidence. Proper bioprospecting of medicinal sources will still remain an important factor. However, despite the call from the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for an increase in science-based drug development and the recognition within the industry of the productivity challenges, there is only sporadic activity directly in line with the systems thinking presented here. Proof-of-principle studies are currently being undertaken, but no critical path success has yet emerged. From a cost–benefit point of view, the full incorporation of systems thinking into the pharmaceutical value chain will substantially increase the cost in the short term. The implementation of such a new concept over the entire process can only take place gradually, given the existing infrastructures that might need to be changed, the current development pipelines and the regulatory constraints. The analytical platforms necessary to undertake systems approaches are not inexpensive, nor trivial, to implement. Furthermore, the effort to establish quality-controlled methods to acquire, store, integrate and interpret datasets from different analytical platforms is substantial and the task of obtaining high-quality biological samples from animal and clinical studies consumes much time and human resources. The current need of the industry is a cost-effective, fast-track approach for drug development (Morphy *et al.*, 2004). Based on traditional experiences, drug development for herbal drugs can follow the different paths explained in Figure 7.2.

There are four established routes:

- The ethnomedicine path is based on observing the field use of the plants and then standardising it for the activity, e.g. tubocurarine isolated from curare – commonly known as South American arrow poison.
- Another adopted path is screening of the extracts in selected models, isolation of the active principles and then production of a modern

---

**Figure 7.2** R&D paths for natural products.
drug, which enters a preclinical and clinical phase, e.g. isolation of reserpine from *Rauwolfia serpentina*.

- The third path is the herbal product path of the screening of extract in models and then testing the extract for its efficacy and safety in a clinical set up, e.g. *Ganoderma lucidum* and *Hypericum perforatum*.

- The fourth path is the holistic path using the formulation mentioned in classic texts of Ayurveda and other herbal systems and then evaluating its efficacy through pharmacoepidemiological studies, e.g. chavanprash, which is an Ayurvedic preparation used from ancient times for cough, cold and healthy living.

All the above paths are explored for years together and have yielded important medicines. Despite all these established approaches the contribution to the development of mainstream drugs remained limited, as major pharmaceutical companies refrained from taking this field seriously. In addition, although botanical medications continue to be produced in every country, the clinical efficacy of these has usually not been evaluated and the composition of these complex mixtures was only crudely analysed.

**Mechanisms of action**

Actual human use is the ultimate ‘model’ and in-depth investigation of the effects of drugs and the nature of disease progression is becoming ever more feasible because of advances in clinical biomarkers. Combining the reverse pharmacology and systems biology approaches, the process of drug discovery and development can be greatly facilitated. We need to adopt such innovative approaches, models and designs in studying human subjects for establishing proof of concept and mechanisms of action of phytomedicines. Some of the case studies emerging from this approach are discussed in the next section.

**Case studies**

*Rauwolfia serpentina* (Sarpagandha)

Sen and Bose (1931) not only showed the antihypertensive effects of sarpagandha but they were also astute clinicians to note certain side-effects such as parkinsonism, depression, gynaecomastia, acid-peptic symptoms, etc. It was only recently that a Nobel prize in medicine and physiology was given to those who validated and explained the actions by mechanistic correlates. As a spin-off from the side-effects of *Rauwolfia serpentina*, several new drugs were developed i.e. L-dopa, antidepressants, bromoergocriptine, and H$_2$-receptor blockers (Patwardhan et al., 1990; Devi et al., 1992). The alkaloids of *Rauwolfia serpentina*, reserpine and ajmalicine, have served as research tools in many experiments (Patwardhan et al., 1990; Devi et al., 1992).

There are still some unanswered questions, e.g. does reserpine have more incidences of depression and/or extrapyramidal side-effects than the standardised extract of the plant? It has been proposed that it might be worthwhile to apply combinatorial chemical methods for reserpine derivatives, which do not cross the blood–brain barrier, so that depression is avoided as a side-effect. The uptake of noradrenaline by isolated chromaffin granules, by inhibition of ATP–Mg$^2+$-dependent mechanism has to be studied afresh at the transcriptional level. The *kaphavatashamak* (anti-inflammatory) properties of the plant described in Ayurveda also requires investigation. Although reserpine has been withdrawn globally from most markets, the extracts of the plant are still used as Ayurvedic drugs. There is a need to conduct pharmacovigilance on Sarpagandha Ghanavati, which is the traditional preparation made from *R. serpentina*.

**Picrorrhiza kurroa** (Kutki)

The late Vaidya Zandu Bhattji has popularised Arogyawardhani, a traditional Ayurvedic formula used by itself or in conjunction with herbal products/supplements for the treatment of jaundice. A double-blind trial with Arogyawardhani Kutki and placebo was conducted in viral hepatitis (Vaidya et al., 1996; Patwardhan et al., 2006) and significant hepatoprotective effects were observed for Kutki, either in Arogyawardhani or as a single plant. Later, picrosides, constituents of Kutki, were also tested in vivo and in vitro and found to be active (Druker et al., 2003; Faivre et al., 2006). Significant antioxidant as well as hydrocholeritic effects were noted for Kutki. The effects of hepatoprotection in carbon tetrachloride and galactosamine models are considered to be the pharmacological correlates of clinical actions.
However, there is a need to study at the cellular and molecular levels how the water outflow in the biliary microcanaliculae is enhanced. The Central Drug Research Institute in India has now developed a cucurbitacin-free extract of *P. kurroa* (Picroliv), which is now in Phase III trials. The plant also inhibits passive cutaneous anaphylaxis, as shown by Mahajani (Mahajani *et al.*, 1977).

**Commiphora wightii** (guggulu)

Guggulu is a major Ayurvedic drug and is used widely in diverse formulations. A monograph of all the major citations has been published (Vaidya, 2006). The hypolipidaemic effects of guggulu were primarily discovered through the reverse pharmacology approach. Antarkar, Satyavati, and Nityanand have carried out an extensive study on the hypolipidaemic effect of guggulu (Antarkar *et al.*, 1984; Satyavati, 1988). The product had been already marketed and widely used but the antiarthritic effects of guggulu in the clinic have been relatively less investigated. Sizeable experimental and reverse pharmacological studies with standardised guggulu preparations have been carried out (Nityanand *et al.*, 1989). Phase I study, long-term and large-dose ambulant studies have been conducted and the ongoing studies at cellular and molecular levels have helped in evolving pharmacological correlates of clinically shown actions. The side-effects of guggulu have also been documented, but the mechanisms of toxicity are yet to be studied. Guggulu can offer a platform for technological innovations in pharmaceutics, pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics. The use of guggulu as a *homadravya* (sacrificial incense) in *Shantikarma* (sacrificial use) is currently being evaluated for the antimicrobial effects of the volatiles. Topical formulations of guggulu demand unique dermato-pharmacological reverse correlates. The statement found in the literature on different properties of fresh and aged guggulu needs additional clinical investigations – empirical and exploratory. Use of Ayurvedic therapeutics in the context of modern medicine will give us many more insights into the newer targets in the disease pathogenesis and effects of the drugs. Blending the ancient wisdom and the modern science opens up existing fields where both can benefit mutually by adopting each others’ techniques.

**Ayurveda: a rich source of phytomedicines**

Combining the strengths of the knowledge base of traditional systems such as Ayurveda with the dramatic power of combinatorial sciences and high-throughput screening will help in the generation of structure–activity data. Ayurvedic knowledge and investigational results can provide new functional leads to reduce time, money and toxicity – the three main hurdles in drug development. These records are particularly valuable, since effectively these medicines have been tested for thousands of years on people. Efforts are underway to establish a pharmaco-epidemiological evidence base regarding safety and practice of Ayurvedic medicines.

Development of standardised herbal formulations is underway as an initiative of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) New Millennium Indian Technology Leadership Initiative (NMITLI). Randomised, controlled clinical trials for diabetes, rheumatoid and osteoarthritis, hepatoprotectives, and many other disorders have reasonably established clinical efficacy. A review of some exemplary evidence-based researches and approaches has now resulted in wider acceptance of Ayurvedic medicines. Thus the Ayurvedic knowledge database allows drug researchers to start from well-tested and safe botanical material. With Ayurveda, the normal drug discovery course of ‘laboratories to clinics’ actually becomes from ‘clinics to laboratories’ – a true reverse pharmacology approach.

Globally, there is a positive trend towards holistic health, integrative sciences, systems biology approaches in drug discovery and therapeutics that has remained one of the unique features of Ayurveda. A golden triangle consisting of Ayurveda, modern medicine and science will converge to form a real discovery ‘engine’ that can result in newer, safer, cheaper and effective therapies. It will be in the interests of pharmaceutical companies, researchers and ultimately the global community to respect the traditions and build on their knowledge and investigational wisdom.

Currently, many pharmaceutical companies and research organisations have demonstrated renewed interest in investigating higher plants as sources for new lead structures and also for the development of
standardised phytomedicines with reasonable efficacy, safety and quality (Brevoort, 1995; Subramo-
niam, 2001; Awang, 2007).

**CSIR NMITLI herbal drug development**

This initiative is the largest public/private partnership effort within the research and development domain in India. An Ayurveda-based herbal drug development project under CSIR NMITLI has a component of osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis. Research partners for this project include:

- Interdisciplinary School of Health Sciences, University of Pune, Pune
- Indian Institute of Integrated Medicine, Jammu (formerly known as RRL–J)
- National Botanical Research Institute, Lucknow
- Agharkar Research Institute and Interactive Research School for Health Affairs, Pune
- Swami Prakashananda Ayurveda Research Center and KEM Hospital, Mumbai
- Nizam Institute of Medical Sciences, Hyderabad
- All India Institute of Medical Sciences, New Delhi and Center for Rheumatic Diseases, Pune.

The project involved industry partners including:

- Arya Vaidya Shala Kottakal
- Arya Vaidya Pharmacy, Coimbtore
- Dabur, Nicholas Piramal
- Natural Remedies, Bangalore
- Zandu Pharmaceuticals.

The following is a case study of standardised phytomedicine drug development and summary of the drug development process of a 4-year project on drug development for treatment of osteoarthritis.

**Case study of standardised phytomedicine drug development for osteoarthritis treatment**

Following several rounds of national level consultation of Ayurvedic physicians and scholars, a few drugs were short-listed. These drugs entered a parallel track of open-label observational studies by selected Ayurvedic physicians called *vaidyas* and rapid animal pharmacology studies. This led to two platforms of drug formulations. This was followed by a randomised, placebo-controlled, seven-limb, multicentric clinical trial where five formulations were tested with glucosamine as the positive control. Two formulations, which performed statistically better than placebo and glucosamine were then taken up for further studies.

**Quality, safety, activity and mechanistics**

The quality of crude drugs, extracts and formulations was monitored using chemistry, manufacturing and control guidelines of the US FDA. In-vitro studies using suitable cell and tissue culture models on these formulations revealed significant chondroprotection (proteoglycan release, nitric oxide release, aggrecan release and hyaluronidase inhibition as markers) in explant models of OA cartilage damage. In animal pharmacology these formulations demonstrated moderate analgesic and anti-inflammatory activities in both acute and chronic models. There was reasonable evidence for synergistic activity in the formulation as compared with single drugs. The formulations were found to be safe as per the guidelines set out by the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, and were devoid of any significant genotoxicity or mutagenic activity in a micronucleus test.

**Exploratory studies**

A systematic dosing study was undertaken on the best formulation and the entire data, including observational, exploratory clinical trials, dosing studies, in-vitro and animal pharmacology, were collated for detailed discussions, assessment and analysis by experts. The team realised the need to further augment any analgesic effect, especially for use in osteoarthritis patients. After detailed study, discussions and evidence, one more ingredient was added to the best formulation. Thus two formulations (one with three ingredients and another with four) were finalised and taken for manufacture for the final, randomised clinical trial of equivalence.

**Product development**

A platform approach was adopted where base formulation based on traditional knowledge was used, followed by optimisation by adding other
ingredients to obtain synergistic activity. All the formulations prepared for clinical trials were manufactured and labelled generally in accordance with US FDA guidance to industry for botanical drugs. Most of the required tests were performed during the entire process starting from passport data of raw material, botanical identification, chemical quality by spectroscopy and chromatography and molecular (DNA fingerprinting) standardisation to establish stability and pharmacopoeia standards of finished product. Necessary documentation was maintained for review, records or regulatory needs.

All extracts used in formulations were standardised with respect to their marker compounds. Shunthi (Zingiber officinale) hydro-alcoholic extract was standardised with respect to 6-gingerol, 8-gingerol, 10-gingerol, 6-shogaol and total gingerols. Salai guggul (Boswellia serrata) hydroalcoholic extract was standardised with respect to total boswellic acid percentage, boswellic acid (a + b), a-boswellic acid, b-boswellic acid, a-acetyl-boswellic acid, b-acetyl-boswellic acid, 11-keto-b-boswellic acid, acetyl-11-keto-b-boswellic acid and acetyl-boswellic acid (a + b). Amla (Phyllanthus emblica) extract was standardised with respect to total tannin as tannic acid and gallic acid. Guduchi (Tinospora cordifolia) extract was standardised with respect to the marker compound tinosporoside.

Clinical studies

The Phase 3 multicentric clinical trial was initiated on 12 January 2006 and involved four reputable centres, which followed a common protocol. This 24-week, randomised, clinical trial of equivalence using glucosamine and celecoxib for comparison, involved 300 patients and was statistically sufficiently powered. The evaluation parameters include clinical assessment as per American College of Rheumatology criteria and most of the critical markers (urinary CTX-II, serum cytokines (interleukin (IL)-1β, IL-6 and tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α), serum matrix metalloproteinase (MMP)-1 and 3, serum hyaluronic acid) were measured in the laboratory. Knee radiographs have been done for 160 patients at baseline and at the completion using a validated, digitised image-analysis system to measure the changes in the width of the femorotibial joint space, as a surrogate marker for cartilage. This trial has demonstrated statistically significant equivalence of Ayurvedic test formulations with celecoxib and glucosamine. An Indian patent describing the innovative process, formulation and use has been filed by CSIR.

The CSIR NMITLI Herbal Drug Development project provides one of the best examples of systems biology and reverse pharmacology, where traditional knowledge as clinical evidence was used for developing a standardised phytomedicine. Here all the modern methodology was adopted for scientific investigation to establish an evidence base. The good laboratory practices and good clinical practices guidelines were followed and the US FDA Herbal Drug Guidance was adhered to. At the end of 5 years, this project successfully completed Phase 3 trials and is now ready with a complete dossier for investigational new drug and new-drug application submissions (Chopra and Patwardhan, 2007).

Conclusions

In short, newer approaches based on systems biology and reverse pharmacology are useful to develop standardised phytomedicines. Since most of the botanical materials have actually been in clinical use for a considerable time, there are reasonably high safety expectations. While well-controlled clinical studies may be undertaken to establish a sufficient evidence base, mechanistic studies can be undertaken simultaneously. This parallel processing shortens the drug discovery and development period considerably, resulting in time and money savings.

Acknowledgements

We thank Amrutesh Puranik and Prajakta Kulkarni for their help.

References


Part 2

Pharmacological evaluation for some therapeutic areas
Introduction

Gastrointestinal complaints rank among the most frequent reasons why people seek medical advice. The most common functional gastrointestinal disorders (FGIDs) seen in clinical practice are functional dyspepsia (FD) and irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), characterised by recurrent episodes of gastrointestinal symptoms, in the absence of structural lesions that explain symptoms. While symptoms of epigastric pain, bloating, nausea, belching, early satiety and heartburn are predominant in FD (Holtmann et al., 2006), abdominal discomfort, bloating and disturbed patterns of defecation (constipation, diarrhoea or constipation/diarrhoea) are common in patients with IBS (Brandt et al., 2005). FGIDs reduce the health-related quality of life and account for an increased healthcare burden (Talley and Vakil, 2005). The pathogenesis of FGIDs is probably multifactorial, genetic and environmental factors are thought to contribute to alterations in visceral sensory function, motility, bacterial overgrowth and central nervous system processing (Drossman, 2005).

Inflammation is considered a risk factor for the development of both functional dyspepsia and IBS (Thornley et al., 2001; Dunlop et al., 2003; Hall et al., 2003). Currently, the existing therapies to treat multiple symptoms of FGIDs are suboptimal, associated with restricted therapeutic potential and new agents are awaited that would improve global IBS symptoms (Tack et al., 2006a,b). A wide variety of treatments have been used to manage FGIDs and include *Helicobacter pylori* eradication, antacids, mucosal protectants, antisecretory agents, prokinetics, antidepressants and visceral analgesics. The fact that no single available therapy consistently provides relief to the majority of the patients validates the heterogeneity of these disorders. The emerging therapies are largely aimed to normalise pain perception and gastrointestinal motor and reflux function.

The therapy of functional gastrointestinal disorders is one of the domains of phytotherapeutic treatments. Traditionally, plants with a high tannin content, showing astringent properties, were particularly valued to treat diarrhoea and dysentery whereas
bitter, aromatic and bitter-aromatic plants were especially employed to treat gastrointestinal cramps and pain. Investigations on traditionally used plants have resulted in the isolation, and chemical and pharmacological characterisation of many different types of compounds. Most of these agents are helpful to prevent or arrest the progression, rather than to treat disease. Further, they exhibit pleiotropic actions and therefore may serve as important leads for developing novel therapies for the treatment of FGIDs.

So far, relatively few herbal medicines have been evaluated scientifically to prove their safety, potential benefits and effectiveness in gastrointestinal disorders (Table 8.1) (Rösch et al., 2002; Holtmann et al., 2004; Liu et al., 2006). This chapter specifically deals with the evaluation methods for the development of quality herbal medicines intended to be useful in FGIDs.

Functional dyspepsia

Functional dyspepsia is a clinical syndrome, whose origin is unknown, defined by chronic or recurrent pain or discomfort in the upper abdomen. On the basis of the Rome III diagnostic criteria for functional gastrointestinal disorders, patients who suffer from FD in the absence of any organic disease are categorised as having postprandial distress syndrome or epigastric pain syndrome for at least 3 months (Drossman, 2006; Tack et al., 2006a). About 15–30% of adult patients suffer from various different functional dyspeptic conditions. Several pathophysiological mechanisms are involved in FD, including visceral hypersensitivity, both in the stomach and the duodenum, impaired gastric accommodation, antral overdistention, delayed gastric emptying and abnormal duodenjejunal motility (Kleibeuker and Thijs, 2004). Induction of gastric hypersensitivity by acid in the stomach seems to be important in a subset of patients. Many drugs can induce dyspepsia as a gastrointestinal side-effect, the major cause being the use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) for arthritis and chemotherapeutic agents in cancer. Studies also suggest a possible link with G-protein polymorphisms in dyspepsia.

Currently, functional dyspepsia is classified into ulcer-like dyspepsia, dysmotility-like dyspepsia and non-specific dyspepsia, in which symptoms do not clearly fit into any of the above categories. While antacids, H₂-receptor antagonists and proton-pump inhibitors are useful in ulcer-like dyspepsia, prokinetic agents are more effective in dysmotility-like dyspepsia. Most therapies for patients with FD are intended to normalise pain perception and gastrointestinal motor and reflex function. Serotonin is the key mediator of gut function in relation to gastrointestinal motility, secretion and sensation of pain. There is limited evidence that the 5-hydroxytryptamine 5-HT₃ antagonist alosetron has potential efficacy in functional dyspepsia, perhaps via visceral analgesic effects (Talley et al., 2001). Animal studies also suggest that acid can induce serotonin release from enterochromaffin cells in the duodenum, which may in turn activate 5-HT₃ receptors and alter visceral sensation. Acid in the duodenum can also induce fundic relaxation (Lee et al., 2004). Thus, the interaction between acid and 5-HT₃ receptor antagonism is of interest in functional dyspepsia. A number of compounds may have visceral analgesic effects in the upper gastrointestinal tract, including 5-HT₃ antagonists and 5-HT₄ agonists. Approximately 25% of patients with functional dyspepsia have slow gastric emptying, and perhaps 10% have accelerated gastric emptying (Talley et al., 1999). It is, therefore, important to avoid the use of prokinetic therapy in patients who have accelerated gastric emptying, as presumably this would worsen symptoms (Talley et al., 2006).

No standard therapy is currently available for FD. From ancient times, bitter herbal drugs have played a role in the therapy of patients with dyspeptic symptoms. Studies point out that different plant-derived extracts and their constituents can give gastroprotection through several mechanisms (Table 8.1). Flavonoids are highly gastroprotective probably due to enhancement of the release of nitric oxide and neuropeptides, such as calcitonin gene-related peptide, released from sensory afferent nerves, which increase gastric microcirculation. These appear to stimulate, at even very small concentrations, the secretion of the stomach as well as the digestive glands and strengthen the smooth musculature of the digestive tract. Bitter substances are often combined with essential oils, which act primarily as spasmyotics and analgesics and possess anti-Helicobacter pylori effects. They exert anti-inflammatory action by:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Constituents</th>
<th>Study type</th>
<th>Results</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STW 5 Iberogast* (herbal formula)</td>
<td>Ethanolic extracts of 9 plants</td>
<td>Functional dyspepsia (FD) and IBS</td>
<td>Methionine-like sulphur-compounds</td>
<td>Animal studies</td>
<td>Diminished binding affinity of 5-HT(4), muscarinic M(3), and opioid receptors in vitro</td>
<td>Simmen et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artichoke (Cynara scolymus L.)</td>
<td>Leaf extract</td>
<td>IBS</td>
<td>Caffeoylquinic acids and flavonoids</td>
<td>Animal studies</td>
<td>Protected animals from gastric ulceration</td>
<td>Jimenez-Escrig et al., 2003; Emendorfer et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-095 (crude drug containing red ginseng, polygala root, saffron, antelope horn and aloe wood)</td>
<td>Dried powder</td>
<td>Combat stress</td>
<td>Multicomponents</td>
<td>Experimental studies in rats</td>
<td>Prevented gastric ulceration — induced by restraint and water-immersion stress</td>
<td>Inoue et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baishouwu (Chinese herbal drug)</td>
<td>Dried root tubers of 3 plants</td>
<td>Gastric diseases</td>
<td>Multicomponents</td>
<td>Experimental studies in rats</td>
<td>Offered gastroprotection against ethanol and indometacin-induced gastric lesions</td>
<td>Shan et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric (Curcuma longa L.)</td>
<td>Rhizome extract</td>
<td>Ulcer and non-ulcer dyspepsia</td>
<td>Curcumin (diferuloyl methane)</td>
<td>Animal studies in vivo and anti-H. pylori in vitro</td>
<td>Demonstrated antulcer, anti-inflammatory, anticancer and analgesic effects</td>
<td>Mahady et al., 2002; Kim et al., 2005; Aggarwal et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint (Mentha piperita L.)</td>
<td>Leaf essential oil</td>
<td>Gastroprotective use</td>
<td>Menthol and menthonin</td>
<td>Animal studies</td>
<td>Antimicrobial, antispasmodic, antioxidant and analgesic effects</td>
<td>McKay and Blumberg, 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anise (Pimpinella anisum L.)</td>
<td>Seed aqueous suspension</td>
<td>Gastroprotective use in Arab medicine</td>
<td>Volatiles</td>
<td>In vivo experimental ulceration in rats and anti-H. pylori in vitro</td>
<td>Gastroprotection against necrotising agents and indometacin</td>
<td>Mahady et al., 2005; Al Moflehm et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardamom (Elettaria cardamomum Maton.)</td>
<td>Crude methanolic extract and fractions</td>
<td>Gastroprotective use in Unani medicine</td>
<td>Terpenes and phenolic compounds</td>
<td>Experimental ulceration in rats</td>
<td>Gastroprotection against ethanol and aspirin-induced injury</td>
<td>Jamal et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenugreek (Trigonella foenum graecum)</td>
<td>Aqueous extract of seed and gel fraction</td>
<td>Gastric complaints</td>
<td>Steroidal saponins and alkaloids</td>
<td>Rat study</td>
<td>Prevents ethanol-induced gastric lesions</td>
<td>Pandian et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Use</td>
<td>Constituents</td>
<td>Study type</td>
<td>Results</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Myrrh (Commiphora molmol Engl)</strong></td>
<td>Aqueous suspension of oleo-gum-resin</td>
<td>Gastroprotective use in Arab medicine</td>
<td>Furanoeudesma-1,3-dien and linderstrene</td>
<td>Experimental ulceration in rats</td>
<td>Gastroprotection against necrotising agents and indometacin</td>
<td>Al-Harbi et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sangre de grado (Croton urucurana var. genuinus and related species)</strong></td>
<td>Red sap from trunk wood of C. urucurana</td>
<td>Gastric ulcer and diarrhoea</td>
<td>Proantocyanidins, taspine</td>
<td>Experimental study in rats and guinea-pigs</td>
<td>Antiulcer, antidiarrhoeal and visceral antinociceptive effects</td>
<td>Miller et al., 2000; Tran et al., 2006; Rao et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Copaiba oil (Copaifera langsdorffii Desf.) and related species</strong></td>
<td>Oleo-resin from trunk wood</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal disorders</td>
<td>Volatiles and diterpenes that include kaurenoic acid</td>
<td>In vivo experimental studies with rats</td>
<td>Antiulcer, wound healing and anti-inflammatory effects</td>
<td>Paiva et al., 1998; 2002; 2004a; 2004b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aroeira (Myracrodruon urundeuva Engl)</strong></td>
<td>Aqueous extract from stem bark</td>
<td>Traditional use in gastric dyspepsia, and diarrhoea</td>
<td>Tannins and Chalcones</td>
<td>Experimental studies with rats and guinea-pigs</td>
<td>Gastroprotection against ethanol, stress and histamine-induced lesions; acetic acid-induced colitis</td>
<td>Rao et al., 1987; Menezes and Rao, 1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monkey puzzle (Araucaria araucana Mol)</strong></td>
<td>Resin</td>
<td>Mapuche Amerindians use to treat ulcers</td>
<td>Labdane diterpenes and lignans</td>
<td>Experimental studies with mice</td>
<td>Gastroprotection against ethanol-HCl-induced lesions</td>
<td>Schmeda-Hirschmann et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Macela (Egletes viscosa L.)</strong></td>
<td>Methanolic extract of flower buds</td>
<td>Gastric dyspepsia, diarrhoea and constipation</td>
<td>Volatiles, flavonoid (ternatin) and diterpenes (centipedic acid and 12-acetoxy hawtriwaic acid)</td>
<td>Animal studies</td>
<td>Antiulcer, antidiarrhoeal and anti-inflammatory effects</td>
<td>Rao et al., 1997; Guedes et al., 2002; Rao et al., 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tsubaki (Camellia japonica L.)</strong></td>
<td>Aqueous decoction of mango flowers</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal disorders and arthralgias</td>
<td>Xanthone (mangiferin), flavonoids and triterpenes</td>
<td>Experimental studies in rats</td>
<td>Decreased the ethanol and indometacin-evoked gastric ulceration</td>
<td>Yoshikawa et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grape-seed (Vitis vinifera L.)</strong></td>
<td>Seed extract</td>
<td>Gastroprotection</td>
<td>Proanthocyanidins</td>
<td>Animal models of gastric ulceration</td>
<td>Decreased the ethanol, stress, and indometacin-induced gastric ulceration</td>
<td>Brzozowski et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Use</td>
<td>Constituents</td>
<td>Study type</td>
<td>Results</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karela (Momordia charantia L.)</td>
<td>Dried powdered fruits</td>
<td>Traditionally used in diabetes and for healing of peptic ulcer</td>
<td>Triterpenes and glycosides, karavilagenins and karavilosides</td>
<td>Animal models of gastric ulceration</td>
<td>Reduced ulceration</td>
<td>Gurbiz et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almécega (Protium heptaphyllum March.)</td>
<td>Resin from the trunk wood</td>
<td>Traditionally used remedy in gastrointestinal disorders</td>
<td>Volatiles and triterpenes (alpha- and beta-amyrin)</td>
<td>Animal studies</td>
<td>Antulcer, visceral antinociceptive and anti-inflammatory effects of α- and β-amyrin</td>
<td>Oliveira et al., 2004a; 2004b; 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coptis (Coptis Chinensis Franch.)</td>
<td>Root extract</td>
<td>Traditionally used remedy in gastrointestinal disorders</td>
<td>Alkaloids (10% berberine)</td>
<td>Animal studies</td>
<td>Inhibits ulcer formation and acid secretion</td>
<td>Li et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone setter (Cissus quadrangularis L.)</td>
<td>Methanolic extract</td>
<td>Traditionally used for fracture healing</td>
<td>Vitamin C and β-carotene</td>
<td>Rat study</td>
<td>Prevents indometacin-induced ulceration</td>
<td>Jainu et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

STW 5 is composed of ethanolic extracts from nine plants (Ibera Amara Totalis, Angelicae Radix, Cardui Mariae Fructus, Carvi Fructus, Chelidonii Herba, Liquiritae Radix, Marticariae Flos, Melissae Follium, Menthae Piperitae Folium). N-095 is a mixture of red ginseng, polygala root, saffron, antelope horn and aloe wood. Sangre de grado is derived from several Croton species (Croton dracanoides, C. palanostigma, C. lecheleri, C. urucurana). Baishouwu is an appellative name of dried root tubers from three Asclepiadaceae plants: Cynanchum auriculatum Royle ex Wight, Cynanchum bungei Decne and Cynoctonum wilfordii Maxim.
• suppressing the neutrophil/cytokine cascade in the gastrointestinal tract
• promoting tissue repair through expression of various growth factors
• exhibiting antioxidant activity, scavenging reactive oxygen species
• inhibiting cytochrome P450 2F1 activity, producing antinecrotic and anticarcinogenic activities.

However, experimental studies have aimed mostly to validate the traditional use of plants in gastrointestinal disease, but no attempt has been made to verify their potential in FD.

Irritable bowel syndrome

IBS is a potentially debilitating condition characterised by abdominal discomfort, bloating, and disturbed patterns of defecation with a lower health-related quality of life (Chang, 2004). According to Rome III criteria, IBS is defined as recurrent abdominal pain or discomfort for at least 3 days per month (Talley et al., 1999). It affects approximately 15–30% of the general population. The prevalence is equally divided among three subtypes: IBS with constipation, IBS with diarrhoea, and IBS with alternating constipation/diarrhoea (Brandt et al., 2005).

Conventional therapy includes the use of bulk laxatives and stool softeners for constipation, antimotility drugs for diarrhoea, and antispasmodics, antimuscarinics and antidepressants for pain and spasm (Maxwell et al., 1997). Chronic constipation is a very common disorder, and the goals in treating such patients are to improve the patient’s symptoms and to restore normal bowel function, aiming to achieve at least three bowel movements per week. Serotonin plays a prominent role in chronic constipation, since it affects the intestinal motility, fluid secretion and sensation through activation of receptors present in enterochromaffin cells (Gershon and Tack, 2007).

The only FDA-approved agents for chronic idiopathic constipation are tegaserod (5-HT₃ agonist) and lubiprostone, a type 2 chloride-channel activator, which both represent real therapeutic advances in the management of these patients (Ambizas and Ginzburg, 2007). Lubiprostone draws chloride, sodium, and water into the lumen of the gut enhancing fluid secretion and facilitating increased motility and colonic transit. Lubiprostone, although significantly better than placebo in improving symptoms of constipation severity, stool consistency, straining, and abdominal discomfort, has been shown to be associated with adverse events such as nausea (30.2%), diarrhoea (19.2%) and distention (9.3%) (Johanson and Ueno, 2007). However, patients are refractory to these agents in the presence of pelvic floor dyssynergia, leaving the option for therapy with a prokinetic agent, fibre or a laxative. Thus, there is an overall dissatisfaction with traditional treatment options from patients and physicians.

Clinical studies with herbas in functional gastrointestinal disorders

In the recent past, a few controlled clinical studies were carried out with phytotherapeutic combinations (i.e. combinations of various plant/herbal extracts with a number of different active ingredients) which showed superiority over the placebo treatments (see Table 8.2). However, randomised controlled trial (RCTs) data supporting the efficacy of these treatments in patients with FGIDs are still lacking (Liu et al., 2006). RCTs indicated that peppermint oil could be efficacious for symptom relief in IBS and meta-analysis confirmed this (Pittler and Ernst, 1998). Placebo-controlled RCTs demonstrated the clinical efficacy and safety of a polyherbal preparation, STW 5 (Iberogast, Enzymatic Therapy Inc.) for the treatment of both FD and patients with IBS. The pharmacological effects, as well as the therapeutic effectiveness, tolerability, and toxicity, of Iberogast were experimentally and clinically recorded and documented (Saller et al., 2002; Pilichiewicz et al., 2007). These studies indicated that Iberogast promotes gastric relaxation and stimulates antral motility. Tong-xie-ning, a standard Chinese traditional herbal formula, and Padma Lax, a Tibetan herbal medicine, showed significant improvement of global symptoms in FGID, when compared with placebo treatment (Liu et al., 2006). An RCT assessing artichoke leaf extract in 247 patients with FD demonstrated a significant improvement in both overall symptoms and disease-specific quality of life compared with placebo (Holtmann et al., 2003).
Studies on curcumin (diferuoylmethane), an ingredient of turmeric (Curcuma longa) demonstrated improvement in healing of peptic ulcer and symptoms in non-ulcer dyspepsia but not in IBS (Prucksunand et al., 2001). Capsaicin, the active ingredient of another spice, red chilli pepper, has been evaluated in small RCTs, which yielded conflicting results in patients with FD. While one study reported significant improvement in overall symptoms, epigastric pain, fullness and nausea compared with placebo (Bortolotti et al., 2002), an earlier placebo-controlled crossover trial was unable to show significant improvements in postprandial dyspepsia scores with capsaicin (Rodriguez-Stanley et al., 2000).

The combination of extracts of different plants appears to be advantageous to treat FGIDs compared with conventional chemically well-defined drugs. Nevertheless, several issues regarding herbal products deserve mention. Based on current evidence, the scientific validity of the use of many of these commercial natural products in FGIDs is severely limited, with quality control and regulatory issues continuing to be a concern. The available trials almost all suffer from significant methodological flaws making the results difficult to interpret. Although the short-term use appears relatively safe, the long-term safety of these agents has not been established. Further, because these natural products are not regulated as pharmaceuticals, questions regarding agent purity and potency could be raised.

**Safety and efficacy issues**

The quality of herb used and its chemical constitution is fundamental to understanding the product’s intended use and factors affecting its safety. It is the chemical constituents that are the basis for the pharmacological activity of a herbal product, and consequently for the therapeutic efficacy. Use of validated, reliable, and relevant methods for efficacy/toxicity studies with regulatory strategies are essential to create a stronger evidence base on the safety, efficacy and quality of the herbal products for FGIDs.

**Evaluation of herbal medicines: preclinical studies**

Preclinical assays are essential to guarantee the safety and efficacy of natural products in FGIDs. The pathophysiology of FGID is not firmly established, and is characterised by recurrent episodes of gastrointestinal symptoms with no structural alterations. Visceral hypersensitivity, disordered gastrointestinal motility and secretion are presently considered key mechanisms underlying FGID symptoms. Therefore, pharmacological studies with new herbal products for efficacy and safety assessment are carried out using in-vitro and in-vivo experimental models that helped define basic mechanisms of FD and IBS symptoms. Animal testing should follow the ethical considerations and the approval of the Institutional Committee on the Use of Animals for experimentation.

**In-vitro and animal testing**

The emerging therapies for FGIDs are largely aimed at normalising pain perception and gastrointestinal motor and reflux function. Helicobacter pylori infection, NSAID consumption and severe physical stress are associated with FGID. For this reason, the most common pharmacological properties determined in the evaluation of drugs effective for FGID are the anti-Helicobacter, cytoprotection, visceral analgesic, spasmolytic, antisecretory, anti diarrhoeal and prokinetic effects. The requirement for each one of these studies include experimental animals (two species, one rodent and another non-rodent, 6–8 per group), appropriate controls (negative and positive), and product evaluation at three dose levels.

H. pylori may induce gastritis and chronic dyspepsia (functional non-ulcer dyspepsia or gastro-duodenal ulcer) in humans. Mongolian gerbils or BALB/c mice infected with H. pylori are often used as animal models to screen test compounds for their efficacy in reducing the extent of gastric ulceration or inflammation. Although these animals demonstrate gastric ulceration, virtually no gastritis is seen in the antrum of infected animals, but this is, however, the hallmark of human infection (Lee, 2000). The anti-H. pylori activity of a test drug can be assessed through in-vitro studies employing rat gastric epithelial cell cultures and H. pylori isolates from gastric
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Constituents</th>
<th>Study type</th>
<th>Results</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STW 5 Iberogast <em>(herbal formula)</em></td>
<td>Ethanolic extracts of 9 plants</td>
<td>FD and IBS</td>
<td>Methionine like sulphur-compounds</td>
<td>Placebo-controlled RCT</td>
<td>Improved gastrointestinal symptom-severity score</td>
<td>Madisch et al., (2004); Rösch et al., 2006; von Arnim et al., (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carmint</td>
<td>Total extracts of 3 plants</td>
<td>IBS</td>
<td>(E)-2-dodecenal, eugenol, menthol</td>
<td>Pilot clinical study</td>
<td>Reduced the severity and frequency of abdominal pain/discomfort</td>
<td>Vejdani et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>and L-carvone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tong-xie-ning (TCM-herbal formula)</td>
<td>Dried extract of four herbs</td>
<td>Diarrhoea-predominant IBS</td>
<td>Complex compound containing</td>
<td>Placebo-controlled RCT</td>
<td>Reduced symptom severity</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>paeniflorin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hange-koboku-to (HKT, Kampoo medicine)</td>
<td>Dried mixture of 5 crude herbs</td>
<td>FD</td>
<td>Magnorol, konokiol, perillaldehyde,</td>
<td>Open clinical study</td>
<td>Improves delayed gastric emptying (prokinetic effect)</td>
<td>Oikawa et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6-gingerol, 6-shogaol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Padma Lax (Tibetan herbal medicine)</td>
<td>Dried extract from 10 plants</td>
<td>Constipation-predominant IBS</td>
<td>Multicomponent</td>
<td>Double-blind randomised pilot study</td>
<td>Reduced symptom severity</td>
<td>Salton et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artichoke (Cynara scolymus L.)</td>
<td>Leaf extract</td>
<td>Dyspepsia and IBS</td>
<td>Caffeoylquinic acids and flavonoids</td>
<td>Open clinical study</td>
<td>Amelioration of global symptoms and improvement in QOL score</td>
<td>Marakis et al., 2002; Bundy et al., 2004b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint (Mentha piperita L.)</td>
<td>Leaf essential oil</td>
<td>IBS</td>
<td>Menthol and menthonin</td>
<td>Double-blind RCT</td>
<td>Smooth muscle relaxation; analgesia</td>
<td>Pittler and Ernst, 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeric (Curcuma longa L.)</td>
<td>Rhizome extract</td>
<td>IBS; ulcer and non-ulcer dyspepsia</td>
<td>Curcumin (diferuloyl methane)</td>
<td>Placebo-controlled RCT</td>
<td>Improved healing of peptic ulcer and of non-ulcer dyspepsia but not of IBS</td>
<td>Bundy et al., 2004a; Pruksunand et al., 2001; Brinkhaus et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STW 5 is composed of ethanolic extracts from nine plants (Ibera Amara Totalis, Angelicae Radix, Cardui Mariae Fructus, Carvi Fructus, Chelidonii Herba, Liquiritae Radix, Marticariae Flos, Melissae Folium, Menthae Piperitae Folium).

Carmint contains total extracts from three plants (Melissa officinalis, Mentha spicata and Coriandrum sativum).

Tong-xie-ning consists of dried substances of Paeonia lactiflora Pali. (root), Atractylodes macrocephala Koidz. (rhizome), Citrus reticulata Blanco. (unripe exocarp) and Allium macrostemon Bge. (bulb).

HKT is a composite of five crude herbs: Pinelliae Tuber, Hoelen, Magnoliae Cortex, Perillae Herba and Zingiberis Rhizoma.

Padma Lax is composed of Aloes, Calumba, Cascara, Myrobalan, Condurango, Elecampane, Frangula, Gentian, Pepper and Nux vomica.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Constituents</th>
<th>Study type</th>
<th>Results</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red pepper (Capsicum annuum ssp.)</td>
<td>Powder</td>
<td>FD</td>
<td>Capsaicin</td>
<td>Placebo-controlled RCT</td>
<td>60% Reduction of symptom score</td>
<td>Bortolotti et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mangava-brava (Lafoensia pacari St Hil.)</td>
<td>Methanolic extract</td>
<td>Used in gastric ulcer and inflammatory conditions</td>
<td>Ellagic acid</td>
<td>Double-blind RCT against <em>H. pylori</em></td>
<td>Well tolerated and patients were symptom-free in an 8-week trial</td>
<td>Da Mota Menezes et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*IBS* = irritable bowel syndrome; *FD* = functional dyspepsia; *RCT* = randomised, controlled trial; *QOL* = quality of life.
mucosal biopsy patients. The minimum inhibitory concentration value of test drug is first established against *H. pylori* and then *H. pylori* is co-cultivated with rat gastric epithelial cells in the presence/absence of test drug at its minimum inhibitory concentration. A reduction in the activity of urease, a normal appearance of the epithelial cells on electron microscopic examination, a decrease in lipid peroxidation and lactate dehydrogenase suggests the possible anti-*H. pylori* activity of PS (Narayan *et al.*, 2007).

Gastric cytoprotection can be evaluated using rat/mouse/guinea pig models of gastric lesions induced by absolute ethanol, indometacin, histamine and immobilisation stress (Robert *et al.*, 1979; Paiva *et al.*, 1995; Trevithick *et al.*, 1995) and, to elucidate the physiological mechanism, effects of herbal products on mucus secretion, acid secretion (pylorus-ligated animals), glutathione reserve, mucosal blood flow and gastric emptying time are analysed (Grönbech and Lacy, 1995; Rao *et al.*, 1997; Paiva *et al.*, 1998). In addition, to understand the pharmacological mechanism underlying the gastroprotection, the role of capsaicin-sensitive fibres, endogenous prostaglandins and nitric oxide may be verified, using capsaicin-desensitisation procedure, and/or analysis of prostaglandins by ELISA and nitrite/nitrate by Griess reaction or indirectly by the use of nitric oxide synthase inhibitors (Brzozowski *et al.*, 2005).

Visceral hyperalgesia is a characteristic feature of FD and IBS. Visceral antihyperalgesic effects of herbals can be examined using animal models of nociception induced by intracolonic administration of mustard or capsaicin. These chemicals evoke both inflammatory and non-inflammatory pain through sensitisation of neurones at the peripheral and/or central sites, involving several neuropeptides and a great variety of inflammatory mediators. They serve as valuable tools in assessing gut pain and to study the possible mechanism (Oliveira *et al.*, 2005; Maia *et al.*, 2006).

Spasmolytic and antidiarrhoal properties of test compounds can be assessed in well-established models such as the Ussing-chamber, a pharmacological model for diarrhoea, and the isolated guinea pig ileum, a model for modulatory effects on ileum contraction. The inhibitory effect observed in these models provides ex-vivo evidence for the spasmolytic and antidiarrhoal activities of herbal products (Heinrich *et al.*, 2005). Several studies have investigated abnormalities of serotonin signalling in IBS. Decreased postprandial serotonin plasma levels have been reported to occur in constipation-predominant IBS, and increased plasma levels have been reported to occur in diarrhoea-predominant IBS (Atkinson *et al.*, 2006).

To verify the potential usefulness of herbals in diarrhoea-prone IBS, in-vivo testing could be carried out in mice on castor oil- or croton oil-induced diarrhoea, cholera toxin-induced intestinal secretion and on gastrointestinal transit induced by 5-HTP (Gurgel *et al.*, 2001; Pascual *et al.*, 2002), using alosetron, an antagonist for 5-HT3 receptors and a known agent effective for diarrhoea-predominant IBS as a positive control. Further, morphine-induced gastrointestinal delay in mice may be used as a model to test the compound’s likely use in constipation-predominant IBS, using tegaserod, a 5-HT4 receptor agonist, as a positive control. Tegaserod is a known prokinetic agent that speeds small-bowel transit and right-colon transit in IBS, reducing symptoms of constipation, pain and bloating (Mertz, 2005).

**Safety pharmacology**

Clinical assessment of the gastrointestinal tract is often limited to measurements of transit time and observations of vomiting or diarrhoea. In-vitro functional human tissue assays can be performed to measure a vast range of toxic effects of drugs under investigation, at the level of the organ, cell or even gene and these assays are considered an important adjunct to routine safety pharmacology tests (Harrison *et al.*, 2004; Hillier and Bunton, 2007). The cytotoxicity of new compounds can be determined by the MTT reduction assay using human lung fibroblasts (MRC-5) (Schmeda-Hirschmann *et al.*, 2005). These models are rapid, less expensive and reveal mechanisms of action. The data obtained serve as signals of potential harmful effects in humans and are often superior to extrapolation from animals. The heart is a frequent site of toxicity of pharmaceutical compounds in humans, and, when developing a new drug, it is critical to conduct a thorough preclinical evaluation of its possible adverse effects on cardiac structure and function. Changes in cardiac morphology such as myocardial necrosis, hypertrophy or valvulopathy are assessed in laboratory animals. The potential proarrhythmic risk of new drugs is a major subject of concern and needs to be
fully addressed before treatment of volunteers or patients takes place. The recommended tests to detect most arrhythmic drugs were to determine the effects on cardiac ion channels, in particular I\(\text{Kr}\) potassium channel antagonism in vitro and prolongation of the QT interval, assessed in vivo, in telemetred dogs (Hanton, 2007).

In-vivo animal safety data serve as important signal generators and in some cases, may stand alone as indicators of unreasonable risks. These include acute toxicity, and long-term toxicity, reproduction toxicity, genotoxicity and carcinogenicity studies. Knowledge of an ingredient’s pharmacokinetics and in-vivo metabolism will allow most appropriate interpretation of relevancy of the dose/concentration used in the in-vitro tests. Evidence of abnormalities from laboratory animal studies can be indicative of potential harm to humans.

Acute toxicity testing involves the study of toxic effects after a single (oral/parenteral) administration of the test compound with the objective to classify the substance associated on the basis of acute toxicity, identification of target involved in the acute toxic effect (signs: time of appearance, progression and reversibility), and to establish the dose intervals that may be of relevance to other toxicological studies. A long-term toxicity study (4–12 weeks) involves the repeated doses of the test substance, aimed to determine the maximum tolerable dose, the highest dose that does not result in toxic effects and the mechanism underlying the toxic effects in vivo by means of biochemical, behavioural and histopathological studies. Genotoxicity and carcinogenesis studies are important because several medicinal plants contain substances such as pyrrolizidine alkaloids, flavonoids, phorbol esters, etc., which can cause mutagenic effects. The Ames test using *Salmonella typhimurium* strains and the CHO (Chinese hamster ovary) chromosomal aberration test are the two most commonly used methods for the evaluation of genetic mutation and chromosome damage (Maron and Ames, 1983; Cavalcante et al., 2006).

**Evaluation of herbal medicines: controlled clinical trials**

The choice of primary endpoint for a clinical trial is to demonstrate the efficacy of a therapeutic agent.

The Rome III Committee recommends two types of measures to assess the efficacy of new treatments for IBS and FD:

- binary endpoints addressing the construct of relief (that is, adequate relief and satisfactory relief)
- an integrative symptom questionnaire that addresses the change in severity of a representative group of symptoms of IBS (that is, the IBS Severity Scale).

The current evidence suggests that at present, adequate relief should be recognised by regulatory authorities as an acceptable primary endpoint in clinical trials. This analysis also suggests that data from individual clinical trials should be pooled and undergo meta-analysis, and that prospective studies should be considered to further characterise the performance of available endpoints as outcome measures in pharmacotherapeutic trials (Camilleri et al., 2007). Literature search reveals that few well-controlled, double-blind (placebo-controlled) trials have been carried out with herbal medicines (see Table 8.2). Meta-analyses of reviews published reveal several discrepancies, and these are mostly due to:

- lack of standardisation and quality control of the herbal drugs used in clinical trials
- use of different dosages of herbal medicines
- inadequate randomisation in most studies, and patients not properly selected
- numbers of patients in most trials insufficient for the attainment of statistical significance
- difficulties in establishing appropriate placebos because of the tastes, aromas, etc.
- wide variations in the duration of treatments using herbal medicines.

A few herbal products, e.g. STW 5 (Iberogast), Artichoke, Carmint, Tong-xie-ning (Chinese herbal formula), Hange-koboku-to (Kampoo medicine), and Padma Lax (Tibetan herbal medicine) have been evaluated in clinical trials, but they still have the difficulties mentioned above and need additional, well-controlled and appropriate randomised clinical trials to prove their efficacy.
To assess the efficacy of new herbals in FGIDs, a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled, parallel group trial remains the preferred design. Investigators should include as broad a spectrum of patients as possible and should report recruitment strategies, inclusion/exclusion criteria, and attrition data. The primary analysis should be based on the proportion of patients in each treatment arm who satisfy a prespecified clinically meaningful change in a patient-reported symptom-improvement measure. Such measures of improvement are psychometrically validated subjective global assessments or a change from baseline in validated symptom guidelines and include an analysis of harms data and secondary outcome measures to support severity questionnaire. Data analysis should address all patients enrolled, using an intention-to-treat principle. Reporting of results should follow the Consolidated Standards for Reporting Trials or explain the primary outcome. Trials should be registered in a public location, prior to initiation, and should be reported even if the results are negative or inconclusive (Irvine et al., 2006).

Conclusions

No standard therapy is currently available for FGIDs such as FD and IBS, which are characterised by multiple symptoms associated with disordered gut function. There is limited evidence for the efficacy, safety and tolerability of currently available conventional therapies and it may be that, with traditional herbal therapies, patients may respond better in symptom improvement because of their multicomponent nature with different active constituents having pleotropic actions. However, herbal medicinals should undergo the same procedures as conventional drugs and should not be considered differently because they are of natural origin. Preclinical studies on very many herbal extracts and their active constituents demonstrated interesting pharmacological properties relevant to FD and IBS, but only few of them were taken to clinical trials with limited success. Future studies should address their effectiveness and safety in patients with FGIDs by the double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled, parallel-group trial study design. The safety and their quality should be ensured through greater pharmacovigilance studies and by governmental regulatory mechanisms. To provide uniform quality of raw material, emphasis must be laid on domestication, production and biotechnological studies and genetic improvement of medicinal plants to provide uniform and high-quality raw material.

References


Mahady GB, Pendland SL, Yun G et al. (2002). Turmeric (Curcuma longa) and curcumin inhibit the growth of Helicobacter pylori, a group 1 carcinogen. Anticancer Res 22: 4179–4181.


Introduction

Cancer is a condition characterised by the uncontrolled growth and spread of abnormal cells, causing their massive aggregation producing either tumours or dispersal in the vascular system such as blood and lymph. Owing to a deviation from normal genetic makeup, cancer cells acquire immortality and a capability to evade apoptosis, non-responsiveness to anti-growth signals, self-sufficiency in growth factors, the ability to metastasise and to form new blood vessels that can supply nutrition and oxygen to the growing tissues. The transformation of normal to cancer cell occurs through accumulation of a series of genetic alterations or mutations, especially of oncogenes.

Carcinogenesis

There are many aetiological factors leading to cancer through a multistep process called carcinogenesis, which involves initiation, promotion, progression and malignant conversion. Mutation in a single cell initiates clonal expansion to form a premalignant lesion. These initiated cells will have resistance to cytotoxicity, defects in maturation, escape from senescence and have altered dependence on growth factors and hormones. Tumour promotion involves activation of cell surface receptors, activation/inhibition of cytosolic enzymes and nuclear transcription factors, stimulation of proliferation and inhibition of apoptotic cell death. Progression is accelerated by additional exposure to genotoxic agents and it is due to genetic instability and nonrandom sequential chromosomal aberrations. Malignant conversion involves multifocal change in premalignant lesions. There will be up-regulation of transcriptional activity and expression of modified cell surface molecules, gene amplification, alterations in cell-cycle regulatory genes, secreted proteases and methylation of DNA. All these changes facilitate migration and invasion.
Inhibition of carcinogenesis

As the progression of carcinogenesis is through a multistep pathway, there are many possible intervention sites inhibiting this progression. The procarcinogen can be detoxified and eliminated from the system. The conversion of procarcinogen to ultimate carcinogen is through multiple mechanisms including metabolic activation by enzymes. These mechanisms can be inhibited by blocking those enzymes involved in the activation step and several natural compounds of plant origin are reported as blocking agents in the chemoprevention of cancer, including flavonoids, ellagic acid and sulforaphane. These either block the conversion of carcinogen to ultimate carcinogen, or prevent the action of active metabolites on the normal cell. They may also alter carcinogen metabolism, enhance carcinogen detoxification, scavenge electrophiles and reactive oxygen species or enhance DNA repair.

The conversion of normal cells from preneoplastic cells to neoplastic cells takes several years, either by a second exposure to the carcinogen or promoting agent and accumulation of genetic variations. These steps can be inhibited by compounds such as curcumin, resveratrol, carotenoids, retinoids and genistein, which inhibit the malignant transformation of initiated cells by scavenging reactive oxygen species, altering gene expression, decreasing inflammation, suppressing proliferation, inducing differentiation, encouraging apoptosis, enhancing immunity or inhibiting angiogenesis and metastasis.

Several chemopreventive phytochemicals have been shown to interfere with the cell-cycle regulatory pathways, qualifying them as potential therapeutic agents. Some are powerful inhibitors of growth factor receptors, including epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), and a variety of flavonoids are inhibitory, e.g. apigenin, luteolin, quercetin, catechin, epigallocatechin gallate, hesperitin, anthocyanins, genistein, with potential use in preventive anticancer treatment. Some phytochemicals undergoing clinical trials in the inhibition of carcinogenesis are given in Table 9.1.

Hepatocellular carcinoma

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most common primary malignant tumour of the liver and is the fifth most common cancer in the world, ranking fourth in annual mortality rates. An estimated 564,000 new cases of HCC are diagnosed each year, with the highest incidence in eastern and southeastern Asia, some of the western Pacific islands and sub-Saharan Africa. Men are affected four to eight times more often than women and the incidence generally increases with increasing age, although there is a definite shift towards a younger age distribution in black African and ethnic Chinese populations.

Aetiological factors

There are some well-documented aetiological associations of HCC. The aetiological association between hepatitis-B virus (HBV) and HCC is well established. Chronic HBV infection is the leading risk factor and it has been estimated that 53% of cases worldwide are related to HBV. Malignant transformation occurs after a long period of chronic liver disease, frequently associated with cirrhosis. Chronic inflammation of the liver, continuous cell death and consequent cell proliferation might increase the occurrence of genetic alterations and risk of cancer. The long-term expression of regulator gene product of the X-gene and large envelope proteins (LHBs) are thought to play a major role in tumorigenesis. This viral oncoprotein

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target organ</th>
<th>Agent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phase I trials</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>Soy isoflavones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colon</td>
<td>Curcumin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>Lycopene (3 trials);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Soy isoflavones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Epigallocatechin gallate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phase II trials</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anogenital warts, human</td>
<td>Indole-3-carbinol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papillomavirus, HIV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervix</td>
<td>9-cis-Retinoic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td>Soy (dietary);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>soy isoflavones</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9.1 Selected ongoing Phase I and II cancer prevention trials sponsored by the US National Cancer Institute
behaves as a transcriptional transactivator, which activates oncogenes, cytokines and growth factors. A direct role of the virus through integration of viral DNA directly to host genome has also been hypothesised that may enhance chromosomal instability, large inverted duplications, deletions, amplifications or chromosomal translocations which lead to the activation of oncogenic pathways.

Chronic HCV (hepatitis C virus) infection is also associated with HCC. The HCC incidence rate in patients with HCV-related cirrhosis is about 3.7%.

Chemical carcinogens which are linked to HCC include nitrates, hydrocarbons, solvents, organochlorine pesticides, primary metals and polychlorinated biphenyls. Of all the chemicals linked to HCC, ethanol is the most important one that leads to HCC. Overconsumption of alcohol is one of the leading causes of liver cirrhosis which makes the patient more susceptible to HBV and HCV infection.

Aflatoxins produced by the fungi, *Aspergillus flavus* and *A. parasiticus* have also been linked to HCC. These fungal species grow on grains, peanuts and other food products and are the most common cause of food spoilage. These fungi also produce aflatoxins, aflatoxin B1 being the most hepatotoxic and chronic exposure to these mycotoxins will lead to HCC.

Some congenital conditions also lead to development of HCC. Genetic diseases such as haemochromatosis, Wilson’s disease, hereditary tyrosinaemia, type I glycogen storage disease and porphyria, have all been linked to a high incidence of HCC.

### Symptoms and markers

The symptoms related to the early stages of HCC are poor. When HCC presents with clinical symptoms, the tumour is usually advanced and there are few therapeutic options. The current effective treatments available are only applicable in a relatively small proportion of early stage cases.

Serum α-fetoprotein is a useful tumour marker for the detection and monitoring of HCC development, but gives false-negatives in about 40% of patients. Serum γ-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) is frequently overexpressed in cancer cells. GGT activity is a sensitive marker of hepatobiliary disorders, exhibiting tissue-specific expressions under various physiological and pathological conditions. Other enzymes that are increased in the blood during HCC include alkaline phosphatase, alanine transaminase and aspartate transaminase, but they are non-specific.

The overexpression of transforming growth factor (TGF)-β1 and TGF-β1 messenger RNA is seen in most patients with HCC. The level of insulin-like growth factor (IGF)-II and IGF-II mRNA is also overexpressed in HCC. The analysis of telomerase activity in combination with α-fetoprotein increases the accuracy of HCC diagnosis to about 93%.

Even though tumours present limitations for cytogenetic analysis, there are some reports of cytogenetic analysis of HCC. They include chromosome 1p abnormalities and 8q amplification. Molecular studies have demonstrated frequent loss of heterozygosity on 1p, 4q, 8p, 11p, 13q, 16q and 17p and amplification of 8q areas in HCC.

### Models

Rodents are usually studied as models of hepatic carcinogenesis. Many chemicals induce liver cancer in rodents since their livers are very sensitive to chemical carcinogens. Thus, a single experimental protocol can be used to understand the mechanisms of a number of carcinogens. The low cost of rodents and their potential for genetic studies and manipulation are also attributes. Apart from this, a fairly extensive understanding of liver biology has made rodent HCC a popular model. Other models used for HCC study include hamsters and other non-primates.

The chemicals used to study the initiation of HCC include nitrosamines, aromatic amines, vinyl chloride, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, heterocyclic amines, aflatoxin and tamoxifen. The promoters which are used after initiation include phenobarbital, dioxin and polychlorinated biphenyl. The mechanism of action of these chemical carcinogens is combination with DNA to form adducts, either by direct binding to DNA, or after enzymatic activation in the liver to produce the carcinogen. Some agents that produce hepatic carcinogenesis are discussed below.
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons require metabolic activation to elicit their detrimental effect, e.g. benzo(a)pyrene is enzymatically activated to the 7,8-dihydrodiol, which induces both somatic mutations in crucial genes through DNA binding and subsequent outgrowth of irreversibly transformed cells.

Aryl amines/amides
In rodents these compounds induce tumours in the liver, e.g. acetamido-fluorine undergoes N-hydroxylation in liver cells. Additional tumour-promoting activities of acetamido-fluorine include the triggering of adaptive responses in mitochondria permeability transition pores and Bcl-2 production levels that increase resistance to apoptosis.

Alcohol
The mechanism of ethanol-induced cancer is closely related to its metabolism. Acetaldehyde, the end-product of ethanol metabolism, is the causative agent of cancer in chronic conditions. Oxidative stress and cirrhosis are important factors in ethanol-induced HCC.

Nitrosamines
These are the most widely used chemical carcinogen for animal experiments. N’-nitrosodiethylamine (NDEA) is metabolised in the liver and its ethyl radical product is responsible for induction of HCC. This radical attacks the DNA and produces genetic changes which result in carcinogenesis. It also produces the conversion of certain proto-oncogenes to oncogenes.

Azo dyes
Para-dimethylaminoazobenzene (p-DAB) is metabolised to monoaminoazobenzene by N-demethylation and subsequently to aminoazobenzene or to N-hydroxy-N-methyl-4-aminoazobenzene. Covalent bindings of these metabolites with DNA are major carcinogenic factors.

Aflatoxins
Aflatoxins are highly mutagenic and are metabolised by cytochrome p450 to their epoxides, which results in formation of DNA adducts with the guanine N7, thus causing carcinogenicity.

Treatment
If detected early, suitable curative treatments include surgical resection, liver transplantation and percutaneous ablation. In patients with advanced stage of HCC, transarterial chemoembolisation has been proved to improve survival in selected candidates. Other therapeutic modalities such as intraarterial chemotherapy and internal radiation offer promising results but have not been shown to improve survival. As HCC is usually chemoresistant, cytotoxic drugs are poorly tolerated in cirrhotic patients so many of the known anticancer agents, e.g. tamoxifen, octreotide, interferon, fail to produce any benefit in HCC patients. Promising results have been obtained with agents targeting receptor tyrosine kinase pathways. Since HCC is dependent on angiogenesis, molecules targeting the angiogenesis are currently under investigation. BAY 43-9006, which inhibits multiple pathways, mainly Raf kinase and VEGF, has been undergoing Phase II and III trials and has shown a partial response in a patient with advanced HCC (Strumberg et al., 2005).

The presence of unlimited chemical molecules, with diverse mechanisms, present in herbal drugs makes them interesting starting points in the search for newer drugs for cancer treatment.

Natural templates for treatment
The plant kingdom produces many potent pharmacologically active components, several of which have provided promising results to combat various diseases. Possible uses of herbal drugs in cancer are illustrated in Figure 9.1.

The chemical basis of some anticancer plants has been elucidated and some are now used clinically. Plant extracts and their constituents which show significant activity against hepatic cancer are described in more detail below.

Curcuma longa (turmeric)
The rhizome of C. longa (Zingiberaceae) is described as an anti-inflammatory agent in Ayurveda and is widely used in foods and as a medicine thoughout India and other Asian countries as a treatment for liver disorders, including cancer. The most-studied ingredient in the rhizome is curcumin but several
related compounds are present such as demethoxy-
curcumin and bidemethoxycurcumin.

Curcumin treatment has been reported to reduce
tumour incidence and inhibit the liver inflammation
and hyperplasia in N-nitrosodiethylamine-induced
liver-cancer-bearing animals (Chuang et al., 2000).
The chemopreventive effect of turmeric and
curcumin against diethylnitrosamine-induced and
phenobarbital-promoted hepatocarcinogenesis has
been reported (Sreepriya and Bali, 2005). Curcumin
also suppressed diethylnitrosamine-induced develop-
ment of altered hepatic foci in rat liver (Shukla and
Arora, 2003). The number of γ-GT positive foci
induced by aflatoxin B1 was found to be reduced by
curcumin treatment (Soni et al., 1997). Curcumin
significantly protected the liver from oxidative
stress-induced damage during chemically induced
hepatocarcinogenesis in rats (Sreepriya and Bali,
2006).

In a patient study, Curcuma aromatic oil showed
a positive effect in treating primary liver cancer with
longer survival time and myelosuppression (Cheng
et al., 2001). Curcumin treatment reduced the
tumour incidence by inhibiting angiogenesis through
down-regulating cyclo-oxygenase 2 and vascular
endothelial growth factor in HepG2 cells (Yosung-
neon et al., 2006). It was reported that curcumin
induces mitochondrial and nuclear DNA damage,
thereby inducing apoptosis through caspase 3 and 9
activation. Curcumin also suppressed intrahepatic
metastasis mediated by the inhibition of MMP-9 and
through alteration of cytoskeletal organisation. In-
vitro studies showed that the production of p21(ras)
was inhibited by curcumin. It also inhibited tran-
scription factor NF-κB and IAP gene expression
(Aggarwal et al., 2007). External curcumin applica-
tion has been tried as a palliative therapy for
cancerous skin lesions (Kuttan et al., 1987). Clinical
trials (Phase I and II) of curcumin are being carried
out in several hospitals to find out its therapeutic role
against colon cancer, pancreatic cancer, hepato-
cellular carcinoma and multiple myeloma (Goel et al.,
2008). Curcumin was found to be non-toxic at doses
up to 12 g/day in patients.
Silybum marianum (milk thistle)
The active ingredients present in *S. marianum* (Compositae) are the flavonolignans silymarin and silybin. Silymarin has been proposed as a promising chemotherapeutic adjuvant for the treatment of liver cancer. *N*-nitrosodiethylamine-induced hepatocellular carcinoma was found to be inhibited by silymarin by modulating antioxidant defence status in rats (Ramakrishnan *et al.*, 2006). Silybin was found to inhibit the growth of Hep3B and HepG2 cells by G1 arrest. The apoptosis-inducing property of silybin has been shown to be through decreasing cyclin D1, cyclin E and cyclin dependent kinases 2 and 4 (Varghese *et al.*, 2005). Silymarin can suppress the proliferation of a variety of tumour cells through cell cycle arrest at the G1/S-phase, induction of cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors (such as p15, p21 and p27), down-regulation of anti-apoptotic gene products (e.g. Bcl-2 and Bcl-xL), inhibition of cell-survival kinases (AKT, PKC and MAPK) and inhibition of inflammatory transcription factors (e.g. NF-κB). Silymarin can also down-regulate gene products involved in the proliferation of tumour cells (cyclin D1, EGFR, COX-2, TGF-beta, IGF-IR), invasion (MMP-9), angiogenesis (VEGF) and metastasis (adhesion molecules). The anti-inflammatory effects of silymarin are mediated through suppression of NF-κB-regulated gene products, including COX-2, LOX, inducible iNOS, TNF and IL-1 (Aggarwal *et al.*, 2006). Treatment of patients with hepatitis B or C infection with silymarin seemed to be effective, although no effect in decreasing viral load was found (Mayer *et al.*, 2005).

**Camellia sinensis (tea)**
Constituents of *C. sinensis* (Theaceae) include flavonols, e.g. myricetin, kaempferol and quercetin; as well as caffeine and proanthocyanidins such as epigallocatechin gallate. Green tea was observed to have protective effect on liver cancer in population-based studies (Mu *et al.*, 2003).

In multidose NDEA-induced HCC followed by carbon tetrachloride injection and partial hepatectomy studies, it was found that treatment with tea polyphenols and pigment showed significant reduction in number and area of GST-positive foci, which is a proliferative indicator of precancerous liver lesions by immunohistochemistry (Gong *et al.*, 1999). Green tea was reported to exert antiproliferative activity towards hepatoma cells. Green tea was also reported to possess chemopreventive activity against nitrosamine-initiated hepatocellular carcinoma (Cao *et al.*, 1996). It was found that the production of p21(WAF1/CIP1) was significantly induced and that of cyclin D1 and cyclin-dependent kinase 4 were inhibited in tea-treated animals (Jia *et al.*, 2002). Tea catechins, black tea extract and oolong tea extract are also reported to inhibit hepatocellular carcinoma (Matsumoto *et al.*, 1996).

Allium sativum (garlic)
The bulbs of *Allium sativum* (Alliaceae) have been described as useful against inflammation and tumours in Ayurveda. The anticarcinogenic activity of whole garlic (Samaranayake *et al.*, 2000), as well as its isolated ingredients (Singh *et al.*, 1996), against NDEA-induced hepatocellular carcinoma in animals is well documented. Aged garlic extract inhibited the development of putative lesions in rat hepatocarcinogenesis involving a slowing in the proliferation rate of liver cells after partial hepatectomy (Uda *et al.*, 2006). Garlic powder inhibited the formation of preneoplastic foci during hepatocarcinogenesis initiated by diethylnitrosamine through suppression of CYP2E1 (Park *et al.*, 2002). The organosulphur compounds isolated from garlic are highly active against liver cancer. There was a decrease in the number of preneoplastic, GST-positive foci of the liver and also a down-regulation of IGF-I and iNOS mRNA expression in the liver of organosulphur-treated animals which were induced with 2-amino-3,8-dimethylimidazo [4–5-f] quinoxaline (Ogawa *et al.*, 2006). The protective effect of diallylsulphide isolated from garlic against HCC was reported by Singh *et al.* (2004). S-allyl-cysteine, an organosulphur compound, showed inhibition of tumour incidence and lipid peroxidation in NDEA-induced hepatic cancer animals with simultaneous elevation in antioxidants (Sunderasen and Subramanian, 2003).

Benzo(a)pyrene-induced cancer was found to be inhibited by garlic constituents such as diallysulphide (DAS), diallyldisulphide (DADS) and diallyltrisulphide (DATS). Diallylsulphide prevented DNA adducts induced by the carcinogen, thereby preventing the initiation of oestrogen-induced cancer (Green *et al.*, 2003). Allylthiopyridazine derivatives induced
apoptosis in Sk-Hep-1 cells through a caspase-3-dependent mechanism and this also contributes to their chemopreventive function (Jung et al., 2001). The antiproliferative property of aqueous garlic extract was studied in HepG2 cells and it was found that these compounds induced a p53/p21-dependent cell cycle arrest in G2/M phase and apoptosis through activation of c-Jun-NH (2) terminal kinase (JNK)/c-Jun phosphorylative cascade (De Martino et al., 2006). DAS, DADS and DATS also caused G2/M phase arrest in human liver tumour cells (Wu et al., 2004).

Emblica officinalis Gaertn. (emblica)

The extract of fruits of E. officinalis (Euphorbiaceae) was reported to give chemoprotection against chemically induced carcinogenesis (Jeena et al., 1999). The fruits are rich in polyphenolic compounds such as gallic acid, tannic acid, emblicanin A and B and ellagittannins. Polyphenolic compounds, such as epigallocatechin gallate, found in tea are also present in E. officinalis. Because of the presence of these compounds, emblica extract has been shown to possess significant antioxidant activity and is also antimitagenic (Jeena et al., 1997), inhibiting DNA adducts produced by benzo(a)pyrene (Jeena et al., 1998). The polyphenolic fraction of E. officinalis was found to modulate NDEA-induced hepatic cancer in rats (Jeena et al., 1998). In-vitro experiments showed that it inhibited DNA topoisomerase I in Saccharomyces cerevisiae mutant cell culture and also inhibited the activity of cdc25 tyrosine phosphatase (Jeena et al., 2001).

Phyllanthus amarus

The fresh root of P. amarus (Euphorbiaceae) is said to be an excellent remedy for jaundice. The components present in P. amarus are lignans, e.g. phyllanthin; tannins, e.g. phyllanthusiin D3, amaritin and amarulone; alkaloids, e.g. ent-norsecurinine, diarylbutanes; and neolignans, e.g. phyllnirurin. A variety of hydrolysable tannins purified from P. amarus were reported to be potent inhibitors of rat liver cyclic AMP-dependent protein kinase catalytic subunit (Polya et al., 1995). P. amarus extract was reported to significantly inhibit NDEA-induced hepatocarcinogenesis in rats in a dose-dependent manner (Jeena et al., 1999). In another study the lifespan of rats bearing NDEA-induced hepatocellular carcinoma was found to be significantly increased by the treatment with P. amarus (Rajeshkumar and Kuttan, 2000), from 33 weeks to 52 weeks. P. amarus extract has been shown to have antiviral activity against hepatitis B virus (Yeh et al., 1993). In a patient study, it was found that approximately 60% of the carriers of HBV lost the virus within 1 month of Phyllanthus amarus treatment (Blumberg et al., 1990).

Picrorhiza kurroa (kutki)

The root/rhizomes of Picrorhiza kurroa (Scrophulariaceae) are used in Ayurveda against jaundice. The components present in the root include the glycosides picrorhizin and kutkin, and sterols. Picroliv, an iridoid glycoside mixture prepared from this plant, contains equal concentrations of picroside and kutkoside as well as vanillic acid and sterols. Amelioration of NDEA-induced hepatocellular carcinoma was seen in animals treated with P. kurroa extract, and there was a significant reduction in the levels of drug-metabolising enzymes such as glutathione-S-transferase (GST) and aniline hydroxylase (AH) (Jeena et al., 1999). Liver morphology and histopathology also revealed the protective effect of the extract against chemical carcinogenesis. Picroliv was found to inhibit HCC (Rajeshkumar and Kuttan, 2000) and was also reported to possess protective effect against 1,2-dimethylhydrazine-induced HCC in animals (Rajeshkumar and Kuttan, 2003). Picroliv significantly down-regulated transcription factor AP1 and thereby decreased the level of c-fos mRNA as well as c-jun and c-fos proteins in liver tissue (Seth et al., 2003). This would indicate a base for their potential anti-HCC activity.

Semecarpus anacardium (marking nut)

The rind of the fruit of S. anacardium (Anacardiaceae) is used in Ayurvedic medicine against inflammatory diseases. The active ingredient is usually reckoned as anacardic acid. S. anacardium nut extract affords anticancer activity by enhancing both phase I and phase II enzymes and it has been proposed that the anticancer activity may be mediated through the induction of hepatic biotransformation enzymes (Premalatha and Sachidanandam, 2000). It was found to modulate the
carcinogenic effect of aflatoxin by enhancing anti-
oxidant capacity in the system (Premalatha and
Sachidanandam, 1999).

Andrographis paniculata (creat)

The root of *Andrographis paniculata* (Acanthaceae) is
used in both Ayurvedic and Chinese medicine. The
component present is a diterpene lactone andro-
grapholide. The roots also contain a variety of
compounds including the sesquiterpene andro-
grapholide. The effectiveness of *A. paniculata* was
found to be through modulating hepatic and extra-
hepatic carcinogen-metabolising enzymes and
antioxidant status (Trivedi and Rawal, 2001). *A.
paniculata* extract and andrographolide stimulated
CTL production through enhanced secretion of IL-2
and IFN-γ by T cells and thereby inhibited the
tumour growth (Sheeja and Kuttan, 2007a). The
species has been reported to modulate the immune
response through enhancing natural killer (NK) cell
activity and antibody-dependent cell-mediated cyto-
toxicity and antibody-dependent complement medi-
ated cytotoxicity in tumour-bearing animals (Sheeja
and Kuttan, 2007b).

Glycine max (soybean)

*G. max* (Papilionaceae) contains isoflavone glyco-
sides genistein and diadzin as active principles but
certain saponin constituents were also found to be
biologically active. The administration of 30% soybean to the rat diet was found to have protective
effect against hepatocarcinogenesis induced by DL-
ethionone (Aiad *et al.*, 2004). There was a 92.7%
increase in lifespan in rats with primary liver cancer
when treated with doxorubicin encapsulated with
soybean-derived sterylglycoside mixture when
compared with free doxorubicin (Shimizu *et al*.,
1998). Genistein was found to inhibit diethyl-
nitrosamine-induced and phenobarbital-promoted
HCC (Lee *et al.*, 1995). Genistein has been reported
to inhibit lung metastasis in animals (Menon *et al*.,
1998). Genistein was found to inhibit cell prolif-
eration and induced apoptosis through caspase-3
induction and caspase-2 activation (Chodon *et al*.,
2007). In another study apoptosis was induced by
genistein in Hep 3B cells through initiating endo-
plasmic reticular stress relevant regulators including
m-calpain, GADD 153, GRP 78 and caspase-12 (Yeh
*et al.*, 2007).

Panax ginseng (ginseng)

*P. ginseng* (Araliaceae) root (white and red) is exten-
sively used in traditional Chinese medicine against
various diseases. Ginseng contains polysaccharides
and saponins, those known as ginsenosides are
commonly considered to be the active constituents.
The incidence of liver tumour development was
lower in animals treated with red ginseng extract,
and the average number of tumours per mouse was
significantly reduced in the treated group (Li and
Wu, 1991). White ginseng was also found to possess
anticarcinogenic properties both in vitro and in vivo
(Nishino *et al.*, 2001). In another study, red ginseng
was found to possess both preventive as well as cura-
tive properties against diethylnitrosamine-induced hepatic
cancers in rats (Wu *et al.*, 2001).

Terminalia arjuna (arjuna bark)

*T. arjuna* (Combretaceae) bark is extensively used
against tumours in Ayurvedic medicine. *T. arjuna*
was reported to possess chemopreventive activity in
NDEA-induced HCC-bearing animals (Sivalokanathan
*et al.*, 2005). In another study, diethylnitrosamine-
induced HCC was inhibited by *T. arjuna* bark extract
through modulating the antioxidant status in tumour-
bearing animals (Sivalokanathan *et al.*, 2006). The
ingredients of *T. arjuna* bark include flavonoids, e.g.
arjunoone, arjunolone and luteolin; phenols, e.g. gallic
acid and ellagic acid; and terpenoids, e.g. oleanolic
acid. The antitumour potential of luteolin and triter-
penoids has been reported, while phenolic ingredients
have significant chemopreventive activity.

Other plants

*Bauhinia variegata* and *B. racemosa* were reported
to ameliorate NDEA-induced HCC in rats through
modulation of antioxidant enzymes. Chemopreven-
tive potential of extracts from *Tamarix gallica*
*Paullina cupana*, *Butea monosperma*, *Lygodium
flexuosum*, *Indigofera aspalathoides*, *Apium grave-
olens*, *Solanum trilobatum*, *Ardisia compressa*,
*Calotropsis procera*, *Amaranthus gageicus*, *Astra-
galus membranaceus*, *Beta vulgaris*, *Cymbopogon
citrates*, *Asteracantha longifolia*, *Trianthema*
portulacastrum etc. has been reported in hepatic cancer models in animals.

**Conclusions**

There is no really effective treatment for hepatocellular carcinoma and so it stands high in global cause of mortality. Chronic hepatitis and lifestyle-induced oxidative stress are the major factors associated with hepatic cancer. It is detected in the later stages in many patients, and the current treatment modalities fail to keep the disease under control. Plants and plant-derived compounds have been found to be effective against hepatic cancer in animal models and through a few clinical studies. The antiviral and free-radical scavenging activities of the plant-derived constituents in many cases have proven to be beneficial. Many of the compounds, e.g. curcumin, are in the process of being tested in clinical trials and are giving promising results, while explorations for newer compounds are still progressing.

**References**


Testing of herbal products used to treat infections

José-Luis Ríos

Antimicrobial activity 133
Antifungal assays for higher plants and natural products 143

The search for novel antimicrobial agents includes researchers interested in medicinal plants and their isolated compounds. Myriad studies have been published, but they are usually carried out according to different criteria and with different methodologies. Recently, Ríos and Recio (2005) reviewed the most relevant papers published on this subject and observed that even the objectives varied; so general criteria must be established for studying the antimicrobial activity of extracts and derived compounds. Most important is the definition of common parameters such as the type of plant material used, the techniques employed, the growth medium used, and the microorganisms tested (Cos et al., 2005).

Selection of experimental conditions

Scientific criteria should be used in the selection of the plant material. In preference to random criteria, the selection of plants should be made from an ethnopharmacological perspective. All the species tested should be perfectly described and identified; this must include the specifics of collection, i.e. location, season, date, and time of day. The use of
commercial samples should be limited to cases of standardised extracts or defined phytomedicines (Ríos and Recio, 2005). While research on the antimicrobial activity of medicinal plants is quite common, standardised criteria for studying this activity are often lacking. For testing the antimicrobial activity of medicinal plant extracts, several factors must be considered, one factor being the selection of the appropriate solvent. This is especially important in cases in which folk medicine makes use of a water infusion of the medicinal plant whereas the plant extract used for research purposes is often a non-polar organic extract. Elof (1998) favours the use of an acetone extract. The selection of the microorganism to be tested should also be a high priority. Thus, to test the activity of a medicinal plant used against urinary infections, strains of Gram-negative bacteria are essential, whereas for testing the anti-acne effect of a plant extract, a series of Gram-positive bacteria are preferable. Finally the preparation of samples in an appropriate sterile atmosphere along with a standard way of expressing the results are essential for evaluating the data in a correct and comprehensive fashion.

**Selection of the solvent and extraction system**

The appropriate selection of the extraction solvent is important for establishing the potential activity of a medicinal plant. Plant extracts are usually prepared by maceration or percolation of either fresh plants or dried, powdered plants and can be performed with water or organic solvents (Vanden Berghe and Vlietinck, 1991). The plant material may be extracted with one solvent and then fractionated with solvents of different polarity. This is a good way of detecting minor active compounds that are present in the preliminary extract, albeit in minor quantities and was the methodology used by Ríos et al. (1987) and Recio et al. (1989), which employed a sequential extraction with two solvents of different polarity, e.g. chloroform and methanol, and then tested each separately, finding clear differences between the activities of extracts obtained from the same source. Other authors have established a selective protocol of extraction to study the differences between extracts obtained in different ways. Nostro et al. (2000) suspended the powdered drug in water, adjusted the mixture to pH 2.0 and incubated it at 37°C for 30 min in a water bath. The mixture was then neutralised to pH 7.0, filtered, extracted with diethyl ether and concentrated to dryness, and finally the remaining aqueous extract was lyophilised, and then all the extracts were tested. Thongson et al. (2004) determined the influence of the extraction system on antimicrobial activity. They compared the effects of both conventional and high-intensity ultrasound-assisted solvent-extraction. The conventional system consisted of an extraction of the sample (10 g) with the solvent (mixtures of isopropanol-hexane, 100 mL) in an orbital shaker for 24 h at room temperature. The high-intensity ultrasound system consisted of the extraction of the same quantity of the sample, but this time the sample was sonicated in an ice-bath for 5 min with a 20 kHz ultrasonic generator connected to a half inch transducer at an ultrasonic intensity of 6.8 W/cm. All the extracts were filtered/sterilised using a 0.45 µm filter.

**Culture media**

The composition of the growth medium can also influence the activity of the tested extracts or compounds. Thus, when Ross et al. (2001) reported the effects of garlic powder and garlic oil, the antimicrobial activity of garlic oil was found to be greater in media lacking tryptone or cysteine, which led to the hypothesis that the effects may involve sulphhydryl reactivity.

Mueller-Hinton agar is probably the universal culture media for testing the antimicrobial activity of medicinal plant extracts. Certain microorganisms, including Candida albicans or Mycobacterium phlei, can be studied in a non-selective medium; however, if a preliminary study of these microorganisms is of interest, a specific medium should be used (Villar et al., 1987). Depending on the microorganism, the culture medium could be supplemented, for example with defibrinated sheep’s blood for Streptococcus pneumoniae and Streptococcus pyogenes (Rojas et al., 2001) or yeast extract for Lysteria monocytogenes (Thongson et al., 2004). Diagnostic sensitivity test agar (Vanden Berghe and Vlietinck, 1991), heart infusion broth (Hammer et al., 1996; 1999), tryptone soya agar (Nostro et al., 2000) and Mueller-Hinton broth (Bylka et al., 2004) can all be used for bacteria, whereas Sabouraud dextrose agar (Nostro et al., 2000) and Sabouraud chloramphenicol broth (Bylka
et al., 2004) are better for mycetes and Sabouraud liquid medium is best used for yeasts (Nostro et al., 2000).

**Selection of microorganisms**

American type culture collection (ATCC) or similar standard microorganisms are commonly used in studies on antimicrobial activity. A correct selection of type strains is essential for subsequent comparison of results obtained from different groups, not to mention the fact that it is the only possible way to obtain reproducible results. However, it is not a guarantee for secure and exact screening if different precautions have not been taken (Vanden Berghe and Vlietinck, 1991). When the possible treatment of an infectious disease is the subject of the research, it is recommendable to carry out subsequent experiments with the isolated clinical pathogen (Hammer et al., 1996; Thongson et al., 2004). A correct selection of Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria for the preliminary screening is basic for such studies. For example, *Staphylococcus aureus* and/or *Streptococcus pyogenes* as aerobic Gram-positive cocci, *Bacillus cereus* as an aerobic Gram-positive spore-forming bacillus, *Escherichia coli* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* as aerobic Gram-negative bacilli, *Klebsiella pneumoniae* as a facultatively anaerobic Gram-negative bacillus. In addition, some Gram-positive acid-fast bacteria (*Mycobacterium phlei* or *M. fortuitum*) and some types of yeast (*Candida albicans*) can be tested in a standard medium. The use of species such as *Campylobacter fetus*, *Chlamydia trachomatis* or *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, however, requires enriched or specific media (Vanden Berghe and Vlietinck, 1991).

Authors sometimes test antimicrobial compounds against a specific disease or infection. For example, dental caries are known to develop because of an increase in strongly acidogenic and aciduric Gram-positive bacteria, while common forms of periodontal disease are linked to the presence of anaerobic Gram-negative bacteria in subgingival plaque. In this context, Tichy and Novak (1998) evaluated the feasibility of screening for antibacterial agents from plants against three representative oral streptococci. Depending on the indicator microorganisms used, the screening assay could target additional pathogens including other streptococci (group A and B, and pneumococci) along with periodontal pathogens. In general, however, authors screen the activity of plant extracts or essential oils with no comparative criteria, which creates a problem when results from different studies are to be compared. Thus, when Hammer et al. (1996) studied the effect of tea tree oil on commensal skin flora, they selected a wide range of clinically isolated microorganisms, including different skin pathogens, but still insisted on the necessity of an in-vivo study to establish the proper value of this oil. However, most other researchers, when testing medicinal plants used in folk medicine against specific pathologies, only screen the activity against a standard strain without selecting any specific microorganisms implicated in the disease (Rojas et al., 2001; Ram et al., 2004).

**Preparation of samples**

A common flaw in many papers is to claim positive activity for excessively high concentrations. For testing the antimicrobial activity of plant extracts, concentrations higher than 1 mg/mL for extracts or 100 µg/mL for isolated compounds should be avoided, whereas the presence of activity is very interesting in the case of concentrations below 100 µg/mL for extracts and 10 µg/mL for isolated compounds (Ríos and Recio, 2005).

Another problem is the possibility of contaminating the samples during manipulation, thereby causing the final results to be erroneous. The sterilisation of plant extracts by autoclaving or other strenuous methods should be avoided and even the use of membrane-filtration may absorb many antimicrobial agents on the filter material itself (Vanden Berghe and Vlietinck, 1991). To avoid this problem, some authors use methanol as solvent in the agar dilution method, because it is not toxic at a final concentration of 2% (0.2 mL in 10 mL) and it additionally acts as an antiseptic agent. Moreover, aerobic organisms do not develop well on solid agar and since the occasional contaminating culture on the surface of the agar can be easily recognised, it poses no problem (Ríos et al., 1988).

Different solvents or emulsifiers can be used, including dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO), alcohols, acetone and glycerol, but in all cases a blank should be prepared containing only the solvent in the same quantity present in the testing compounds (Vanden Berghe
and Vlietinck, 1991). When water or physiological saline are used as solvent, the final pH should be tested, and the range of analysis should be between 6.0 and 8.0. This is due to the fact that the pH of compounds in dilutions may also modify the results, as can sometimes be observed with ionisable compounds such as phenolics or alkaloids. The influence of pH on the different effects of neutral essential oil has already been described. Thus, for example, anise oil exhibited higher antifungal activity at pH 4.8 than at 6.8, while the oil of Cedrus deodara Loud. was most active at pH 9 (Janssen et al., 1987). For essential oils the use of an adequate solvent is important. An optimised broth dilution method, using 0.02% Tween 80 to emulsify the oils, was developed and shown to be the most accurate method for testing the antimicrobial activity of the hydrophobic and viscous essential oils (Hood et al., 2003).

Expression of results

Depending on the methods used for studying the activity, the results should be expressed in various forms, e.g. as the growth inhibition index, which is calculated as the ratio of the growth of the control with no test sample to that of a test sample. They can also be given as the minimal concentration that restrains the growth of the microorganisms or the minimal lethal concentration against the microorganisms. In a preliminary screening with an agar dilution method, a selection of positive (+) and negative (−) or (0) values could be interesting for determining whether the extract totally inhibited (+) or had no effect (−) or (0) on the growth of the selected bacteria at the concentration assayed.

Usually, 1 mg/mL is a good initial concentration; subsequent dilutions can then be tested when positive activity has been observed. Dilutions of 100, 50, 25 μg/mL and lower should be tested to determine the minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC), which should be expressed as μg of extract per mL of culture medium that totally inhibited the microorganism growth. MIC values higher than 100 μg/mL should be of no interest for plant extracts. For liquid samples, such as essential oils, the expression maximal inhibitory dilution (MID) is more appropriate.

When the potency of a compound as an antimicrobial agent is evident, other factors should be considered, including the bactericidal or bacteriostatic effect, along with determination of the minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC). For this purpose, a liquid dilution method is recommended, since high dilutions of plant extracts are not a problem in an aqueous liquid medium. To determine the bactericidal or bacteriostatic effect, growth curves of the microorganism in the presence of the test compound or extract should be calculated. While use of an automated system is convenient, it is not essential. In the first case, a series of sample dilutions are measured in parallel against a predetermined concentration of microorganisms during a period of 20 h and the results are expressed as the logarithms of the delta optical density plotted against time, which indicates changes in the biomass in the growth chambers (Villar et al., 1987). The other method for establishing a possible bacteriostatic effect is by making a subculture of the tube that exhibited inhibition in an agar plate or liquid medium. The growth of colonies is indicative of a bacteriostatic effect whereas the absence of growth indicates a bactericidal effect (Ríos et al., 1988).

Antimicrobial test methods

As seen above, many factors, including considerations such as solubility, can give rise to problems in studies on the antimicrobial activity of medicinal plants and their extracts. In contrast, research into the activity of antibiotics or isolated natural products minimises this problem with respect to the situation of non-polar extracts such as essential oils, acetogenins or terpenoids.

The various methodologies that have been employed in such studies in the past must be examined more closely. For non-polar extracts, for example, the use of diffusion techniques seems to be inadequate, although many reports have been published in which these techniques were used, so we propose the use of solid dilution techniques for studying plant extracts or non-polar compounds. Only when a very small sample amount is available is the use of diffusion techniques possibly more appropriate (Ríos and Recio, 2005). Janssen et al. (1987) concluded that the results are difficult to compare as the test methods differed so widely. They went on to propose that in future the strain number of the tested microorganism, the composition of the
essential oil, and the conditions under which it was obtained be included as an integral part of the report. In 2003, Kalemba and Kunicka reviewed the methods commonly used for the evaluation of the antibacterial and antifungal activities of essential oils to draw conclusions about the factors that influence the in-vitro antimicrobial activity of essential oils and their mechanisms of action. They included an overview of the susceptibility of human and food-borne bacteria and fungi towards different essential oils and their constituents.

**Diffusion methods**

Agar diffusion techniques are widely used to assay plant extracts for antimicrobial activity, but there are problems associated with this technique, which entails a reservoir containing the plant extract to be tested being brought into contact with the inoculated medium. After incubation, the diameter around the reservoir (hole, cylinder or disc) is measured. This method is good for preliminary testing, allowing rapid selection of active extracts. However, even though the determination of the MIC of an extract by means of agar diffusion methods is frequent in this kind of study, it is inadequate for comparing the results obtained from different studies and the solvent used for dissolving the extract sometimes modifies the response, e.g. the use of a particular solvent may actually cause a non-polar compound to show up as a false negative. As a result, findings can only be compared when the substances all have similar characteristics and when all the conditions are the same. Examples of this kind of study include the research of Nostro et al. (2000), Ogundipe et al. (2000) and Unal et al. (2001).

When using any of the three systems, it is always necessary to sterilise the sample. While the cylinder and the paper disc methods are both adequate for assaying water-soluble extracts, the hole-plate is the only suitable method for testing aqueous suspensions of non-water-soluble plant extracts. When samples are introduced into the recipient, it is generally recommendable to carry out a pre-incubation at 4°C to facilitate the diffusion but when the cylinder or disc methods are used with samples comprising aqueous suspensions of non-water-soluble extracts, the pre-incubation should be carried out at 25°C to avoid the precipitation of insoluble compounds.

Finally, plates should be incubated at 37°C for 18, 24 or 36 h, depending on the microorganism being tested. The diffusion methods are good for determining the sensitivity of different microorganisms to an extract, but the comparison of data inhibition halos obtained thereby is not appropriate for determining the potency of a compound or for comparing it with antibiotic standards, which are only valid for testing water-soluble antibiotics.

One modification, the so-called microatmosphere method, could be applied to the study of the antimicrobial activity of essential oil in the vapour phase. In this method, a disc moistened with essential oil is attached to the lid of a Petri dish, which is then inverted and incubated. The results are presented either as the diameter of the zone of microorganism growth inhibition or as the minimal inhibitory quantity (MIQ) of essential oil that totally inhibits the growth of microorganisms (Kalemba and Kunicka, 2003).

**Dilution methods**

In the classic dilution method (liquid), samples are mixed with an adequate culture medium that has previously been inoculated with the targeted microorganism. The suspension is incubated and the growth is then measured by turbidimetry and compared with a control that does not contain any sample. This is a good method to use with isolated compounds, especially those that are soluble in water. Moreover, it is the best method for determining the potency of an agent after calculating the MIC of the sample that completely inhibited the growth of the microorganism. However, the low solubility of plant extracts, especially those obtained with non-polar solvents such as hexane or dichloromethane, often hampers such tests of their activity.

There is also a microdilution technique that makes use of a 96-well microplate (Figure 10.1) and in which bacterial growth is detected by turbidimetry (Kalemba and Kunicka, 2003) or tetrazolium salts (Eloff, 1998). Liquid cultures containing different concentrations of the samples are placed in a 96-well, flat-bottom, polystyrene microtitre test plate and, after incubation, the plates are vigorously shaken on a vibrating platform and immediately scanned with a multiscan photometer. As the emulsion can interfere with the endpoint reading, indicators could be used to avoid this problem.
Kalemba and Kunicka (2003) propose the use of a bioimpedimetric method for studying antimicrobial activity. The method is based on the correlation between the altered electrical parameters of the growth culture and the number of cells regarded as a colony forming unit (CFU)/mL. In this method the analysis time is shorter than that of usual detection systems.

The method has been shown to give reproducible results; furthermore, it requires only 10–25 µL of extract to determine the MICs, it distinguishes between cidal and static effects, and it also provides a permanent record of the results. In addition, this technique is 32 times more sensitive than usual agar diffusion techniques and is not sensitive to the culture age of the test organism up to 24 h. In a similar vein, micro-scale assays are useful for testing natural components available only in low quantities. This was demonstrated by Barreteau et al. (2004), who examined a rapid method that used microplates for the evaluation of antimicrobial substances and then validated their results using five food-borne pathogens. The assay required only a small amount of product and was convenient for determining correlations between the bacterial growth inhibition and the concentrations of the antimicrobial substances. The dilution methods are the best for determining the MIC and the MBC of a plant extract in the case of good solubility, and especially from isolated natural products.

In the agar dilution method, incorporation of the plant extract into the agar is carried out prior to solidification, making it possible to test a series of microorganisms in the same plate. For this reason, it is probably the best system for assaying antimicrobial activity in a quick and safe fashion. The agar dilution method is thus useful for establishing the spectrum of an extract because, if a multipoint inoculation system is used, it is possible to inoculate up to 21 strains in the same 10 mL plate (Figure 10.2).

**Bioautographic methods**

Bioautography, described by Betina in 1973, is not only a good method for studying antimicrobial activity, but has also proven to be useful for the detection of new active compounds in plant extracts. The method facilitates the detection of growth inhibition of cultures directly in thin-layer chromatograms of the extract by spraying with a broth culture containing the microorganisms (Navarro et al., 1998). The three
basic bioautographic methods are the contact, the direct and the immersion bioautographies. The first method is based on the diffusion of separated compounds by means of thin-layer chromatography (TLC). The developed TLC plate is carefully dried to remove the resident mobile phase and then it is placed on the surface of a large nutrient agar plate inoculated with sensitive microorganisms. After 15–30 min, the TLC plates are removed and the agar plate is incubated at an appropriate temperature until the growing microorganisms are visible on the surface and the zones of inhibition are clearly visible. Inhibition zones can be made more conspicuous by using dehydrogenase indicators (Ríos \textit{et al.}, 1988) or \textit{p}-iodonitrotetrazolium violet (Nostro \textit{et al.}, 2000). The effectiveness of the method depends on the diffusion capacity of the compounds to be separated during chromatography.

In direct bioautography, the developed TLC plates are carefully dried for complete removal of the solvents and then overlaid with agar that has been seeded with an overnight culture of the test microorganism, then incubated and viewed as explained below (Nostro \textit{et al.}, 2000). This is the most widely used method because no diffusion is required, which eliminates the problems of the contact method, but it has its own limitations. The most relevant of these is the necessity of the conditions of a well-equipped microbiology laboratory. Furthermore, it is not appropriate for studying pathological microorganisms.

The third bioautographic method is both more appropriate for non-specialised microbiological laboratories and more secure for the study of pathological agents. This method involves the introduction of the previously developed TLC plate in a Petri dish, but only after the mobile phase has been totally removed. The TLC plate is then covered with Mueller-Hinton agar at 50°C in a uniform fashion to keep the silica gel layer from sliding. After solidification, the Petri dishes are refrigerated at 4°C for 4 h to obtain a better diffusion of the principles from the plate toward the surface of the agar. Afterwards, the plates are seeded with an overnight culture of the microorganism previously detected as sensitive, and the plates are then incubated at 37°C for 24 h (Ríos \textit{et al.}, 1988). The inhibition halos can be observed in different ways. They can be directly detected either after the observation of the inhibition bands (Figure 10.3), or after being sprayed with an aqueous solution of \textit{p}-iodonitrotetrazolium violet (2 mg/mL), which turns a yellow colour in the areas of inhibition. The spots are then compared with the related spots on the reference TLC plate that has been developed in parallel (Nostro \textit{et al.}, 2000). However, Ríos \textit{et al.} (1988) proposed an even simpler method, which involves first developing a plate as bands, viewing it under ultraviolet light and using a pencil to mark all the bands with the corresponding RF. Different strips are then cut longitudinally, and each strip is then stained with a different phytochemical.

\textbf{Figure 10.2} Multipoint inoculation in an agar plate previously prepared with a dilution of plant extract in agar. Positive activity is considered only when there is total inhibition of growth.
reagent. When the assay is finished, the inhibition halos can then be located in relationship to the bands in the strips. In this analysis the active principle (band) can thus be correlated with the specific phytochemicals obtained from the band previously developed in the TLC assay (Figure 10.3).

In-vivo studies

As mentioned above, studies on the antimicrobial activity of medicinal plants, their extracts and the products isolated from them often produce misleading results. Since their potency as antimicrobial agents is generally low, when the compounds are tested in vivo, the previously reported results are often not accurate. For this reason, complementary in-vivo studies that are carried out to corroborate the initial findings should be of great interest.

For in-vivo tests, male Swiss mice weighing 18–20 g are generally the animals of choice. Prior to the assays, they should be maintained under standard conditions at 21 ± 1°C and 50–60% relative humidity, with a photoperiod of 14 : 10 h of semi-darkness, with water and a solid diet ad libitum. The test strain must also be selected with care. For example, Sarkar et al. (2003) for testing a synthetic product chose to work with *Salmonella typhimurium* NCTC 74, the virulence of which had been heightened by passing the test strain repeatedly among various mice. The lethal dose-50 (LD50) of the passage strain corresponding to $0.95 \times 10^9$ colony forming units (CFU) per mouse suspended in 0.5 mL nutrient broth served as the challenge dose for all groups of animals. Reproducibility of the challenge dose was ensured by standardisation of its optical density at 640 nm and determination of the CFU count in nutrient agar. Any prior knowledge of the toxicity of the plant extract should also be considered for its administration to mice. Before challenge, the animals are first kept under observation up to 100 h, after which time they are classified into groups in separate cages. Two groups are administered two different doses, depending on the possible toxicity and the LD50. For this type of screening, a good reference dose would be 100 and 300 mg/kg for extracts, or 50 and 100 mg/kg for pure compounds. After 3 h, the groups are challenged with the microorganisms; in the example given above, the median lethal dose of the passage strain corresponded to $0.95 \times 10^9$ CFU per mouse suspended in 0.5 mL in the case of *S. typhimurium* NCTC 74 (Sarkar et al., 2003). A control group is also injected with the same bacterial strain, but with 0.1 mL sterile saline instead of extract. The protective capacity of the extract is determined by recording the mortality of the mice in the different groups tested up to 100 h of treatment. A parallel experiment could be run to obtain heart blood, livers and spleens aseptically. Once removed, these would then be aseptically homogenised, after which the CFU counts of the individual organs can be determined separately. The latter experiment could be realised at different hours

![Figure 10.3 Immersion bioautography. (a) The developed TLC plate is dried and the different bands are marked under ultraviolet light. Various strips are cut longitudinally. Each strip is stained with different reagents to determine the phytochemicals present. (b) The central body is deposited in a Petri dish, covered with agar, seeded and incubated. Inhibition bands are observed. (c) Example of an inhibition band observed over the RF × 100 band at 75 (arrow).](image-url)
after the challenge. In all the cases, an appropriate statistical analysis should be carried out.

Unfortunately, only a small number of papers describe in-vivo studies with plant extract or natural products. One such study is that of Ohno et al. (2003), who investigated the antimicrobial effects of essential oils against Helicobacter pylori and demonstrated that lemongrass has the highest activity. They went on to study its effect on an in-vivo experimental model, demonstrating its activity in 10% of the infected mice. Moreover, they showed that even after 10 passages it did not produce resistance whereas the bacteria acquired resistance against the antibiotic used as standard in the experiment. Using female mice, Talwar et al. (2000) demonstrated the activity of several polyherbal formulations against various sexually transmitted pathogens such as Neisseria gonorrhoeae and Candida albicans, including strains resistant to standard antibiotics. Both formulations prevented lesions and vaginal transmission when applied intravaginally before inoculation of the pathogen.

Using a porcine model, Mertz et al. (2003) studied various topical antimicrobial agents and dressings on colonised wounds. This method could be of interest for studying the topical antimicrobial activity of different plant extracts or isolated compounds. For a model representing a clinical wound infection, the researchers included inoculated wounds that were subsequently covered with a polyurethane film for a minimum of 48 h, which allowed the bacteria to form firmly attached aggregates of microcolonies on the wound bed, thereby facilitating the investigation of the efficacy of the antimicrobial agents.

Takahata et al. (1999) used an in-vivo therapeutic efficacy test for experimental systemic infections and experimental pneumonia. For the former they used Staphylococcus aureus CR-3 and S. aureus CRCP-9 prepared from an overnight culture on heart infusion agar at 37°C and suspended in saline to give a final concentration of approximately 10⁶ CFU/mL. The inocula were obtained by means of a 10-fold dilution in saline containing 5% gastric mucin. Intraperitoneal injection of 0.5 mL of 4.0 × 10⁷ to 10.4 × 10⁷ CFU/mL induced systemic infections. One hour after infection, the antimicrobial agents, which were suspended and diluted in 0.5% methylcellulose, were administered orally or subcutaneously. The total number of surviving mice at day 7 after challenge was recorded, the 50% effective dose (ED50) and confidence limits were determined, and the significance of the differences between groups was estimated with the Probit method. For the latter study, a clinically isolated Streptococcus pneumoniae strain was used to induce experimental pneumonia in mice. The bacteria from overnight cultures on a heart infusion agar plate containing 5% sheep’s blood at 37°C were suspended in brain–heart infusion broth to give a final concentration of 10⁸ CFU/mL. After 10-fold dilution in the same medium, this suspension was shake-cultured at 37°C for 4 h. The inocula were obtained with a 100-fold dilution in brain–heart infusion broth. Finally, experimental pneumonia was induced in ether-anaesthetised mice by means of intratracheal injection of 0.05 mL of the suspension. Oral or subcutaneous administration of the extract three times a day (at intervals of 4 h) over 3 days was started 20 h after the challenge. The total number of mice surviving at day 10 after challenge was recorded, the ED50 and the confidence limits were determined, and the significance of the differences between groups was estimated with the Probit method.

### Determining the MIC of plant extracts and natural products

In the course of their work on plant extracts, Sarkar et al. (2003) developed an effective method for determining the MIC of active extracts and isolated compounds. For broth dilutions, 0.1 mL of a standardised suspension of the strain (10⁶ CFU/mL) is added each to a series of tubes containing a range of the extract at concentrations of 0 (control) and 10–1000 μg/mL in Mueller-Hinton broth. For pure isolated compounds, the concentrations will be 0 (control) and then range from 0.1 to 50 μg/mL. The tubes are incubated at 37°C for 24 h and examined for visible growth after vortexing the tubes gently.

For agar dilutions, the sample could be added at the same concentrations into melted nutrient agar and poured in Petri dishes. The microorganism cultures, which have been grown in peptone water overnight, are then spot-inoculated on the nutrient agar plates such that each inoculum contains 2 × 10⁶
CFU. The plates are incubated at 37°C, examined after 24 h and, if necessary, incubated for another 72 h. The lowest concentration of extract in a tube (or plate) that failed to show any visible macroscopic growth is considered to be the MIC. This procedure should be performed in duplicate for each organism.

**Recent studies on antimicrobial activity of medicinal plants**

Recently, Ríos and Recio (2005) reviewed the latest papers published on the antimicrobial activity of medicinal plants and their extracts. Upon closer examination, they found that studies on the activity of isolated compounds comprised 65% of the publications whereas the study of medicinal plants used in specific countries or regions of the world represented only 17% of all the papers on this general topic. A third group of papers consisted of specific studies of the activity of a plant or principle against a definite pathological microorganism, such as *Candida albicans*, *Helicobacter pylori* or enterohaemorrhagic *Escherichia coli*.

One example of this kind of paper is the study by Thongson *et al.* (2005) on the potential antimicrobial activity of extracts and essential oils of spices from Thailand against five strains of *Listeria monocytogenes* and four strains of *Salmonella enterica* ssp. *enterica* serovar *Typhimurium* DT104. Various interesting and complementary studies have also been carried out to demonstrate the antimicrobial activity in vitro of the ethanolic extract of propolis against *Staphylococcus aureus* (Lu *et al.*, 2005) and against 94 *Helicobacter pylori* strains (Boyanova *et al.*, 2005). Moreover, Oksuz *et al.* (2005) determined in vivo the synergistic activity between ciprofloxacin and propolis in the treatment of experimental *Staphylococcus aureus* keratitis. As a final consideration, when the antimicrobial activity of medicinal plants is demonstrated both in vitro and in vivo, corroboration of the effect through clinical trials is of great interest. Thus, Aksoy *et al.* (2006) recently demonstrated the antimicrobial activity of mastic gum against *Streptococcus mutans* by means of a disc diffusion method in vitro and then performed clinical studies on 25 periodontally healthy volunteers.

Martin and Ernst (2003a) reviewed different clinical trials for bacterial infections and conclude that no clinical efficacy was demonstrated by the herbal medicines tested.

**Isolated natural products from active plant extracts**

Different studies have established the antimicrobial activity of isolated compounds such as alkaloids (Klausmeyer *et al.*, 2004), flavonoids (Sohn *et al.*, 2004), sesquiterpene lactones (Lin *et al.*, 2003), diterpenes (El-Seedi *et al.*, 2002), triterpenes (Katerere *et al.*, 2003), or naphthoquinones (Machado *et al.*, 2003), among others. Some of these studies have focused on concrete pathological microorganisms, for example *Candida albicans* (Duarte *et al.*, 2005), *Helicobacter pylori* (O’Gara *et al.*, 2000), enterohaemorrhagic *Escherichia coli* (Voravuthikunchai *et al.*, 2004), sexually transmitted diseases (Tshikalange *et al.*, 2005) including *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (Shokeen *et al.*, 2005), bacteria resistant to known antibiotics such as *Staphylococcus aureus*, which is resistant to methicillin (Machado *et al.*, 2003), or vancomycin-resistant enterococci (Fukai *et al.*, 2004), as well as multi-drug resistant bacteria such as *Salmonella typhi* (Rani and Khullar, 2004). It should be noted that in some of these studies, the active principles themselves were not actually isolated. Recently, there has been a resurgence of interest in essential oils because they are perceived to be natural alternatives to chemical biocides and, in some applications, antibacterial and antifungal agents. Thus, studies have examined the useful effects of essential oils, such as that from *Cinnamomum osmophloeum* Kaneh., oregano and peppermint (Wallace, 2004).

To date, few reports focus on the mechanism of action of these active compounds. Cushnie and Lamb (2005) reviewed the antimicrobial activity of different phenolics, and cited that the activity of quercetin is partially attributable to inhibition of DNA gyrase while sophoraflavone G and (−)-epigallocatechin gallate inhibit cytoplasmic membrane function. In addition, licochalcones A and C inhibit energy metabolism, and ellagitannins produce destabilisation of the cytoplasmic membrane, permeabilisation of the plasma membrane, inhibition of extracellular microbial enzymes, direct action on microbial metabolism, deprivation of the substrates required for microbial growth and inhibition of adherence of bacteria to
epithelial cells, which is a prerequisite for colonisation and infection in many pathogens (Puupponen-Pimia et al., 2004).

In their work, Lin et al. (2005) have opened new perspectives for studying natural products as antimicrobial agents. While the potency of natural products is not high with respect to antibiotics or chemotherapeutics, natural products such as flavonoids could exert synergistic effects when administered together with antibiotics that have a high level of microbial resistance. Thus, although the flavonol myricetin was shown to inhibit extended-spectrum β-lactamase-producing Klebsiella pneumoniae isolates only at a high MIC, it exhibited significant synergistic activity against these bacteria in combinations with either amoxicillin/clavulanate, ampicillin/sulbactam or cefoxitin, thereby increasing the number of isolates susceptible to these antibiotics. Moreover, galangin showed activity against 4-quinolone-resistant strains of Staphylococcus aureus. This is of interest for future research since, although galangin interferes with the type II topoisomerase enzymes, there is no cross-resistance between the flavonoid and the 4-quinolones (Cushnie and Lamb, 2006).

Another interesting effect of ethyl gallate and other alkyl gallates on β-lactam susceptibility in methicillin-resistant and methicillin-sensitive strains of Staphylococcus aureus has been demonstrated, namely the fact that these natural products seem to intensify the antibiotic effect and the synergistic activity of β-lactams by means of a highly specific mechanism, since no significant changes were observed in the potency of the other classes of antibiotics tested. These results support the possible use of these principles together with known antibiotics to increase their potency and avoid undesirable side-effects (Shibata et al., 2005). Another study reports on the effect of 5’-methoxyhydnocarpin, a compound isolated from chaulmoogra oil, on the activity of berberine. While 5’-methoxyhydnocarpin exhibited no antimicrobial activity on its own, it greatly enhanced the action of berberine against Staphylococcus aureus. The level of accumulation of berberine in the cells was seen to increase sharply in the presence of 5’-methoxyhydnocarpin, which indicates that this natural product effectively disables the bacterial resistance mechanism against berberine since this alkaloid is otherwise readily extruded by multidrug-resistant strains of the human pathogen Staphylococcus aureus (Stermitz et al., 2000).

Antifungal assays for higher plants and natural products

Within the field of natural product research, one of the most relevant areas is that of testing the toxicity of various compounds against human and plant fungal diseases. Of the former, the most commonly studied are athlete’s foot, aspergillosis, actinomycosis, histoplasmosis and coccidiodomycosis while the most commonly researched plant fungal diseases include potato late blight, tobacco blue mould and hop downy mildew. Other fungal diseases of note may also affect animals (Paxton, 1991).

When investigating new antifungal compounds of natural origin, several factors must be taken into account. Obviously, the search for new antifungal compounds with no negative effects for animals and humans is of extreme interest but there is also a need for new fungicides that can be used for other purposes, e.g. preservation of food, wood and cloth (Paxton, 1991). While the former is a primary concern for public health, the economic implications of the latter research field cannot be denied.

Common testing methods

There are various experimental protocols for testing antifungal activity; however, the most common screening procedures are the agar tube dilution assay and direct bioautography. Other more specific methods include the in-vivo protocols for studying various epidermal pathogens.

Agar dilution assay

Many fungi can be tested by means of this protocol (Atta-ur-Rahman et al., 2001), but the researcher must take all necessary precautions when testing human pathogenic fungi, such as species of Epidermophytot, Tricophyton, Microsporum, Pseudallescheria and Candida, among others. For such testing, Sabouraud dextrose agar is the most adequate medium and samples should be dissolved in DMSO. The most commonly used standard antifungal drugs are amphotericin-B and ketoconazole.
The procedure is as follows: first, Sabouraud dextrose agar is prepared and autoclaved at 121°C for 15 min. The tubes are then cooled to room temperature. Next, test samples that have been dissolved in DMSO at different concentrations are inoculated with a piece of inoculum measuring 4 mm in diameter which has been removed from a 7-day-old culture of the fungus to be tested. The tubes containing the cultures are then incubated at optimum temperature and humidity. The cultures are examined both during incubation and after growth has been completed; the test tubes with no visible microorganism growth are taken to represent the MIC of the test sample, expressed in µg/mL.

**Direct bioautography method**

This protocol (Atta-ur-Rahman *et al.*, 2001) is carried out in the same way as when testing for antibacterial activity, i.e. the TLC plates are developed and all volatile solvents are eliminated, after examination under ultraviolet light, the plates are sprayed with a conidial suspension of test microorganisms. Here the researcher must take care not to let the plates become too wet. The chromatograms are then incubated in a moist atmosphere for 2–3 days at 25°C. The inhibition zones that are subsequently visualised indicate the activity of fungitoxic products against the tested microorganisms. An additional TLC developed in parallel could serve to clarify the nature of the toxic compounds in question.

**Special considerations for carrying out bioassays**

When carrying out a bioassay, several practical aspects should be taken into account to avoid mistakes and ensure valid results. For example, both the chemical reactivity of the active compounds and the purity of the test compounds should be known. In the case of extracts, their exact nature and the solvent with which they were obtained should be clearly defined; many times the elimination of reactive substances may be necessary to avoid false-positive results. In addition, the time frame of the experiment may generate substances other than the original; for example, hydrolysis, oxidation or reaction between compounds in mixtures is frequent in cases in which an aqueous medium is used. Moreover, changes in growth stages, mutation of the test organism and contamination of the culture may also occur, causing confusion in the interpretation of the results. Changes in pH caused by the nature of the test compound and even the composition of the medium could also affect the results. Finally, it is important to remember that the natural environment in which fungicides develop their function is usually different from that of the bioassay (Paxton, 1991).

**Some relevant results**

Many antifungal extracts and compounds have been tested to date. Of these, the most promising are the phytoalexins, compounds with a relatively low toxicity against mammals, but with a broad spectrum against pathogenic fungi. This family of compounds is thus a good source of potential new agents. The compounds themselves are generally of low molecular weight and are synthesised and accumulated in the plants after infection by fungi; however, as with other kinds of biological analysis, the in-vivo effectiveness is difficult to estimate from in-vitro assays. For this reason, many researchers use animals to study the activity in vivo after screening the compounds with in-vitro methods. For instance, *Microsporum lanosum* infections have been induced in dogs, cats and rabbits, *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* in guinea pigs and humans and *Candida albicans* in dogs, mice, guinea pigs, rabbits and humans (Paxton, 1991).

Of all the natural products studied for antifungal activity, essential oils are the phytochemical group which holds the most interest for researchers. For example, when Helal *et al.* (2006) studied the essential oil from *Cymbopogon citratus* L. against *Aspergillus niger*, they demonstrated that the mycelial growth was completely inhibited after fumigation or upon contact with the oil. Subsequent microscopic studies showed that after treatment with the essential oil, *A. niger* hyphae underwent structural modifications, including plasma membrane disruption and reorganisation of the mitochondrial structure.

Other authors have used different experimental protocols. For instance, Inouye *et al.* (2006) studied the activity of six essential oils against *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* using a closed box and the oil vapours. The vapours of oregano, perilla, tea tree
and lavender oils all killed the mycelia after only a short time while the vapours of clove and geranium oils required overnight exposure to exert any activity. The vapour of oregano oil was found to induce lysis of the mycelia and cell-wall damage in a dose- and time-dependent manner, causing rupture and peeling of the cell wall (Inouye et al., 2006).

The antifungal properties of the essential oil of Melaleuca alternifolia Cheel (tea tree oil) have been tested against vaginal candidiasis. To date, however, there are no in-vivo data which unequivocally support the in-vitro results, especially with regard to the antifungal action of the oil’s constituents. Mondello et al. (2006) assayed the in-vitro and in-vivo anti-Candida activity of terpinen-4-ol and 1,8-cineole on oophorectomised, pseudo-ovestrous rats undergoing the oestrogen treatment used for experimental vaginal infection with fluconazole- and itraconazole-susceptible or -resistant strains of *C. albicans*. The in-vitro MIC90 values were 0.06% (v/v) for terpinen-4-ol and 4% (v/v) for 1,8-cineole, regardless of the susceptibility or resistance of the strains to fluconazole and itraconazole. In this particular model of infection, terpinen-4-ol was as active as tea tree oil in accelerating the clearance from the vagina of all *Candida* strains examined.

While mostly volatile compounds from essential oils have been found to be active, non-volatile principles have also been recorded as being antifungal agents. For example, Kuiate et al. (2007) tested an extract of Syzygium jambos (L.) Alston and the contained triterpenes, e.g. friedelin, betulinic acid and lupeol, along with two semisynthetic derivatives, for their antidermatophytic action against *Microsporum audouinii*, *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* and *T. soudanense*. Betulinic acid and the derivative friedelolactone were found to be the most active compounds, while the most sensitive fungi were *T. soudanense* and *T. mentagrophytes*.

Products of animal origin, such as propolis, may also be of interest as antifungal agents. Oliveira et al. (2006) tested the in-vitro activity of propolis extract against 67 yeasts isolated from onychomycosis in different patients. The yeasts in question included *Candida parapsilosis*, *C. tropicalis*, *C. albicans* and other species, all of which were inhibited by the propolis extract. *Trichosporon* spp. proved to be the most sensitive species, with *C. tropicalis* being the most resistant. The authors went on to propose the use of propolis as an option in the treatment of onychomycosis because it is a natural, low-cost, non-toxic product with proven antifungal activity.

While the activity of plant extracts and natural products should be previously tested in vitro, in-vivo studies and clinical trials are essential for determining their possible use in humans as therapeutic drugs. For example, when a hexane extract from aerial parts of *Ageratina pichinchensis* (H.B. and K.) R.M. King and H. Rob., a plant which has been used for generations in traditional Mexican medicine for the treatment of superficial mycosis, was tested in vitro, it was found to be effective against *Candida albicans*, *Aspergillus niger*, *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* and *T. rubrum*. To validate its clinical use, Romero-Cerecero et al. (2006) conducted a double-blind pilot study to compare the effectiveness and tolerability of the crude extract of *Ageratina pichinchensis* with that of ketoconazole in patients with the clinical and mycological diagnosis of tinea pedis. All patients underwent a weekly mycological examination for 4 weeks to gauge the therapeutic effects. At the end of the 4 weeks, therapeutic success had been achieved in 80% of the experimental cases (using cream containing 10% standardised extract) and in 72% of the control cases (with a cream containing 2% ketoconazole).

Martin and Ernst (2004) reviewed some clinical trials for fungal infections and concluded that herbal remedies require further investigation in rigorous clinical trials.

### Other assays for higher plants and natural products

While assays for compounds with antiviral and antiparasitic effects, including antimalarial, amoebicidal, molluscicidal, cercaricidal, schistosomicidal and piscicidal activities, are also relevant, their specificity and number put them beyond the scope of the present chapter. Still, it is worth noting that the most relevant methods have been reviewed by Vanden Berghe and Vlietinck (1991) and Atta-Ur-Rahman et al. (2001) for antiviral methods, and Phillipson (1991) and Marston and Hostettmann (1991) for antiparasitic methods. Other interesting reviews in this area include those conducted by Vlietinck et al.

References


Epidemiology and clinical syndromes

*Helicobacter pylori* (HP) is a Gram-negative spiral or helical-shaped, aerobic bacillus that colonises the gastric epithelial surface, and can withstand the stomach’s environment by microaerophilic growth capability and high urease activity (IARC Working Group, 1994; Moss and Sood, 2003). *Helicobacter pylori* is considered to be one of the most significant discoveries in the field of gastroenterology of the 20th century (Graham, 1989). HP-induced gastritis has been associated with duodenal ulcer disease, peptic ulcer disease, gastric carcinoma, primary gastric B-cell lymphoma, ischaemic heart disease and hyperemesis gravidarum (Graham, 1989; Goodwin, 1997; Frigo et al., 1998; Laine and Fendrick, 1998; Lindsberg and Grau, 2003).

Current statistics indicate that as much as one-half of the world’s population is infected with HP (World Health Organization, 2003). The infection begins early in childhood via the faecal–oral route, and transmission appears to be from person to person. *Helicobacter* infections are more prevalent in developing countries because of poor sanitation, overcrowded living conditions and a lack of clean water supplies (Graham, 1989). Gastritis, the most common finding of HP infections, has one salient feature, an acute or chronic inflammation of the gastric mucosa (Owen, 2003). Individuals infected with HP are predisposed to duodenal ulcer and gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma caused by a persistent superficial gastritis. Atrophic gastritis predisposes patients to gastric ulcer and adenocarcinoma (Owen, 2003).

Infection with HP is now also accepted as the primary cause of peptic ulcer disease (Graham, 1989). In the United States, 4–5 million people have peptic ulcer disease, and the economic consequences are responsible for approximately $3–4 billion in annual healthcare costs (Isenberg, 2003). The situation in many developing countries is even more dramatic, as HP infections, peptic ulcer disease and gastric cancer are major causes of morbidity, mortality and healthcare expenditures (Frenck and Clemens, 2003). The prevalence of HP infection...
among children in parts of the developing world exceeds 90% by 5 years of age, e.g. in Ethiopia, HP infection is acquired early in life, with 60% of 4-year-olds being infected, and almost 100% of 12-year-olds (Lindkvist et al., 1996). In addition to the above HP-induced findings, the infection in the developing world appears to be linked with chronic diarrhoea, malnutrition and impaired growth in children (French and Clemens, 2003), as well as a predisposition to other enteric infections, including typhoid fever and cholera.

The treatment of HP has become increasingly more difficult because of the frequency of antibiotic resistance and recurrence after successful treatment. In Peru, the recurrence rate of the infection is as high as 73% even after successful eradication (Ramirez-Ramos et al., 1997). In this instance recurrence is not attributed to antibiotic resistance, but to reinfection of patients. In the United States, resistant HP is also of concern; the Helicobacter pylori Antimicrobial Resistance Monitoring Program (HARP) is a multicentre US network that tracks HP patterns of resistance. HARP recently reported that 34% of 347 HP isolates tested were resistant to one or more antibiotics commonly used to treat HP infections (Duck et al., 2004). In the US most antibiotic resistance is associated with metronidazole and clarithromycin, both standard treatment options for HP. Thus, antibiotic resistance and high reinfection rates strongly argue for the development of new therapeutic modalities to prevent and treat HP infections worldwide.

**Natural products in HP research (in-vitro data)**

In most developing countries, plant-based medicines are commonly used to treat gastrointestinal ailments, including gastritis, peptic ulcer disease and diarrhoea (Bhamarapravati et al., 2003). Thus, considering the strong association between these conditions and HP infections, it should not be surprising that some plant-based medicines would have activity against HP in vitro.

The first investigation of the in-vitro efficacy of plant extracts against HP was published in 1991 (Cassel-Beraud, 1991). This group reported that extracts of 13 Malagasy medicinal plants were effective against a number of clinical strains of HP in vitro. In 1996, Fabry and coworkers reported that a number of east African medicinal plant extracts had inhibitory effects on the growth of HP in vitro (Fabry et al., 1996). One plant, Terminalia spinosa was reported to be the most active, with a minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) range of 62.5–500 µg/mL. Extracts of Thymus vulgaris (aqueous extract) and Cinnamomum zeylanicum (alcohol extract) were also reported to inhibit the growth of the bacterium at concentrations of 3.5 mg/mL (Tabak et al., 1996).

In 1997, investigators discovered that common food plants such as garlic, soybean and fresh vegetables may be protective against HP infections (Shinchi et al., 1997; Sivam et al., 1997). An aqueous extract of garlic (Allium sativum) inhibited the growth of HP strains at concentrations of 40 µg/mL (Sivam et al., 1997) and MICs of 8–32 µg/mL for garlic oil against several HP strains were reported (O’Gara et al., 2000).

*Rabdosia trichocarpa*, a traditional remedy for gastric and stomatchic complaints in Japan, also inhibits the growth of HP in vitro, because of a diterpene trichorabal A (Kadota et al., 1997). In 1999, the anti-HP effects of seven Turkish plant extracts, used in folk medicine for the treatment of gastric ailments including peptic ulcers, were reported (Yesilada et al., 1999). Extracts of the flowers of Cistus laurifolius, cones of Cedrus libani, aerial parts of Centaurea solstitialis ssp. solstitialis, fruits of Momordica charantia, aerial parts of Sambucus ebulus, and flowering herbs of Hypericum perforatum were active with a MIC range of between 1.95 and 250 µg/mL. In 2003, a screening of 20 plant extracts from Thailand used to treat gastrointestinal ailments reported that over 50% of the plant species tested had anti-HP activity (Bhamarapravati et al., 2003). Methanol extracts of Myristica fragrans (aril) inhibited the growth of all HP strains with a MIC of 12.5 µg/mL; extracts from Barringtonia acutangula (leaf) and Kaempferia galanga (rhizome) had a MIC of 25 µg/mL; Cassia grandis (leaf), Cleome viscosa (leaf), Myristica fragrans (leaf) and Syzygium aromaticum (leaf) had MICs of 50 µg/mL. Extracts with a MIC of 100 µg/mL included Pouzolzia pentandra (leaf), Cynas siamensis (leaf), Litsea elliptica (leaf) and Melaleuca quinquenervia (leaf) (Bhamarapravati et al., 2003).

Ginger root (*Zingiber officinale*), a plant well known worldwide to treat gastrointestinal ailments, also has activity against HP (Mahady et al., 2003a). Methanol extracts of ginger rhizome inhibited the
growth of 19 HP strains in vitro with a MIC range of 6.25–50 μg/mL. The 6-, 8- and 10-gingerols all had varying degrees of activity, with a MIC range of 0.78 to 12.5 μg/mL and interestingly had significant activity against the CagA cancer-causing strains (Mahady et al., 2003a). Curcumin, a polyphenolic constituent isolated from turmeric (Curcuma longa), and a methanol extract of the dried, powdered turmeric rhizome were both active against 19 strains of HP, including five CagA strains. The MIC range was 6.25–50 μg/mL (Mahady et al., 2002). In addition, red wine extract (Vitis vinifera) and resveratrol inhibited the growth of HP in vitro (Mahady and Pendland, 2000; Mahady et al., 2003b). Resveratrol, a stilbene present in red wine had a MIC of 25 μg/mL, while the red wine extract had a MIC range of 25–50 μg/mL (Mahady and Pendland, 2000). Interestingly, resveratrol was more active against CagA strains of HP than CagA− strains (Mahady et al., 2003b).

Two indigenous American plants, Sanguinaria canadensis and Hydrastis canadensis, used traditionally by the Native American Indians for the treatment of gastrointestinal ailments, have also been shown to be active against HP (Mahady et al., 2003c). Methanol extracts of the rhizome or suspension cell cultures of S. canadensis had a MIC range of 12.5–50.0 μg/mL. Three isoquinoline alkaloids were identified in the active fraction. Sanguinarine and chelerythrine, two benzophranthidine alkaloids, inhibited the growth of the HP, with a MIC of 50 and 100 μg/mL, respectively. Protopine, an alkaloid, also inhibited the growth of bacterium, with a MIC of 100 μg/mL. A crude methanol extract of H. canadensis rhizomes was very active, with a MIC of 12.5 μg/mL (range 0.78 to 25 μg/mL). Two isoquinoline alkaloids, berberine and β-hydrastine, were identified as the active constituents, and having a MIC of 12.5 and 100.0 μg/mL, respectively (Mahady et al., 2003c).

The in-vitro susceptibility of 15 HP strains to natural products that had a history of traditional use in the treatment of GI disorders was recently assessed (Mahady et al., 2005). Methanol extracts of Myristica fragrans (seed) had a MIC of 12.5 μg/mL and Rosmarinus officinalis (rosemary leaf) had a MIC of 25 μg/mL. Methanol extracts of botanicals with a MIC of 50 μg/mL included Achillea millefolium (aerial parts), Foeniculum vulgare (seed), Passiflora incarnata (aerial parts), Origanum majorana (herb) and a (1 : 1) combination of Curcuma longa (root) and ginger rhizome. Botanical extracts with a MIC of 100 μg/mL included Carum carvi (seed), Elettaria caradonnum (seed), Gentiana lutea (roots), Juniper communis (berry), Lavandula angustifolia (flowers), Melissa officinalis (leaves), Mentha piperita (leaves) and Pimpinella anisum (seed). Methanol extracts of Matricaria recutita (flowers) and Ginkgo biloba (leaves) had a MIC of 100 μg/mL (Mahady et al., 2005). A traditional medicine from Iceland, the lichen Cladonia islandica, also used to treat gastrointestinal ailments has anti-HP activity (Ingolfsdottir et al., 1997). Protolichesterinic acid, an aliphatic α-methylene-γ-lactone, was identified as one of the active constituents. The MIC range of protolichesterinic acid, in free as well as salt form, was 16–64 μg/mL.

The antibacterial activity of Gossypium, a crude extract from the fruit of Evodia rutaecarpa, a Chinese herbal medicine, has also been tested for activity against HP in vitro (Hamasaki et al., 2000). Two compounds were identified as the active constituents and were the quinolone alkaloids, 1-methyl-2-[(Z)-8-tridecenyl]-4-(1H)-quinolone and 1-methyl-2-[Z]-7-tridecenyl]-4-(1H)-quinolone. The MIC of these compounds against reference strains and clinically isolated HP strains was <0.05 μg/mL, similar to that of amoxicillin and clarithromycin (Hamasaki et al., 2000). Finally, in a recent report, screening of 70 medicinal plants from Greece, led to the discovery of a number of plants with anti-HP activity. Extracts of Anthemis melanolopis, Cerastium candidissimum, Chamomilla recutita, Conyza alibida, Dittrichia viscosa, Origanum vulgare and Stachys alopecuroides were active against one standard strain and 15 clinical isolates of HP (Stamatis et al., 2003).

In addition to antibacterial activity, tea (Camellia sinensis) and rosemary (Rosmarinus officinalis L.) extracts inhibit HP urease in vitro. Green tea extract showed the strongest inhibition of HP urease, with a MIC of 13 μg/mL. Active principles were identified as catechins, with the hydroxyl group of 5′ position appearing important for urease inhibition (Matsubara et al., 2003).

In-vivo data

The in-vivo model of choice for HP infections is the Mongolian gerbil model developed by Japanese
researchers (Hirayama et al., 1996a,b). This model was a major advancement and has accelerated investigations of the anti-HP activities of natural products. A number of botanical extracts have been tested in this animal model and have been shown to have significant activity. For example, treatment of HP-inoculated Mongolian gerbils with green tea extract in drinking water at concentrations of 500, 1000 and 2000 ppm for 6 weeks, suppressed gastritis and HP load in a dose-dependent manner (Matsubara et al., 2003). The effect of a garlic extract on HP-induced gastritis in this model has also been reported. Garlic extract was fed to gerbils, in rations, at doses of 1%, 2% and 4% in the diet from four hours after HP inoculation until the end of a 6-week experiment. Administration of the garlic extract to these animals reduced HP-induced gastritis in a dose-dependent manner, and was statistically significant at a dose of 4% garlic extract. However, HP bacterial load was not altered by the garlic extract treatment (Iimuro et al., 2002).

The effect of tryptanthrin and kaempferol, two compounds isolated from Polygonum tinctorium were assessed in HP-infected Mongolian gerbils. The gerbils were inoculated with HP strain ATCC 43504, and after 4 weeks, the infected gerbils were treated with tryptanthrin and/or kaempferol, by gastric lavage, twice a day for 10 days. The results demonstrated that administration of tryptanthrin and/or kaempferol significantly reduced bacterial load in the gerbils’ stomachs (Kataoka et al., 2001).

Clinical data

In terms of human studies, four clinical trials were found that tested the efficacy of natural products for the eradication of HP. Two of the studies tested different preparations of garlic bulbs (Allium sativum), one tested an extract of cinnamon, and one tested the efficacy of cranberry juice. In the first study, a group of 20 HP-infected patients suffering from dyspeptic complaints for more than 2 months were treated for 2 weeks with capsules containing an oil macerate of garlic (275 mg, three times a day) (Martin and Ernst, 2003). Garlic alone was compared with the combination of garlic and omeprazole (20 mg, twice a day) for the eradication of HP. All subjects underwent endoscopy prior to and 1 month after the completion of treatment. The presence of HP was confirmed by urease tests and microscopy of biopsy specimens. Symptom scores were recorded pre- and post-treatment as was the degree of gastritis, evaluated by histological examination. Garlic alone and in combination with omeprazole did not result in the elimination of HP, change gastritis severity or significantly change symptom scores (garlic only group 9.2 ± 1.55 versus 8.7 ± 1.70, combination group 9.0 ± 1.49 versus 8.5 ± 1.51) (Martin and Ernst, 2003). This study has several design flaws: it was not randomised, likely not patient-blinded and had a small sample size.

In the second clinical trial, preparations of fresh garlic or capsaicin-containing peppers were tested for their ability to reduce the bacterial load and symptoms in a crossover trial involving 12 individuals infected with HP (Graham et al., 1999). Mexican-style meals including the test substances were given to subjects three times daily. Test subjects participated in a minimum of 3 study days including positive and negative control days and one experimental ingredient study day. During each test meal subjects received one intervention: garlic (10 sliced cloves), capsaicin (six freshly sliced jalapeno peppers), two bismuth subsalicylate tablets (Pepto-Bismol, positive control) or no meal additions (negative control). Urea breath tests were performed prior to the first meal of the day, prior to the evening meal and then the next morning. Ten subjects received garlic, six received jalapenos and 11 received bismuth. There was no significant effect on urease levels pre- and post-intervention in the garlic or jalapenos groups (28.5 versus 39.8 and 43.7 versus 46.6, respectively; P >0.8). There was however a significant reduction in urease levels after subjects received bismuth (55.8 versus 14.3; P <0.001). Two subjects reported severe nausea and diarrhoea after eating meals containing jalapenos. Seventy per cent of subjects who received garlic reported taste disturbances and body odour. Some of the limitations of this study included small sample size and lack of randomisation (Mahady and Pendland, 1999; Martin and Ernst, 2003).

A pilot study tested the effectiveness of treatment with an extract of cinnamon (Cinnamomum cassia) in subjects who were undergoing gastroscopy and had a positive urea breath test for HP (Nir et al., 2000). Thirty-two subjects were randomised in a 2 : 1 ratio of study group to control group, but 7 were
eventually excluded from the final analysis. Fifteen subjects (11 women, 4 men) received 40 mg of cinnamon extract twice daily and eight subjects (7 women, 1 man) received placebo for 4 weeks. Urea breath tests were repeated at the end of the 4-week study period. Both increased and decreased urea breath test values were reported in both groups, but overall mean values showed no significant changes (study group: 22.1 versus 24.4; control group: 23.9 versus 25.9). Cinnamon extract was well tolerated by the majority of patients. Three patients reported clinical improvement of dyspepsia during treatment (Nir et al., 2000). This trial had a better design overall, but the sample size was still small, increasing the likelihood of type II error (Martin and Ernst, 2003).

The final clinical trial was a prospective, double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled trial to evaluate the efficacy of cranberry juice in treating HP (Zhang et al., 2005). Subjects with positive urea breath tests were randomised to receive either two 250 mL cranberry juice boxes (Ocean Spray, Inc.) daily or a look-alike placebo beverage that simulated the taste of cranberry juice. Duration of treatment was 90 days. A total of 225 subjects were randomised; 112 received placebo (control group) and 113 received cranberry juice (treatment group). Several subjects either withdrew or were excluded from final analysis leaving only 92 in the control group and 97 in the treatment group. Efficacy was evaluated by repeat urea breath tests at 35 and 90 days. Urea breath tests were negative for 14 of 97 (14.43%) subjects in the treatment group and 90 days compared with 5 of 92 (5.44%) in the placebo group. Eleven of the 14 subjects who were negative for HP in the treatment group were negative on both test days, while only 2 of the 5 subjects in the placebo group were negative on both test days. The investigators concluded that subjects consuming cranberry juice had a better chance of becoming HP negative than those consuming placebo ($\chi^2 = 4.43; P = 0.04$) (Zhang et al., 2005). Some subjects did respond to treatment, but overall response to treatment was poor. Cranberry may prove to be effective in treating HP, but in a more concentrated form. This study was however well-designed and contained many of the critical elements that define a good clinical trial. The sample size was much larger in this trial than in any of the previous ones, treatment duration was much longer, subjects were randomised, and both investigators and subjects were blinded.

**Methodological issues**

**In-vitro methods**

**Susceptibility testing (minimum inhibitory concentration)**

To compare results between studies standardisation of methodology is an absolute necessity. To help standardise in-vitro methodology it is recommended to use protocols set forth by the Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI), formerly known as the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS). The agar dilution procedure outlined in this section has been used extensively in our laboratory and others when testing botanicals with good results. The standardised botanical extracts or pure compounds should be dissolved in a minimal volume of solvent. Common solvents used to dissolve the extracts or pure compounds consist of dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO), methanol, or sterile distilled water. Final concentrations to be tested should range from 1–100 $\mu$g/mL (twofold dilutions) for each botanical extract or pure compound. When testing any botanical extract or pure compound, antibiotics used for standard treatment in patients with HP should also be tested to serve as controls; clarithromycin, metronidazole, and amoxicillin are recommended. The final concentration of the antibiotics should be as follows: clarithromycin, 0.001–0.25 $\mu$g/mL; amoxicillin, 0.001–0.25 $\mu$g/mL; metronidazole, 16–256 $\mu$g/mL. One millilitre of each concentration should be added to 19 mL of molten Mueller-Hinton agar (pH 7.3; 50°C) supplemented with 10% sterile defibrinated horse blood (Hartzen et al., 1997; Meyer et al., 1997). In the laminar flow hood, the botanical extract or pure compound and molten agar medium should be thoroughly mixed by gently inverting three times and pouring into sterile Petri dishes. Petri dishes should be left to cool in the laminar flow hood. Growth control plates consisting of 20 mL of agar medium should be included in each experiment. Petri plates incorporating minimal to maximum volumes of any solvents (i.e. DMSO, etc.)
used in dissolving the botanical extracts or pure compounds should be included as growth controls to ensure that the viability of the organisms is not affected by the solvents.

For susceptibility testing, HP should be inoculated on to 5% sheep blood agar plates and incubated at 37°C in a 10% CO₂ atmosphere for at least 3 days. The organisms should be subcultured once to ensure reliable growth. An inoculum of each HP isolate should be prepared by suspending the organism in 4.5 mL of sterile Mueller-Hinton broth and adjusting the turbidity to that of a 2.0 McFarland Standard using a spectrophotometer at 625 nm. This density produces a suspension of approximately 1 × 10⁶ CFU/mL of HP. The isolates are inoculated on to agar plates, containing the botanical extracts, via a 32-prong inoculating device (Steers Replicator). This device delivers 8 μL per spot resulting in a final inoculum of approximately 1 × 10⁴ CFU/spot. After the spots have dried, the plates are incubated at 37°C in 10% CO₂ and examine for growth at 72 h. It is recommended to perform all procedures in duplicate or triplicate. The MIC will be determined for each botanical extract or pure compound. The MIC is defined as the lowest concentration of a botanical extract or pure compound at which there is no visible growth (Mahady et al., 2002, 2003a,b,c; NCCLS, 2005).

**Combination studies**

Antibiotic resistance against clarithromycin and metronidazole is now routinely observed for HP but can often be overcome with combination treatment. Additive or synergistic interactions between antibiotics can increase eradication rates and may prevent acquired resistance from occurring (Meyer et al., 1997; Pendland et al., 2000). Similarly, botanical extracts or pure compounds may also act synergistically with antibiotics, enhancing antimicrobial activity and reducing the emergence of resistant strains.

Combination effects of botanical extracts or pure compounds and antibiotics should be determined by the agar dilution checkerboard assay and evaluated using fractional inhibitory concentration (FIC) index as described (Kobayashi et al., 1992; Pillai et al., 2005; Botelho, 2000). The MIC protocol remains the same as in the section above with one exception; the agar plates are prepared with 1 mL of botanical extract or pure compound concentration, 1 mL of antibiotic concentration and 18 mL of molten Mueller-Hinton agar (pH 7.3; 50°C) supplemented with 10% sterile defibrinated horse blood (Pillai et al., 2005). It is recommend that the concentrations tested range from five dilutions below the MIC to twice the MIC (MICs are determined by the susceptibility procedures outlined in the section above). Twofold dilutions should again be used. All possible combinations, including a control without any antibiotic, should be tested and performed in duplicate or triplicate. Synergy results should be quantified with the FIC index calculated from both the FIC values of the botanical extracts or pure compounds and antibiotics (Botelho, 2000; Pillai et al., 2005). The FIC index should be used to determine if synergy, addition or antagonism occurs as a result of interactions between the botanical extracts or pure compounds and antibiotics. Using this method, the FIC index is interpreted as follows: ≤0.5, synergy; >0.5–1, additive; >1–4, indifference; >4, antagonism. Combinations that exert a synergistic effect should undergo further testing using the time-kill methodology. Statistical analyses should be performed using Student’s t test and P <0.05 is considered significant. In-vitro combination studies will indicate which combinations of botanical extracts or pure compounds and antibiotics would be applicable for in-vivo testing and at what dose.

**Bactericidal activity (time-kill studies)**

Combinations of botanical extracts or pure compounds and antibiotics that were found to be synergistic in the combination studies should be further tested for bactericidal activity. Time-kill methodology is performed using CLSI/NCCLS guidelines (NCCLS, 2005). HP strain ATCC 43504 is cultured in 10 mL of Brucella broth with 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS) and 0.1% β-cyclodextrin (Sigma) and incubated at 37°C with 10% CO₂ for 24 h (Dai et al., 2005). To ensure optimal growth prior to drug exposure, HP should be subcultured three times into fresh broth and incubated for 24 h each time (NCCLS, 2005). Test tubes containing 10 mL Brucella broth with 10% fetal bovine serum, 0.1% β-cyclodextrin and predetermined concentrations of botanical extract or pure compound and antibiotic (as determined from
combination studies described earlier) are inoculated with log-phase growth organisms to obtain a final inoculum of $10^6$ CFU/mL. Control tubes should include botanical extract or pure compound, antibiotic, and agent-free broth. For concentrations greater than or equal to the MIC, drug carryover tests should be performed. The final inoculum is confirmed at time 0 and subsequent viable counts should be done at 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12 and 24 h. Sampling for viable colony counts is done by removing 0.5 mL samples of the broth at the specified times. The 0.5 mL samples should be serially diluted in test tubes containing 4.5 mL of sterile normal saline to produce tenfold dilutions. A 50 μL aliquot of the dilutions should be inoculated on to 5% sheep blood agar plates using a spiral plater or other plating technique. The plates are incubated at 37°C in 10% CO₂ and colony counts are performed after 3 days. All procedures should be performed in duplicate or triplicate. Killing rates are determined by plotting $\log_{10}$ colony counts (CFU/mL) against time. A bactericidal effect is determined by a $\geq 3 \log_{10}$ (99.9% killing) decrease in CFU at the specified time. Synergy is defined as a $\geq 2 \log_{10}$ decrease in CFU/mL between the combination and the most active constituent.

In-vivo methods

Animal protocols

To make comparisons between treatment options in HP research, methodologies should be standardised. The following are suggested research approaches which if followed would result in standardised research practices. Treatment with botanical extracts or pure compounds and antibiotics in combination or alone should be based on the data obtained from in-vitro studies. Specific pathogen-free (SPF) Mongolian gerbils, approximately 5–7 weeks old have been used in animal studies (Kataoka et al., 2001; Iimuro et al., 2002; Matsubara et al., 2003). For the experimental inoculation of the gerbil, HP (strain dependent on the results of in-vitro studies), should be grown in Brucella broth supplemented with 2.5% heat-inactivated fetal bovine serum at 37°C for 2–3 days. The gerbils should be fasted for 24 h prior to oral inoculation with sterilised Brucella broth (control) or HP ($5 \times 10^6$ CFU/mL) applied in a volume of 0.4 mL using an oral catheter. After inoculation, each animal should be fasted another 4 h then given a normal diet. Drinking water can be provided ad lib throughout the entire experiment. A daily dose of the botanical or a combination of antibiotics and botanicals should be administered intragastrically. It is recommended to monitor body weight weekly, diet intake twice weekly, and drink intake three times weekly. The animals should be monitored daily for their general health. Thus, the in-vivo study for each treatment should have a total of five arms per botanical or pure compound:

- negative control group (no HP challenge)
- positive control group (HP challenge but no treatment)
- one arm for antibiotic alone
- one group with botanical alone
- combination treatment group.

The animals should receive their treatments for a total of 2 weeks, starting the day of inoculation or six weeks after the challenge with HP. Both these treatment timelines are needed to assess outcomes of treatment starting immediately after inoculation as opposed to treatment six weeks after inoculation when the infection is well established. At the end of the treatment period, all animals are euthanised under CO₂ and their stomachs resected for histology.

Determination of gastric lesions

Each stomach should be opened along the greater curvature and washed with saline. The macroscopic gastric lesions (oedema and haemorrhage) should be recorded. The stomachs must be opened and pinned for the determination of gastric lesions, oedema and haemorrhage; it is recommended that this is done by two blinded investigators. The macroscopic score is graded as follows:

- 0 = normal
- 1 = mild oedema and haemorrhagic erosions but no gastric ulcers
- 2 = oedema, haemorrhage and gastric ulcers
- 3 = severe oedema, haemorrhage and multiple gastric ulcers.
If gastric lesions are apparent, then liver, spleen and kidney tissues should be assessed. After macroscopic examination of gastric lesions, the measurement of the wet weight of the whole stomach, including forestomach and glandular stomach should be done. Half of the glandular mucosa must be scraped for detection of colonising HP, and the residual part is formalin-fixed and embedded in paraffin for histological observation. Pathological diagnosis of gastritis is made according to the criteria described previously (Israel et al., 2001; Brzozowski et al., 2003).

Detection of H. pylori colonisation in the gastric mucosa

To detect HP colonisation in the gastric mucosa of treated and untreated animals, half of the stomach should be excised after examination and homogenised in 1 mL of phosphate-buffered saline using a homogeniser, followed by dilution with PBS. One hundred microlitres of diluted homogenate should be inoculated on to segregating agar plates for HP and incubated at 37°C under microaerobic conditions. After 5 days, colony counts should be performed to determine the level of HP colonisation of each stomach (Brzozowski et al., 2003).

Determination of inflammatory parameters

Infections caused by HP stimulate an overproduction of pro-inflammatory cytokines causing inflammation. HP challenge is also associated with an overexpression of COX-2 in the gastric mucosal tissues (Aguilera et al., 2001). Data indicate that HP-induced inflammation, acute and/or chronic, can be decreased by standardised botanical extracts. HP-induced inflammation is mediated by elevated pro-inflammatory cytokines (including IL-β, IL-6, IL-8 and TNF-α) and prostaglandin E2 (PGE2). The transcription factor NF-κB and the MAPK cascade appear to augment cytokine and prostaglandin production (Seo et al., 2004). In-vitro data indicate that selected botanical extracts or pure compounds inhibit NF-κB transcriptional response, and release of IL-β, IL-6, IL-8 and TNF-α. Therefore, enzyme-linked immunoassay (ELISA) should be used to measure concentrations of IL-1, TNF-α and PGE2 in serum and tissue. The mRNA expression of IL-1, IL-6, IL-8, TNF-α and COX-2 should be measured in gastric tissues and liver, using reverse transcriptase PCR to assess how the botanical extracts affect HP-induced inflammation and the nuclear fraction of these tissues should be isolated with an electrophoretic mobility shift assay (EMSA), completed to measure NF-κB.

Prior to sacrifice, blood should be collected from the gerbils by cardiac puncture (8–10 mL) and microcentrifuged to separate the serum. The serum should be stored at −70°C until needed for further analysis. To measure tissue cytokine and prostaglandin concentrations (IL, TNF, and PGE2) in the gastric and liver tissues, the tissue must be homogenised. The tissue sample (0.1 g) should be homogenised at 25 000 rpm in TRIS lysis buffer containing protease-inhibitor cocktail for 2 min. Samples should then be centrifuged for 10 min at 10 000 × g and tissue TNF, IL and PGE2 concentrations will be determined using ELISA kits. Results should be expressed as milligrams of cytokine per gram of tissue.

The mRNA expression of IL, TNF-α and COX-2 in the gastric mucosa and liver are quantitated by RT-PCR normalised for the housekeeping gene GAPDH densitometry. mRNA should be isolated using TRIzol (Gibco Invitrogen Corp., Carlsbad, CA) according to manufacturer instructions. The amount and quality of the mRNA is confirmed by spectrophotometer analysis (optical density 1.8–2.0) and agarose gel electrophoresis. Each sample should then be reverse transcribed using the GeneAmp RNA PCR kit (Perkin Elmer, Foster City, CA). The RT reaction consists of cycling for 15 min at 42°C, followed by 95°C for 5 min and finished by 5°C for 5 min in a thermocycler. For the PCR analyses, each primer pair is tested to determine the annealing temperature and the linear reaction range. The PCR reaction includes heating to 95°C for 105 s to activate the Taq polymerase, then through approximately 25 cycles of heating and cooling from 99°C for 15 s to 60°C for 30 s. Holding at 72°C for 7 min completes the reaction. The linearity of the PCR reaction should be checked during various cycles. The PCR products are then separated by electrophoresis on a 1% agarose gel stained with ethidium bromide to quantify the intensity of the banding pattern. The gels should then be scanned into a densitometer for semi-quantitative analysis of the mRNA expression.

Nuclear protein extracts should be prepared from gastric and liver tissue using aliquots of frozen tissue
mixed with liquid nitrogen and ground to powder using a mortar and pestle. Solution A (4 mL, 0.6% NP-40, 150 mmol/L NaCl, 10 mmol/L HEPES [pH 7.9], 1 mmol/L EDTA, 0.5 mmol/L PMSF) is added to the contents in the mortar and then all of the contents are placed in a tissue homogeniser. Five strokes of the pestle should lyse the cells. Transfer the contents to a 15-mL tube and centrifuge at 2000 rpm for 30 s to form a pellet. The supernatant containing intact nuclei should then be transferred to 50-mL Corex tubes, incubated on ice for 5 min, and centrifuged for 10 min at 5000 rpm. The nuclear pellets are then resuspended in solution B (300 L, 25% glycerol, 20 mmol/L HEPES [pH 7.9], 420 mmol/L NaCl, 1.2 mmol/L MgCl₂, 0.2 mmol/L EDTA, 0.5 mmol/L DTT, 0.5 mmol/L PMSF, 2 mmol/L benzamidine, 0.5 g/mL pepstatin, 0.5 g/mL leupeptin, 0.5 g/mL aprotinin) and incubated on ice for 30 min. The mixture is then transferred to microcentrifuge tubes and the nuclei are pelleted by centrifugation at 14 000 rpm for 1 min. Supernatants containing nuclear proteins should then be aliquoted and stored at −70°C for further analysis.

EMSA is used to measure the presence of NF-κB in the nucleus (Novak et al., 2002; Babcock et al., 2003). For each sample, 5–10 μg of total nuclear protein should be incubated with the labelled double-stranded probe and 5 μg of poly(dI-dC) in binding buffer for 20 min at 25°C. Specific competition should be done by adding 100 ng of unlabelled NF-κB or AP-1 double-stranded binding probe to the reaction. The mixtures are then run on a 5% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis in ×1 Tris-glycine-EDTA buffer (NF-κB) or 0.25× Tris-borate-EDTA buffer (AP-1). The gels should then be vacuum-dried and exposed to radiographic film.

**Clinical studies**

Once in-vitro and in-vivo studies have been completed and the tested compound has shown adequate anti-HP activity, controlled clinical trials in subjects infected with HP should be performed. The studies that are available in the literature are lacking, in that they are poorly designed (Martin and Ernst, 2003).

Prior to attempting human studies, standardised botanical extracts or pure compounds must be developed based on in-vitro and animal data. Clinical studies should have both a control group (no treatment or standard treatment) and the necessary treatment groups (active botanicals). Clinical trials should be double-blinded to eliminate investigator or study subject biases (Powers, 2005). Subjects should be randomised into control and treatment groups. Sample size is an important consideration too when developing a trial, the number of subjects enrolled should be large enough to detect differences between the treatment groups but small enough not to incur more expense. Type I error is usually set at less than 0.05 (also known as alpha), this means there is a 5% chance that the study results were coincidental.

Subjects enrolled into clinical trials should have documented infection by HP (Martin and Ernst, 2003). A diagnostic test, such as a urea breath test or endoscopy, should be done prior to the study beginning and repeated again at the end of treatment. Clinical symptoms of HP infection (dyspepsia, stomach ache, etc.) should be collected prior to treatment and again at the completion of treatment to access any improvements. Any side-effects reported by study subjects should be recorded. Treatment durations can vary depending on whether the botanical or pure compound is being used alone (longer durations of treatment required) or in combination with antibiotics (usually 7–14 days), but should be for an appropriate amount of time as deemed by the investigators. Diagnostic tests should be repeated 4–6 weeks after the completion of treatment along with a repeat assessment of clinical symptoms.

**Conclusions**

HP infection is of great concern worldwide because of its association with gastric cancer (Owen, 2003). Resistance to available antimicrobials is on the rise not only in the United States but in developing countries (Duck et al., 2004). This increase in resistance has opened the door for research into herbal medicines. In recent years there have been numerous in-vitro studies published describing herbal medicine activity against HP. These studies have led to animal research and some clinical studies in humans. There is a great need for continued study in this area. Included in this chapter are some recommended
standardised procedures for the study of herbal products against HP.

References


Introduction

Cardiovascular diseases (CVD) constitute one of the major causes of disability and death all over the world. Increased mechanisation, Westernisation of lifestyle and genetic factors, coupled with an increase in life expectancy owing to control of infectious diseases, have contributed to its rise in the developing world as well.

Despite remarkable advances in the identification of various risk factors and our enhanced knowledge regarding the aetiopathogenesis of CVD and molecular targeting for drug development, effective drug management of CVD still eludes medical researchers. There continues to be an unmet need for better and safer drugs to treat as well as to prevent CVD. In this regard, it is important to remember that many of the CVD are preventable, either by lifestyle modification and/or by drugs.

The past few decades have witnessed the introduction of a remarkable number of not only new drugs, but also new classes of drugs, for the treatment of CVD. These include calcium-channel blockers, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, angiotensin-receptor blockers, various hypolipidaemic agents, and various antiplatelet drugs. On the other hand, a few of the older drugs, such as digoxin, the first to be introduced to treat heart failure, have taken a back seat, not only because of their serious side-effect profile, as well as the discovery of safer and more effective drugs, but also as a consequence of improved understanding of CVD mechanisms.

Herbal medicine and CVD

Cardiovascular drugs include many whose origin can be traced to natural sources, e.g. digoxin (Digitalis purpurea), reserpine (Rauwolfia serpentina), aspirin (bark of willow Salix spp.) and taxol (Taxus brevifolia), the last one being used in drug-eluting stents to prevent restenosis following coronary angioplasty. All these examples demonstrate the vast potential of herbal products, their extracts and active principles in the management of CVD.
In many countries, there is a rich tradition of herbal medicine, and herbal preparations are available to patients, for which a prescription from a medical practitioner is not required. Moreover, many of these herbal preparations are prescribed legally by practitioners of some locally recognised alternative systems of medicine but, unfortunately, authentic information about the source and reliability of these herbal preparations is very often not available. Even in many developing countries, over-the-counter herbal preparations are widely used, but have hardly any regulatory control. In view of these issues, there is a global need for adopting guidelines for screening for efficacy, safety and quality (standardisation) of these preparations.

In this chapter, screening methods for herbal products for ischaemic heart disease, hypertension and heart failure are discussed. Cardiac arrhythmias and some cardiomyopathies are not dealt with here because of their more complex aetiopathogenesis and lower incidence, respectively.

**Screening for efficacy of herbal preparations in CVD**

There is a need to reconsider and reassess our traditional approach for identifying pharmacological activities with reference to our current knowledge and understanding of CVD. For instance, about a half-century ago, drugs with potential positive inotropic effect were thought to be useful candidates for use in heart failure, but today, beta-blockers, which are primarily cardiodepressants, are preferred over positive inotropic agents, even in advanced stages of heart failure! Therefore, understanding the pathological processes behind these diseases is essential before embarking on the task of screening for pharmacological effects. Hence, this chapter first familiarises the reader with the current understanding of different CVDs, to enable informed decision regarding the choice of model best suited to the plant under scrutiny and its particular potential properties.

**Ischaemic heart disease**

Ischaemic heart disease (IHD) develops largely because of the reduction in blood supply to the heart muscles, mostly caused by narrowing of the coronary arteries by atherosclerosis. Atherosclerosis is a chronic condition associated with accumulation of lipids in blood vessels, leading to the occlusion of blood flow and much focus has been on the role of low-density lipoprotein (LDL), and of oxidatively modified LDL, in the initiation and progression of this disease. LDL is in fact a metabolic end-product of the triglyceride-rich lipoproteins (i.e., very-low-density lipoproteins) but triglycerides are also implicated as contributors to atherosclerosis (Le and Walter, 2007).

Atherosclerosis starts very early in life, but the rapidity with which the disease advances may vary from individual to individual, depending on their genetic make up and other modifiable risk factors, such as diet, physical activity and dyslipidaemia. Therefore, lifestyle modifications, alone or in combination with drugs, are crucial in positively modulating this crucial factor of IHD (Genest, 2000).

**Screening for hypolipidaemic activities**

Dyslipidaemia and atherosclerosis are major initiating factors of IHD, and presently, even in normolipidaemic patients, certain hypolipidaemic drugs, such as statins, have been found to be useful in reducing acute events (Inoue and Node, 2007). Any indication regarding whether a plant extract can positively modulate the lipid levels, particularly the HDL-C levels, may be useful in obtaining important preliminary information about the therapeutic potential of a plant. Faecal concentrations of cholesterol and any effect on HMG-CoA reductase activity may be carried out (Visavadiya and Narasimhacharya, 2007).

Several models are available currently to detect hypolipidaemic activities (Yanni, 2000; Moghadasian et al., 2001; Russell and Proctor, 2006) but most animal models involve cholesterol-enriched, diet-induced hyperlipidaemia. Either the plant extracts are administered along with cholesterol-enriched diet (pretreatment) or after hyperlipidaemia (post-treatment) has set in.

The pretreatment schedule helps to bring forward any potential preventive property regarding the development of dyslipidaemia, while the post-treatment protocol indicates the curative potential, if any. Both these protocols are valuable, but a practical difficulty associated with the diet-induced hyperlipidaemia
model is that lipid levels tend to return to normal once the cholesterol-enriched diet is discontinued. If any positive effect of a herbal product is observed on total-cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, VLDL-cholesterol and HDL-cholesterol levels, it is worth carrying the investigation further. In addition, screening for effects on LpA and oxidised LDL are also useful as they play critical roles in the pathogenesis of CVD (Siess, 2006). Oxidised LDL is difficult to assess in animal models, as suitable immunoassay kits are not available from reliable sources. An ELISA method using anti-oxLDL monoclonal antibodies (mAb) has been described by Gidlund et al. (1996).

As an alternative, in-vitro oxidisability of LDL fraction and the effect of the plant extract on it may be used (Yuan and Kitts, 2002; Hidiroglo et al., 2004).

Rats are very resistant to development of hyperlipidaemia by cholesterol-enriched diet. This may be because the lipid metabolism of rats is primarily based on HDL, rather than on LDL (as in humans), which possibly offers resistance to the development of atherosclerosis. This is also true for mice. However, there are a few researchers who have reported success in this matter (Bennani-Kabchi et al., 2000; El-Beshbishy et al., 2006; Singab et al., 2006).

Rabbits are more widely used for this purpose (Kolodgie et al., 1996; Kaminura, 1999). Larger mammals, such as minipigs, have also been used (Theilmeier, 2002). A variety of genetic models of hyperlipidaemia, particularly in mice, have been used and are probably the most suitable (Zhang et al., 1992; Schreyer et al., 1998; Jiang et al., 2003; Johansson et al., 2005).

As atherosclerosis is the root cause of IHD, any plant extract having antiatherosclerotic property will be worth investigating. The different stages of atherosclerosis, from fatty streaks to full-blown lesions can be used for screening, and can underscore the usefulness of a plant product in preventing the progression of atherosclerosis. In addition to macroscopic and microscopic studies to assess the effects on atherosclerosis in large blood vessels, e.g. the aorta, estimation of certain biochemical markers in the aortic tissue is also helpful in further establishing the credentials of the plant product.

Levels of some major oxidative stress parameters, such as malondialdehyde, superoxide dismutase, catalase and glutathione, provide important information (Antonello et al., 2007) about how the plant product may benefit the ‘microenvironment’ in the arterial wall in preventing the oxidation of the LDL particles. As mentioned above, this latter phenomenon is a major aetiopathological factor in the initiation and progression of atherosclerosis (Siess, 2006). Effects of the plant product on certain cell adhesion molecules are important, because in IHD, platelet clot formation is initiated by these compounds, released in large amounts from an unstable atherosclerotic plaque (Kraaijeveld et al., 2007).

### Screening for coronary vasodilator activity

Plant products having coronary vasodilator activity can be useful as ‘add-on’ therapy in established cases of IHD. The Langendorff method is widely used for this purpose and is probably the oldest method for screening usefulness of a drug candidate in IHD.

#### The Langendorff in-vitro coronary vasodilator activity measurement

Langendorff (1895) set up the first isolated mammalian heart and the goal of experiments using it is to provide the isolated heart with oxygen and metabolites via a single cannula inserted into the ascending aorta. Blood or an oxygenated perfusate is flushed down the aorta towards the heart using an external pump. As a consequence of the retrograde perfusion of the aorta, the aortic valve closes, forcing the fluid into the coronary arteries during the diastolic period as it does in the normal cardiac cycle. The perfusate flows through the coronary system finally exiting via the coronary sinus in the right atrium.

In the 1960s, Neely et al. (1967) adapted the method which has since been used extensively, with a number of modifications (Zimmer, 1998). As autonomic control is absent in the isolated heart, it helps in understanding whether any vasodilator activity acts directly on the coronary arteries or not. Mechanistic studies may reveal whether the vasodilator action is mediated through nitric oxide (NO) activity (by studies in the presence or absence of NO synthase inhibitors), calcium-channel blocking, and alpha-blocking activity or through other mechanism(s). Vasodilatory effects may be measured by traditional methods or by more sophisticated electromagnetic or Doppler flow probes.
Screening for anti-ischaemic effects

Langendorff’s method may also be used to identify any anti-ischaemic effect (other than coronary vasodilator activity) (Gauthaman et al., 2001; Rajlakshmi et al., 2003; Devi et al., 2005). In the isolated heart, both global and regional ischaemia can be produced by stopping the flow (global) or ligating any coronary artery, usually the left anterior descending coronary artery (regional). Ischaemia can be induced permanently or coronary circulation can be reinstituted after a defined period of ischaemia. The latter is a model for ischaemic-reperfusion injury of heart.

Ischaemic-reperfusion injury (IR injury) constitutes a major pathological process in IHD and occurs when coronary flow is re-established after a period of ischaemia, caused spontaneously or by drugs or by other interventions, e.g. angioplasty and coronary artery bypass surgery. IR injury is responsible for acute adverse outcomes (such as cardiac arrhythmias, sometimes leading to cardiac standstill) or chronic adverse effects, such as stunned myocardium (reduced cardiac contractility in the absence of any coronary flow deficit) and, if it occurs repeatedly, it may lead to left ventricular dysfunction (heart failure).

Plant products may be screened for their effect(s), if any, on various parameters of IR injury, using different protocols involving variations in duration of ischaemia (from 20 min to a few hours) (Maulik et al., 2001; Kumari et al., 2004). Various haemodynamic, biochemical and pathological parameters can be measured to assess the degree of IR injury and the effects of any interventions. Haemodynamic parameters include left ventricular pressure, left ventricular developed pressure, left ventricular dP/dt (the rate of rise of left ventricular pressure) (all indices of left ventricular systolic functions) and left ventricular end-diastolic pressure (LVEDP) and left ventricular–dP/dt (the rate of fall of left ventricular pressure) (all indices of left ventricular diastolic functions). Biochemical parameters, such as oxidative stress parameters (mentioned earlier), cell adhesion molecules, heat shock protein 72 (HSP72) and nuclear factor (NF)-κB, can provide mechanistic information.

Pathological parameters are useful for assessing cell viability. TTC stain is widely used in differentiating between viable and dead tissue (Khalil et al., 2006).

Light microscope examinations are essential to identify gross morphological changes, while electron microscopic studies help in identifying the effects on smaller subcellular structures, such as mitochondria and sarcoplasmic reticulum and sarcolemmal integrity. Immunohistochemical studies are widely practised these days to localise the expression of pathological substances inside the cell (Banerjee et al., 2002).

Screening for cardiac preconditioning effect

Cardiac preconditioning is a very recently discovered phenomenon and is helpful in offering protection against cardiac ischaemia. By virtue of this phenomenon, repeated episodes of short-term ischaemia offer protection against any subsequent more severe ischaemic episode. Cardiac preconditioning can help to reduce infarct size and cardiac arrhythmias, as well as preserving left ventricular function following acute myocardial infarction (Rezkalla and Kloner, 2005; Bolli, 2007).

Various cellular mechanisms responsible for cardiac preconditioning have been identified, which include removal of reactive oxygen species (ROS) or reduced mitochondrial ROS production (Halestrap et al., 2007), reduced release of activated neutrophils, reduced apoptosis and better microcirculatory perfusion compared with non-preconditioned tissue (Pasupathy and Vanniasinkam, 2005), activation of nitric oxide synthase (Cohen et al., 2006), K channel activation (Das and Sarkar, 2007), induction of heat shock protein (HSP72) (Miller, 2001; Gauthaman et al., 2005) and augmentation of endogenous antioxidants (Dhalla et al., 2000a).

Although cardiac preconditioning occurs spontaneously, many drugs have been shown to induce cardiac preconditioning in the normal heart and it represents one of the most powerful cardioprotective phenomena. Hence, ‘preconditioning mimetic’ drugs may have a promising future in simulating ischaemic preconditioning and thereby providing a powerful tool against myocardial damage.

However, despite the effectiveness of ischaemic preconditioning and ‘preconditioning mimetics’ for protecting ischaemic myocardium, there are no preconditioning-based therapies that are routinely used in clinical medicine at the current time (Kloner and Rezkalla, 2006). In this regard, medicinal plants
may be the ideal source for such agents since they are relatively safe to consume and hence may be given on a long-term basis to IHD patients.

Many plants, such as *Allium sativum* (Banerjee *et al.*, 2002; 2003; Saravanan and Prakash, 2004;); *Emblica officinalis* (Bhattacharya *et al.*, 2002; Rajak *et al.*, 2004) and *Terminala arjuna* (Karthikeyan *et al.*, 2003; Gauthaman *et al.*, 2005) have been shown to have significant antioxidant properties. Chronic administration of these agents in animals (rats) offers protection against subsequent in-vitro and in-vivo ischaemic injury and ischaemic-reperfusion injury. These agents augment the level of endogenous antioxidants of the heart on chronic administration, which subsequently prevented oxidative stress induced by ischaemic-reperfusion injury (Banerjee *et al.*, 2003a; Narang *et al.*, 2005; Sood *et al.*, 2005).

Ischaemic preconditioning may be studied in animals, such as the rat or dog, by appropriate variation in the in-vitro and in-vivo models of ischaemic-reperfusion models.

**Hypertension**

Hypertension is a major cause of morbidity and mortality across the world and hence an important public health problem (Bakris, 2007; Israili *et al.*, 2007). Apart from CVD, hypertension is also the most important modifiable risk factor for cerebral stroke, end-stage kidney disease and peripheral vascular disease.

Over the past several decades, extensive clinical and basic research and aggressive patient education have led to some decrease in mortality and morbidity rates associated with hypertension, but there is still a great need for antihypertensive agents that go beyond the lowering of blood pressure to treat the underlying pathophysiologic conditions that contribute to CVD.

The Seventh Report of the Joint National Committee (JNC VII) of Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure (Chobanian *et al.*, 2003), classified blood pressure (expressed in mmHg) for adults aged 18 years or older as follows.

- **Normal**: systolic lower than 120 mmHg, diastolic lower than 80 mmHg
- **Prehypertension**: systolic 120–139 mmHg, diastolic 80–99 mmHg
- **Hypertensive stage 1**: systolic 140–159 mmHg, diastolic 90–99 mmHg
- **Hypertensive stage 2**: systolic equal to or more than 160 mmHg, diastolic equal to or more than 100 mmHg.

Knowledge about the normal control of blood pressure and pathophysiological factors operating in hypertension is essential for targeting drug development and designing animal models for screening putative drug candidates.

**Regulation of blood pressure**

Arterial blood pressure is a product of cardiac output and peripheral vascular resistance, so determinants of blood pressure include factors that affect both cardiac output and arteriolar vascular physiology.

Normal blood pressure is regulated by a complex process. The major variables, such as cardiac output and peripheral vascular resistance are influenced by a variety of other factors (Ackermann, 2004). These include sodium intake, renal function, and mineralocorticoids and an increase in heart rate and contractility. Peripheral vascular resistance is dependent upon the sympathetic nervous system, humoral factors and local autoregulation. The sympathetic nervous system exerts its effects via the vasoconstrictor alpha-receptor (α1) effect or the vasodilator beta-receptor (β2) effect. The humoral actions on peripheral resistance are also mediated by various mediators, such as angiotensin-II and catecholamines (vasoconstrictors) or prostaglandins and kinins (vasodilators) (Sharma, 2007).

**Pathogenesis of hypertension**

The pathogenesis of essential hypertension (without any identifiable cause) is multifactorial (Bakris and Mensah, 2002). Genetic predisposition, excess dietary salt intake, and more than normal adrenergic tone have been proposed to play important roles in the causation of hypertension. The exact molecular mechanism(s) of genetic factor(s) in the development of essential hypertension has not yet been clearly established (Puddu *et al.*, 2007).
Target organ damage in hypertension
Brain (stroke), kidneys (renal failure), heart (ischaemic heart disease and cardiac hypertrophy) and eyes (retinopathy) are the major organs that are adversely affected because of chronic, untreated or poorly treated hypertension.

Need for drug development in hypertension
Although at present there are a large number of drugs available for the treatment of hypertension, adequate blood pressure control remains a challenge in clinical medicine (Flaa and Kjeldsen, 2006). Use of multiple drugs is a common practice. Many drugs have a number of adverse effects which limit patient compliance, while others have contraindications which limit their use. Consequently, there is a strong need to develop newer drugs for hypertension and herbs could play a role in this respect.

Methods to induce experimental hypertension
Several models have been developed to assess anti-hypertensive potential of test compounds, some of which are described below. However, a general point of precaution for all such in-vivo experiments, indeed for any cardiovascular model, is that careful attention should be paid to choice of anaesthesia, which can depress or stimulate the cardiovascular system and play havoc with the experimental findings.

Acute renal hypertension in rats
Clamping of the left renal artery for 4 hours stimulates synthesis of renin, which, on release of the clamp, is released into the circulation and catalyses the formation of angiotensin II from angiotensin I causing acute hypertension.

This method was first described by Goldblatt (Goldblatt et al., 1934). In anaesthetised male Sprague–Dawley rats, the left renal artery is occluded for 3.5–4 h. Blood pressure is measured via a cannula in the carotid artery and connected to a pressure transducer. Following a stable blood pressure state, ganglionic blockade is achieved with intravenous pentolinium and the renal arterial clip removed, causing a rise in blood pressure soon afterwards. The test substance is then administered by intravenous injection via the jugular vein at predetermined doses (Vogel et al., 2002).

Chronic renal hypertension in rats
Various modifications of the Goldblatt model have been described for several animal species to produce chronic hypertension in animals. One of these modifications is the 1K1C (one-kidney, one-clip) method in rats (Vogel et al., 2002). In anaesthetised male Sprague–Dawley rats the renal artery is dissected clean and a U-shaped silver clip is slipped around it near the aorta. The size of the clip is adjusted using Schaffenburg forceps (Schaffenburg, 1959) so that the internal gap ranges from 0.25–0.38 mm. The right kidney is removed through a flank incision after ligating the renal pedicle and skin incisions closed. About 4–5 weeks later, blood pressure is measured and rats with blood pressure values higher than 150 mmHg are selected for the experiments (Vogel et al., 2002).

In another modification, right nephrectomy is performed on anaesthetised rats. After a 1-week recovery period, the nephrectomised rats are subjected to left renal artery constriction and systolic blood pressure measured twice a week with the tail-cuff method using a programmed electrosphygmanometer. Acute unclipping experiments are carried out 4 weeks later (Huang and Tsai, 1998).

Another useful experimental model is that of the 2K1C (two-kidney, one-clip) Goldblatt model (Goldblatt, 1995) in which hypertension is induced by unilateral stenosis of the renal artery. The clip is not severe enough to cause ischaemia; but the reduced renal perfusion pressure stimulates increased renin synthesis and release from the clipped kidney.

Other modifications of the method
Many other modifications of the method of inducing renal hypertension have been made (Grollman, 1944; Stanton, 1971), e.g. the kidney is exposed through a lumbar incision, the renal capsule is removed by gentle traction, and a figure-of-eight ligature is applied being tight enough to deform the kidney but not tight enough to cut the tissue (Vogel et al., 2002). Renal hypertension may also be induced in the rat by encapsulating both kidneys with latex rubber capsule moulds (Abrams and Sobin, 1947).

Chronic renal hypertension in larger animals
The principle is essentially the same as that originally described by Goldblatt. In this model, abdominal
incision is made in anaesthetised dogs to expose one kidney (Vogel et al., 2002). The kidney is wrapped in cellophane and then replaced. The contralateral kidney is removed after ligation of the artery, vein and ureter. After closure of the abdomen, the animals are allowed to recover. Six weeks following surgery, blood pressure is measured using a tail-cuff method. Only animals with a systolic blood pressure higher than 150 mmHg are considered to be hypertensive and are taken up for further studies on evaluating potential antihypertensive compounds. For the experiment, blood pressure is recorded either by the non-invasive tail-cuff method or by direct measurement via an implanted arterial cannula. Blood pressure recording is made at pre-determined time schedules, before and after the oral administration of the potential antihypertensive compound. Drug administration is repeated for 5 days.

**Neurogenic hypertension in dogs**

Blood pressure is finely regulated by the vasomotor centre which receives input from the baroreceptor areas of the carotid sinus and aortic arch. Stimulation of these afferent fibres exerts an inhibitory influence on the vasomotor centre, while sectioning leads to a persistent rise in blood pressure. The neurogenic hypertension model is based on this phenomenon (Vogel et al., 2002).

In adult anaesthetised dogs, both the carotid sinus nerves are isolated, ligated and sectioned and a bilateral vagotomy is performed to produce neurogenic hypertension (mean arterial pressure more than 150 mmHg). The animal is allowed to equilibrate for around 30 min before testing of antihypertensive compounds is started. Heart rate, arterial pressure, left ventricular pressure, Pmax and dP/dt are recorded using appropriate pressure transducers connected to a polygraph (Vogel et al., 2002).

The neurogenic hypertension model is useful for acute experiments. However, it is less useful for chronic experiments since the elevated blood pressure caused by buffer nerve section is more labile than that caused by renal ischaemia.

Neurogenic hypertension through baroreceptor denervation has also been described in rabbits (Angell-James, 1984) and in rats (Krieger, 1984).

**Desoxycorticosterone acetate – salt-induced hypertension in rats**

Mineralocorticoids induce hypertension by their sodium-retaining properties, leading to increase in plasma and extracellular volume. This hypertensive effect is enhanced by salt loading and unilateral nephrectomy in rats. In this model, the left kidney is removed from anaesthetised male Sprague–Dawley rats. The rats are injected twice weekly with subcutaneous desoxycorticosterone acetate for 4 weeks. Drinking water is replaced with a 1% NaCl solution. The blood pressure starts to rise after 1 week and reaches systolic values between 160 and 180 mmHg after 4 weeks (Vogel et al., 2002).

**Genetic hypertension in rats**

Okamoto et al. (1963) developed a strain of spontaneously hypertensive rats from mating one Wistar male rat with spontaneously occurring high blood pressure with a female with slightly elevated blood pressure. By inbreeding over several generations, a high incidence of hypertension with blood pressure values of 200 mmHg or more was achieved. These strains were called spontaneously hypertensive rats. Hypertension in these rats is clearly hereditary and genetically determined, thus comparable with primary hypertension in humans. Cardiac hypertrophy (Sen et al., 1974) has been observed in these rats.

Several substrains of spontaneous hypertensive rats were separated by the group of Okamoto et al. (1974) including the stroke-prone model. These rats have an increased sympathetic tone and show a high incidence of haemorrhagic lesions of the brain with motor disturbances followed by death (Yamori et al., 1983).

Increase of blood pressure of spontaneously hypertensive rats is determined by multiple genetic loci (Deng and Rapp, 1992; Dubey et al., 1993). With the newer technologies, not only can these loci be defined but also with the transgenic animals, new models in hypertension research and models to screen for antihypertensive agents can be established. The rat strain, TGR (mREN2)27, as a monogenetic model in hypertension research has been described by Peters et al. (1993). For review see Herrera and Ruiz-Opazo (2005).
Spontaneously hypertensive rats are widely used for the screening of potential antihypertensive compounds. Of the various models available, most work has been done on the Wistar-Kyoto strain and in the near future, transgenic rats with well-defined genomes are likely to be the preferred choice (Vogel et al., 2002).

**Endothelial dysfunction**

Furchgott and Zawadzki (1980) first reported that the presence of the intact endothelial cells is essential for acetylcholine to induce relaxation in the underlying vascular smooth muscle, and the phenomenon where endothelial cells do not act in this way was named ‘endothelial dysfunction’. Endothelial dysfunction is an early marker of atherosclerosis. It has been associated with a number of cardiovascular diseases, such as hypertension, atherosclerosis, but also with physiological and pathophysiological processes, including ageing, heart and renal failure, coronary syndrome, microalbuminuria, dialysis, thrombosis, intravascular coagulation, Type 1 and Type 2 diabetes, impaired glucose tolerance, insulin resistance, hyperglycaemia, obesity, hypercholesterolaemia, to name but a few (Féretou and Vanhoutte, 2006; Frick and Weidinger, 2007).

Endothelial dysfunction is characterised by a reduction in the bioavailability of vasodilators, particularly nitric oxide, and an increase in the activity of vasoconstrictors, including angiotensin II and ROS (Schulman et al., 2005). ROS may importantly contribute to endothelial dysfunction through inactivation of endothelium-derived nitric oxide (Dhalla et al., 2000b). Herbal preparations with potential antioxidant properties may be screened for their putative effects on endothelial dysfunction.

**Screening for endothelial dysfunction**

Endothelial dysfunction has been widely studied in vessels from hypertensive animals, such as the aorta of the spontaneously hypertensive rats. Several biological markers have been used as indicators of endothelial dysfunction. The soluble adhesion molecules, such as sICAM-1 and sVCAM-1, are increased in inflammatory processes. Both markers are increased in coronary artery disease. E-selectin is specific for the endothelium and is increased in coronary artery disease and diabetes mellitus. Other endothelium-specific markers are soluble thrombomodulin (Constans and Conri, 2006) and von Willebrand factor (Blann et al., 2002).

Endothelial dysfunction may also be assessed noninvasively by determining brachial artery flow-mediated dilatation. Flow may be measured by Doppler and intravascular ultrasound in coronary circulation, laser Doppler in skin and by venous occlusion plethysmography in peripheral muscular arteries. Similar studies may be performed ex vivo using isolated resistance arteries obtained from fat subcutaneous biopsies (Joannides et al., 2006).

**Congestive heart failure**

Considerable progress in our knowledge and management of congestive heart failure (CHF) has been made during the past few years. However, the incidence, prevalence, mortality and economic costs of heart failure are steadily increasing with decreasing mortality because of better management of various conditions, such as acute myocardial infarction and hypertension, that cause heart failure. Survival of patients with CHF depends on the duration and severity of the disease as well as on therapeutic strategies.

CHF is a complex clinical syndrome in which a number of factors, apart from mechanical failure of the heart muscle, such as ventricular remodelling, neurohumoral activation, cytokine overexpression, as well as vascular and endothelial dysfunction play critical contributory roles (Pacher, 2001).

The leading causes of CHF are IHD (Klein and Gheorghiade, 2004) and hypertension (Baker, 2002). Other causes of CHF include primary myocardial diseases, such as dilated cardiomyopathy and valvular heart disease (7–8%) (Kannel, 2000).

Regardless of the aetiology, activation of the neurohumoral and the cytokine system seems to play a critical role in CHF. There is activation of the neurohumoral system which results in increased noradrenaline release. There is also activation of both local and plasma renin-angiotensin systems in patients with symptomatic heart failure (Adams, 2004).
The importance of cytokines as mediators of disease progression has been recently highlighted. They are believed to cause endothelial dysfunction, oxidative stress, induction of anaemia, necrotic and/or apoptotic myocyte cell death, myocardial fibrosis, and depression of myocardial function (Candia et al., 2007). Circulating levels of tumour necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) (Henriksen and Newby, 2003), brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) and interleukin-6 (Maeda et al., 2000) are increased and positively related to the severity of heart failure. In addition, endothelin plays a significant role in the pathogenesis of CHF. Apart from being the most potent vasoconstrictor, endothelin mediates pathologic hypertrophy and fibrosis of both ventricular and vascular tissues, it potentiates the effects of other neurohormones and acts as a proarrhythmic agent (Teerlink, 2005).

Extracellular matrix and changes in collagen composition have been shown to occur in heart failure. Enhanced myocardial stress initiates structural remodelling of the heart. This involves cardiomyocyte hypertrophy and changes in the amount of collagen, collagen phenotype and collagen crosslinking resulting in a stiffer ventricle ultimately leading to diastolic and systolic dysfunction (Brower et al., 2006).

The above discussion has been made with the purpose of highlighting the recent understanding of CHF pathophysiology and that pharmacotherapy of CHF has moved far beyond digitalis and diuretics, which provide just symptomatic relief, without having any effect on disease progression. Hence, herbal preparations, potentially useful in heart failure may be screened for properties in the light of these recent aetiopathological mechanisms of CHF.

Animal models of heart failure
The ideal animal model for heart failure should closely mimic heart failure in humans, i.e. it should exhibit:

- haemodynamic changes that include increased cardiac filling pressures and low cardiac output
- activation of the sympathetic nervous system and increased secretion of hormones, such as renin, angiotensin, aldosterone, vasopressin, atrial natriuretic factor and endothelin
- Evidence of clinical features such as cardiomegaly, lung and peripheral oedema and decreased exercise tolerance.

Moreover, the model should be reproducible, inexpensive and technically simple to establish and study (Arnolda et al., 1999).

Clearly, there is no perfect animal model of heart failure that exhibits all the features mentioned above and the best way to circumvent the issue is to choose the model that is best suited to the purpose of the study.

A variety of animal models have been developed for studying heart failure and include pressure loading, volume loading, myocardial infarction, etc. Each model may be used to study a particular dysfunctional aspect of CHF, for instance ventricular hypertrophy, cellular derangements and vascular changes may be assessed through pressure-loading models. For studying the pathogenesis of hormone and electrolyte disturbances, volume-loading models may be more suited. Canine coronary artery microembolisation has been used to generate ischaemia-induced dilation and dysfunction in the left ventricle. Rapid ventricular pacing has been used in both dogs and pigs to reproduce the characteristics of dilated cardiomyopathy. Models of myocardial infarction or destruction are likely to be the most suitable for assessing novel therapy provided that peripheral reflexes are maintained. For a greater clinical relevance, studies should be conducted on conscious animals with intact reflexes (Smith and Nuttall, 1985; Yarbrough and Spinale, 2003).

The rat model of heart failure
Rats have been the most widely used animal in which heart failure has been induced by various methods. Rats are relatively inexpensive and are easier to handle, making them the models of choice for many investigators. However, the rat as a model for heart failure has a number of limitations, as there are significant differences from the human heart. The most obvious one is that of the resting heart rate, which is five times that of the human heart. Other differences include electrophysiological (rat heart exhibits a very short action potential and usually lacks a plateau phase) and excitation-contraction differences (Hasenfuss, 1998).
Rat coronary ligation model
Myocardial infarction following coronary artery ligation in rats is a commonly used model of heart failure (Goldman and Raya, 1995). In this model, the left coronary artery is partially ligated, leading to CHF as a consequence of chronic myocardial ischaemia. Total ligation of the artery also leads to CHF but high mortality rates limit use of this model.

Rat aortic-banding model
A large number of studies have shown that aortic banding (pressure-overload heart failure) in rats causes left ventricular hypertrophy and after several months, a subset of these aortic-banded animals develop heart failure. Cardiac hypertrophy is a compensatory process that leads to a heart better suited for the functional demands caused by cardiac muscle dysfunction or loss. Because cardiac myocytes are terminally differentiated, hypertrophied heart muscle cells demonstrate an increase in protein content rather than an increase in cell number (Hasenfuss, 1998).

Transgenic animals are very useful models to study the factors involved in the pathogenesis of cardiac hypertrophy. To achieve this goal, rodents lacking or overexpressing a specific gene are subjected to banding of the abdominal aorta, which leads to cardiac hypertrophy caused by pressure overload on the heart (Barbosa et al., 2005).

Mouse model of chronic volume overload
Overt congestive heart failure associated with myocardial hypertrophy in the mouse may also be used as a model of CHF. In a model, in anaesthetised female C57/BL6 mice, the aorta is temporarily clamped proximal to the renal arteries. Thereafter a shunt is made between the aorta and inferior vena cava. Four weeks after shunt induction, mice show significant cardiac hypertrophy, increase in left ventricular end-diastolic pressure and left ventricular contractility. Plasma concentrations of atrial natriuretic peptide, as well as ventricular expression of atrial and brain natriuretic peptide mRNA, are also reported to be significantly increased in mice with shunt (Scheuermann-Freestone et al., 2001).

Dahl salt-sensitive hypertensive rats
These rats develop systemic hypertension after receiving a high-salt diet (Rapp and Dene, 1985). Hypertension causes cardiac hypertrophy and there is a transition from compensated hypertrophy to failure in these rats. Concentric left ventricular hypertrophy develops at 8 weeks, followed by marked left ventricular dilatation and overt clinical heart failure at 15–20 weeks. High mortality rates are also observed in this model.

Spontaneously hypertensive heart failure rats
Development of heart failure occurs earlier (4–18 months) in some spontaneously hypertensive rats (Okamoto, 1969) that have a genetic abnormality. In these animals, plasma renin activity and aldosterone levels progressively increase with age (Hasenfuss, 1998). Spontaneously hypertensive heart failure, a genetic model predisposed to hypertension and heart failure, may also be used for screening purposes (McCune et al., 1995).

Rabbits, guinea pigs and Syrian hamsters have also been used in developing heart failure models in a similar fashion.

Heart failure models in large animals
Left ventricular function and volumes in dog can be more accurately and conveniently studied than in rodents. Further, unlike the rat, excitation-contraction coupling processes in dog appear to be more similar to those of the human myocardium (Hasenfuss, 1998; Fuller et al., 2007). However, dog models are more expensive, in addition to having ethical constraints.

Chronic rapid-pacing-induced heart failure
Chronic rapid pacing at above 200 beats per minute in healthy dogs produces congestive heart failure within a few weeks. Haemodynamic changes occur as soon as 24 h after rapid pacing, with continued deterioration in ventricular function for up to 3–5 weeks, resulting in end-stage heart failure. Within 48 h after termination of pacing, haemodynamic variables approach control levels, and left ventricular ejection fraction shows significant recovery with subsequent normalisation after 1–2 weeks (Shinbane et al., 1997). Thus, in this model, heart failure is reversible when pacing is stopped. The exact pathogenesis in this model is still unclear.

Coronary artery ligation-induced congestive heart failure
Left coronary artery ligation has been used to produce myocardial infarction and CHF in dogs.
About 2–3 months after infarction, there are clinical signs of heart failure, including left ventricular dilatation, decreased left ventricular ejection fraction, and neurohumoral activation similar to that occurring in humans. The progression from left ventricular dysfunction to heart failure and the influence of pharmacological interventions can be studied.

The model has several disadvantages. Because of extensive collateral circulation, there are important differences in the pattern of infarction between the human and the dog. The model is time-consuming, technically demanding and expensive. The model is also associated with high mortality and with a high incidence of arrhythmias (Hasenfuss, 1998).

**Volume overload**

Arteriovenous fistula or destruction of the mitral valve in dogs cause volume overload and subsequently heart failure. Experimental mitral regurgitation is produced in closed-chest dogs by disruption of chordae tendinae or valve leaflets. This results in left ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation within 12 weeks, followed by heart failure. Neurohumoral activation and activation of the tissue renin-angiotensin system is observed (Villarreal et al., 1987).

**Conclusions**

Herbs offer the promise of both prevention and cure for CVD. Many societies unquestioningly accept their safety and efficacy. While numerous investigators have scientifically studied the pharmacological activities of herbal medicinal plants, often most ‘therapeutic’ claims are based on rather far-fetched extrapolations. However, before they are globally accepted for use in the treatment of these diseases, there is an urgent need for a concerted effort to screen for their efficacy in a proper perspective and in the light of current knowledge of disease mechanisms using newer sophisticated methodologies. Further, there is also a need to subject them to a reasonable degree of safety studies and last, but not least, to ensure product standardisation.

In this chapter, several models that may be useful for the screening of potentially active herbal medicines in CVD have been briefly touched upon and the list is by no means complete. However, the primary purpose was to familiarise the reader with the issues involved in the screening of drugs of herbal origin and that each model is associated with it unique advantages and disadvantages. The trick is to have a very clear picture of what the goal of the screening is, i.e. what condition is the herb likely to cure and what the possible modes of action are, and then choose the model best suited to these objectives.

**References**


Yuan YY, Kitts DD (2002). Dietary fat source and cholesterol interactions alter plasma lipids and tissue susceptibility to oxidation in spontaneously hypertensive (SHR) and normotensive Wistar Kyoto (WKY) rats. Mol Cell Biochem 232: 33–47.


Introduction

Angiogenesis is the morphogenic process by which new blood vessels develop from a pre-existing vasculature. This process occurs during embryonic development and feeds the oxygen and nutrient requirements of growing tissues and organs (Battegay, 1995). Blood vessels are lined internally by vascular endothelial cells, of mesenchymal origin. These endothelial cells are tightly compacted as a monolayer and display a cobblestone-like appearance. The endothelial cells also fulfil a role in maintenance of blood–brain and blood–retinal barrier and restrict the passage of blood components to inner tissues. However, when the vasculature is inflamed or injured such as in an oedema, substances from the blood can leak out; and the ability of the endothelial cell to re-populate the damaged tissue and re-establish cell–cell contact is critical for vascular homeostasis. In adults, the vasculature is usually dormant, except in certain instances, such as, during ovulation and menstruation in the female, and upon injury when tissue repair is required.

The vascular endothelium is thus an important beacon of humoral homeostasis and continues to guide the clinical diagnosis of underlying stress and disease (Meyers and Gokce, 2007). In fact, the silent and debilitating disease diabetes is at times diagnosed during a visit to the ophthalmologist for poor vision, which results from diabetic retinal capillaries leaking and causing vision impairment (Ryan, 2007).

Pathological angiogenesis is an underlying disease process in tumour growth where it supports the expansion of the tumour mass in size and also acts as a means to aid tumour cells to metastasise to distal organs (Folkman, 1995; Carmeliet et al. 1996). In fact, it is known that tumour masses can only grow to sizes where oxygen can diffuse through tissue (approximately 200 μm), hence, without establishment of new blood vessels, tumour cells are limited in
their microscopic volume (Folkman, 1972b; Neeman et al., 1997; Evans and Koch, 2003). The revolutionary paradigm that blocking new blood vessel growth (angiogenesis) could be a therapeutic means to ‘starve’ a tumour and thus arrest tumour development was at first strongly opposed by the oncology research community, who believed that directly killing the tumour cells with potent cytotoxins was the most effective means to cure cancers (Folkman, 1971).

However, targeted strategies to cause interference with blood vessel formation have begun to open up antiangiogenesis as a new modality in therapeutic discovery (Figg et al., 2002; Ferrara and Kerbel, 2005). Today this idea has changed the treatment of cancers, with the clinical success of the neutralising antibody drug Avastin (bevacizumab), an anti-angiogenic agent which binds to vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), a critical survival and growth-stimulatory protein for new blood vessel growth (Ruegg and Mutter, 2007). Because it is believed that existing blood vessels are not affected by angiogenesis inhibitors, the quest to find new treatment options that do not possess the undesirable side-effects of currently used anticancer cytotoxic drugs has turned patient awareness to this new class of anticancer drugs. In this respect, researchers and clinicians have also begun looking seriously to the wealth of herbal medicines (Paper, 1998; Fan et al., 2006; Yance and Sagar, 2006), many of which tout efficacy without the side-effects of radiation and chemotherapy.

Although much of our knowledge about the basic mechanisms of angiogenesis and clinical practice in the field of antiangiogenesis has come about from work done in the oncology field, it should be pointed out that there is a wide range of non-oncological diseases of no less importance as burdens to society that are angiogenic-dependent (Folkman, 1972a, 1995; Healy et al., 1998). Furthermore, the list of angiogenic diseases awakens us to how critical blood vessel homeostasis is to organ functions, and it is also important to note that the promotion of angiogenesis is necessary in other clinical conditions that result from a lack of adequate vascularisation, such as ischaemic heart disease and diabetic ulcers (Shireman, 2007; Velazquez, 2007).

From ground-breaking work done by Folkman, a whole range of diseases can now be classified as having excessive angiogenesis or insufficient vascularisation (Table 13.1). He raised the hypothesis that tumour angiogenesis results when the net levels of stimulators of new blood vessel growth exceed that of inhibitors and devoted his laboratory in Boston, USA, to identifying the body’s endogenous activators (and inhibitors) of tumour angiogenesis (Folkman et al., 1971). Thirty-five years later, there are over 20 such protein effectors, which have been identified and shown to possess angiomodulatory activity (Carmeliet and Jain, 2000). By demonstrating validation in a wide range of cell culture, organ and animal models of angiogenesis (Norrby, 2006; Ucuzian and Greisler, 2007), it is possible to provide therapeutic doses of angio-inhibitory molecules to block angiogenesis, and contrarily, pro-angiogenic molecules to stimulate new blood vessel growth. The ability to discover new angiomodulatory agents and assess their effectiveness in controlling angiogenesis was enabled by the development of a number of in-vitro and in-vivo angiogenesis assays (Table 13.2) (Auerbach et al., 2003).

### Tests to examine effects of plant extracts on angiogenesis

#### Growth of blood vessels within a matrix

In-vitro vessel formation is assessed by measuring the total length of new blood vessels formed in a matrix over a period of time. Typically, endothelial cells are cultured within a matrix of fibroblasts in the absence or presence of the test compound. The matrix is supplied with fresh medium every third day and, after 11 days, the cells are washed and fixed. A staining reagent is applied to show the blood vessels formed from the endothelial cells and then quantified using a scanner attached to a computer which is able to process the images captured (Newman et al., 2004).

#### Use of genetically modified zebra fish

The embryos of the zebra fish (*Danio rerio*) have been used extensively in recent studies for several
types of biological activity. Transgenic lines are used which express the green fluorescent protein GCFP to visualise vasculogenesis in the tail region. The extent of vascularisation can be quantified by computer-aided image analysis and is taken as a model of angiogenesis (Friedrich et al., 2004).

Three-dimensional endothelial cell sprouting assay

Sprouting of endothelial cells is an early event in angiogenesis, which follows vasodilation and degradation of matrix (Kurz, 2000) and it represents a valuable target for therapies because it takes place so early in the angiogenic process. The degradation of matrix is accomplished by the family of matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) (Caserman and Lah, 2004). The mechanisms by which sprouts progress to form a lumen and ultimately become competent to support blood flow are largely unknown. Therefore, the study of the early steps of vessel sprouting can point to new therapeutic directions once key targets in these pathways have been identified.

The most promising in-vitro assays for elucidating relevant molecules and pathways necessary for endothelial cell morphogenesis are those using three-dimensional extracellular matrices, because endothelial cells experience a richer, more complex physical environment than cells cultured on two-dimensional surfaces (Ucuzian and Greisler, 2007). The collagen I and fibrin matrices represent the major matrix environments where angiogenic events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organ</th>
<th>Disease manifestation</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blood vessels</td>
<td>Vascular malformations caused by abnormal remodelling, haemangioma and atherosclerosis from increased vascularisation</td>
<td>Localised lesions due to vascular malformation; congestive heart failure resulting from atherosclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eye</td>
<td>Diabetic retinopathy and wet age-related macular degeneration from increased vascularisation</td>
<td>Blindness due to leaky vessels in diabetic retina; blindness from proliferating choroidal blood vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin</td>
<td>Psoriasis from increased vascularisation that becomes tortuous and enlarged; decubitus (stasis) ulcers from insufficient vascularisation; Kaposi’s sarcoma, allergic oedema, and neoplasms from increased vascularisation</td>
<td>Psoriasis appears as scaly, raised red lesions as a common form of this disease; stasis ulcers are open surface wounds that fail to heal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone and joints</td>
<td>Increased vascularisation of synovial joints in arthritis and of bone tissue in cancers</td>
<td>Inflammation of synovium in rheumatoid arthritis leads to joint destruction; destruction of cartilage in osteoarthritis causes pain and impaired mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart, skeletal muscle</td>
<td>Increased vascularisation of heart due to work overload; ischaemic heart and limb disease from insufficient vascularisation</td>
<td>Contractile dysfunction of heart tissue leads to heart failure; coronary heart disease manifests as a result of occlusion of blood vessels and poor oxygen supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adipose tissue</td>
<td>Increased vascularisation of fat tissue</td>
<td>Fat cells accumulate around new blood vessels causing obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterus, ovary</td>
<td>Increased vascularisation of uterine tissue, endometrium, ovary</td>
<td>Uterine tissue becomes dysfunctional from excessive bleeding; endometriosis can cause ectopic pregnancy, miscarriage and also infertility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain</td>
<td>Increased vascularisation in brain tumours; insufficient vascularisation of brain can lead to strokes</td>
<td>Gliomas and glioblastomas are incurable diseases of brain; stroke can incapacitate the cognitive and functional aspects of the brain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 13.1 Angiogenesis in human diseases

Adapted from Carmeliet and Jain, 2000.
take place (Ryan and Barnhill, 1983). For example, during endothelial sprouting there is the induced expression of endogenous growth factors, transcription factors and signalling molecules, endothelial cell differentiation markers and adhesion molecules and a marked down-regulation of positive regulators of the cell cycle and ubiquitin-proteasome genes (Bell et al., 2001). In stark comparison, the angiogenesis-screening assay using the basement-membrane matrix Matrigel, which measures the ability of endothelial cells to form a meshwork of cords on a tumour cell-derived matrix is markedly independent of transcriptional events (Zimrin et al., 1995), and protein synthesis (Laterra and Goldstein, 1991). These and other drawbacks with the Matrigel gel assay (Vernon et al., 1992) limit its scope for screening purposes. In the endothelial cell sprouting assay (3D-ECSA) (Korff and Augustin, 1998), endothelial cells are induced over a period of 24 h to form spheroids by aggregating. The spheroids are next seeded in suspension in a collagen I matrix by gelling at 37°C. Exogenous growth factors, such as VEGF, when added to the three-dimensional culture, stimulate the growth of vessel-like structures that grow out from the spheroid. Extracts and drugs being tested for angiogenesis inhibition are added along with VEGF. The sprouting extent and its inhibition are observed after a period of 18–24 h, which allows one to readily identify agents that block vessel development. The assay has been used by our laboratory to identify several classes of angiogenesis inhibitors, one of which is withaferin A from the medicinal plant *Withania somnifera* (Mohan et al., 2004).

### Table 13.2 In vitro and in vivo angiogenesis assays

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assay</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cell proliferation</td>
<td>Inhibition of cell doubling opposing stimulatory effect of a defined angiogenic factor</td>
<td>Cytostatic activity blocks cell proliferation without causing cell death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell migration</td>
<td>Inhibition of cell migration opposing stimulatory effect of a defined angiogenic factor such as VEGF or bFGF</td>
<td>The extension of endothelial cell processes allows cells to migrate over a substratum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invasion</td>
<td>Inhibition of cell invasion opposing stimulatory effect of a defined angiogenic factor</td>
<td>The growth of endothelial cells through a porous membrane or matrix in response to a chemotactic factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprouting</td>
<td>Inhibition of migration, invasion and tube formation in a 3D matrix of collagen I or fibrin opposing stimulatory effect of a defined angiogenic factor</td>
<td>An integrated assay which couples vascular invasion, tube formation and maturation in 3D matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matrigel cord assay</td>
<td>Inhibition of cord assembly by endothelial cells on complex matrix derived from tumour stroma opposing stimulatory effect of a defined angiogenic factor</td>
<td>Endothelial cells assemble into cords over the matrix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAM in vivo</td>
<td>Inhibition of blood vessel growth in the CAM of a fertilised developing chicken egg</td>
<td>The developing vasculature of the CAM is highly sensitive inhibitors of angiogenesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corneal angiogenesis in vivo</td>
<td>Inhibition of de novo capillary growth in cornea opposing stimulatory effect of a defined angiogenic factor</td>
<td>Blood vessels from surrounding scleral vessel supply invade the avascular cornea in response to slow-release growth factor implanted in cornea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matrigel in vivo</td>
<td>Inhibition of blood vessel growth into a Matrigel plug implanted in abdominal region of mouse</td>
<td>Blood vessels invade the Matrigel plug in response to stimulus from growth factor impregnated plug</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CAM = chorioallantoic membrane.
The angiogenic balance: a paradigm for herbal medicine

Several traditional medicine systems, such as those used in China and India (Ayurveda, Siddha and Unani) explain disease as the imbalances in the body’s humoral and local effectors of normal physiology. In contrast, Western medicine identifies targets and designs therapeutic agents to affect particular diseased proteins/factors. Traditional or ethnomedicines lay emphasis on multiple modalities, focusing, on the one hand, on reducing the disease burden with the use of complex mixtures of principal active agents, while, on the other hand, also laying equal emphasis on reducing the undesired effects of these principal active agents with secondary substances to alleviate drug-induced toxicities (Pal, 1997; Garodia et al., 2007). Considering this complex paradigm, two important aspects regarding herbal products need to be considered. One is focused on understanding the molecular factors that contribute to the pathobiology of disease and the other to the toxicology of drug activity. Using modern tools of analytical chemistry, biochemistry and molecular biology, molecular descriptors (genomics, proteomics, metabolomics), the activity of plant extracts and their principal active components on cellular and animal models can be understood mechanistically and are providing a wealth of information that serve hypotheses on which targets are tractable and how best to affect their functions to reverse disease (Wen and Han, 2004; Ventura, 2005; Wang et al., 2005; Ma et al., 2006; Ulrich-Merzenich et al., 2007).

Herbal products with angiogenesis-inhibitory activity

Angiogenesis modulators are present in a wide range of plant products, some of which are also consumed on a daily basis through diets in certain ethnic populations. In addition, herbal products derived from specific medicinal plants known for their curative properties on chronic angiogenesis-dependent conditions are also gaining recognition for their principal active agents.

Curcuma longa (turmeric)

The staple in India’s armoury of wound-healing plants is the common spice plant C. longa, used for injuries, burns, and as an all-purpose, topical anti-inflammatory (Singh, 2007). The principal active substance is curcumin. The use of curcumin as an inhibitor of angiogenesis has only recently been appreciated, despite great interest in this natural product for cancer chemoprevention (Singh and Khar, 2006). We showed that local delivery of curcuminoid pellets (2 mg), implanted in the cornea of rabbits, blocked angiogenesis induced by fibroblast growth factor 2, and even oral delivery of curcuminoids to mice blocked angiogenesis induced by the same growth factor in the mouse corneal model of neovascularisation (Mohan et al., 2000).

The anti-angiogenic activity of this class of inhibitor was demonstrated as acting through the targeting of gene expression of MMP-9, a critical proteolytic enzyme that cleaves gelatinous substrates of the vascular basement membrane. This gene expression blockade of MMP-9 was found to occur through the inhibition of AP-1 and NF-κB transcription factors, two critically important activators of proliferative and inflammatory cytokine genes (Mohan et al., 2000; Bhandarkar and Arbiser, 2007). The use of turmeric in promoting growth of blood vessels to heal wounds has also been remarkable. Contrary to the anti-angiogenic activity of curcumin, its wound-healing properties are mediated through promotion of angiogenesis (Maheshwari et al., 2006; Thangapazham et al., 2007).

The mechanism of this natural product is believed to be dependent on disease contexts. For instance, it was shown that one of curcumin’s targets is the kinase that is responsible for activating the multi-purpose signalling complex, the COP9 signalosome (Henke et al., 1999). This complex lies at the interface of a number of divergent stress signalling cascades, acting as a central modulator of stress response. The COP9 signalosome activates the expression of VEGF in tumour cells providing the cells with survival advantage by stimulating blood vessels. In this manner, curcumin’s anti-angiogenic activity causes the inhibition of VEGF expression. On the other hand, cyclo-oxygenase (COX)-2 is also shown to associate with COP9 signalosome, where
this enzyme is targeted for proteosomal degradation (Neuss et al., 2007).

Yet another interesting finding is that curcumin regulates the expression of the Id proteins through their association with the COP9 signalosome (Berse et al., 2004). Thus, complex, broad and effective activities of curcumin (Thangapazham et al., 2006) fall into a category of compounds that would best be described as ‘homeostatins’, which would be agents that act on stressors of dis-homeostasis but do not perturb cellular balances under homeostasis. The non-pungent flavour of turmeric has also made this spice broadly appealing for oral ingestion, albeit the compound is not readily bioavailable to target organs at doses that would be necessary for severe conditions. A Phase I study of oral daily dose of 8 g curcumin consumed for 4 months showed no toxic effects, other than nausea and diarrhoea, but higher doses were not acceptable to patients because of the bulk substance (Hsu and Cheng, 2007). Since a daily oral dose of 3.6 g of curcumin in the clinical setting is found to be detectable in colorectal tissues, the proposed protective effect of curcumin is largely limited to organs which are exposed to the drug. Thus, the rather poor pharmacokinetic and dynamic characteristics resulting possibly from sulphation and glucuronidation of curcumin has precluded this otherwise highly effective agent to be developed for other cancers. However, novel advances in nanoparticle formulation have succeeded in making this natural product more bioavailable (Singh, 2007). It remains to be seen whether the clinical benefits of such formulations of curcumin will advance to angiogenic-dependent disease which could benefit from the therapeutic action of this homeostatin.

**Panax ginseng** (ginseng)

The roots of *P. ginseng* are highly revered in the Far East for their medical properties (Gillis, 1997). The main active principles that target blood vessels are the ginsenosides. Unlike turmeric, whose dual actions of angiomodulatory activity can be shown to result from a single compound (curcumin), the activity of ginseng is attributed to different subclasses of ginsenosides such as Rb1 and Rg1 (Yue et al., 2007). At doses of 1 nmol/L to 1 μmol/l, 20(R)-Rg3 showed dose-dependent inhibition of endothelial cell proliferation and inhibition of VEGF-induced chemoinvasion and tube formation. Additionally, in the Matrigel plug assay in mice, 600 nmol/L of Rg3 reduced blood vessel growth by fivefold compared with controls (Yue et al., 2006). Rg3 also reduces the expression of MMP-2 and MMP-9, metalloproteinases that are involved in tube formation and invasion. Like Rg3, the ginsenoside Rb1 also demonstrates anti-angiogenic activity.

Notwithstanding the important anti-angiogenic activities of ginseng, it is shown that when Rb1 is combined with Rg1, in differing amounts these mixed ginsenosides can either induce or restrict blood vessel growth based on their compositional ratios (Sengupta et al., 2004). This is because the panaxatriols represented by Rg1 and Rb1 have proangiogenic activity. The proangiogenic mechanism of Rg1, which induces endothelial cell proliferation, is related to stimulation genes involved in cytoskeletal dynamics, cell–cell adhesion and migration (Yue et al., 2005). It would appear that the cognitive supportive activity of ginseng derives from promotion of angiogenesis, or at least the stabilisation of blood vessels that are diseased in ageing brains of humans, while that of its use in the treatment of cancer would result from the anti-angiogenic activity of Rb1 or Rg1. Panax ginseng, which is rich in Rb1, is reported to exert preventative activity in diverse cancer models, whereas Sanqi ginseng, which is rich in Rg1 ginsenoside, has been employed in treatment of trauma injuries that require the promotion of capillary growth (Sengupta et al., 2004; Yue et al., 2007). Given these very interesting findings on the mechanism of ginseng varieties, it is imperative that the individual bioactive agents and their abundance be characterised in formulation of ginseng extracts.

**Withania somniferia** (ashwagandha)

This herb plant has invigorating and tonic uses in Ayurvedic medicine (Mishra et al., 2000; Upton, 2000). Some of the popular uses of the roots of this plant are for the treatment of arthritic conditions and for bleeding disorders that result from menstrual dysfunction (Begum and Sadique, 1988). Hypothesising that an underlying angiogenic mechanism is
targeted by the extracts of *W. somnifera*, we investigated the extracts of this plant for the presence of angiogenesis inhibitors by exploiting the 3D-ECSA (Mohan *et al*., 2004). The combination of bioactivity testing in the 3D-ECSA along with assessment in the Matrigel model of angiogenesis revealed that the angiogenic inhibitory activity present in the methanolic extracts was enriched about fivefold upon further fractionation into chloroform-soluble substances. In assessing the molecular mechanism targeted by the chloroform-enriched fraction, it was found that the DNA binding activity of transcription factor NF-κB was specifically and potently inhibited by the chloroform extract (IC$_{50}$ 10 μg/mL) (Mohan *et al*., 2004). Further fractionation of the chloroform extract using HPLC afforded isolation of discrete peaks, which were individually tested for inhibitory activity in the 3D-ECSA. We characterised two of these compounds as withaferin A (Mohan *et al*., 2004) and withanolide D (Bargagna-Mohan *et al*., 2005). The anti-angiogenic activity of withaferin A and withanolide D result from potent targeting of NF-κB activity (IC$_{50}$ = 0.5 μM) via a mechanism linked to upstream interference with the critical protein quality control complex, the ubiquitin proteasome pathway (UPP), a therapeutic target for a range of angi-inflammatory diseases (Mitsiades *et al*., 2005).

The UPP is a cytoplasmic proteolytic complex that regulates protein expression during signal transduction by causing the destruction of critical factors, which are involved in the cell cycle, apoptosis, differentiation and inflammatory response (Crews, 2003). Withaferin A exerts its cytostatic effect on endothelial cells at substantially lower doses, causing blockade of the cell cycle (IC$_{50}$ 12 nmol/L) via UPP-dependent down-regulation of the critical cell cycle regulator, cyclin D1 (Mohan *et al*., 2004) (Figure 13.1). Based on these findings, it could be further

![Figure 13.1](image_url) The dose-related ubiquitin proteasome pathway (UPP)-targeting activities of withaferin A. In human umbilical vein endothelial cells, the IC$_{50}$ for inhibition of proliferation and sprouting (differentiation and NF-κB) is 12 nmol/L and 500 nmol/L, respectively (Mohan *et al*., 2004). At concentrations above 2 μmol/L, withaferin A induces apoptosis. The corresponding doses in mg/kg of withaferin A shown below the arrow are our estimates for use in mice based on our investigations (Mohan *et al*., 2004; Bargagna-Mohan *et al*., 2007).
demonstrated that the in-vivo inhibition of angiogenesis by withaferin A was also significantly lower in the basic-fibroblast growth factor stimulated Matrigel plug model, being highly effective between 7 and 200 μg/kg/day (Mohan et al., 2004). On the other hand, assessment of withaferin A in the corneal inflammatory model of neovascularisation revealed that doses between 500 μg/kg/day and 2 mg/kg/day reduced corneal angiogenesis by 50 and 80%, respectively (Mohan, unpublished data). In testing other genetic backgrounds of mice (129 SVEV) compared with previously used C57BL6 lines in the corneal inflammatory model of neovascularisation, we found that withaferin A at 2 mg/kg/day was highly effective, resulting in inhibition of 73% (Bargagna-Mohan et al., 2007). Taken together, our strategy for isolation and investigation of anti-angiogenic natural products from medicinal plants has proven to be successful with discovery of withaferin A’s angiogenesis inhibitory activity (Mohan et al., 2004; Bargagna-Mohan et al., 2005; Bargagna-Mohan et al., 2007).

Perturbation of the UPP is responsible for various diseases states. For example, tumour cells possess a highly active proteasome which results in over stimulation of cell proliferation. In addition, proteasome inhibition also results in blockade of angiogenesis by causing apoptosis of vascular endothelial cells and inhibition of VEGF expression (Hamner et al., 2007). Intriguingly, unlike proteasome inhibitors which directly target the enzymatic site of the 20S proteosome, withaferin A interferes with the UPP by an indirect mechanism. This UPP-targeting mechanism was recently shown to be due to binding by withaferin A to the type III intermediate filament protein vimentin (Bargagna-Mohan et al., 2007). The anti-angiogenic response to 2 mg/kg/day withaferin A treatment in the corneal inflammatory model of neovascularisation is found to be 3-fold-lower in vimentin-deficient mice than corresponding wild-type mice (Bargagna-Mohan et al., 2007).

The multiple dose-related activities of withaferin A, and structurally related withanolides that possess anti-angiogenic activity, can be distinguished (see Figure 13.1). At low nanomolar concentrations withaferin A’s anti-angiogenic activity is related to cyto-static blockade of the cell cycle in G1 phase (Mohan et al., 2004), whereas at sub-to-low micromolar concentrations, withaferin A targets cell differentiation associated with tubule formation and inflammatory activation of NF-κB (Mohan et al., 2004). At doses higher than 2 micromolar, withaferin A induces apoptosis via a mechanism linked to cleavage of vimentin and F-actin aggregation (Bargagna-Mohan et al., 2007). Given such differences in the mechanisms of withaferin A with respect to its dose, one has to be careful in how extracts from this plant are prepared and of the exact amounts and proportions of the bioactive withanolides present. Studies have shown that extracts obtained from different cultivars of W. somnifera (Negi et al., 2000), or from different geographical locations (Sangwan et al., 2007) have a wide range in amounts of withanolides. Thus it is imperative not only that there be standardising criteria to provide exact concentrations of the major chemical substances present in withania extracts but that these extracts also be biologically tested for efficacy for their intended use. Due to the heavy demand for W. somnifera, scientific attempts to produce these desirable compounds under defined laboratory conditions are being attempted (Sangwan et al., 2007). It may soon be possible to then use such techniques to produce metabolites under highly controlled environments. In addition, the application of genetic engineering approaches to modify biosynthetic pathways in plants and plant cells so that desired metabolites are preferentially generated is another modern technology now being used to solve some of the issues of seasonal influences on natural product biosynthesis (Bandyopadhyay et al., 2007).

**Hypericum perforatum (St John’s wort)**

The widely used herb for depression, St John’s wort, is also the source of anti-angiogenic agents, hypericin and hyperforin. Attention to the angiogenesis-inhibitory activity of hyperforin has attracted attention not only to the broader uses of this plant in human diseases, but also to the potential side-effects (Mandavilli, 2003), especially so in patients who may have other vascular complications where an anti-angiogenic agent would have contradiction. The mode of action of hyperforin is due to inhibition of MMP-9 expression (Quiney et al., 2006), an enzyme that is responsible for basement membrane degradation during blood vessel growth. In addition, hyperforin inhibits microtubules which prevent endothelial
cells from forming capillary tubes (Quiney et al., 2006). Also, in other models hyperforin was shown to target component(s) within G-protein signalling cascades that regulate Ca\(^ {2+} \) homeostasis, and inhibit neutrophil invasion and block inflammatory activation, suggesting that the target of this natural product is present on both vascular and inflammatory components that act in synergy during many angiogenic diseases. Interestingly, a dose of Hypericum extract 900 mg/day used as an antidepressant (which supplies 0.4 μmol/L of hyperforin) was shown to down-regulate production of the angiogenic cytokine interferon-gamma in activated T-cells with concomitant inhibition of MMP-9 expression (Cabrelle et al., 2008). On the other hand, hypericin is also a potent angiogenesis inhibitor that targets activity of a related proteinase, MT1-MMP and is also responsible for inhibiting signalling events that trigger MAP kinase (Lavie et al., 2005). Hypericin administered at 2 mg/kg intraperitoneally, blocks activating phosphorylation of ERK1/2, which is required for the transactivation of hypoxia-inducible factor 1 alpha (HIF-1α) and in VEGF-induced blood vessel growth in models employing photodynamic therapy (Yee et al., 2005; Bhuvaneswari et al., 2007). Additionally, hypericin 3–50 μmol/L inhibits the activity of the proteasome complex in a dose-dependent manner (Pajonk et al., 2005). This upstream activity is shown to block activation of transcription factor NF-κB at doses of between 6 and 50 μmol/L. It is noteworthy to point out some of the adverse effects of this plant, which include sensitivity to sunlight and drug interactions with selective serotonin reuptake and protease inhibitors, as well as intermenstrual bleeding or altered menstrual bleeding in users of oral contraceptives (De Smet, 2002), which may result from inherent proteasome inhibitory activity of hypericin-containing extracts of St John’s wort.

**Camellia sinensis (green tea)**

Epidemiological evidence has raised the interest in green tea consumption for prevention of cancers and cardiovascular diseases, and invigorated scientific research to identify the biologically active substances of tea extracts (Yance and Sagar, 2006). One of the major ingredients of green tea, (−)-epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG), a flavonoid, was shown to inhibit angiogenesis and have chemopreventive activity (Garbisa et al., 2001; Cao et al., 2002). Using data derived from rodent studies (Fassina et al., 2004), a Phase 1 study of green tea extract was performed. Cohorts of adults with cancer were administered oral GTE with water with doses provided one or three times daily for 4 weeks (Pisters et al., 2001). The maximum-tolerated dose was 4.2 g/m\(^2\) once daily or 1.0 g/m\(^2\) three times daily. Thus, a dose for anti-angiogenic activity in humans was calculated to be 1 g/m\(^2\) three times per day (equivalent to 120 mL or 7–8 Japanese cups) for human consumption (Sagar et al., 2006a). As much as 200–500 mg of green tea consisting of 50% (−)EGCG is believed to be the pharmacological dose for angiogenesis prevention (Sagar et al., 2006b). Dose-limiting adverse effects of (−)EGCG are gastrointestinal and neurological, for which the coadministered presence of caffeine in green tea extracts is thought to be responsible for these side-effects (Pisters et al., 2001). (−)EGCG has also been shown to inhibit COX-2 activity (Surh et al., 2001), an enzyme that is well known to be a target for anti-angiogenesis. The angiopreventive activity of (−)EGCG is also believed to result from inhibition of MMP-2 and MMP-9 activities (Tosetti et al., 2002). Furthermore, unlike other bioactive flavonoids that show inhibition of NF-κB activation, (−)EGCG is found to inhibit the DNA binding activity of inflammatory cytokine interleukin-1α-induced NF-κB, whereas flavonoids such as genistein do not produce this effect (Muraoka et al., 2002). It is likely that angio-inflammatory pathways that up-regulate IL-1β may be targets of this class of natural product, differentiating EGCG products from other flavonoids. Thus, this class of flavonoid may be more suitable for use in inflammatory angiogenic diseases.

**Vitis vinifera (red grapes)**

Red wine consumption is believed to be protective of the cardiovascular system (Brouillard et al., 1997), as evidenced in the prevention of the progression of atherosclerosis even in people who consume high amounts of red meat and cholesterol-containing foods (Zern and Fernandez, 2005). This was thought to be due to the major cardioprotective polyphenolic compounds found in skins and seeds of red grapes. One of these red wine polyphenolic compounds
(RWPC), is the natural product resveratrol. The anti-angiogenic mechanisms of resveratrol are known to be complex; since it inhibits proliferation of endothelial cells at 25 μmol/L, with inhibitory effects on cell migration and vessel tube formation occurring at 25 to 50 μmol/L (Hu et al., 2007).

Interestingly, the inhibitory activity of resveratrol on metalloproteinases MMP-9 was observed at 6.25 μmol/L, whereas on MMP-2 activity was at 25 μmol/L. Resveratrol inhibits VEGF-induced angiogenesis by interfering with reactive oxygen species-dependent Src kinase activation, and down-regulates the expression of angiogenic cytokines, including interleukin-8 and VEGF (Lin et al., 2003). It is interesting that RWPCs also show dose-dependent opposite effects on angiogenesis. In rats, 0.2 mg/kg/day of RWPCs caused a pro-angiogenic effect while higher daily doses of 2 mg/kg of RWPC (equivalents found in seven glasses of red wine) showed anti-angiogenic activity in the post-ischaemic model of hind limb neovascularisation (Baron-Menguy et al., 2007). It was found that the low-dose (1/10 glass) angiogenic effect occurs through overexpression of PI3 kinase-AKT-NOS pathway leading to increased VEGF production without affecting MMP production. Intriguingly, in the non-ischaemic leg, neither the low nor high dose of RWPC affected angiogenesis or blood flow (Baron-Menguy et al., 2007). Thus, it appears that a prior disease condition needs to manifest, to observe these pharmacological effects of RWPC. Since normal tissues did not appear to be responsive to either high or low dose effects of RWPCs, it cannot be inferred that these extracts are safe. For instance, others have shown that RWPCs at high doses can induce hypotension, decreased cardiac reactivity in rats (Ralay Ranaivo et al., 2004). Interest in pharmacological activity of RWPCs has led to isolation of other principal active agents. Delphinidin, an abundant anthocyanin from RWPCs at high dose has been shown to inhibit vascularisation and blood flow at 0.6 m/kg per day, suggesting that the anti-angiogenic activity of RWPCs is derived, in part, from delphinidin (Baron-Menguy et al., 2007).

**Conclusions**

The field of antiangiogenesis has greatly benefitted from discoveries of targets for therapeutic development from which angiogenesis-inhibitory drugs such as Avastin have emerged for treatment of colon cancer (Rugo, 2004). However, the literature is also beginning to see the emergence of undesirable side-effects of angiogenesis inhibitors. While it was once believed that adult tissues do not remodel their vasculature, it is now known that the microvasculature of the trachea and digestive system is not in a state of quiescence. Indeed, in mice, Avastin has been observed to cause normal mucosal capillaries in the trachea to regress. However, this drug-induced side-effect is ameliorated by cessation of Avastin treatment, indicative of the plasticity of the microvasculature to drug effects, and that developing safer treatments should involve careful examination of these preclinical and clinical results. As witnessed with natural product drugs emerging from traditional medicines (Corson and Crews, 2007), the guide to finding and developing highly effective and safe treatments for angiogenic diseases will need to integrate traditional knowledge with modern analytical methods of assessment and molecular pathobiology.

As the population ages, we are beginning to see many more diseases that result from vessel diseases which could benefit from angiomodulation. In these cases, one has to also remember that the physical constitution of older patients to drug activity is poorer because of weaker metabolism, reduced blood flow and general cellular ageing processes. More and more, the older patient groups will move towards more palatable medicines as older people are increasingly becoming dependent on multiple medications to support their different chronic conditions. In this context, it is critical to know contradictions to anti-angiogenesis drugs. Other clinical adverse effects of anti-angiogenic drugs include gastrointestinal perforations of the bowels, arterial blood clots, and hypertension (Yang et al., 2003). The clinical manifestation of drug resistance to anti-angiogenic agents draws attention to yet another facet of cumulative toxic effects (Yu et al., 2002). That is, while the endothelial cell which is genetically stable does not become resistant to drug action, the genetic alterations that decrease the vascular dependence of tumour cells can influence the therapeutic response of tumours to angiogenesis inhibitors.

Herbal products that strive to restore the angiogenic balance must demonstrate standardisation in
material quality, biological/pharmacological efficacy, and safety principles because many of the active principles have opposite effects on blood vessel growth when their concentrations or compositions are altered.

References


Herbal medicines have been utilised for their psychoactive and psychotropic properties throughout recorded history. However, in comparatively recent times we have become accustomed to the generally accepted notion that synthetic medicines will be more efficacious than natural products, although this view tends to overlook the fact that many medicinal products derived from nature. However, psychotropic agents comprised only 3 out of 84 new drugs of natural origin (Newman and Cragg, 2007).

One of these three is galantamine, originally derived from the Caucasian snowdrop (\textit{Galanthus woronowii} Losinsk.) and now synthesised. Galantamine is interesting in that, having been initially identified on the basis of traditional ethnic use, it both validates the principles of an ethnopharmacological route to drug discovery (Heinrich and Teoh, 2004), and it also underlines the difficulty in translating most herbal medicines into ‘mainstream’ medicines.

The reason for the latter is that although galantamine represents a potential improvement over the other cholinesterase-inhibiting treatments for Alzheimer’s disease, in that it has demonstrated efficacy and is both a competitive inhibitor of acetylcholinesterase and allosteric modulator at nicotinic cholinergic receptor sites (Loy and Schneider, 2006), it also represents a single, isolated alkaloid.

In contrast to this, although the mechanisms of action of most established herbal medicines in this domain are far from clear, they could all be described as having multiple potentially active constituents and manifold potential mechanisms of action. It is unlikely that any will provide us with the next ‘galantamine’. However, it is notable that a number of ‘single action’ synthetic psychotropic medications represent a poor cost–benefit profile in terms of efficacy and side-effects (e.g. the cholinesterase inhibitors for Alzheimer’s disease) and the complexity of the central nervous system (CNS) does suggest that the...
polypharmacology offered by, for instance, Ginkgo biloba, Salvia species, Hypericum perforatum (St John’s wort) or Melissa officinalis, may well provide more efficacious, better-tolerated, alternative treatments for disorders affecting the CNS.

The range of candidate herbal products with CNS effects is substantial. Zhang (2003) reviews the evidence pertaining to traditional medicinal herbal extracts that have undergone screening in animal models pertinent to psychiatric conditions and identifies more than 80 herbal extracts with evidence of potential efficacy. This contrasts with the current evidence base in humans, which is agglomerating around the handful of candidate extracts reviewed below.

The following therefore represents a brief summary of the putative bioactive components and mechanisms, and behavioural effects of the CNS active herbal products that have been subjected to significant research and/or demonstrated some potential efficacy in humans. For brevity it does not include combinations of herbs, or those that have not yet been tested in humans, nor does it include several herbal extracts that have a single, small, human study, and therefore resist any assessment as yet.

The herbal extracts are grouped into those that have predominantly been investigated for their effects on ‘mood’, ‘sleep’ and ‘cognitive performance’. This chapter deals more on the results shown by scientific testing than on methods used, which can be found in the original papers referenced in the chapter.

**Mood**

**Crocus sativus L. (saffron)**

The stigmas of Crocus sativus L. contain a number of potentially bioactive compounds including a number of carotenoids (crocins), monoterpenes and flavonoids, including quercetin and kaempferol (Tarantilis et al., 1995). Rodent behaviour models have demonstrated that C. sativus extracts can ameliorate scopolamine-induced memory performance (Pitsikas and Sakellaridis, 2006) and that crocins can enhance memory performance and attenuate scopolamine-induced memory deficits (Pitsikas et al., 2007).

In humans, four double-blind, controlled trials, each with relatively small samples of 40 patients with mild-to-moderate depression, have demonstrated that 6–8 weeks of administration of dried ethanol extracts of C. sativus stigmas (15 mg) and petals (30 mg) are more effective than placebo (Akhondzadeh et al., 2005; Moshiri et al., 2006) and as effective as fluoxetine (but with no placebo control) (Noorbala et al., 2005; Basti et al., 2007) in ameliorating the symptoms of depression, as assessed by the Hamilton Depression Rating Scale. While C. sativus has been included on the basis that these studies show some promise, the evidence base requires research conducted in larger cohorts.

**Hypericum perforatum L. (St John’s wort)**

Hypericum perforatum L. has been in recorded medicinal use from the time of the ancient Greeks (Di Carlo et al., 2001). Hypericum extracts contain a number of groups of potentially bioactive constituents including flavonoids, phenolic acids, naphthodianthrones and phloroglucinols (Tatsis et al., 2007).

The bioactive properties of St John’s wort include inhibition of the neuronal re-uptake of serotonin, dopamine, noradrenaline, γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) and L-glutamate, and increased neurotransmitter sensitivity and receptor binding (Butterweck, 2003; Mennini and Gobbi, 2004). These effects have been variously attributed over time to the naphthodianthrones, e.g. hypericin, pseudohypericin, protohypericin and protopseudohypericin, (Meruelo et al., 1988), the phloroglucinol hyperforin (Zanoli, 2004) and the range of flavonoid constituents (Butterweck et al., 2000).

Given their ability to modulate a wide range of neurotransmitter systems, it is not surprising that extracts and constituents have been shown to exert a plethora of effects relevant to behaviour in animal models. These include neuroprotective effects, an attenuation of cognitive impairment and improved cognitive performance (Kumar, 2006).

In humans the vast majority of research has focused on the antidepressant effects of H. perforatum extracts. In this domain a number of reviews and meta-analyses summarising the evidence have been published in the past 8 or 9 years. The two most
recent reviews adequately encompass the considerable body of work in this area. In the first of these meta-analyses, Roder et al. (2004) assessed the evidence from randomised, controlled trials for the efficacy of standardised extracts (dosage: 300–1200 mg/day) in the treatment of mild-to-moderate depression. They concluded that these extracts had a significant effect on symptoms in comparison with placebo, and performed as well as synthetic antidepressants.

A subsequent Cochrane review by Linde et al. (2005) included a total of 37 trials judged to be methodologically adequate that had assessed St John’s wort in comparison with either placebo or standard antidepressants. In common with Roder et al. (2004), the authors conclude that the extracts seem to be more effective than placebo and as effective as standard antidepressants for treating mild-to-moderate depressive symptoms. However, beneficial effects for treating major depression appear minimal, although this latter conclusion may reflect a simple lack of research addressing this question. A subsequent review of reviews and meta-analyses (Pilkington et al., 2006) also confirmed the general consensus that St John’s wort is effective in the treatment of depression.

Given evidence of similar levels of efficacy as synthetic antidepressants, a further advantage of _H. perforatum_ extracts is that they are generally found to be better tolerated. However, they can affect the metabolism of several medications resulting in reduced plasma concentrations (Ernst, 2004).

**Melissa officinalis** L. (lemon balm)

_Melissa officinalis_ is a perennial, lemon-scented herb, used medicinally for over 2000 years, particularly for improved memory and mental function. Its contemporary usage includes as a mild sedative, in disturbed sleep, and in the attenuation of the symptoms of nervous disorders, including the reduction of excitability, anxiety, and stress (Kennedy and Scholey, 2006).

Potentially active constituents include a number of monoterpenoid aldehydes (including citronellal, nerol and geranial), flavonoids and polyphenolic compounds (most notably rosmarinic acid) (Carnat et al., 1998; Hohmann et al., 1999) and monoterpen glycosides (Mulkens et al., 1985).

Extracts have been shown to have both nicotinic and muscarinic cholinergic receptor-binding properties in human brain homogenates (Perry et al., 1996; Wake et al., 2000; Kennedy et al., 2003) and essential oils have appreciable acetylcholinesterase-inhibitory properties (Perry et al., 1996; Ferreira et al., 2006). Extracts also have antioxidant properties (Lamaison et al., 1991; Tagashira and Ohtake, 1998; Mantle et al., 2000; Ferreira et al., 2006) which are putatively attributable to their flavonoid content (Hohmann et al., 1999).

In behavioural terms, a number of studies involving rodents suggest specific ‘calming’ or sedative effects following both essential oil (Wagner and Sprinkmeyer, 1973) and an hydroalcoholic extract of _M. officinalis_ (Soulimani et al., 1991).

A series of randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, balanced-crossover trials have also assessed the cognitive and mood effects of single doses of _M. officinalis_ in humans. Two of these studies assessed the effects of a commercial lemon-balm methanolic, which lacked in-vitro nicotinic and muscarinic receptor-binding properties. In the first (Kennedy et al., 2002a), three separate, single doses of _M. officinalis_ extract (300 mg, 600 mg, and 900 mg) were compared with placebo, with 20 participants undergoing weekly assessments. The results demonstrated a dose-dependent impairment of memory function, with concomitant reductions in ratings of ‘alertness’ restricted to the highest dose and increased ‘calmness’ following the lowest dose.

In the second study (Kennedy et al., 2004a), the two lower doses (300 mg, 600 mg) were investigated using a multitasking laboratory stressor paradigm, with the highest dose again leading to reduced ratings of alertness and increased ratings of calmness during the stressor battery. The pattern of results from these two studies is broadly in line with the traditional mildly sedative and calming properties of these extracts.

To assess the effects of _M. officinalis_ with cholinergic receptor-binding properties, a further experiment (Kennedy et al., 2003a) was conducted in two distinct phases. In the first phase, cholinergic receptor-binding properties were established across a number of samples, with the dried leaf with the highest nicotinic and muscarinic receptor-binding properties being administered in a placebo-controlled, double-blind,
balanced crossover study assessing the cognitive performance and mood effects of several single doses (600, 1000, 1600 mg dried leaf). In this case, while the lowest of the three doses evinced similar memory decrements as those seen in the previous study, the highest dose both increased ‘calmness’ and improved memory performance. The results from these three studies suggest that lemon balm owes its mildly sedative properties to something other than cholinergic receptor binding.

Two recent double-blind, placebo-controlled studies have also assessed the effects of *M. officinalis* in patients with dementia. Ballard *et al.* (2003) examined the effect of essential oil aromatherapy (in comparison with vegetable oil) on ratings of agitation and quality of life of 71 patients with severe dementia. After 4 weeks’ treatment, patients in the active treatment group were rated, in comparison with the placebo group, as being less agitated, less socially withdrawn, and as engaging in more time spent in constructive activities. Akhondzadeh *et al.* (2003) also assessed the effects of 60 drops/day of a tincture in 35 patients with mild-to-moderate dementia (20 verum, 15 placebo) who completed their 16-week trial. At the study endpoint, the results showed a clear cognitive advantage (ADAS-cog and Clinical Dementia Rating) and reduced agitation for the group taking the tincture.

**Piper methysticum** L.f. (kava)

Drinks and extracts made from the rhizome and roots of kava have been used for millennia in the South Pacific both recreationally and medicinally to reduce fatigue and induce relaxation and sleep (Lebot, 1992).

The major bioactive constituents of kava are styryl α-pyrones generally referred to as kava-pyrones or, more commonly, kavalactones. Contemporary commercial Kava extracts are generally standardised to contain approximately 30–70% of kavalactones. It should be noted that leaves and stem contain potentially hepatotoxic alkaloids (Folmer *et al.*, 2006) but these are not generally considered to be responsible for the severe liver toxicity in a few individuals reported in recent years, which has led to severe curtailment of its use in many countries.

The exact mechanism underlying the central nervous system effects of kavalactones is poorly delineated to date. Kavalactones have been shown, at the most fundamental level, to modulate neuronal excitability via voltage-dependent calcium channels. They also modulate activity in the serotonergic, glutamatergic and dopaminergic neurotransmitter systems (Cairney *et al.*, 2002). In addition, kava’s anxiolytic properties have been attributed to interactions with N-methyl-D-aspartic acid (Bilia *et al.*, 2002) and GABA receptors (Davies *et al.*, 1992; Jussofie *et al.*, 1994), although the evidence regarding the latter is inconsistent (Garrett *et al.*, 2003). Modulation of β-adrenergic activity may also play a role in their behavioural effects (Singh and Singh, 2002).

With regards to kava’s anxiolytic effects, Pittler and Ernst’s (2003) Cochrane review meta-analysed the randomised, controlled trials extant at that time. Twelve studies met their inclusion criteria and they concluded that, in comparison with placebo, kava extracts (administered for between 1 day and 24 weeks and containing between 105 and 280 mg of kavalactones) were associated with a significant reduction in anxiety on the Hamilton Anxiety (HAM-A) scale. Witte *et al.* (2005) went on to meta-analyse the six studies included in the latter analysis that had administered the standardised acetonic extract WS1490, and again found a significant treatment-related anxiolytic effect in comparison with placebo. With regards to behaviour, Cairney *et al.* (2002) note that a number of small studies have assessed the cognitive effects of kava. However, because of the methodology employed in these studies, the question is largely unresolved.

The focus of recent research has shifted away from efficacy and firmly towards putative negative side-effects and potential drug interactions of kava, since the publication of several case reports of treatment-related liver failure. These reports led to the withdrawal of kava by many national authorities, although the strength of the evidence on which these decisions were based is contested by many (Schulz *et al.*, 2003). Similarly, it has been suggested that kava is capable of a host of theoretical drug interactions, for which hard evidence of specific cases is lacking (Ankea and Ramzan, 2004).
Sleep

Valeriana officinalis L. (valerian)

Extracts from the roots and rhizomes of Valeriana officinalis L. have a long, cross-cultural tradition of medicinal usage, mainly as mild sedatives and anxiolytics (Houghton, 1988), but they also demonstrate spasmolytic properties (Circosta et al., 2007). The effects of valerian may be attributable to a number of potentially active constituents, including monoterpenes and sesquiterpenes, including the genus-specific valepotriates and valerenic acid. Root extracts also contain appreciable levels of GABA (Houghton, 1999), constituents which bind to a variety of neurotransmitter receptors (Marder et al., 2003) including GABA_A (Wasowski et al., 2000), where they perform as an allosteric modulator of subunit specific GABA_A channels (Khom et al., 2007), adenosine A_1 receptors where they also exert a range of allosteric effects (Lacher et al., 2007), and act on the 5HT_1A (Bodesheim and Holzl, 1997) and the 5-HT_5A receptors (Dietz et al., 2005), which are implicated in circadian rhythms and anxiety.

Research in humans has tended to concentrate on the role of valerin in attenuating sleep disturbance. Stevinson and Ernst (2000) reviewed the 19 randomised, controlled trials that assessed its effects on sleep and insomnia, and concluded from the nine that reached their inclusion criteria, that the efficacy of valerian in this respect was ‘promising but not fully conclusive’.

Similarly, a systematic review of randomised, controlled trials of valerian (Bent et al., 2006) for improving sleep quality included 16 eligible studies. However, it was noted that the majority of studies had some methodological problems. Allowing for the possibility of a publication bias, the authors concluded that the evidence to date only ‘suggested’ that valerian improved sleep quality.

Valerian has also been reported to have a similar effect to benzodiazepines, with similar positive effects from 6 weeks’ administration of 600 mg/day of valerian extract to those produced by 10 mg/day of oxazepam on sleep quality and waking symptoms in 202 non-organic insomnia outpatients (Ziegler et al., 2002). Additionally a number of studies have reported a benefit to sleep following a valerian/hops combination (e.g. Schmitz and Jackel, 1998; Fussel et al., 2000).

It is also interesting to note that, whereas no effect of valerian on psychomotor performance, alertness or concentration has been reported the morning after administration (Gerhard et al., 1996; Kuhlmann et al., 1999), acute doses of valerian led to a significant deterioration in performance in vigilance and information-processing tasks 1–2 h after acute daytime administration (Gerhard et al., 1996). Valerian is also often indicated for anxiety, but a recent Cochrane review (Miyasaka et al., 2006) concluded that there was insufficient evidence of efficacy in this since only one pilot study (Andreatini et al., 2002) was found to be eligible for inclusion according to their criteria. Taibi et al. (2007) interpret the literature as failing to show any convincing pattern of behavioural effects but V. officinalis extracts are associated with markedly less negative side-effects than benzodiazepines, with levels similar to placebo across clinical trials.

Cognitive performance

Bacopa monniera Wettst. (water hyssop)

Bacopa monniera has been used in Ayurvedic medicine for some 3000 years. Its traditional and contemporary indications include anxiety and cognitive performance and the active constituents are thought to be triterpenoid saponins, of which the most prevalent are known as bacoside A and B (Russo and Borelli, 2005).

Potential CNS-relevant mechanisms include an enhancement of protein kinase activity in the hippocampus (Singh and Dhawan, 1997), interactions with the cholinergic (Bhattacharya et al., 1999; Das et al., 2002) and monoaminergic (Singh and Dhawan, 1997; Sheikh et al., 2007) neurotransmitter systems, and antioxidant properties (Bhattacharya et al., 2000; Anbarasi et al., 2006).

B. monniera extracts have been shown in animal models to protect cognitive function in the face of a number of challenges (Bhattacharya et al., 1999; Das et al., 2002) and exert anxiolytic effects in stress paradigms (Bhattacharya et al., 2000; Shanker and Singh, 2000).
In humans the behavioural effects have received little methodical attention. However, several double-blind, placebo-controlled studies have assessed the cognitive and mood effects of B. monniera extracts. In the first of these Stough et al. (2001a) investigated the effects of 5 and 12 weeks’ administration of 300 mg of a standardised (55% bacosides) extract in 46 healthy adult participants. By the 12-week endpoint, self-ratings of ‘anxiety state’, and cognitive tasks assessing speed of early information processing, verbal learning rate and memory consolidation were beneficially modulated in the group taking extract.

A second study using the same extract (Roodenrys et al., 2002), involving 76 middle-aged participants, demonstrated a lack of any cognitive or mood effect following 3 months’ administration of 300 or 450 mg extract (depending on body weight). However, an assessment 6 weeks after the end of the trial showed that the group taking extract had outperformed placebo on a single task, a ‘delayed recall of word pairs’ task. The authors tentatively interpret this as a possible attenuation of ‘forgetting’, but allow for the effect being a statistical anomaly. Given the lack of a clear effect from these two studies, B. monniera requires further research.

**Ginkgo biloba L. (gingko)**

Ginkgo biloba extract contains a number of species-specific flavonoids and the terpenoids: bilobalide and ginkgolides A, B, C and J (Kleijn and Knipschild, 1992). Potential CNS-relevant mechanisms of action include:

- a potential antagonism of platelet activating factor (e.g. Akiba et al., 1998; Krane et al., 2003)
- enhanced nitric oxide bioavailability (Koltermann et al., 2007)
- scavenging and inhibition of free radicals (Droy-Lefaix, 1997; Ramassamy, 2006)
- modulation of a number of neurotransmitter systems (Ahlemeyer and Krieglstein, 2003; Shah et al., 2003; Defeudis and Drieu, 2004; Lee et al., 2004; Ahmad et al., 2005)
- beneficial effects on blood viscosity and circulation (Ahlemeyer and Krieglstein, 2003; Santos et al., 2003 Galduroz et al., 2007)
- both in-vitro and in-vivo protection against hypoxic challenges (Oberpichler et al., 1988; Klein et al., 1997; Jannsens et al., 1999)
- in-vivo neuro-protective properties (Tadano et al., 1998; Lee et al., 2002; Ahlemeyer and Krieglstein, 2003)
- increased cerebral perfusion in humans (Santos et al., 2003).

There is also some evidence of cognitive enhancement in both younger (Stough et al., 2001b) and older (Mix and Crews, 2000, 2002) ‘cognitively intact’ populations administered 120 mg or 180 mg of gingko extract for 7 days or longer, although evidence in this respect is not unequivocal (Moulton et al., 2001; Solomon et al., 2002).

Several placebo-controlled, balanced crossover experiments, with relatively small sample sizes have also demonstrated improved cognitive performance in young adults following single doses of GBE (Hindmarch, 1986; Warot et al., 1991; Rigney et al., 1999; Kennedy et al., 2000). In the last of these studies, Kennedy et al. (2000) demonstrated linear, dose-dependent speeding of attention task performance for the two highest doses under investigation (240 mg, 360 mg gingko extract), and improved memory following the lowest dose (120 mg) in 20 participants. A later re-analysis of the data for the lowest dose not only confirmed this memory enhancement effect but also suggested modest but significant slowing on attention tasks following this typical daily dose (Kennedy et al., 2007b).

A large number of studies have assessed the efficacy of chronic administration of Ginkgo biloba in the amelioration of the cognitive declines associated with ageing and dementia. In this respect a comprehensive Cochrane review (Birks et al., 2002) meta-analysed the 33 extant studies involving cohorts with dementia or age-related cognitive impairment that met their inclusion criteria. The authors concluded that ‘Overall there is promising evidence of improvement in cognition and function associated with Ginkgo’. However, in a recent update and re-analysis, Birks and Grimley-Evans (2007) added a further three studies and deleted two studies and, in terms of cognitive function, fractionated their analyses by the length of treatment and the instrument employed. While there was evidence of
improvement either following some treatment durations or dependent on the cognitive assessment instrument utilised, their revised overall conclusion was that the evidence with regards overall efficacy in dementia or cognitive impairment is ‘inconsistent and unconvincing’.

Two potentially interesting randomised, controlled trials have also been published recently. Napryeyenko and Borzenko (2007) investigated the effects of ginkgo in 400 patients with mild-to-moderate dementia who also had concomitant neuropsychiatric symptoms (who would be expected to show more rapid decline than average) and demonstrated significant improvements in cognitive functioning and neuropsychiatric symptoms following 6 months’ treatment with the extract Egb 761. A single trial (Woelk et al., 2007) has also assessed the effects of two doses of Egb 761 in people with anxiety disorders. Results showed a significant dose-related improvement in Hamilton Rating Scale for Anxiety and a number of clinical measures. With regards safety, Birks and Evans (2007) conclude that Ginkgo biloba appears to be safe and comparable with placebo in terms of negative side-effects across studies.

**Panax ginseng C.A. Mey. (ginseng)**

‘Ginseng’ is generally taken to refer to the dried root of several species in the plant genus *Panax* (Araliaceae family). The most widely used family member is *P. ginseng*, which has a medicinal history stretching back more than 5000 years (Yun, 2001).

The major active constituents of the *Panax* genus are thought to be the species-specific saponins, also known as ginsenosides, of which over 30 have been identified (Tachikawa et al., 1999).

Ginsenosides have a number of effects relevant to general health, including bolstering of the immune system, anti-inflammatory, antihepatotoxic and anticarcinogenic effects (Radad et al., 2006). With regards to brain function, ginseng exerts a number of central and peripheral physiological effects that are potentially relevant. These include a host of neuroprotective properties, cardiovascular effects, modulation of the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis, neurotransmission (Kennedy and Scholey, 2003; Radad et al., 2006), and glucoregulation (Reay et al., 2005, 2006, 2007). While ginsenosides are known to exert a plethora of effects at a cellular level, a number of authors have suggested that the modulation of nitric oxide synthesis contributes to many of their wider effects (Gillis, 1997; Achike and Kwan, 2003; Kennedy and Scholey, 2003) including those within the CNS.

Animal behaviour models suggest that ginsenosides have antistress and anxiolytic effects (e.g. Park et al., 2005; Carr et al., 2006; Lee et al., 2006), moderate fatigue (Min et al., 2003; Voces et al., 2004), improve memory in impaired rodents (Nishijo et al., 2004) and improve learning and memory in several hippocampal/amygdala-dependent behavioural tasks in intact rodents (Kurimoto et al., 2004). Potential mechanisms of the latter include the ability to foster neurogenesis (Qiao et al., 2005) and modulate long-term potentiation in the hippocampus (Zhang and Zhang, 2000; Wang and Zhang, 2001).

In humans there is no clear evidence from controlled studies of ergogenic or antifatigue effects. Similarly, while a number of studies have demonstrated improvements in subjective ‘wellbeing’ or ‘quality of life’ attributable to ginseng monotherapy (Sotaniemi et al., 1995; Marasco et al., 1996; Wiklund et al., 1999; Ellis and Reddy, 2002), a number of other studies have failed to find this effect (Hallstrom et al., 1982; Ussher et al., 1995; Thommessen and Laake, 1996; Cardinal and Engels, 2001). However, it should be noted that the lack of clear efficacy in these domains may reflect methodological shortcomings (Kennedy and Scholey, 2003).

A number of randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, balanced-crossover studies investigating single doses of *P. ginseng* have identified positive cognitive effects in healthy young adults. The most consistent finding is of improved secondary memory performance following standardised ginseng extract G115 alone (Kennedy et al., 2001a, 2002b, 2004), and in combination with both Ginkgo biloba (Kennedy et al., 2001b, 2002b) and guarana (*Paullinia cupana*) (Kennedy et al., 2004). Improvements have also been noted in the speed of performing attention tasks (Kennedy et al., 2004b; Sünram-Lea et al., 2004) and significantly shortened latency of the P300 component of auditory evoked potentials measured by EEG, along with
overall topographical modulation of electrical activity (Kennedy et al., 2003b).

Two studies have also concomitantly measured glucoregulatory effects and cognitive performance during ‘glucose sensitive’, mentally demanding task performance. In the first of these, Reay et al. (2005) demonstrated significantly reduced fasted blood glucose levels and concomitant improvements in performance and reductions in self-ratings of mental fatigue in healthy young participants following 200 mg or 400 mg of G115. In the second study, Reay et al. (2006) used the same methodology and the most effective dose from the previous study (200 mg) but added a further factor: presence or absence of glucose 75 g. The results directly replicated the cognitive improvements, attenuation of mental fatigue and reduced blood glucose levels seen following ginseng alone in the previous study, but showed that these effects were largely abolished by coadministration with glucose.

The cognitive effects of longer-term dosage with ginseng has not been investigated to a great extent. In two early, double-blind, placebo-controlled studies, D’Angelo et al. (1986) and Sorensen and Sonne (1996) demonstrated improvements restricted to one or two task outcomes from within a larger selection of tasks following ginseng 200 mg and 400 mg/day. Similarly, a recent double-blind, placebo-controlled pilot study (n = 16) using a balanced crossover design in an investigation of 8 weeks’ treatment with 200 mg Korean Panax ginseng demonstrated improvements that were limited to two working memory tasks from within a larger battery, and one (social relations) of four scales from within the World Health Organization – Quality of Life scale (Kennedy et al., 2007a).

P. ginseng monopreparations are rarely associated with adverse events or drug interactions (Coon and Ernst, 2002).

*Salvia officinalis* L. and *Salvia lavandulifolia* Vahl (sage)

The most commonly consumed species of the large genus *Salvia* are *S. officinalis* (garden sage) and *S. lavandulifolia* (Spanish sage). Indications have traditionally included beneficial central nervous system effects, principally with regards mood and memory (Perry et al., 1999).

It has been suggested that the monoterpenoid constituents of sage, e.g. 1,8-cineole, contribute to the physiological activity of the whole herb (Perry et al., 2001). Extracts also contain a number of polyphenolic compounds, most notably rosmarinic acid and methyl carnosate (Hohmann et al., 1999). Concentration-dependent inhibition of acetylcholinesterase in postmortem human brain homogenates was demonstrated by essential oils of both herbs and alcoholic extracts of both fresh and dried *S. officinalis* leaf (Perry et al., 1999) and dose-dependent inhibition of human acetylcholinesterase by Spanish sage essential oil has also been shown (Perry et al., 2000; Savelev et al., 2004) and in vivo in the striatum and hippocampus of aged rats following oral administration (Perry et al., 2002).

Acetylcholinesterase inhibition has been shown to involve synergistic interactions and antagonisms (Savelev et al., 2003). Two studies have also demonstrated inhibition of butyrylcholinesterase in human erythrocytes (Savelev et al., 2004; Kennedy et al., 2006) and others have shown the antioxidant and free-radical scavenging properties of both sages (Lamaison et al., 1991; Hohmann et al., 1999; Mantle et al., 2000; Perry et al., 2001). This latter study also demonstrated anti-inflammatory actions by the extract and its geraniol and α-pinene monoterpenoid constituents.

Several other potentially CNS-relevant properties have also been demonstrated including an oestrogenic activity of Spanish sage and the monoterpenoid component geraniol (Perry et al., 2001) and benzodiazepine receptor binding by fractions of a methanol extract of *S. officinalis* (Kavvadias et al., 2003).

Five double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised, balanced-crossover studies in healthy humans have assessed the behavioural effects of single doses of sage with in-vitro cholinesterase-inhibiting properties (the number of participants was 20, 24, 20, 30, 36 respectively). Tildesley et al. (2003) assessed the effects of three doses of *S. lavandulifolia* essential oil and showed significant memory improvements in 20 healthy young participants following the two lowest doses (50 µL, 100 µL). In a subsequent study, Tildesley et al. (2005) examined the effects of 25 and 50 µL of the same oil in 24 participants and demonstrated that improved memory performance was most marked for the lowest dose of 25µL. Both
doses also resulted in significantly increased ratings of ‘contentedness’ and ‘calmness’.

The memory-enhancing effects in a healthy young population have also been confirmed in a recent study (Kennedy et al., 2007a) into the effects of 50 μL S. officinalis essential oil. This study also demonstrated improved mood (alertness) and reduced ratings of mental fatigue during an extended period of cognitive demand. A further study (Scholtey et al., 2008) assessed the effects of four separate single doses of an ethanolic extract of S. officinalis in an elderly cohort. Once again the results showed clear improvements in memory performance, with this most marked for the lower two doses.

In one further study, Kennedy et al. (2006) also assessed the effects of two doses (300, 600 mg) of dried S. officinalis leaf with both acetylcholinesterase and butyrylcholinesterase-inhibitory properties on mood and performance of a psychological stressor multitasking battery. The results showed that the lower dose reduced anxiety and the higher dose increased ratings of ‘alertness’, ‘calmness’ and ‘contentedness’. Task performance was also improved for the higher dose at both post-dose sessions, but reduced for the lower dose at the later testing session.

A single, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial has also assessed the effects of 16 weeks’ administration of an S. officinalis alcoholic tincture in 30 patients with Alzheimer’s disease (Akhonzadeh et al., 2003b). Those in the verum group were shown to have significantly improved scores on the Alzheimer’s Disease Clinical Assessment Scale cognitive subscale (ADAS-cog) at the study endpoint at 16 weeks. Clinical dementia rating scores were also significantly improved at the end of the study.

Why do herbal extracts have an effect on the central nervous system?

One common theme within this brief review of CNS-active herbs is the multiplicity of potential mechanisms of action. Interestingly, while the literature on the in-vitro, in-vivo, animal and human behavioural effects of herbal extracts is enormous, and growing exponentially (Zhang, 2003), the simple question of why bioactives from plants have CNS effects in mammals is largely overlooked. Herbal extracts owe their bioactive effects to a vast array of ‘secondary metabolites’ that are not directly involved, either in the plant’s metabolism or indeed in its immediate ability to survive. Instead, these chemical compounds have developed via evolutionary and ecological pressure to serve a variety of functions that enhance the plant’s longer-term survivability, e.g. the provision of colour, a host of localised protective roles (e.g. antioxidant, free-radical scavenging, ultraviolet absorption, antiproliferative, antiviral, etc.), roles in interplant relationships (e.g. allelopathic defence against competitors), interactions with a range of heterotrophs, including defence against fungi and bacteria, deterrence and attraction of insects and herbivores, and even symbiotic hormonal and central nervous system interactions with higher life forms, most notably insects (Harborne, 1993; Tahara, 2007).

It seems axiomatic that the physiological effects of consuming secondary metabolites within mammals can therefore be seen as being as a result of the similarity in biological processes across the eukaryotes, in this case the plant and animal kingdoms. The effects within humans may be merely a coincidental consequence of this similarity, but they may also take the form of a similar action as that exerted by the plant over other external organisms (e.g. insects), or alternatively a similar action to that which occurs within the plant itself. As an example of the former, acetylcholine is the major excitatory CNS neurotransmitter in insects (Gundelfinger and Schulz, 2000), and a range of extracts that have beneficial properties within the acetylcholine neurotransmitter system at low doses in humans may owe these properties to compounds functioning as toxic, predation deterrents within plant–insect relationships.

With regard to secondary metabolites exerting similar effects in their source plant and mammals, examples may include similarities in the protective effects conferred on the end-consumer. These include not only CNS-relevant antioxidant effects but also the more general antifungal/viral, antiproliferative, anti-ultraviolet light, etc. effects of consuming many secondary metabolites in mammals. In this respect, and inextricably linked to several of these general protective effects, it is interesting to note that the
ubiquitous signalling molecule, nitric oxide, acts in plants in a similar manner as it does in animals (Arasimowicz and Floryszak-Wiezorek, 2007). In plants it plays a key role in several processes including protection during physical stress, disease and ageing (Crawford and Guo, 2005). In mammals this distinction is also clearly seen in the three isoforms of nitric oxide synthase, the enzyme responsible for nitric oxide synthesis. Two of these produce nitric oxide at a comparatively slow rate and contribute to a host of homeostatic physiological processes important to health. The third isoform, inducible nitric oxide synthase, on the other hand, produces nitric oxide at a rapid rate during immune and inflammatory responses to stressors and, when overactivated or activated for prolonged periods, is implicated in a range of pathological conditions (Achike and Kwan, 2003).

What is particularly intriguing is that the expression of potentially bioactive secondary metabolites during plant stress, for example, hypericin produced in the cells of Hypericum perforatum L., is related to nitric oxide production (Xu et al., 2005), and that the secondary metabolite components of a number of herbal medicines play a role in the regulation of nitric oxide homeostasis in mammalian tissue models. As an example, a number of authors have suggested that the ginsenoside constituents of Panax ginseng may owe their efficacy in various domains to their ability to enhance constitutive nitric oxide synthesis throughout the tissues of the body, including the brain (Kennedy and Scholey, 2003). Similarly, the active components of Ginkgo biloba L. and a wide range of polyphenols from a number of sources have beneficial effects both in increasing constitutive nitric oxide synthase activity, thereby potentially improving, for instance, vascular tone and cerebral tissue perfusion, while also reducing the potentially damaging overproduction of inducible nitric oxide synthase (Achike and Kwan, 2003).

Given that neuronal nitric oxide synthase is also present throughout the brain, that levels are related to mood disorders (Karolewicz et al., 2004) and that nitric oxide functions as a neurotransmitter in its own right (Jurado et al., 2004), and is involved in synaptic plasticity and hippocampal long-term potentiation (LTP) (Blackshaw et al., 2003) and general memory processes (Prast and Philippu, 2001), it becomes tempting to suggest that some of the CNS effects of herbal extracts are via the commonalities with regards to this signalling molecule.

Conclusions

From the hundreds of medicinal herbs that have demonstrated potential CNS-relevant properties in vitro, and the 80 that have been assessed in animal models (Zhang, 2003), the above describes only nine that have been subjected to more than cursory, methodologically adequate investigation in humans. For two of them (Bacopa monniera and Crocus sativus), the research base is currently weak but may improve with time. Only four have generated enough research to be subjected to the meta-analyses favoured by the medical establishment.

One commonality between them is that they all possess multiple, potentially bioactive constituents, and may exert a multiplicity of CNS-relevant physiological effects. There are good arguments to be made for offering a polypharmacological treatment for complex CNS conditions. However, the very complexity of these potential treatments will hinder their application in a wider medical setting.

Overall, a great deal of more focused research is required to reach a full understanding of the bioactive constituents of plants (including the issues of standardisation and replication of extracts), their effects in mammalian physiological systems and their efficacy.

References


Newman DJ, Cragg GM (2007). Natural products as


Tildesley NTJ, Kennedy DO, Perry EK et al. (2005). Cogni
tive and mood effects of acute administration of Salvia lavandulaefolia (Spanish Sage) to healthy young volun


Physiology of the respiratory system and asthma

The respiratory system is composed of the lungs and the air passages, the muscles of the thorax, of pleural sacs and nerves. The air passage consists of the paired nasal cavities, pharynx, larynx, trachea and bronchial tree (Catcott, 1964). The trachea bifurcates to form the primary bronchi which further divide into secondary bronchi leading to smaller respiratory bronchioles terminating in alveoli, through which oxygen passes from air into blood and carbon dioxide passes from blood into air (Singh, 1997).

On the lungs and air passages, receptors such as adrenoceptor, histamine and muscarinic are present, which are responsible for regulation of different physiological functions. Stimulation of β-adrenergic receptors decreases smooth tone of the airways and inhibits the release of inflammatory mediators from mast cells (Carstains et al., 1985). Muscarinic receptors in airways belong to M3 subtypes, which occur almost exclusively in proximal airways (Barnes, 1987), and mediate contractile responses and increase the mucous secretion. Histamine receptors of H1-type are present on bronchial muscle, causing contraction of smooth muscles, but have little physiological role; thus antihistaminic drugs have limited therapeutic contribution.

The hyperactivity of respiratory smooth muscles results in airway constriction leading to asthma (Reed, 1974; Barnes, 1986). Most of the disorders of the respiratory system, other than infectious diseases, results from the hyperactivity of airways. Asthma is a major congestive respiratory disorder, characterised by episodic wheezing, cough and chest tightness associated with airflow obstruction (Howarth, 1997). The worldwide prevalence of asthma has been increasing, particularly in children (Croner and Kjellman, 1992; Lenfant, 1995). According to the World Health Organization (WHO), it affects about 5–10% of adults (Lowhagen, 1999) and 10% of children globally (Lazaro et al., 1999; Malhotra, 2000). The mortality rates from asthma have been increasing steadily over recent decades (Ulrik and Frederiksen, 1995). According to the National Center for Health Statistics, the death rate from asthma in the United States increased from 0.8 per 100 000 in 1971 to 2 per 100 000 in 1991 (Sly, 1994).
The pathogenesis of asthma is multifactorial and multicellular since macrophages, mast cells, eosinophils, neutrophils and platelets are involved in its pathogenesis (Joseph et al., 1983). The cells produce an arsenal of mediators such as bradykinin, histamine, leukotrienes, platelet-activating factor, prostaglandins and thromboxane which interact in a complex way to produce numerous pathological effects. These include constriction of airway smooth muscle, increased microvascular leakage, mucus secretion and recruitment of inflammatory cells into airways (Sasaki et al., 1993; Cookson, 1999). Histopathological studies of patients with asthma have shown inflammation in the airways with infiltration of inflammatory cells, particularly eosinophils, disruption of airway epithelium and mucus hypersecretion, thus indicating that airway inflammation may underlie bronchial hyperresponsiveness (Dunnill, 1960).

Asthma is classified into extrinsic and intrinsic types. The extrinsic type generally appears in early stages of life in individuals with a family history of either asthma or various allergies including hay fever, eczema and dermatitis. The intrinsic type, on the other hand, develops at around 40 years of age and occurs because of non-specific factors (common cold, exercise or emotion) that may trigger the asthmatic attack. Many stimuli including viral infection, environmental allergens, animal dander, stress, air pollutants, emotion (fear, anger, frustration), cold air and changes in weather enhance symptoms of asthma and alter airway physiology (Wilson, 1992; Khan and Hazir, 1995).

In many instances asthma has been found to run in families and multiple genes are involved in its expression (Postma, 1999). In the traditional Greco-Arab Unani system of medicine, the human race is divided genetically into four classes based on their susceptibility to develop different diseases, i.e., choleric, sanguine, phlegmatic and melancholic. Those who have the tendency to develop asthmatic disorders belong to the phlegmatic category (Tobyn, 1997). It has been observed that such individuals with sensitive airways respond adversely and develop bronchoconstriction and/or cough when taking allopathic medicines, such as angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors.

**Drugs used to treat asthma**

The common classes of drugs with proven efficacy in asthma are bronchodilators such as β₂-agonists, anticholinergics, phosphodiesterase inhibitors, while glucocorticosteroids, mass cell stabilisers and leukotriene modifiers are used usually as preventive therapy in chronic cases (Rang et al., 1999). More recently, Ca²⁺ antagonists and potassium channel openers have been added to the list of potential bronchodilators (Rang et al., 1999; Undem, 2006). All bronchodilators currently in use are known to manifest cardiac stimulation as a serious side-effect, particularly when given orally (Undem, 2006). Inhalers are used to avoid cardiac side-effects, but are very expensive and beyond the reach of a large part of the population in developing countries, so alternate measures are being explored for safe and cost-effective treatment.

Herbs in this regard have potential not only as a source of new clinical drugs but are also gaining popularity in the form of crude herbal products or botanicals (Harrison, 1998; Gilani and Rahman, 2005). Interestingly, a constituent of *Aspalathus linearis* (a popular herbal tea in South Africa, commonly known as rooibos) is chrysoeriol, a flavonoid, and was found to exhibit high selectivity for airways compared with other smooth muscles, so placing itself amongst the candidates to be developed for congestive airways disorders (Khan and Gilani, 2006).

**Pathology of coughing**

Cough is a spasmodic contraction of the thoracic cavity that results in abrupt release of air from the lungs. It is usually very sudden in onset and very often repetitive. The cough reflex is complex, involving the central and peripheral nervous system as well as the smooth muscle of the bronchial tree. It has been suggested that irritation of the bronchial mucosa causes bronchoconstriction, which in turn stimulates cough receptors (which probably represent a specialised type of stretch receptor) located in tracheobronchial passages. The cough reflex probably includes several mechanisms or centres that are distinct from the mechanisms involved in the
regulation of respiration (Irwin and Madison, 2000). Excessive cough is one of the most common symptoms for which the patient seeks medical care and may represent up to one-third of a pulmonologist’s outpatient referrals. Persistent severe cough, seen in interstitial lung disease or bronchiectasis, may impair respiration as well as disrupt sleep and social functioning. Bronchospasm, syncope, rib fractures and urinary incontinence are all potential complications (Irwin and Madison, 2002). On the basis of duration, cough has been divided into acute (less than 3 weeks’ duration), subacute (3–8 weeks) and chronic (more than 8 weeks) types.

The causes of acute cough are viral or bacterial infection, pneumonia, pulmonary embolism and pulmonary oedema. The most common causes of subacute and chronic cough are asthma, weather changes, smoking, inflammation of larynx or pharynx and allergies.

The drugs that directly or indirectly can affect the cough are diverse. Cough may be the first, or the only, symptom of asthma or allergy and in such cases bronchodilators and antihistaminergics have been shown to reduce cough without having significant central effects. The drugs acting primarily on central or peripheral nervous system components of the cough reflex are opioid agents, i.e. codeine and dextromethorphan, which are structurally related to morphine and act on the cough centre of the medulla, increasing the cough threshold and thus depressing the cough (Irwin and Madison, 2000).

### Medicinal plants used to treat respiratory disorders

According to the WHO, about three-quarters of the world population relies on traditional remedies (mainly herbs) to fulfil their healthcare needs (WHO, 2003). In developing countries, remedies prepared by traditional healers from plants of the local flora are the only drugs available for a large number of people. It is not uncommon that a single plant possesses a wide range of medicinal applications. Several scientific studies, in parallel to this, have also shown the presence of synergistic and/or side-effect-neutralising combinations in plants, which is the result of the presence of multiple constituents in a single plant (Gilani and Rahman, 2005). Herbs have always played an important role in the treatment of respiratory diseases and *Atropa belladonna* is one such example, with folkloric repute to treat asthma. This species is the source of atropine, a prototype antimuscarinic drug, which has a wide range of clinical applications including asthma (Rang *et al.*, 1999).

Chinese traditional medicine has also claimed to treat many diseases, especially bronchial asthma (Hsieh, 1996). The number of plants considered useful for respiratory disorders is surprisingly large. Some of the species, which have been shown to be effective in the disorders of airway hyperactivity in experimental animals or clinical trials, confirming their traditional use in respiratory disorders, are listed in Table 15.1.

Plants mentioned for their effect against potassium-induced contraction are considered to be calcium-channel blockers (CCBs) as high K⁺ (>30 mmol/L) is known to cause smooth-muscle contraction via Ca²⁺ influx through voltage-dependent calcium channels (Bolton, 1979). Interestingly, we found some novel combinations and observed that CCB-like constituents are abundantly present in plants and usually coexist with other active constituents, such as phosphodiesterase inhibitors and anticholinergics (Gilani and Rahman, 2005).

The drugs used in conventional medicine as bronchodilators in asthmatic conditions belong to the categories of β₂-adrenoceptor stimulants (salbutamol), phosphodiesterase inhibitors (theophylline) and anticholinergics (ipratropium), all of which cause cardiac stimulation as a side-effect (Rang *et al.*, 1999). Calcium antagonists (which are devoid of cardiac stimulant effect) have been shown to possess therapeutic usefulness in asthma in recent years (Ahmed, 1992). These have an inhibitory effect, opposite to what is seen with currently used anti-asthmatic drugs. Hence, it is logical to combine Ca²⁺ antagonists with any of the above mentioned bronchodilators to achieve an enhanced bronchodilator effect with neutralisation of cardiac side-effects.

Based on the assumption that medicinal plants do contain such combinations of activities, a few plants with folkloric use in asthma were screened. Interestingly, two popular plants, commonly used in asthma...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plant</th>
<th>Model of study</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Aegle marmelos</em></td>
<td>Histamine-induced constriction of guinea pig isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Arul <em>et al.</em>, 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium sativum</em></td>
<td>Histamine and acetylcholine-induced constriction of guinea pig isolated trachea and a clinical study in patients with asthma</td>
<td>Bronchodilation anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Aqel <em>et al.</em>, 1991; Clement <em>et al.</em>, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aloe vera</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Clement <em>et al.</em>, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alstonia scholaris</em></td>
<td>Carbachol-mediated bronchoconstriction in anaesthetised rats</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Channa <em>et al.</em>, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Anchietia salutaris</em></td>
<td>Guinea pig lung parenchymal strips contracted with prostaglandin and U46619</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Gambero and Gomes, 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Artemisia caerulescens</em></td>
<td>Histamine and acetylcholine-induced bronchoconstriction in anaesthetised guinea pigs and their isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Moran <em>et al.</em>, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Artemisia capillaris</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved expiratory flow volume</td>
<td>Fu, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aspalathus linearis</em></td>
<td>Low K⁺-contracted guinea pig isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Khan and Gilani, 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bacopa monniera</em></td>
<td>Carbachol-induced bronchoconstriction in anaesthetised rats</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Dar and Channa, 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Borago officinalis</em></td>
<td>K⁺ and carbachol-induced contraction of isolated rabbit trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Gilani <em>et al.</em>, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Capparis spinosa</em></td>
<td>Antigen and histamine-induced bronchoconstriction in anaesthetised guinea pigs</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Trombetta <em>et al.</em>, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Carum cpticum</em></td>
<td>Carbachol, histamine and K⁺-induced constriction of isolated guinea pig trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Boskabady <em>et al.</em>, 1998; Boskabady and Shaikhi, 2000; Gilani <em>et al.</em>, 2005a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cecropia glaziovi</em></td>
<td>Histamine-induced bronchospasm in guinea pigs</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Jr <em>et al.</em>, 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cinnamomum massoiae</em></td>
<td>IgE-dependent histamine release from the RBL-2H3 mast cells</td>
<td>Mast cell stabiliser</td>
<td>Ikawati <em>et al.</em>, 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cordia curassavica</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Clement <em>et al.</em>, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Crocus sativus</em></td>
<td>Methacholine and K⁺-induced guinea pig isolated tracheal contraction</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Boskabady and Aslani, 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Crossopteryx febrifuga</em></td>
<td>Citric acid-induced cough and antigen-induced bronchospasm in guinea pig</td>
<td>Antitussive, bronchodilation</td>
<td>Occhiuto <em>et al.</em>, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma longa</em></td>
<td>Carbachol and K⁺-induced constriction of isolated guinea pig trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Gilani <em>et al.</em>, 2005b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cymbopogon citratus</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Clement <em>et al.</em>, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Datura stramonium</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Decreased the airway resistance</td>
<td>Charpin <em>et al.</em>, 1979</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant</td>
<td>Model of study</td>
<td>Effect</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Drymis winteri</em></td>
<td>Guinea pig isolated trachea precontracted with bradykinin, prostaglandin, capsacin, substance P, neurokinin A-(4–10), U 46619, ovalbumin and compound 48/80</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Sayah et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Echinacea purpurea</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Clement et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Entada africana</em></td>
<td>Citric acid-evoked cough and histamine-induced bronchoconstriction in guinea pig</td>
<td>Antitussive, bronchodilation</td>
<td>Occhiuto et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eryngium foetidium</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Clement et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eucalyptus globulus</em></td>
<td>IgE-dependent histamine release from the RBL-2H3 mast cells</td>
<td>Mast cell stabiliser</td>
<td>Ikawai et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eucommia ulmoides</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved expiratory flow volume</td>
<td>Fu, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hibiscus sabdariffa</em></td>
<td>Guinea pig isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Ali et al., 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hydrastis canadensis</em></td>
<td>Carbachol-induced constriction of guinea pig isolated trachea and a clinical study in patients with asthma</td>
<td>Bronchodilation anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Abdel-Haq et al., 2000; Clement et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hyoscyamus niger</em></td>
<td>Carbachol and K⁺-mediated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Gilani et al., 2008a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hypericum perforatum</em></td>
<td>Carbachol and K⁺-precontracted guinea pig isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Gilani et al., 2005c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Leonotis nepetifolia</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Clement et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Liriope platyphylla</em></td>
<td>Airway inflammation and hyperresponsiveness in murine model of asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Lee et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lycium chinense</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved expiratory flow volume</td>
<td>Fu, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mangifera indica</em></td>
<td>Acetylcholine and histamine precontracted rat isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Agbonon et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Matricaria chamomilla</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Clement et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Myristica fragrans</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Clement et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nigella sativa</em></td>
<td>Carbachol, histamine and K⁺-mediated tracheal constriction and measurement of respiratory rate and intratracheal pressure in guinea pigs</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>El-Tahir et al., 1993; Gilani et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ocimum gratissimum</em></td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Anti-asthmatic</td>
<td>Clement et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phyllanthus urinaria</em></td>
<td>Carbachol-induced constriction of guinea pigs isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Paulino et al., 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phymatodes scolopendria</em></td>
<td>Carbachol, histamine, K⁺-induced constrictions of isolated trachea and histamine inhalation to guinea pig</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Ramanitrahasimbola et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant</td>
<td>Model of study</td>
<td>Effect</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pimpinella anisum</td>
<td>Methacholine-induced constriction of guinea pig isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Boskabady and Ramazani-Assari, 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plantago major</td>
<td>IgE-dependent histamine release from the RBL-2H3 mast cells</td>
<td>Mast cell stabiliser</td>
<td>Ikawati et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluchea ovalis</td>
<td>Acetylcholine precontracted rat isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Agbonon et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pogostemon cablin</td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved expiratory flow volume</td>
<td>Fu, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portulaca oleracea</td>
<td>Measurement of forced expiratory volume, peak expiratory flow, maximal mid-expiratory flow and specific airway conductance in patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved the pulmonary functions</td>
<td>Malek et al., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psoralea corylifolia</td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved expiratory flow volume</td>
<td>Fu, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pteleopsis suberosa</td>
<td>Citric acid-induced cough in guinea pig</td>
<td>Antitussive</td>
<td>Occhiuto et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rauwolfia ligustrina</td>
<td>Guinea pig isolated trachea precontracted with carbachol</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Medeiros and Calixto, 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosa damascena</td>
<td>Methacholine and K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt;-induced guinea pig isolated tracheal contraction</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Boskabady et al., 2006a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosmarinus officinalis</td>
<td>Acetylcholine and K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt;-induced constriction of rabbit isolated tracheal smooth muscle</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Agel, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcococca saligna</td>
<td>Carbachol and K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt;-induced constriction of guinea pig and rabbit trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Ghayur and Gilani, 2006a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solanum trilobatum</td>
<td>Measurement of forced expiratory volume, peak expiratory flow, maximal mid-expiratory flow and specific airway conductance in patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved the pulmonary functions</td>
<td>Govindan et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solanum xanthocarpum</td>
<td>Measurement of forced expiratory volume, peak expiratory flow, maximal mid-expiratory in patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved the pulmonary functions</td>
<td>Govindan et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stemona tuberosa</td>
<td>Carbachol, histamine and K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; precontracted guinea pig isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Liao et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminalia bellerica</td>
<td>Carbachol and K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt; precontracted guinea pig isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Gilani et al., 2008b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thymus vulgaris</td>
<td>Methacholine and K&lt;sup&gt;+&lt;/sup&gt;-induced contraction of guinea pig isolated trachea</td>
<td>Bronchodilation</td>
<td>Boskabady et al., 2006b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tussilago farfara</td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved expiratory flow volume</td>
<td>Fu, 1989</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viscum coloratum</td>
<td>Patients with asthma</td>
<td>Improved expiratory flow volume</td>
<td>Fu, 1989</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and cough, i.e. turmeric (Curcuma longa) and St John’s wort (Hypericum perforatum) were found to possess bronchodilatory effects through the combination of CCB and phosphodiesterase inhibitory activities (Gilani et al., 2005b, 2005c). Similarly, the essential oil of Nepeta cataria also causes bronchodilation through a combination of the same inhibitory mechanisms (unpublished data). We observed in several patients that turmeric, when mixed with honey, caused cough suppression (unpublished data). In a clinical trial, garlic (Allium sativum) was found to be very effective in patients with asthma (Clement et al., 2005), which also results from its in-vitro tracheorelaxant effect (Aqel et al., 1991).

Henbane (Hyocynamus niger) is smoked to relieve asthmatic attack (Mohagheghzadeh et al., 2006). Carefully planned experiments revealed that in addition to the anticholinergic activity, it contains Ca2+ antagonist constituent(s), responsible for its bronchodilator and antispasmodic actions, thus offering a novel combination of activities, which explain its medicinal use in asthma (Gilani et al., 2008a). In a clinical study, Terminalia bellerica was found to possess antiasthmatic and antitussive effects (Trivedi et al., 1979). More recent studies showed that the underlying mechanism(s) for effectiveness in airway hyperactivity disorders is the dual blockade of muscarinic receptors and Ca2+ channels (Gilani et al., 2008b). Carum copticum, a popular herbal remedy in airway hyperactivity disorders, has been shown to possess a combination of anticholinergic, antihistaminic (Boskabady et al., 1998; Boskabady and Shaikhi, 2000) and CCB (Gilani et al., 2005a) activities.

As mentioned above, the side-effect profile of anticholinergics and Ca2+ antagonists in the heart oppose each other and it would not be surprising to see if the net effect of this combination is more than the sum of the individual components, with lesser side-effects when studied in a clinical set up. The boiled extract of Carum copticum caused a significant increase in pulmonary function test values in patients with asthma (Boskabady et al., 2007a). The aqueous and macerated extracts of Carum copticum reduced the number of coughs in guinea pigs produced by citric acid aerosol, being greater than that of the standard drug, codeine (Boskabady et al., 2005). Aspalathus linearis (rooibos or bush tea) (Wyk et al., 2002) was found to exhibit bronchodilatory effect through the opening of potassium channels (Khan and Gilani, 2006). Interestingly enough, one of its known constituents, chrysoeriol, was found to exhibit high selectivity for its inhibitory effect on airways compared with other smooth muscles (Khan and Gilani, 2006), thus showing the potential to be developed for airway disorders.

Nigella sativa (black seeds) are used in folk medicine for its usefulness in airway disorders, along with multiple other medicinal uses. The volatile oil of N. sativa induced a dose-dependent increase in the respiratory rate and intratracheal pressure of guinea pigs (El-Tahir et al., 1993). It has been reported that N. sativa exhibits mast-cell stabilising (inhibiting the release of histamine) and Ca2+ antagonist effects (Gilani et al., 2004). The results of a Phase I study, involving 29 adults with asthma, generally suggest a prophylactic effect of boiled extract of N. sativa on asthma disease (Boskabady et al., 2007b).

Ginger (Zingiber officinale) exhibited antiasthmatic and antitussive effects in patients with airways hyperactivity (Perry, 1980; Clement et al., 2005; Rouhi et al., 2006). It was reported to possess a Ca2+ antagonist mechanism, which might be responsible for the
bronchodilatory action (Ghayur and Gilani, 2006b), though additional mechanism(s) cannot be ruled out. *Sarcococca saligna* and *Borago officinalis* were also found to exhibit CCB effect, which may account for their antiasthmatic potential (Ghayur and Gilani, 2006a; Gilani et al., 2007).

Randomised trials with ginkgo (*Ginkgo biloba*) liquor and dried extract of ivy (*Hedera helix*) produced clinically relevant improvements in lung function, significantly better than placebo or control treatment (Li et al., 1997; Mansfeld et al., 1998; Hofmann et al., 2003). Four trials with *Tylophora indica* alcoholic extract reported significant improvement in asthma symptoms (Ernst, 2000). One clinical trial with *Boswellia serrata* resulted in a significant improvement in forced expiratory volume of patients with asthma (Gupta et al., 1998). In a double-blind trial, 32 people with steroid-dependent asthma were given either placebo or essential oil of eucalyptus for 12 weeks. The results showed that people using eucalyptus were more able to reduce their steroid dosage gradually than those taking placebo (Juergens et al., 2003). In a clinical study, the powder of *Lepidium sativum* dried seeds was found to increase the forced vital capacity, forced expired volume and peak expiratory flow rate in patients with mild-to-moderate bronchial asthma, indicating its usefulness in reducing asthma severity (Paranjape and Mehta, 2006).

We also observed the bronchodilatory potential of some of the well-known naturally occurring compounds, such as curcumin (Gilani et al. 2005b), catechin (Ghayur et al., 2007) and thymoquinone, with common characteristics being a CCB effect along with phosphodiesterase inhibitory activity for catechin (unpublished data). Theophylline, a plant-derived compound is well known to exhibit a bronchodilator effect through inhibition of phosphodiesterase and adenosine receptors (Undem, 2006).

Knowing that the aetiology of respiratory disorders is complex, where multiple sites are targeted for better control, medicinal plants in singular or polyherbal formulation (contain multiple active components acting on different sites) have the potential for preventive and curative therapeutic success. A limited number of clinical trials have been conducted to date. Further studies in this direction are likely to result in novel additions to modern therapeutics.

Models for respiratory studies

**In-vivo studies**

**Pulmonary function test**

The pulmonary functions are assessed using a spirometer, just before and 2 h after administration of the test and control drugs to the patients with asthma (Govindan et al., 1999). The subjects are asked to take a deep inspiration followed by forcible expiration into the spirometer. The various parameters such as forced vital capacity, forced expiratory volume in first second, peak expiratory flow rate and forced expiratory flow rate between 25% and 75% of forced vital capacity are recorded. Because a significant improvement is observed after 2 h, this schedule is fixed for the measurements throughout the study.

**Bronchodilatory activity**

Rats are anaesthetised with sodium thiopental, then intubated with a tracheal tube and ventilated with a volume ventilator (Miniature ideal pump, Bioscience, UK) adjusted at a rate of 70–80 strokes/min (to deliver 7–10 mL/kg of room air) in the supine position (Channa et al., 2005). A polythene catheter is inserted into the jugular vein for drug administration. Changes in airway resistance are measured by connecting a side arm of the tracheal cannula to a pressure transducer (MLT 1199).Bronchoconstriction is induced with carbachol or histamine, which is reversed within 7–10 min. The test drugs are given to the animals 5–8 min prior to administration of carbachol.

**Aerosol inhalation method**

Guinea pigs that reacted positively on the preliminary test of the histamine aerosol are selected and used during the in-vivo test (Lee et al., 1952). Four groups of the selected animals are prepared. The first group served as controls. For the three other groups, different doses of the test drug are administered by oral route 2 h before the histamine aerosol test. Then animals are placed into a 10-L transparent plastic bell jar. They are aerosolised with 5 mg/mL histamine solution during 3 min. The reaction of each animal is noted. The animal which did not present any suffocation sign during 3 min is considered as protected.
Histamine and antigen-induced bronchospasm

The animals are anaesthetised by ethyl urethane (1.25 g/kg intraperitoneally). After tracheotomy a tracheal cannula is introduced and connected to a ventilation pump and a pressure transducer. The ventilation pressure is registered with a Gemini recorder. The animals are ventilated artificially at a frequency of 50 breaths/min and the respiratory volume is adjusted to 10 mL/breath. Maximal changes in pulmonary ventilation pressure (PVP) are expressed as the percentage of the basal PVP (Occhiuto et al., 1999). For histamine-induced bronchospasm, histamine (20 μg/kg) is injected intravenously through a short polyethylene catheter inserted into the jugular vein. For antigen-induced bronchospasm, the animals are first sensitised by two successive inhalations (50 μL each) of a nebulised Oleaceae allergen. After 48 h, the animals are anaesthetised and placed under the assisted respiration and are administered with the Oleaceae allergen (100 μL) by intratracheal instillation.

In-vitro studies

Isolated tracheal strips

The trachea is dissected from a guinea pig or rabbit killed by cervical dislocation and kept in Krebs solution (Gilani et al., 2005a). The tracheal tube is cut into rings, 2–3 mm wide. Each ring is opened by a longitudinal cut on the ventral side opposite to the smooth muscle layer, forming a tracheal strip with a central part of smooth muscle in between the cartilaginous portions on the edges. The preparation is then mounted in a 20 mL tissue bath containing Krebs solution, at 37°C and aerated with carbogen (5% CO₂ in 95% O₂). A tension of 1 g is applied to each of the tracheal strips and is kept constant throughout the experiment. The tissue is equilibrated for 1 h before the addition of any drug. The tracheal preparations are then constricted with carbachol, histamine and potassium and the relaxant effect of a drug is assessed by adding in a cumulative fashion.

Lung parenchyma slicing

Male guinea pigs weighing 250–350 g are killed by cervical dislocation. The thoracic cavity is opened and the lungs are removed. A 1.5 mm × 20 mm strip of subpleural parenchyma is cut from an area of grossly normal lung and prepared for recording of contractile responses (Thomas et al., 1986). The tissues are placed in organ baths containing physiological salt solution and aerated with carbogen. One end of each tissue is tied with a silk thread to a glass hook located at the bottom of the organ bath and the other end is connected by a silk thread to a force transducer. An initial load of 1 g is applied to each of the lung parenchyma strips and equilibrated for 1 h before the addition of any drug, then the preparations are constricted with different spasmogens, such as carbachol, histamine or potassium, to assess the bronchodilator effect.

Sensitisation procedure

Guinea pigs are sensitised by intraperitoneal injection of 5 mL of 0.9% saline containing 10 μg of ovalbumin dispersed with 1 mg of aluminium hydroxide. The injection is repeated after 14 days and the animals are killed 7–10 days after the second injection (Sayah et al., 1997). After removing the trachea from the adjacent tissues, preparations are mounted for isometric recording. Following the equilibration period the tissues are constricted with carbachol. After 30 min tissues are exposed to ovalbumin (1–3 g/mL) and a contraction of the trachea confirm that the guinea pigs are successfully sensitised. The test drug is preincubated with the preparation 20 min before ovalbumin addition.

Mast cell stabilisation assay to assess prevention potential

The rats are sensitised by subcutaneous injection of horse serum along with 0.5 mL of triple antigen containing Bordetella pertussis organisms. The rats are divided into eight groups of six and treated with either saline, positive control (prednisolone or ketotifen) or the different doses of the test drug or plant extract. On the 14th day, 3 h after the last dose treatment, the rats are killed, and intestinal mesentery is taken for study of mast cells (Harish et al., 2001). Mesenteric and intestinal pieces are kept in a Ringer Locke’s solution at 37°C. Mesenteric pieces are then challenged with 5% horse serum in vitro for 10 min. Pieces of mesentery are stained supravitaly with toluidine blue. Tissue is first immersed in 0.1% toluidine blue in 4% aqueous formal saline for 10 min.
The tissue is then transferred to xylene for 5–10 min and finally rinsed two or three times with acetone and examined under a microscope. The numbers of intact and disrupted mast cells per high field are counted.

References


**Introduction**

Immunomodulation means that one can modulate immunity using various substances either of natural or synthetic origin. Immunomodulation using medicinal plants can provide an alternative to conventional chemotherapy for a variety of diseases, especially when the host defence mechanism has to be activated under conditions of impaired immune response, or when a selective immunosuppression is desired in situations such as autoimmune disorders (Ganju et al., 2003). It appears that the normal way by which the immune system works is through its own modulation by factors usually synthesised by the immune cells (Wybran, 1988).

Networking and interactions within the immune system are so complex that modulation of the immune response at will to achieve designed therapeutic success is still in the realm of philosophical editorials rather than of definitive efficacy studies (Benson, 1993).

The immune response requires timely interplay of multiple cell types within specific microenvironments to maintain immune homeostasis. The selectivity and flexibility that is necessary to regulate cell traffic under homeostatic and diseased conditions are provided by the differential distribution and regulated expression of cytokines and their receptors. As a consequence, cytokines are responsible for the development of phenotypes and are, therefore, logical targets for therapeutic immune modulation (Oberholzer et al., 2000).

One of the most promising recent alternative to classical antibiotic treatment is the use of immunomodulators for enhancing host defence responses (Tzianabos, 2000). Several types of immunomodulators have been identified, including substances isolated and purified from natural sources such as...
plants including microorganisms (Tzianabos, 2000). An immunomodulator may be defined as a substance, biological or synthetic, which can stimulate, suppress or modulate any of the components of the immune system including both innate and adaptive arms of the immune responses (Agarwal and Singh, 1999).

Ayurvedic physicians in antiquity developed certain dietary and therapeutic measures to arrest/delay ageing and to rejuvenate whole functional dynamics of the body system. This revitalisation and rejuvenation is known as the rasayan chikitsa (rejuvenation therapy) which, in the current context, can be equated to immunomodulation and adaptogenic activity.

Traditionally, rasayana drugs are used against a plethora of seemingly diverse disorders with no pathophysiological connections according to modern medicine. Although this group of plants generally possesses strong immunomodulatory activity, only some have been investigated in detail. In this chapter, apart from an insight into the role of Ayurveda and rasayana in the modulation of the immune system, immunomodulatory activities of other medicinal plants, along with some compounds isolated from plants are reviewed. Ayurveda physicians believe in preventive therapy rather than curative and the rasayanas are the disease-preventive agents of Ayurveda (Govindarajan et al., 2005).

An attempt has also been made to identify the possible mechanism of the action of these plants in modifying the immune system. Finally we highlight areas of concern and opportunities for further research in this area.

**Macrophages and host defence**

The host defence in humans is complex and multi-levelled, involving many cell types with distinct but overlapping roles (Janeway and Medzhitov, 2002). Among the earliest cell types to respond to invasion by pathogenic organisms are the phagocytes (neutrophils, monocytes and macrophages), which are key participants in the innate immune response (Uthaisangsook et al., 2002). Macrophages are ancient and phylogenetically conserved cells in all multicellular organisms and they, together with neutrophils, represent the first line of host defence after the epithelial barrier. In addition, macrophages can function as antigen-presenting cells and interact with T lymphocytes to modulate the adaptive immune response (Birk et al., 2001). Furthermore, macrophages are involved in tissue remodelling during embryogenesis, wound repair, clearance of apoptotic cells and hematopoiesis (Klimp et al., 2002).

Macrophages perform a variety of complex microbicidal functions, including surveillance, chemotaxis, phagocytosis and destruction of targeted organisms (Beutler, 2004). The development of novel therapeutics, which could non-specifically augment the innate immune response, represents an ideal strategy for addressing current worldwide concerns of how to combat classic and emerging infectious agents.

**Classification of immunomodulation**

In clinical perspectives, immunomodulators can be classified into three categories.

- **Immunoadjuvants** are used for enhancing the efficacy of vaccines and therefore could be considered to be specific immune stimulants. Adjuvants such as monophosphoryl lipid A, immunostimulating complex (ISCOM) and QS-21 – a purified saponin from the bark of *Quillaja saponaria* Molina – and other plant extracts are under development as better and safer adjuvants (Hu et al., 2003).

- **Immunostimulants** are compounds leading predominantly to a non-specific stimulation of the immune system and are also called ‘mitogens’. Non-specific immunostimulants do not affect immunological memory cells, and as their pharmacological efficacy fades comparatively quickly, they have to be administered either at frequent intervals or continuously. This kind of acquired immunity has been called *paraimmunity*. Non-specific stimulating agents primarily influence the cellular immune system, i.e. components of the mononuclear phagocyte system, such as macrophages and granulocytes, and, secondarily,
the lymphocytes (Waksman, 1980). These agents, generally, interact not just with one but also with other types of immune competent cells, because of the close link between the non-specific and specific immune system. This is one handicap in developing effective immunostimulating agents without any side-effects, since in some cases immunostimulants may also stimulate T-suppressor cells, and thereby reduce the immune resistance. The terms immunomodulators or immunoregulators therefore very often seem to be more appropriate.

- **Immunosuppressants** are agents that could be used for control of pathological immune response in autoimmune diseases, graft rejection, graft-versus-host disease, hypersensitivity immune reaction (immediate or delayed type) and immune pathology associated with infections. The major use of these agents has been for prevention of graft rejection and treatment of autoimmune disease. Immunostimulation and immunosuppression both need to be tackled, to regulate the normal immunological functioning and the search for better agents exerting these activities is becoming a field of major interest across the world (Patwardhan et al., 1990).

Attention has been focused on some Indian medicinal plants since rasayanas have been claimed to possess immunomodulatory activity (Atal et al., 1986; Patwardhan et al., 1990; Puri et al., 1994; Balchandran and Panchanathan, 1998; Ziauddin et al., 1996).

### Immunomodulators in Ayurveda

A significant part of Ayurvedic therapeutics is preventive in nature. It aims to promote positive health so that individuals do not develop diseases; instead what Ayurveda calls Vyadhirodkhak Chamatav, the capacity of the body to resist disease, is stimulated. The rasayanas of Ayurveda are believed to be immunomodulators in modern terminology.

Ayurveda considers that an individual, when advanced in age, accumulates wastes and toxic substances in his/her cellular system, which disrupt the normal metabolism, leading to loss of immunity, causing disorders or diseases and finally hastening the ageing process. Ayurvedic experts have developed various methods to detoxify the tissues and rejuvenate the body by a special treatment regimen called rasayana chikitsa (Govindarajan et al., 2005).

The immune system is known to be involved in the aetiology of many diseases as well as in the pathophysiological mechanisms (Sharma, 1983). Ayurveda emphasises the promotion of health, a concept of strengthening host defences against different diseases (Thatte and Dahanukar, 1986), so rasayana plants are particularly recommended for the treatment of immune disorders (Wagner, 1999). The development of agents capable of moving the patients’ immune system from a state of deficiency to one of more normal function would be likely to have a significant impact on disease and the patient that it affects. Such agents would not be a cure but would control the manifestation and course of disease (Gottlieb et al., 1987). Some plants and their constituent compounds are claimed to induce paraimmunity, the non-specific immunomodulation of macrophages, granulocytes, natural killer cells and lymphocytes and complement functions (Upadhyaya, 1997).

Many studies have been undertaken to provide scientific support for the use of rasayana drugs as immunomodulators and adaptogens. Wagner (1994), after a detailed study, concluded that rasayana preparations, which act both as herbal immunostimulants and adaptogens, regulate the immunological and endocrine systems at relatively low doses, without damaging the autoregulative functions of the organisms. Rasayana drugs have been reported to treat generalised weakness (Jayaram et al., 1993) and to afford protection from cyclophosphamide-induced leucopenia (Kumar et al., 1994).

### Medicinal plants used in rasayana treatment as immunomodulators

Many medicinal plants classified as rasayanas in Ayurveda are believed to be useful in strengthening the immune system of an individual (Patwardhan et al., 1990). There is therefore a need to evaluate the potential of Ayurvedic remedies as adjuvants to counteract side-effects of modern therapy and compare the
cost-effectiveness of certain therapies (Dahanukar and Thatte, 1997). Immunomodulation, especially using rasayana drugs, could provide an alternative to conventional chemotherapy under the conditions of impaired immune responsiveness or following organ transplantation (Thatte and Dahanukar, 1997).

This concept of using rasayanas for health also gains a little more credibility when we realize that herbal antioxidants in Ayurvedic materials such as Shilajit and Chyavanprash awaleha exhibit significant immunomodulatory activities. Indian medicinal plants are a rich source of substances that are claimed to induce paraimmunity (Ganguly and Sainis, 2001; Ganguly et al., 2001; Hadden, 1993). Similar immunomodulatory properties have also been reported in natural products from various plants from other countries (Wagner et al., 1988; Wagner, 1990; Pulhmann et al., 1992; Sendl et al., 1993). Agarwal and Singh (1999) have reviewed Indian medicinal plants that have immunomodulatory properties and a short summary of some of these follows.

**Review of some plants with immunomodulatory activity**

Certain medicinal plants are believed to promote positive health and maintain organic resistance against infection by re-establishing body equilibrium and conditioning the body tissues (Bhagwan Dash, 1978). It is tempting to speculate that the restorative and rejuvenating power of these herbal remedies might be due to their action on the immune system (Bellanti, 1978) and some of the medicinal plants are believed to enhance the natural resistance of the body to infections (Atal et al., 1986). A plethora of plant-derived materials (proteins, lectins, polysaccharides, etc.) have been shown to stimulate the immune system (Tzianabos, 2000). Some of the plants with established immunomodulatory activity are Viscum album, Panax ginseng, Asparagus racemosus, Azadirachta indica, Tinospora cordifolia, Polygala senega, Ocimum sanctum, Withania somnifera among others (SaiRam et al., 1997; Estrada et al., 2000; Mediratta et al., 2002).

There are a number of plants that have been reported to have immunomodulatory activity; Table 16.1 summarises some important rasayana plants mentioned in Puri (2003).

Apart from total plant extracts, there are also some particular groups of compounds isolated from plants (both lower and higher) which have been reported as having potential immunomodulatory activity, and these are considered below.

**Plant polysaccharides as immunomodulators**

Many polysaccharides isolated from higher plants is considered to be biological response modifiers and have been reported to enhance various immune responses, such as complement activation, proliferation of lymphocytes and stimulation of macrophages. The use of immunomodulators derived from plants is attractive because it allows for enhanced host-derived mechanisms, while not involving the use of microorganism-specific therapeutics such as antibiotics. Arabinogalactans are a major group of polysaccharides reported to possess potent immunomodulatory activity.

The arabinogalactans can be subdivided into two main structural types. Arabinogalactan type I (AG-I) are arabinosyl-substituted derivatives of linear 1,4-linked β-D-galactopyranosyl units. Arabinosyl and galactosyl units can be linked via position 3 along the main chain. AG-I is found as ramified regions of rhamnogalacturonan backbones in pectin complexes. The second group, arabinogalactan type II (AG-II), consist of highly branched polysaccharides with ramified chains of 1,3-linked and 1,6-linked β-D-galactopyranosyl units, the former predominantly in the interior and the latter in the exterior chains. The arabinosyl units might be attached through position 3 of the 1,6-linked galactosyl side chains. In addition to arabinose and galactose, AGII contains a range of other monosaccharides, including glucuronic acid and its 4-O-methyl ether (Huisman et al., 2001). AG-II may occur in a complex family of proteoglycans known as arabinogalactan-proteins (AGP) (Willats et al., 2001) or be covalently linked to a rhamnogalacturonan type I backbone (Vincken et al., 2003).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plant</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Activity with route of administration/dose</th>
<th>Reported mechanism of action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acorus calamus L.</td>
<td>Araceae</td>
<td>Immunosuppressive activity of Ethanolic extract of rhizome (Mehrotra, 2003)</td>
<td>Inhibited proliferation of mitogen (PHA) and antigen (purified protein derivative)-stimulated (PBMCs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpinia galanga</td>
<td>Scitamineae</td>
<td>Immunostimulating activity of hot water polysaccharide extracts or the root powder at 50 and 25 mg/kg body weight</td>
<td>Stimulating effect on the RES and increased the number of peritoneal exudates cells (PEC), and spleen cells of mice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anacyclus pyrethrum DC</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Immunostimulating activity of hot water polysaccharide extracts of the root powder at 50 and 25 mg/kg body weight</td>
<td>Stimulating effect on the reticuloendothelial system (RES) and increased the number of peritoneal exudate cells (PEC), and spleen cells of mice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Immunostimulatory activity of the methanolic extract of diterpenes (andrographolide, 14-deoxy-andrographolide and 14-deoxy-11, 12-didehydroandrographolide) (Ajay Kumar et al., 2004; Pannossian et al., 2002)</td>
<td>Enhances proliferation and interleukin-2 (IL-2); induction of human peripheral blood lymphocytes. Andrographolide also causes activation and proliferation of immunocompetent cells as well on the production of key cytokines and immune activation markers (Ajay Kumar et al., 2004; Pannossian et al., 2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argyreia speciosa Sweet</td>
<td>Convolvulaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of ethanolic extract of root at doses 50, 100 and 200 mg/kg body weight (Ghokale et al., 2003)</td>
<td>Potentiates the DTH reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asparagus racemosus Wild.</td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Immunoadjuvant potential of aqueous root extract at 100 mg/ kg for 15 days (Gautham et al., 2004)</td>
<td>Immunoadjuvant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boerhaavia diffusa L.</td>
<td>Nyctagenaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulation by the Ethanolic extracts of roots at 100 and 500 μg/mL (Mehrotra et al., 2002)</td>
<td>Pretreatment with asparagus caused leucocytosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centella asiatica (L.) Urban</td>
<td>Burseraceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulating effect of Boswellic acid (Sharma et al., 1988, 1996)</td>
<td>Effect on cell mediated humoral components</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 16.1 Selected Indian medicinal plants with immunomodulatory activity, and their part, extract and dose, with mechanism of action (continued overleaf)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plant</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Activity with route of administration/dose</th>
<th>Reported mechanism of action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| *Crocus sativus* L.   | Iridiaceae        | In vitro immune-activation of pteroglycans at concentration of 10–1000 ng/mL (Escribano *et al*., 1999)   | WBC count and also F ratio of the phagocytic index  
Rapid activation of protein kinase C and NF-κB  
Increase in humoral antibody (HA) titre, DTH and levels of WBC  
Stimulates both humoral and CMI responses by enhancement of HA titre and DTH  
Suppressing both cell-mediated (CMI) and humoral components of the immune system |
| *Curculigo orchioides* Gaertn. | Amaryllidaceae   | Immunostimulatory effect of the methanolic extract (100 and 200 mg/kg body weight) of the rhizome (Bafna and Mishra 2006)  
Immunostimulant activity of the purified glycoside fraction of the ethyl acetate extract (Lakshmi *et al*., 2003) | Immunostimulatory activity by enhanced neutrophil functioning  
Reduced the TBC and increases neutrophil and lymphocyte counts with enhanced phagocytic activity and phagocyti index. Increase in antibody titre  
Modulates both humoral and CMI responsiveness which may be mediated by GABAergic pathways |
| *Hemidesmus indicus* R. Br. | Asclepiadaceae  | Immunomodulatory activity of the 95% alcoholic extract at 100 mg/kg body weight (Atal *et al*., 1986)  
Immunomodulatory potential of seed oil at 3 mL/kg (Mediratta *et al*., 2002)  
Immunotherapeutic potential of aqueous leaf extract (Mukherjee *et al*., 2005). | Immunostimulatory activity by enhanced neutrophil functioning  
Reduced the TBC and increases neutrophil and lymphocyte counts with enhanced phagocytic activity and phagocyti index. Increase in antibody titre  
Modulates both humoral and CMI responsiveness which may be mediated by GABAergic pathways |
| *Ocimum sanctum* L.  | Labiatae          | Immunomodulatory effects of powder at 200 mg/kg body weight for 21 days (Adhvaryu *et al*., 2007) | Immunostimulatory activity by enhanced neutrophil functioning  
Reduced the TBC and increases neutrophil and lymphocyte counts with enhanced phagocytic activity and phagocyti index. Increase in antibody titre  
Modulates both humoral and CMI responsiveness which may be mediated by GABAergic pathways |
| *Phoenix dactylifera* L. | Palmae            | Immunostimulatory immunoregulatory role of methanolic and aqueous suspension of leaves at 100 mg/kg (Godhwani *et al*., 1988)  
activity of the 50% alcoholic fruit extract at 25 mg/kg body weight for 7 days (Puri *et al*., 2000)  
Crude extract, as well as the red pigment had immunoactivating activity (Thakur *et al*., 1989)  
Immunomodulatory activity of the dried fruit powder as suspension at 20 mg/kg body weight (Suresh and Vasudevan, 1994)  
Immunostimulatory activity of the 50% alcoholic extract of leaf (Sharma *et al*., 1994)  
Immunomodulatory activity of the biopolymeric fraction at 12.5, 25 and 50 mg/kg body weight for 14 days (Gupta *et al*., 2006) | Stimulating humoral immunity  
Augments natural cell-mediated cytotoxicity  
Enhanced the non-specific immune response characterised by an increase in macrophage migration index  
Enhanced humoral immune response, phagocytic functions of the cell |
| *Phyllanthus amarus* Aschum & Thonn. | Euphorbiaceae  | Crude extract, as well as the red pigment had immunoactivating activity (Thakur *et al*., 1989) |  |
| *Phyllanthus emblica* L. | Euphorbiaceae    | Immunomodulatory activity of the dried fruit powder as suspension at 20 mg/kg body weight (Suresh and Vasudevan, 1994) |  |
| *Picrorhiza kurrooa* Royle ex Benth. | Scrophulariaceae | Immunostimulant activity of Picroliv, the iridoid glycoside fraction at 10 mg/kg for 7 days (Puri *et al*., 1992)  
Immunostimulatory activity of the 50% alcoholic extract of leaf (Sharma *et al*., 1994)  
Immunomodulatory activity of the biopolymeric fraction at 12.5, 25 and 50 mg/kg body weight for 14 days (Gupta *et al*., 2006) | Enhanced the non-specific immune response characterised by an increase in macrophage migration index  
Enhanced humoral immune response, phagocytic functions of the cell |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of plant</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Activity with route of administration/dose</th>
<th>Reported mechanism of action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Piper longum</em> L.</td>
<td>Piperaceae</td>
<td>Immunoregulatory potential of ethyl acetate extract of fruits and piperinic acid at 10, 20, 40 and 80 mg/kg body weight (Devan et al., 2007) Immunomodulatory activity of alcoholic extract of the fruits (10 mg/dose per animal) and piperine (1.14 mg/dose per animal) (Sunila and Kuttan, 2004)</td>
<td>Increases in the proliferation of lymphocytes and cytokine levels (IL-4 and IFN-γ) in serum inhibition of mitogen induced human PBMC proliferation, mRNA transcripts of IL-2 (ConA) and TNFα, IL-1β and iNOS May be due to the combined action of humoral and CMI responses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prunus amygdalus Batsch</em></td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Immunostimulatory activity of the 50% alcoholic seed extract at 25 mg/kg body weight for 7 days (Puri et al., 2000)</td>
<td>Stimulating both CMI and humoral immunity in BALBc mice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Semecarpus anacardium</em> L.f.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the nut extracts (alcoholic) at 1 mg/mL in mononuclear cells of normal and rheumatoid arthritis patients (Singh et al., 2006)</td>
<td>Inhibition of proinflammatory cytokine production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Sphaeranthus indicus</em> L.</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Protective effect of the methanolic fraction (200 and 400 mg/kg body weight) of the methanolic extract of the flower heads against cyclophosphamide-induced suppression of humoral immunity (Bafna and Mishra 2006) An immunostimulant sesquiterpene glycoside sphaeranthanolide (Shekhan et al., 1990)</td>
<td>Influences both humoral and CMI and offers protection against immunosuppression induced by the cytotoxic agent cyclophosphamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Terminalia chebula</em> Retz.</td>
<td>Combretaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulation studies of the 80% aqueous ethanolic extract at 400, 600 and 800 mg/kg body weight (Sohni and Bhatt, 1996)</td>
<td>Enhanced humoral immunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tinospora cordifolia</em> (Wild.) Miers ex Hook.f. and Thomas</td>
<td>Menispermaceae</td>
<td>Immunopotentiating compounds syringin, cordial, cordiside and cordifolioside (100 μg) (Kapil and Sharma, 1997) Immunomodulatory activity of the water and ethanolic extract of <em>T. cordifolia</em> at 100 mg/kg body weight (Manjrekar et al., 2000) Immunostimatory activity of stem extract (75% methanol) at 200 mg/kg body weight (Mathew and Kuttan, 1999) An immunologically active arabinogalactan from (Chintalwara et al., 1999)</td>
<td>Syringin and cordial inhibited the in vitro immunohaemolysis of antibody-coated sheep erythrocytes while cordiside, cordifolioside A and cordiol caused macrophage activation Increased humoral response Polyclonal mitogenic activity against B cells Immunosuppression by inhibition of cyclophosphamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Withania somnifera</em> L.</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory role of root powder (2% aqueous suspension) at 1000 mg/kg body weight on experimental induced inflammation (Rasool and Varalakshmi, 2006)</td>
<td>Potent inhibitory activity towards the complement system, mitogen-induced lymphocyte proliferation and delayed-type hypersensitivity reaction (DTH) hence immunosuppressive. Also counteraction of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of plant</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Activity with route of administration/dose</td>
<td>Reported mechanism of action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zingiber officinale Roscoe</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Immunostimulatory activity of the 50% alcoholic of rhizome extract at 25 mg/kg body weight (Agarwal et al., 1999)</td>
<td>Stimulating both CMI and humoral immunity in BALBc mice (Puri et al., 2000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the root powder and extract at 100 mg/kg body weight (Ziauddin et al., 1996)</td>
<td>Influences both CMI response and non-specific proliferation of T lymphocytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunomodulatory drug of the root powder and extract at 100 mg/kg body weight (Ziauddin et al., 1996)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the total cyclophosphamide, azathioprin, or prednisolone induced immunosuppression (Rasool and Varalakshmi, 2006; Agarwal, 1999; Ziauddin et al., 1996)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the volatile oil of ginger 0.125, 0.25 and 0.5 g/kg body weight (Zhou et al., 2006)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aconitum heterophyllum Wall.</td>
<td>Ranunculaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulating activity of the ethanolic extract of the rhizome at 100 mg/kg (Atal et al., 1986)</td>
<td>Enhanced phagocytic index and inhibits humoral component of immune system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capparis zeylanica L.</td>
<td>Capparidaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the alcoholic and aqueous extract of the leaves at 150–300 mg/kg (Ghule et al., 2006)</td>
<td>Prevented myelosuppression in mice treated with cyclophosphamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holorrhena antidysentrica Wall.</td>
<td>Apocynaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the ethanolic extract of the seeds at 100 mg/kg (Atal et al., 1986)</td>
<td>Enhanced phagocytic index and inhibits humoral component of immune system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the volatile oil Influences both CMI response and non-specific proliferation of T lymphocytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyppophae rhamnoides L.</td>
<td>Elaeagnaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory effect of the alcoholic leaf and fruits at 500 μg/ml (Geetha et al., 2002)</td>
<td>Inhibits chromium-induced lymphocyte proliferation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mangifera indica L.</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the alcoholic extract of stem bark containing 2.6% mangiferin at 50–800 mg/kg for 5 days (Makare et al., 2001)</td>
<td>Increase in HA titre and DTH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunomodulatory effect of proteins ranging from 94–110 kDa at 10 μg/mL (Haq et al., 1999)</td>
<td>Suppressive for IL-8 production either with non-activated or with activated PBMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyctanthus arbor-tristris L.</td>
<td>Oleaceae</td>
<td>Immunostimulant activity of the 50% ethanolic extract of the seeds at 25 mg/kg (Puri et al., 1994)</td>
<td>Stimulation of antigen-specific and non-specific immunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the ethanolic extract of the leaves at 100 mg/kg (Atal et al., 1986)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocimum gratissimum L.</td>
<td>Labitae</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory activity of the ethanolic extract of the leaves at 100 mg/kg (Atal et al., 1986)</td>
<td>Enhanced phagocytic index without affecting humoral component of immune system or CMI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
is mainly AG-II that has been reported as having immunomodulating activity (Yamada and Kiyohara, 1999).

S3A, a rhamnogalacturonan type I pectin isolated from *Centella asiatica*, contains L-rhamnose, arabinose, galactose, glucose and galacturonic acid in a molar ratio of 1.0 : 0.6 : 1.5 : 0.2 : 1.1, and has been found to have a backbone composed mainly of the disaccharide repeat unit (\(\beta/4\)-a-D-GalpA-(10/2)-a-1-L-Rhap-(10/1). It has no immunological activity but its derivatives had immunostimulatory activity to some extent (Wang *et al*., 2005).

**Plant flavonoids as immunomodulators**

Flavonoids are also important factors for growth, development and immunity. Approximately 1 g of different flavonoids is taken in through a balanced diet every day. Many flavonoids are endowed with biological effects. The vasoprotective, anti-inflammatory, antiallergic, antimicrobial, antihepatotoxic, antiosteoporotic and antineoplastic actions of flavonoids are well documented (Havsteen, 2002). Because of their multiple bioactivities, the flavonoids are included among the natural ‘biological response modifiers’. This suggests that their structure can be modified to increase or decrease their biological activity. The immunopharmacological activities of flavonoids are complex and are still not completely understood. Findings in vitro do not always agree with observations in vivo. Moreover, the effects of different flavonoids may be antagonistic; in some cases they are immunosuppressive and in others, immunostimulatory (Havsteen, 2002). Numerous flavonoids have been seen to influence the function of enzyme systems that are critically involved in the immune response, and in the generation of inflammatory processes, especially in the transduction of cellular activation signals.

Flavonoids have been shown to inhibit the release of lysosomal enzymes in polymorphonuclear leucocytes from stimulated rabbits, quercetin being the most active. The metabolic activation of phagocytes during phagocytosis, or other stimulatory events, causes the activation of a NADPH oxidase – a complex enzymatic system with a high molecular weight, found on cell membranes, that catalyses NADPH oxidation by atmospheric oxygen to produce a superoxide radical and other reactive products of oxygen. An alternative pathway in polymorphonuclear leucocytes leads to the production of hypochlorous acid – a potent antimicrobial that works through hydrogen peroxide in a reaction catalysed by myeloperoxidase. Hypochlorous acid reacts with free amine groups on different organic molecules to produce chloroamines. The latter mediates different immunomodulant effects of polymorphonuclear leucocytes on both acute and chronic inflammations (Marcinkiewicz, 1997).

**Conclusions**

Despite the promise that they offer in new therapeutic approaches, immunomodulatory agents
such as monoclonal antibodies and intravenous immunoglobulins are very expensive (Wybran, 1988). In such circumstances the variety of natural substances and more or less well-defined microbial extracts in the management of diseases with immunological imbalance are an attractive possible alternative. It is still too early to conclude whether they are viable alternatives to existing therapy, and much needs to be done in terms of testing for their efficacy and safety. There is a clear need for a better understanding of their immunological profile, administration and dosage. This last factor is very important, since high doses tend to be immunosuppressive and low doses of the same tend to become immunostimulatory. Finally it should be noted that most in-vitro or in-vivo models are not adequate or not simple enough to ensure that the same can be used as a drug.

Although there are several reviews and a number of publications in the field of immunopharmacology and traditional medicines, there are some areas that still need attention. In the Indian context, there are some rasayana plants that have been traditionally used but have not been pharmacologically screened for their immunopotential, e.g. Hygrophila spinosa, Amanita muscaria, Bombax ceiba, Orchis latifolia, Celastrus paniculatus, Convulvulus pluricaulis and Ferula foetida.

Similarly, there are a number of preparations or formulations, which are sold in the name of rasayana, the activity or the use of which has not been established. Following in-vitro testing, and perhaps chemical examination of such plants and products, the clinical efficacy needs to be scientifically validated.

References


Panossian A, Davtyan T, Gkassyan N et al. (2002). Effect


Healing of wounds is a natural phenomenon but it may lack quality, promptness and aesthetics (Ramesh, 1993). Research on wound healing has only recently received much attention in modern biomedical research. Extracts and new molecules from natural sources are being investigated for the management of various types of wound, with particular attention being paid to agents used in different traditional systems of medicine.

An insight on the global ancient historical roots revealed that the earliest medical writings deal extensively with wound care. Seven of the 48 case reports included in the Smith Papyrus (1700 BC) describe wounds and their management and the ancient physicians of Egypt, Greece, India and Europe developed methods of treatment for wounds, including the removal of foreign bodies, suturing, covering wounds with clean materials and protecting injured tissues from corrosive agents.

A ‘wound’ can be defined as a bodily injury caused by physical means with disruption of the normal continuity of the structure (Saraf and Pandey, 1996). Wounds can be classified into three types:

- non-specific
- specific
- malignant.

A non-specific wound can again be classified as:

- traumatic
- inflammatory
- nutritional or trophic.

A specific wound is mainly caused by some specific infection and/or a specific internal cause. Clinically,
healing of wounds occurs in two ways: healing by first intention (primary healing) and healing by second intention (secondary healing or healing by granulation).

Wound healing involves a complex series of interactions between different cell types, cytokine mediators, and the extracellular matrix. The phases of normal wound healing include haemostasis, inflammation, proliferation, and remodelling. Different phases of wound healing are recognised, although the wound healing process is continuous, with each phase overlapping the next.

Because successful wound healing requires adequate blood and nutrients to be supplied to the site of damage, the overall health and nutritional status of the patient influences the outcome of the damaged tissue.

The objective in wound management is to heal the wound in the shortest time possible, with minimal pain and discomfort to, and scarring of, the patient. At the site of wound closure, a flexible and fine scar with high-tensile strength is desired. Research into the complex dynamics of tissue repair has identified several nutritional cofactors involved in tissue regeneration, including vitamins A, C, and E, zinc, arginine, glutamine and glucosamine (Mackay and Miller, 2003).

There is no drug in clinical use that can directly act as a wound-healing drug although antibiotics, steroids and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs are used for the treatment of wounds, but they have many drawbacks.

Natural products of diverse origin from medicinal plants, animal products, metals and minerals are reported to have potential wound-healing activity, with medicinal plants being the main materials used. This chapter elaborates on some medicinal plants traditionally used for wound healing, with special reference to pharmacognosy, phytochemistry, pharmacology and clinical effects.

Research in the field of wound healing has increased greatly since the discovery of growth factors. Brown et al. (1989), probably first described the use of growth factors, especially epidermal growth factor (EGF), for the healing of wounds in rat. However, this agent is not only expensive but may result in cytotoxic effects.

Selection criteria of medicinal plants

Traditional leads

Ayurvedic system of medicine

Many wound-healing medicinal plants are mentioned in Ayurveda, one of the Indian traditional systems of medicine, designated with the term Vranaropaka. About 164 medicinal plants are mentioned in various Ayurvedic classic texts – such as Charaka Samhita, Sushruta Samhita, Astanga Hridaya and Bhabaprakash Nighantu – for their wound-healing properties. Some of the important medicinal plants are shown in Table 17.1 as well as scientifically evaluated to some extent (Biswas and Mukherjee, 2003).

Unani system of medicine

Unani medicine originated in Greece and, as a result of Islamic influence, was later established in India. Description of wounds occurs in the Unani system of medicine in a scattered manner but, in general, the term Ghao is described for wounds (Singh, 1985), but there is also a description of corneal ulcer under the term Kuru-hul-en. Many important formulations are found in Unani texts such as Dakhili, Tamrikh Janghar, Marham Ajib, Marham Safedaw Kakuri, Marham Sartan and Marham Syaha (Singh, 1979). In almost all Unani formulations, the drugs are prepared in an ointment base (Marham). Very few of the medicinal plants mentioned in Unani have been scientifically tested for their wound-healing activity but there are reports on Cordia dichotoma (Kuppast and Nayak, 2006) and henna leaves (Lawsonia inermis) in animal experimental models (Sakarkar et al., 2004).

South Indian traditional folklore

India has a rich ethnic diversity and other ‘tribal’ medical systems exist. An ethnobotanical survey has been made in the Kanchipuram district, Tamil Nadu, India which includes information on plants used for wound healing by the local traditional healers (Table 17.2) (Muthu et al., 2006). Santals are the tribal people of the eastern part of India, living in the area known as Santal Parganas. They maintain their health and cure diseases using only natural remedies.
The experts in medical management amongst the Santals are known as Ojha.

Many plants are reported for managing various types of wounds under the traditional language, e.g. Kadar nari rehef (Asparagus racemosus) for Jari phutausk (wounds in the tongue), Nim (Azadirachta indica) for Ghao (open sores), Loa lore (Ficus glomerata) for Gand Ghao (adenitis), Akona rehef (Calotropis gigantea) for Goda ghao (sores on the leg), Lal Chandan (Pterocarpus santalinus) for Pachiari Ghao (burns).

Very little scientific study has so far been carried out on these plants for wound-healing activity, complicated by the difficulty of understanding the

### Table 17.1 List of important botanicals used in Ayurveda for wound healing activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sl. No.</th>
<th>Botanical name</th>
<th>Common name</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Parts used</th>
<th>Indications in Ayurveda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Aegle marmelos Corr.</td>
<td>Bilwa</td>
<td>Rutaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Diabetic wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Albizia lebbeck Benth.</td>
<td>Shirish</td>
<td>Leguminaceae</td>
<td>Stem bark</td>
<td>Septic wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Azadirachta indica A. Juss</td>
<td>Nim</td>
<td>Meliaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Berberis aristata DC.</td>
<td>Daruwaridra</td>
<td>Berberidaceae</td>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>Septic wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Calotropis gigantea Linn.</td>
<td>Rajarka</td>
<td>Asclepiadaceae</td>
<td>Latex</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Calotropis procera Ait.</td>
<td>Akanda</td>
<td>Asclepiadaceae</td>
<td>Latex</td>
<td>Fistula-in-ano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Cedrus deodara Roxb.</td>
<td>Devdaru</td>
<td>Anonaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Syphilitic ulcers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Centella asiatica Linn.</td>
<td>Mandukaparni</td>
<td>Umbelligerae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Curcuma longa Linn.</td>
<td>Haridra</td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Tuber</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Cynodon dactylon L.</td>
<td>Durva</td>
<td>Gramineae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Embelia ribes Burm.</td>
<td>Bidanga</td>
<td>Myrsinaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Euphorbia neriifolia L.</td>
<td>Snuhi</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Latex</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Ficus benghalensis L.</td>
<td>Vad</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Stem bark</td>
<td>Wounds, abscess, syphilitic wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Ficus racemosa Linn.</td>
<td>Jagyadumur</td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Glycyrrhiza glabra L.</td>
<td>Jasthimadhu</td>
<td>Leguminoseae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Jasminum auriculatum Vahl.</td>
<td>Juthika</td>
<td>Oleaceae</td>
<td>Flower</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Moringa oleifera Lam. Syn.</td>
<td>Sajina</td>
<td>Moringaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Wounds, abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Papaver somnifera L.</td>
<td>Ahiphena</td>
<td>Papaveraceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Pterocarpus santalinus Linn.</td>
<td>Raktachandan</td>
<td>Papilionaceae</td>
<td>Heart wood</td>
<td>Wounds, syphilitic wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Rubea cordifolia L.</td>
<td>Manjistha</td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Septic wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Shorea robusta Gaertn. f.</td>
<td>Shala</td>
<td>Dipterocarpaceae</td>
<td>Resin</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Symplocos racemosa Roxb.</td>
<td>Lodhraka</td>
<td>Symplocaceae</td>
<td>Stem bark</td>
<td>Wounds, diabetic wounds, abcess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Tinospora cordifolia Linn.</td>
<td>Guilancha</td>
<td>Menispermaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Vateria indica Linn.</td>
<td>Sarja</td>
<td>Dipterocarpaceae</td>
<td>Resin</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Withania somnifera Dunal</td>
<td>Aswagandha</td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Wounds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
language of the Santals. Bodding (1986) is the only researcher who has studied in detail the rituals and medicines used by Santals, producing a useful text that can act as a base for ethnopharmacological studies.

**Traditional leads of Peru**

In Latin America, the use of traditional remedies is still very strong and the World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that it comprises about 40% of all healthcare in the region. Peru is a good example and has a high biodiversity; 21,462 species of plants and animals being reported, 5,855 of them endemic (Instituto Nacional de Estadística e Informática, 2005).

There is a long history of many plant species being used in traditional medicine and Peru’s National Program in Complementary Medicine and the Pan American Health Organization recently compared complementary medicine to allopathic medicine in clinics and hospitals within the Peruvian social security system. This survey included a wound-healing study and revealed that general inflammation of the body was mentioned in 63 applications (2.5%), and 59 plant species (11.5%) were used for such conditions. In addition, throat and tonsil infections were treated with seven species (1.4%). Wound infections and bleeding resulting from accidents are very common in the northern Peruvian work environment, and are a major concern, especially in rural areas. A total of 8.4% of all plants (43 species) were used for the treatment of wounds and an additional 12 species (2.3%) were used in applications which involved the treatment of bleeding and haemorrhages (Bussman and Sharon, 2006).

**Phytochemical leads**

Numerous bioactive plant compounds have been tested for their wound-healing potential in clinical application. Among the most frequently studied are resveratrol, a polyphenol present in red wine and grape seed, epigallocatechin-3-gallate from green tea and curcumin from Curcuma longa (Dulak, 2005). Embelin, a quinone from the leaves of Embelia ribes,
has been found to increase cross-linking of collagen fibres with an absence of monocytes (Kumara Swamy et al., 2007). Three fractions from a hydroalcohol extract of the bark of *Terminalia arjuna* have been assessed for the healing of rat dermal wounds using in-vivo models. Fraction I, consisting mainly of tannins, showed a maximum increase in the tensile strength of incision wounds and also displayed antimicrobial activity against tested microorganisms such as *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Escherichia coli*, *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus pyogenes* (Chaudhari and Mengi, 2006).

The wound-healing effect of *Opuntia ficus-indica* was reported to be due to the presence of polysaccharides (molecular weight ranging from 10^4–10^6 Da) (Trombetta et al., 2006). Several species of *Croton* (Euphorbiaceae) are used by Indian and Mestizo populations of Peru and Ecuador for the purpose of acceleration of wound healing. The alkaloid taspine was isolated from *Croton lechleri* of the Amazon rainforest and was tested in vivo using an incision wound model in rats, as well as in the in-vitro fibroblast proliferation assay. The in-vivo study with taspine revealed that there was a significant (P < 0.001) gain of tensile strength (＞600 g/mm²) with taspine at a dose of 250 μg after 12 days of treatment, and in vitro there was a significant (P < 0.05) increase in proliferation of fibroblast cells (6 × 10⁴) with taspine at a dose of 100 μg (Porras-Reyes et al., 1993).

**Evaluation of wound-healing medicinal plants**

*Botanical and phytochemical evaluation*

The necessity of correct botanical identification and the use of phytochemical constituents is discussed in Chapter 27.

*Phytochemical profile*

It is essential to define a phytochemical profile before any pharmacological or clinical studies are carried out. Chromatography is the most important technique for doing this but simple tests for phytochemical groups are sometimes used.

**Preparation of plant extracts and dosage form**

There are many techniques for preparation of a standardised plant extract. Most polar components of medicinal plants can be obtained by conventional aqueous or 80% ethanol extract, by soaking the coarse powder of the plant in the required amount of solvent (distilled water or 80% ethanol) for about 24 h. Extraction without applying heat will avoid decomposition of many components present. Most of the research on wound-healing plant drugs has been performed with these two types of extracts. They are mostly applied topically as 5–10% w/w in ointment base but sometimes by the oral or intraperitoneal route.

**Investigations into toxicity**

Dermal toxicity studies should be performed for topical applications of plant extracts respectively. Acute dermal toxicity/irritation can be induced by topical application of the solution prepared from the plant product and compared with known dermal toxic chemicals such as 0.1% dinitrochlorobenzene (DNCB) in dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO). The erythema produced within 24 h should be noted and compared with known agents on the basis of the erythema and its severity as assessed by an arbitrary scoring system (http://www.rosecityarchery.com).

**Pharmacological approach**

Wound healing is the process of repair and regeneration that follows injury to the skin and other soft tissues. Initially there is an inflammatory response and the cells below the dermis begin to increase collagen production. Finally the gap is filled up with the regeneration of epithelial tissue. There are three stages to the process of wound healing:

- inflammation
- proliferation
- remodelling.
The need to verify traditional claims and to understand the detail underlying the mechanisms of wound healing by various plants has prompted researchers to develop specific wound models in animals and also in-vitro tests.

**Selection of animals for wound-healing research**

Wound-healing research has traditionally been categorised as either basic experimental animal work or clinical human research, although there are models that are applicable to both categories. Clinical research studies are normally based on results from experimental research, so the successful treatment of a patient's problem wound is therefore based on knowledge from both experimental and clinical research. Animal models provide invaluable information for the human wound-healing response but problems may arise with the extrapolation, interpretation and implementation of the results to clinical situations. A good example is the use of growth factors, which have shown beneficial effects on healing in animals but until now have shown much less of an effect clinically.

The most important relevant animal model which can be considered for wound-healing research is the rat, as shown by Sourla *et al.* (2000) who observed that there are many similarities between the physiological nature of the skin of rats and human beings. One problem is that no animal models of chronic wounds such as venous leg ulcers, diabetic ulcers or pressure ulcers are presently available. For these reasons the use of human models, despite the ethical and methodological problems, is preferable in wound-healing research (Gottrup, 2001).

**Animal wound models**

Prior to infliction of wounds, preferably over the dorsal area of the animal (rat), the region needs to be depilated and cleaned well with 70% ethanol. Permissible anaesthetic agents such as ketamine in a scheduled dose are injected before the artificial production of a wound. It is also important that all experiments should be approved by an ethical committee and carried out in accordance with international guidelines for humane use of animals in research.

**Excision wound model**

The excision wound model can be used in Sprague-Dawley rats following the method of Morton and Malon (1972). It is the most relevant model to human wounds because of the wide margin of wounds with full thickness usually performed with punch biopsy instruments of specific diameter. This model is the best because the assessment of physical and biochemical characters can be done clearly and it enables measurement of the wound contraction size (mm²), healing period, tensile strength (g), estimation of tissue DNA, RNA, protein or hydroxyproline as well as histopathological examination.

Detailed scientific pharmacological evaluation was reported by Rasik *et al.* (1996) with the Indian medicinal plant *Euphorbia nerifolia* L. in guinea pigs, and work was performed using *Butea monosperma* on full-thickness, excised wounds (Sumitra *et al*., 2005). Most of the work on excised wounds is performed by cutting a section of a particular area on the back of the animal with simple scissors and a scalpel (Diwan *et al*., 1982; Hegde *et al*., 2005). Interesting and promising results have been obtained with *Tridax procumbens*, *Cassia alata*, *Eleusine coracan* and *Paspalum scorbiculatum*.

This method has some drawbacks because it could hamper the maintenance of the wound edge as well as the measurement of the wound-contraction area. The best way to inflict the excision wound is with standard punch biopsy instruments such as Acu-punch (Acu derm Inc., Florida, USA).

**Incision-wound model**

The method of Ehrlich *et al.* (1968) is commonly used where an incision-wound model is inflicted. This model is performed initially only to assess the wound-healing activity of unknown medicinal plants prior to detailed study. The incision model is the best for understanding the breaking strength of the wound following application of the plant extract. Several medicinal plants from a variety of geographical areas were all tested in this model to evaluate their wound-healing effect, particularly by measuring tensile strength and all gave significant results for
improvement. Active plants included Ocimum sanctum (Shetty et al., 2006), the Mexican medicinal plant Hylocereus undatus (Perez et al., 2005) and the Peruvian medicinal plant Anredera diffusa (Moura-Letts et al., 2006).

**Dead-space wound model**

This is a special technique for the infliction of wounds in animal models and applicable especially for the assessment of the capability of the formation of granulation tissue, which is responsible for the formation of the wound bed, as well as remodelling of wounds. Dead-space wounds can be produced in animals under light anaesthesia by inserting a sterilised cylindrical glass pith (2.5 cm × 0.3 cm) on either side of the dorsal paravertebral surface of the rat (Turner, 1965). After a certain time, granulation tissue deposits over the pith and is collected, dried and finally weighed. The greater the mass of deposited tissue, the better is the indication for healing capability.

Several medicinal plants were found to have potent activity by this technique, e.g. the Indian medicinal plant Vernonia arborea HK given orally at a dose of 30 mg/mL and simultaneously by local application in ointment form at a concentration of 5% (w/w) was found to generate a significant amount of granulation tissue (Manjunathan et al., 2005).

In another study, the fresh juice of the leaves of Tridax procumbens, at a daily dose of 1 mL/kg by intraperitoneal route for 8 days, was administered to rats with a dead-space wound, along with a separate study on incised and excised wounds. The result showed decreased levels of granuloma (32.00 ± 3.00) compared with the control group (57.00 ± 4.50) indicating that the plant could prevent post-healing keloid formation (Diwan et al., 1982). Therefore, the dead-space wound model reflects the therapeutic efficacy of a drug as well as its potentiality in prevention of post-healing hazards.

**Diabetic wound model**

The diabetic wound model is important in evaluating any medicinal plant for its activity in chronic and complicated wounds. Usually this is performed in streptozotocin-induced (65 mg/kg body weight in citrate buffer at pH 4.2) adult, diabetic rats. Excised wounds are produced in the conventional way as described earlier and efficacy of plants can be assessed following the conventional physical, biochemical, histological and molecular parameters. The advantage of this model is that the plants that exhibit activity in this model can be considered to be ideal candidates for the repair of normal secondary wounds as well as diabetic wounds in clinical practice. The medicinal plants thus far showing activity in diabetic wound models are Aloe vera (Chithra et al., 1998), Pterocarpus santalinus (Biswas et al., 2004) and Hylocereus undata (Perez et al., 2005).

**Observation criteria**

**Physical parameters**

**Wound-contraction size**

Measurement of wound-contraction size is an important physical marker of healing. This can be done by tracing around the wound during the period of treatment. From these traces, areas can be determined and expressed in square millimetres. Biswas et al. evaluated the effect of P. santalinus on wound-contraction size in punch, burn and diabetic wound models using the same method (Biswas, 2004). It was observed from this study that the plant extract was able to contract the wounds significantly (P < 0.05) in all three models. The ethanol extract of Catharanthus roseus flower gave highly significant (P < 0.001) contraction of wound size (mm²) in the excised wound model from days 1–20 post-wounding (Nayak and Pereira, 2006). Similarly wound-contraction size was used as a physical parameter while studying the wound-healing effect of Hylocereus undatus on diabetic rats (Perez et al., 2005). The ethanol extract of leaves of Embelia ribes also showed a high rate of wound contraction in excision, incision and dead-space wound models using Swiss Albino rats.

**Tensile strength**

Tensile strength is another parameter for the assessment of healing of wounds. It gives direct evidence of genesis of collagen fibres, essential for formation of a wound bed. In collagen fibre formation, three basic protein components – glycine, proline and hydroxyproline – are drawn together to give maximum strength, which is reflected as an increase in tensile
strength (Freifelder, 1987). Almost all the medicinal plants that have been investigated for wound-healing activity have been tested for their effect on tensile strength of the wound. Tensile strength can be measured by a tensilometer (Bostford, 1941) and the value is expressed in grams. Good examples of tensile-strength generation in wounds have been observed with 0.5% and 1% aqueous extract of the latex of *Euphorbia nerifolia* in excised wounds (Rasik *et al.*, 1996). Biswas *et al.* (2004) observed that there were significant increases (P < 0.05) in tensile strength in all three models with the plant *Pterocarpus santalinus*.

**Period of healing**

Measurement of the healing period also reflects the two physical parameters: wound contraction size and tensile strength. A shorter healing time indicates the capability of a plant extract to improve wound healing. *Centella asiatica* applied to excised wounds required a maximum of 24 days for epithelialisation (Rao *et al.*, 1996) but *Allamanda cathartic*ta L. and *Laurus nobilis* L. required only 15 days for healing of excised wounds (Nayak *et al.*, 2005). *Pterocarpus santalinus*, on the other hand was found to be more promising and required only 9 days in the punch-wound model and a maximum of 18 days in the burn-wound model (Biswas *et al.*, 2004), indicating that it is a useful plant for improving the healing process.

**Biochemical parameters**

Several compounds that directly regulate the healing process are useful as biochemical markers. The most important biochemical factors which reflect the healing potentiality are total protein, DNA, RNA and hydroxyproline. All these biochemical factors can be estimated at the end of the healing of varieties of wounds.

**Role of total protein**

There are several proteins that are involved in the extracellular formation of collagen fibrils and maturation of collagen, e.g. chondroitin, its sulphates and dermatan sulphate. The protein elastin is a major component of connective tissue and is responsible for cross-linking of collagen (Irvin, 1981). Total protein can be estimated from healed wound tissue according to the methods of Lowry *et al.* (1951). The alcoholic extract of bark of *Butea monosperma* (Sumitra *et al.*, 2005), wholegrain flour of finger millet and kodo millet (Hegde *et al.*, 2005) generated sufficient amounts of total protein to indicate that the plant extract was responsible for collagen cross-linking of collagen, as well as helping collagen fibre formation. The total protein content from the healed wound tissue was also measured in the case of *Vanda roxburghii*, an epiphytic orchid, giving a moderately significant increase in protein content in granulation tissue when the plant extract was used compared with control (Nayak *et al.*, 2005).

**Role of tissue DNA**

During the process of wound healing, the proliferation of cells for epithelialisation and collagenesis occurs through mitosis. In the early phase of nuclear repair (karyogenesis) there is repair of nucleic acids such as DNA. DNA synthesis has an important role in the healing process by means of chromosome replication (Watson *et al.*, 1987). DNA of healed wound tissue can be estimated by the thymidine incorporation assay method but the commonest method that can be adopted for this purpose is that of Burton (1956) using diphenylamine reagent. The medicinal plant that is able to generate DNA at a promising rate can be considered as an ideal wound healer. *Euphorbia nerifolia* was able to generate 6.13 mg/g of DNA with 0.5% aqueous extract and 12.41 mg/g of DNA with 1% extract after 7 days of treatment while *Pterocarpus santalinus* generated 2.45 mg/g on the 9th day in the excised model, backing up results obtained by other measurements.

**Role of tissue RNA**

Messenger RNA (mRNA) is synthesised within the nucleus of fibroblasts during the healing process. mRNA can be estimated from tissue by the orcinol reagent technique (Stroev and Makarova, 1989) from wound tissue and was used in the demonstration of the activity of *Hylocereus undatus* and *Pterocarpus santalinus*.

**Estimation of tissue hydroxyproline**

Hydroxyproline formation reflects direct evidence of collagen fibre formation since it is one of the important members of triple helix collagen. Estimation of hydroxyproline can be performed with the technique
of Woessner (1961). Evidence of hydroxyproline generation in the wound area has been demonstrated for several medicinal plant extracts, e.g. *Vernonia arborea* (Manjunathan et al., 2005). The hydroxyproline-generation capability of *Allamanda cathartica* and *Laurus nobilis* was 67.1 and 49.50 mg/g, respectively (Nayak et al., 2005). *Catharanthus roseus* flower extract generated 63 mg/g of tissue hydroxyproline, indicating its high proficiency in the mechanism of wound repair (Nayak and Pereira, 2006) and the 0.5% aqueous extract of *Euphorbia nerifolia* latex synthesised 52 mg/g hydroxyproline in tissue and interestingly this did not increase with higher doses.

**Histological investigations**

Histological examination is useful to give a detailed picture of the healing process at different time intervals. A common method that can be followed for assessment of histological examination of treated wound tissue is staining with haematoxylin and eosin, which gives a general view of the formation of tissues such as collagen fibres and epithelialisation. For more specific information about the infiltration of collagen, elastin and reticulin, the most important protein for healing of wounds, it is better to use the Van-Gieson stain (Singh and Sulochana, 1997), Eigert Resorcin-Fuschin (Mallory, 1961) or Gridley modification of the silver impregnation method of staining (Gridley, 1951). The paste of the rhizome of the Indian medicinal plant *Curcuma longa* was tested in excised wounds on rabbits and evidence was recorded by histological examination using these stains that there was a well-characterised genesis of collagen, elastin and reticulin (Kundu et al., 2005).

**Molecular biological investigations**

There are many ways to determine the mechanisms of action of medicinal plants for wound-healing activity. Matrix metalloproteinase (MMP) expression is an important parameter but the simplest method is a SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) study with the wound tissue of different days treatment. The technique was followed for evaluation of *Pterocarpus santalinus* wound-healing activity in the punch model. Results of this study showed that *P. santalinus* could generate protein of gradually higher molecular weights from day 3 to day 5 and finally up to day 7. All the larger proteins are responsible for the formation of ground substance in the wound area (Biswas et al., 2004).

**Clinical evidence for wound-healing medicinal plants**

**Objectives**

The main object of a clinical trial is to test the effect of a drug in humans. Topical application of several synthetic agents, e.g. antibiotics (especially neomycin), preservatives (parabenes) and other substances used in topical applications to the skin may cause allergic contact dermatitis (Anon., 1995) and may result in a delay in the healing process (Demling, 1985). In these situations, products of plant origin may be useful alternatives, although only a few medicinal plants have so far been tested and reported to have wound-healing activity. The parameters for observation of efficacy of wound-healing medicinal plants in the human model tends to be more dependent on physical examination rather than using biochemical parameters. Pre-clinical studies should be performed before any humans are exposed to extracts, particularly with open complicated wounds and/or toxic and impure medicinal plants.

During clinical research with any plant drugs, careful attention must be paid to the dressing of the wound. Most studies on traditional medicines rarely maintain the aseptic condition of the wounds and this may cause unwanted infection, leading to non-healing of wounds or other complications such as serious infections. It is desirable to use agents such as 70% ethanol or 6% hydrogen peroxide for debridement of wounds and these usually do not interfere with the wound-healing property of the plant extracts. It is not recommended that wound dressings be changed daily since this might cause delay in healing owing to delay in granulation tissue formation. The wound areas should also be kept aerated so that sufficient oxygen can enter in the wound area, essential for early healing.

**Physical parameters for observation**

**Wound-contraction size**

Assessment of wound-healing potentiality can be achieved through measuring the wound-contraction area (mm²). The plant that shows rapid reduction of
the wound area is considered to be a good agent. The wound size can be recorded by area-measuring scales. During measurement of the wound-contraction area, it is mandatory to measure it from all aspects and all directions. If there are multiple numbers of wounds, measurement is to be taken for all and it should be done by addition of all the data. In a study with turmeric powder (Curcuma longa) on patients with common surgical wounds, reductions of wound area were found to be very significant, indicating its proficiency as an ideal wound healer of natural origin (Surh, 2002).

Granulation
Granulation can be observed by eye and is characterised by the formation of red, brittle tissues observed during the post-wounding period. Granulation is the early phase of scar formation before epithelialisation, caused by the extruding nature of fibrous tissue in the wound area. Granulation tissue is essential to wound repair and is a highly vascular and cellular tissue in which the collagen and ground substance of connective tissues are synthesised. The size of the final fibrous scar is proportional to the amount of granulation tissue formed (Irvin, 1981).

The quality of granulation is considered to be an important parameter for observation. A study with the ointment prepared from the Indian medicinal plant Pterocarpus santalinus revealed that the granulation in five patients with lower-extremity wounds appeared at an early stage with evidence of proper maintenance of quality. The study was conducted in chronic and complicated non-healing wounds, infected wounds and accidental injury; all of which were in a serious condition before the treatment and repaired with good aesthetic quality and with proper features of granulation. It was observed that granulation tissue could be generated within a very short period, almost half that given by conventional therapeutic measurements (Biswas et al., 2004).

Cicatrisation, epithelialisation and angiogenesis
These three parameters for assessment of wound-healing activity are mainly concerned with final closure of the wound by development of new epithelial tissue (Gabbiani et al., 1971). Fibrosis is characterised by formation of whitish scar formation over the wound area, neoangiogenesis is characterised by bleeding on removal of granulation and/or fibrous tissue and epithelialisation is characterised by remodelling of the wound area. Early occurrence of these features in clinical models indicates quality formation of extracellular matrix, formation of matrix metalloproteinases by means of collagenesis and prevention of apoptosis or keloid formation (Ehrlich et al. 1994).

Aloe vera, Chamaemelum nobile (commonly known as chamomile) and Centella asiatica are good examples of plant drugs that showed early genesis of cicatrisation, epithelialisation and neoangiogenesis in wound-healing models. The gel of Aloe vera is a common remedy for wound healing and is claimed to increase epithelialisation and reduce inflammation, but clinical studies are equivocal as to its effectiveness. However, a study was conducted with a glycoprotein fraction, isolated and named G1G1M1DI2, and showed that it produced significant [3H] thymidine uptake in squamous carcinoma cells. The effect of G1G1M1DI2 on cell migration was confirmed by accelerated wound healing on a monolayer of human keratinocytes in vitro (Choi et al., 2001). This indicates that the gel might accelerate the cicatrisation and epithelialisation in human wounds in a clinical setting.

A similar study with the 6% aqueous extract of Buddleja globosa exhibited proliferation of keratinocytes as well as slowing down the contraction of the lattice when tested at concentrations of 50 and 100 µg/mL (Houghton et al., 2005). Both the in-vitro studies of Aloe vera and Buddleja globosa indicate that these two plants have a definite role in promoting wound healing by means of cicatrisation and epithelialisation owing to their keratinocyte-proliferating activities. However, direct clinical evidence is needed to establish their mechanism of action.

Asiaticoside, a triterpene compound from Centella asiatica (Apiaceae) is reported to hasten the fibroblast cell formation in human collagen-I which is mainly responsible for cicatrisation. Gota kola (Centella asiatica) increases blood supply to connective tissue. It promotes rapid wound healing by accelerating tissue growth. It also exhibits an antimicrobial action by dissolving the covering of certain viruses and bacteria (http://www.docharrison.com/webedit). In a study on human fibroblast cell culture with the
triterpenoid fraction of *C. asiatica*, rapid formation of fibroblast cells was observed with the formation of new blood vessels as well as epithelial tissue (Tennai et al., 1986).

In a double-blind clinical trial, the therapeutic efficacy of chamomile extract was tested on 14 patients. The drying effect of this plant causes early epithelialisation and the decrease in the weeping wound area, as well as the drying tendency, was statistically significant (Glowania et al. 1987).

The plant extract *Calendula officinalis* was evaluated in 34 patients with chronic venous leg ulcers on the basis of the epithelialisation as observed by wound-contraction size. There was a 14.52% decrease in wound size in chronic venous leg ulcers with this plant after 3 weeks of treatment (Duran et al., 2005).

**Haematological observation**

Inflammation in the early stage of wounds is characterised by the involvement of a number of haematological factors. During the early phase of inflammation, polymorphonuclear neutrophils account for the major part of the initiation of repair mechanism. Erythrocytes undergo rouleux formation, with a resulting increase in the erythrocyte sedimentation rate, and lymphocytes undergo proliferation for the genesis of new blood vessels. Therefore, the assessment of the healing mechanism in human subjects can be identified by estimation of these various haematological parameters. The most important haematological parameters that are helpful in the evaluation of medicinal plants for their wound-healing potentiality in human subjects are described below.

**Differential count of leucocytes**

Neutrophils are considered to be chemotaxic agents of inflammation, which prepare the environment for beginning the repair mechanism. At the early phase of wounding the number of neutrophils is increased and, as the healing process progresses, the number of neutrophils gradually decreases. Eosinophils migrate at the later stage of the healing process and heparin and histamines are produced by basophils, which are responsible for the destruction of unwanted materials at the wound site. Monocytes, by their phagocytic property, engulf the microorganisms so that the healing can be achieved. Lymphocytes are the most important variety of leucocytes that are responsible for either the generation of fibroblast or collagen cells or are directly converted to fibroblast cells (Rubin and Farber, 1996).

The present authors evaluated the ointment prepared from three Indian medicinal plants, i.e. *Pterocarpus santalinus*, *Ficus benghalensis* and *Cynodon dactylon*, for their wound-healing properties in human models, with a variety of wounds such as surgical wounds, burns and complicated wounds of the lower extremity. Besides conventional physical parameters, haematological parameters were also added as objectives, and included the estimation of differential leucocyte counts at different times in the therapy. Results revealed that there were tendencies to a decrease in neutrophil count as healing progressed, while there was a remarkable increase in lymphocytes, indicating the process of genesis of fibrosis, and a decrease in both the eosinophils as well as monocytes, owing to the inflammatory processes being overcome. *Pterocarpus santalinus* gave better results than other two plants used, i.e. *Ficus benghalensis* and *Cynodon dactylon*. The results of *P. santalinus* were found to be similar to the standard topical antibiotic framycetin (P = 0.05–0.001).

**Erythrocyte sedimentation rate**

Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) indicates the degree of inflammation and if it is greater than 20 mm (unless known to be pre-existent), this indicates that the healing process is hampered (Weber et al., 2005). The Peterborough Healthcare Wound Management Committee, June 2004, also recommended estimation of ESR for the assessment of wound healing. In an experimental study with *Terminalia chebula*, it was observed that, besides several biochemical parameters such as estimation of DNA, ESR has been used for the assessment of the wound repair mechanism (Suguna et al., 2002).

A comparative clinical study with the ointment prepared from *Pterocarpus santalinus*, *Ficus benghalensis* and *Cynodon dactylon* on 54 patients of varieties of wounds showed that there were remarkable reductions in ESR with the progress of the healing process (Table 17.3) when compared with the standard topical antibiotic framycetin. Therefore, these three medicinal plants might be able to control
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment groups</th>
<th>Differential counts of WBC (%)</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>AT</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>AT</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>AT</th>
<th>ESR (mm/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P. santalinus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n = 0)</td>
<td>70.93 ± 4.13</td>
<td>64.96 ± 3.72**</td>
<td>24.73 ± 2.22</td>
<td>28.93 ± 2.43**</td>
<td>3.93 ± 0.18</td>
<td>2.71 ± 0.17*</td>
<td>2.14 ± 0.16</td>
<td>1.53 ± 0.12*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. benghalensis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n = 12)</td>
<td>64.83 ± 3.99</td>
<td>64.67 ± 3.98</td>
<td>28.00 ± 2.76</td>
<td>29.97 ± 2.82*</td>
<td>5.00 ± 0.65</td>
<td>4.17 ± 0.54</td>
<td>2.33 ± 0.18</td>
<td>1.87 ± 0.14*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. dactylon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n = 12)</td>
<td>67.33 ± 4.01</td>
<td>67.00 ± 4.00</td>
<td>28.50 ± 2.34</td>
<td>29.33 ± 2.29*</td>
<td>3.33 ± 0.15</td>
<td>2.67 ± 0.13*</td>
<td>0.83 ± 0.09</td>
<td>1.00 ± 0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Framycetin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n = 10)</td>
<td>70.67 ± 4.12</td>
<td>65.50 ± 3.70**</td>
<td>24.67 ± 2.21</td>
<td>31.00 ± 2.91**</td>
<td>3.16 ± 0.17</td>
<td>3.00 ± 0.16*</td>
<td>1.50 ± 0.13</td>
<td>1.00 ± 0.10*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data are represented as mean ± SEM. WBC = white blood count; ESR = erythrocyte sedimentation rate; N = neutrophil; L = lymphocytes; E = eosinophil; M = monocytes; BT = before treatment; AT = 30 days after treatment. *P < 0.05; **P < 0.001 (unpublished).
the inflammatory process followed by healing of wounds.

Other assessment criteria

Besides the two parameters noted above for clinical evaluation of medicinal plants for their wound-healing activity, other measurements to evaluate the oxygen supply in the wound area can be used, especially for chronic venous leg ulcers or diabetic foot. Another important parameter is the estimation of antioxidants and superoxide levels from serum, as these directly reflect the potential of that particular medicinal plant for wound healing. However, a review of the literature reveals that no clinical study has so far been carried out with any medicinal plants, probably because of the lack of facilities or no relevant clinical research with medicinal plants for wound-healing activity.

Conclusions

Much attention is being paid in the field of biomedical research to wound healing at all levels. Major problems lie in wound infection and loss of body immunity and the main objective of wound-healing research is to exclude all these problems by maintaining the hygienic condition of wounds, prompt healing of the wound area and maintenance of its cosmetic aspects. In modern medicine, there are rarely any drugs or prescriptions that can fulfil all of these aspects. Modern techniques such as vacuum-assisted closure therapy (Steenvoorde et al., 2004) are being introduced but this therapy is very expensive, and not affordable for many in the world, especially in developing countries.

Because of such economic restrictions, many people in such countries depend on traditional medicines, especially from plant sources, for maintaining their health and for disease cures. It has been observed in this chapter that most of the wound-healing research on medicinal plants is limited to a certain extent and has rarely been done to the full extent of clinical research. The exception is Pterocarpus santalinus which can be categorised as a wound-healing medicinal plant of level 3, which has been examined in detail both in experimental and clinical models.

The level 2 medicinal plants for wound-healing activity comprise those that have given good results at an experimental pharmacological level. Examples are Euphorbia nerifolia, Aspillia africana, Curcuma longa and Aloe vera. There are some medicinal plants that show good effects at the initial levels of pharmacological screening, especially in the incision model, which can be designated level 1 wound-healing medicinal plants, e.g. Aegle marmelos and Cassia alata. It is, therefore, necessary to perform level 2 and level 3 research for the level 1 group of wound-healing plants, and level 3 for level 2 group of medicinal plants, to bring them to a position where they can be considered to be viable medicinal agents.

Acknowledgement

The authors thankfully acknowledge Prof. Biswapati Mukherjee for his guidance, enormous inspiration and valuable suggestions.

References

Craig MA, Karchesy JJ, Blythe LL et al. Toxicity studies on western juniper oil (Juniperus occidentalis) and Port-Orford-cedar oil (Chamaecyparis lawsoniana) extracts


Introduction

Inflammation is a defence mechanism of living tissue in response to mechanical injury, tissue ischaemia, autoimmune processes or infectious agents. Clinically it is characterised by swelling, redness, heat, and often pain and loss of function.

This host defence is a highly regulated mechanism, to restrict its action to the time and place where it is necessary. Often, inflammation elicits a generalised sequence of events known as the acute phase response. This includes production of acute phase proteins by the liver, activation of the sympathetic nervous system, changes in cardiovascular function, altered neuroendocrine status, behavioural changes that lead to energy conservation, and the most common feature of infection, fever, which can limit bacterial proliferation.

These local and generalised inflammatory responses have clear benefits in infectious states when they are activated in a regulated manner for a defined period of time. An excessive or inadequate activation of the system, or failure in mechanisms of inactivation, can therefore have serious effects, leading to a number of diseases, including rheumatoid arthritis, chronic inflammatory bowel diseases, neurodegenerative disorders and asthma (Monaco et al., 2004). Thus, inflammation is a major component of the damage caused by autoimmune diseases, but it is also a fundamental contributor to disorders such as diabetes, cancer and cardiovascular disease (Schwartzburd, 2003).

Numerous mediators are involved in inflammation processes, including mediators related to the arachidonic acid pathway (e.g. cyclo-oxygenase, lipooxygenase, and phospholipase A2), and arachidonic acid-independent mediators (e.g. nitric oxide synthase, NF-κB, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug-activated gene-1 and cytokines) (Figure 18.1) (Heller et al., 1997; Kracht and Saklatvala, 2002).

Salicylate-containing plants have been used for relieving the signs of inflammation in several cultures.
for centuries. A significant advance in the study of drugs with anti-inflammatory activity came in the early 1970s. During this decade, it was demonstrated that aspirin and other non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs inhibit cyclo-oxygenase and therefore synthesis of prostaglandins, key components in the inflammatory process. Since then, numerous investigators have addressed their research to developing drugs with the capacity to specifically inhibit inflammatory mediators. Steroidal and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (SAIDs and NSAIDs, respectively) are currently the most widely used drugs in the treatment of acute inflammatory disorders, despite their renal and gastric negative secondary effects, but have not been very successful in the treatment of chronic inflammatory diseases. Thus numerous research groups are focusing on the search for new and safe anti-inflammatory agents, and medicinal plants may represent a useful source of molecules for the development of drugs especially designed for the control of chronic inflammatory states (Sautebin, 2000; Calixto et al., 2003, 2004; Kim et al., 2004a; Yoon and Baek, 2005).

Newly developed molecular techniques with high selectivity and sensitivity are currently being widely
used to study the mechanisms of action of herbal products on inflammation processes, whether through effects on gene transcription or on signal transduction.

Compared with chemically defined individual substances, the application of these tests to herbal preparations is laborious because they comprise mixtures of substances; in many cases the active ingredient(s) are unknown; and the composition and characteristics of what is nominally a single phyto-preparation may vary widely, depending on its origin and manufacturing procedure. Despite these difficulties, an increasing number of reports indicate that compounds derived from higher plants, extracts or extract fractions have medically useful effects on the pathophysiological processes involved in inflammation.

**Inflammation mediators**

**Phospholipase A2, cyclo-oxygenases and lipoxygenases**

Phospholipase A2 (PLA2) is the enzyme that governs the release of arachidonic acid from membrane lipids in cells. Several isoforms of PLA2 have been discovered, and these isoforms are classified into three categories:

- secretory PLA2 (sPLA2)
- cytosolic PLA2 (cPLA2)
- calcium-independent PLA2 (iPLA2).

These PLA2s are distributed in numerous tissues and cells. Once activated, PLA2 releases arachidonic acid, which is subsequently metabolised by either of two enzymes, a prostaglandin endoperoxide H synthase (also called cyclo-oxygenase, COX) or a lipoxygenase (LOX). COX converts arachidonic acid into prostaglandins and thromboxanes, catalysing the stepwise conversion of arachidonic acid into the intermediates prostaglandin G2 and prostaglandin H2; the latter is subsequently transformed into prostacyclin I2, thromboxane A2, and prostaglandins D2, E2 and F2a by specific synthases depending on the kind of tissue.

There are two different isoforms of cyclo-oxygenases (COX-1 and COX-2) and one variant (COX-3). COX-1 is a ubiquitous constitutive isoform that is expressed at constant levels throughout the cell cycle, and that is postulated to have housekeeping functions. This enzyme generates the prostaglandins responsible for physiological functions, including gastric mucosal integrity and regulation of renal blood flow. COX-2 was discovered separately (Kujubu et al., 1991; Xie et al., 1991): it is an inducible protein, induced by Src and tumour-promoting phorbol esters, showing 60% amino-acid sequence homology with the previously known COX-1. COX-2 is undetectable in many mammalian tissues, but its production is rapidly induced in cells involved in the inflammatory response, such as macrophages and mast cells, when these cells are stimulated by proinflammatory cytokines and/or bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS); this leads to production of much larger amounts of prostanoids than by COX-1 (Smith et al., 1996).

In fact, COX-2 is thought to be the primary generator of the prostanoids that contribute to inflammation, acting in both the inflammation initiation and resolution phases. In view of this, it has been proposed that specific inhibition of COX-2 may be a better way of limiting inflammatory processes without affecting the synthesis of the prostaglandins required for normal physiological function. However, the relative contributions of COX-1 and COX-2 to inflammatory responses remain incompletely understood, and several studies have shown that prostanoids formed via COX-1 are also involved in inflammation processes (Vane et al., 1998; Smith and Langenbach, 2002). The identification of the new variant COX-3, which is weakly inhibited by the NSAID acetaminophen, may contribute to the elucidation of the inflammatory process (Chandrasekharan et al., 2002).

Lipoxygenases (LOXs) are enzymes involved in the generation of hydroxyeicosatetraenoic acid (HETE) and leukotriene compounds from arachidonic acid. Three LOX isoforms have been described in different cells and tissues: 15-LOX synthesises anti-inflammatory 15-hydroxyeicosatetraenoic acid (15-HETE), 12-LOX synthesises 12-HETE, which aggregates platelets and induces the inflammatory response, and 5-LOX synthesises 5-HETE and leukotrienes. Inhibition of the biosynthesis of inflammatory HETE mediators by blocking the activities of 5- and 12-LOXs is considered a possible way of...
treating inflammatory diseases (Parente and Perretti, 2003; Schneider and Bucar, 2005). When only COX enzymes are blocked, the LOX pathway leads to accelerated formation of leukotrienes, which suggests that dual inhibition of LOX and COX enzymes by specific drugs may be a sensible goal for research.

Nitric oxide (NO)

Nitric oxide (NO) is synthesised from the amino acid L-arginine by the NO synthase (NOS) enzymes in numerous mammalian cells and tissues. NO has diverse biological activities, including those involved in physiological regulation and activities contributing to pathological processes. The physiological actions of NO involve low concentrations (about 10^{-12} \text{mol/L}), with NO acting as a labile intracellular messenger in, for example, the regulation of vascular tone, neurotransmission in the brain or peripheral nerves. NO production is mediated by two enzymes, jointly termed constitutive nitric oxide synthases (cNOS), and originally detected in endothelial cells (eNOS) and in neurones (nNOS). The actions of this ‘physiological’ NO are mediated by a Ca^{2+}/calmodulin-dependent pathway. However, when NO is synthesised in large quantities (10^{-9} \text{mol/L}) by activated inflammatory cells, it shows cytotoxic properties and may be involved in the pathogenesis of acute or chronic inflammatory conditions (Moilanen et al., 1999).

This NO production is mediated by an enzyme termed inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), which is induced by several stimuli, including bacterial lipopolysaccharide and interferon-\(\gamma\) (IFN-\(\gamma\)). iNOS is present in macrophages and hepatocytes. Thus, during inflammation associated with different pathologies, NO production increases significantly (Kharitonov et al., 1994) and may become cytotoxic. Moreover, the free-radical nature of NO and its high reactivity with oxygen to produce peroxynitrite \((\text{ONOO}^-)\) makes NO a potent pro-oxidant molecule able to induce oxidative damage and become potentially harmful towards cellular targets (Epe et al., 1996).

NO production induced by iNOS may thus reflect the degree of inflammation, and provides a useful way of assessing the effect of drugs on the inflammatory process. Conversely, inhibition of NO accumulation induced by inflammatory stimuli could be a useful strategy for treatment of inflammatory diseases (Hobbs et al., 1999; Sautebin, 2000).

Nuclear transcription factor-\(\kappa\)

Considerable evidence indicates that the primary pathway involved in the initiation and amplification of inflammatory responses is the one that leads to activation of nuclear factor (NF)-\(\kappa\)B transcription factors (Karlin, 2005). NF-\(\kappa\)B is a widely distributed protein located in the cytoplasm as an inactive heterodimer composed of a family of five subunits (Baueuerle and Baltimore, 1996). These protein complexes are retained in the cytoplasm by inhibitory (\(\kappa\)B) proteins, hindering the translocation of NF-\(\kappa\)B to the nucleus. NF-\(\kappa\)B is activated by free radicals, inflammatory stimuli, endotoxins, ultraviolet light, carcinogens and tumour promoters. Once activated, specific protein kinases phosphorylate the \(\kappa\)B proteins, inducing dissociation of NF-\(\kappa\)B from \(\kappa\)B. The phosphorylated I\(\kappa\)B is subsequently degraded by the proteasome, and NF\(\kappa\)B is transported to the nucleus, where it induces transcription of numerous genes (Kracht and Saklatvala, 2002; Magne et al., 2006). NF-\(\kappa\)B regulates the transcription of various inflammatory cytokines, so agents that can suppress NF-\(\kappa\)B are important candidate targets for drugs to prevent, delay the onset of, or treat many inflammatory diseases (Barnes and Karin, 1997; Ghosh and Karin, 2002).

Cytokines, chemokines and adhesion molecules

Cytokines are a group of molecules that are involved in many steps of the inflammatory response of which more than 100 have been identified (Haddad, 2002; Hopkins, 2003). Cytokines are generally classified as pro- or anti-inflammatory, depending on their role in the inflammatory process. In general, pro-inflammatory cytokines (i.e. interleukins IL-1\(\beta\), IL-6, IL-8, IL-12 and tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-\(\alpha\)) are involved in the initiation and amplification of the inflammatory response, whereas anti-inflammatory cytokines negatively modulate these events (i.e. IL-4, IL-10 and transforming growth factor (TGF)-\(\beta\)). Cytokines produced by cells such as macrophages, neutrophils and mast cells can act locally or
systemically. They can induce their own production or even the secondary generation of other cytokines. Moreover, most cytokine actions involve the activation of transcription factors (e.g. NF-κB, AP-1) and protein kinases (e.g. mitogen-activated protein kinase), which subsequently regulate the expression of genes involved in the maintenance of the inflammatory situation (Haddad, 2002; Kracht and Saklatvala, 2002). In addition, cytokines are responsible for the induction of numerous enzymes such as iNOS and COX-2, as well as receptors (e.g. platelet-activating factor receptor, IL-2 receptor) and adhesion molecules (E-selectin, α and β-integrins) (Barnes and Karin, 1997; Donaldson et al., 1997; Haddad, 2002).

Chemokines (e.g. IL-8 and eotaxin) are a group of cytokines that chemoattract and stimulate leukocytes at the site of inflammation. The chemokine system is extensive, with an estimated 50 chemokine ligands and 20 receptors. The effects of these molecules are mediated through G protein-coupled receptors. Once activated, chemokines enable leukocytes to migrate to the target tissues, a process also requiring activation of integrins. Numerous studies indicate that cytokines are implicated in the pathophysiology of various inflammatory diseases so the cytokine system constitutes an interesting target for the development of anti-inflammatory drugs (Tarrant and Patel, 2006).

**Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors and liver receptors**

The peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs) and the liver receptors (LXRs) are members of the nuclear hormone receptor superfamily that are mainly, or exclusively, regulated by ligands produced in a paracrine or autocrine manner. They transduce a wide variety of signals, including environmental, nutritional and inflammatory signals, into a defined and ordered set of cellular responses at the level of gene transcription (Daynes and Jones, 2002; Glass and Ogawa, 2006). Three PPAR (PPARα, PPARβ/δ and PPARγ) and two LXR (LXRα and LXRβ) isoforms have been identified and cloned.

Although the endogenous ligands that function to regulate PPAR activity in vivo remain poorly characterised, various types of fatty acid can bind to and activate PPARs. In addition, some of the eicosanoids that are derived from the metabolism of arachidonic acid, can also be effective ligand agonists for specific PPAR isoforms. PPARs also function as sensors and regulators of inflammatory responses through their ability to be activated by locally generated eicosanoids and can inhibit inflammatory gene expression by several mechanisms (Delerive et al., 1999, 2003; Kelly et al., 2004). It is probable that at least some of these mechanisms operate in a cell type-specific manner and recent studies (Pascual et al., 2005) have given some explanation for how PPARγ represses inflammatory-response genes in a promoter-specific manner.

LXRs have recently been characterised as regulators of macrophage inflammatory pathways. Mice lacking LXRs show an exaggerated response to LPS, and synthetic LXR agonists inhibit the macrophage response to bacterial pathogens and antagonise the induction of a number of proinflammatory genes (Joseph et al., 2003). LXR-sensitive genes overlap with genes that are sensitive to glucocorticoid receptor and/or PPARγ-mediated repression. Some of these are preferentially sensitive to LXR, indicating LXR-specific effects on the evolution of inflammatory responses, probably linked to inhibition of NF-κB activity (Joseph et al., 2003).

The findings that nuclear receptors can modulate inflammatory immune responses in a gene- and signal-specific manner have a number of implications for the development and application of nuclear-receptor ligands in human disease. For example, in addition to atherosclerosis, PPARγ ligands have been suggested to ameliorate inflammation in animal models of inflammatory bowel disease, experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis, arthritis and psoriasis. Indeed, several clinical trials have shown that PPARγ ligands reduce the severity of inflammation in patients with mild-to-moderate cases of ulcerative colitis (Glass and Ogawa, 2006).

**Mitogen-activated protein kinase**

Inflammatory mediators are produced in response to inflammatory stimuli that activate macrophages, and, subsequently, activation of intracellular signalling pathways. Primary inflammatory stimuli (microbial products) act through receptors of the Toll-like
receptor family, and cytokines (e.g. IL-1β and TNF-α) through receptors of the IL-1 receptor (IL-1R) or TNF receptor families. Activation of receptors triggers major intracellular signalling pathways, namely mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathways (Lee et al., 1994; Lee and Young, 1996; Kyriakis and Avruch, 2001; Aggarwal, 2003) and the pathway leading to activation of the transcription factor NF-κB (Tak and Firestein, 2001; Aggarwal, 2003). TNF-α is a potent activator of NF-κB, which in turn is a potent inducer of TNF-α.

This positive feedback is a key feature in chronic inflammation. Lipopolysaccharide, a component of bacterial wall and commonly used inducer of the monocyte/macrophage cell lineage, acting via Toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4), also stimulates mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase cascades and the pathway leading to activation of NF-κB. Upon activation of the MAP kinases, transcription factors present in the cytoplasm or nucleus are phosphorylated and activated, leading to expression of target genes, resulting in a biological response. It has been demonstrated that MAP kinases have overlapping substrate specificities and phosphorylation of regulatory sites is shared among multiple protein kinases. These multiple interactions integrate the responses and activate separate sets of genes (Kyriakis and Avruch, 2001; Pearson et al., 2001). A classic MAPK cascade is composed of

- an MAPK
- the kinase that activates the MAPK through phosphorylation of serine and tyrosine residues (called MAPK kinase, MKK, MEK, MAPKK, or MAP2K)
- the kinase that activates the MAP2K (called MKK kinase, MKKK, MEKK, MAPKKK, or MAP3K).

The MAP3Ks are activated through a variety of mechanisms, most of which are not entirely clear, in response to engagement of cell-surface receptors. Several distinct MAPK cascades have been identified, the three most common being the extracellular signal-regulated kinase, the Jun-N terminal kinase, and the p38 MAPK cascades. Each of the MAPK cascades has a distinct function, although a given stimulus, for example, TNF-α or IL-1, can activate all three MAPK cascades to a variable extent. The response specificity (i.e. the type of stimulus that activates any given cascade) is determined by the MAP3K (Karin, 2005).

The p38 MAPK cascade shares many features with the other MAPK cascades, and is associated with inflammation, cell growth, cell differentiation and cell death (Kyriakis and Avruch, 2001). Extracellular stimuli of the p38 MAP kinase pathway include a variety of cytokines (Pearson et al., 2001) and a number of pathogenic stimuli activate p38 through various Toll-like receptors (Armant and Fenton, 2002). In most inflammatory cells, the main biological response of p38 is to initiate leucocyte recruitment and activation (Lee et al., 1994; Lee and Young, 1996).

**Free radicals**

The term free-radical species refers to a variety of highly reactive molecules that can be divided into various categories, including reactive oxygen species (ROS), reactive nitrogen species (RNS), and reactive chlorine species (RCS). Important free-radical species include superoxide (O$_2^−$), the hydroxyl radical (OH$^−$), and the peroxyl radical (ROO$^−$) in the ROS group, and nitric oxide (NO) in the RNS group (Pop-Busui, 2006).

ROS and RNS occur as a result of several different processes:

- generated during irradiation by ultraviolet light, by X-rays or by gamma-rays
- products of metal-catalysed reactions
- present as pollutants in the atmosphere
- produced by neutrophils and macrophages during inflammation
- byproducts of mitochondria-catalysed electron transport reactions and other biochemical processes (Cadenas, 1989).

ROS and RNS play a dual role, being either beneficial or harmful to living systems. Beneficial effects of ROS involve physiological roles in cell responses to noxious stimuli such as in defence against infectious agents and in a number of cellular signalling systems. One further beneficial example of ROS at low
concentrations is the induction of mitogenic responses.

In contrast, at high concentrations ROS can be important mediators of damage to cell structures, including lipids and membranes, proteins and nucleic acids (Poli et al., 2004). ROS and metal ions primarily inhibit phosphatases, most probably by interacting with sulphhydryl groups on their cystein residues, which are oxidised to form either intramolecular or intermolecular disulphide bonds. These structural changes alter protein conformations, leading to the up-regulation of several signalling cascades, most importantly those dependent on growth factor kinase, Src/Abl kinase, MAPK and PI-kinase. These cascades lead to the activation of several redox-regulated transcription factors.

Despite the actions of the cell’s antioxidant defence system to counteract oxidative damage from ROS, such damage accumulates over the life cycle, and indeed, radical-related damage to DNA, to proteins and to lipids has been proposed to play a key role in the development of age-dependent diseases such as cancer, arteriosclerosis, arthritis, neurodegenerative disorders and other conditions (Valko et al., 2006).

The term oxidative stress in essence refers to a serious imbalance between free-radical production and antioxidant defence mechanisms, potentially leading to tissue damage. Antioxidants have been defined as substances that are able, at relatively low concentrations, to compete with other oxidisable substrates, and thus to significantly delay or inhibit the oxidation of these substrates. This definition includes the enzymes superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase, and catalase, as well as non-enzymatic compounds such as α-tocopherol (vitamin E), β-carotene, ascorbate (vitamin C) and glutathione. Currently the development of procedures to reduce adverse ROS production is one of the central issues in research on oxidative stress-related diseases. Swamping the system with antioxidants or overexpressing antioxidative enzymes may be just as detrimental as excessive exposure to free radicals and it is clear that a precisely balanced intermediate level of free radicals and radical-derived ROS is necessary.

Medicinal plants as a source of anti-inflammatory substances

Evaluation of therapeutic actions of herbal products

Research on anti-inflammatory substances has generally focused on nitric oxide production and arachidonic acid metabolism, signal transduction mechanisms in activated inflammatory cells, inflammatory cell functions (i.e. generation of free-radical species), and synthesis and actions of cytokines and related peptides involved in the inflammatory process. Any plant product that may interfere in any or all these systems can be considered as a potential candidate for anti-inflammatory therapy (Duwiejua and Zeitlin, 1993). It has been demonstrated in various inflammatory models, both in vivo (e.g. inflammation (erythema and oedema) of rodent ear, rat (or mouse) paw oedema test, adjuvant arthritis in rat or mouse and in vitro (e.g. inhibition of specific mediators involved in the inflammatory process in primary cell cultures or transformed cell lines) that various plant extracts and plant-derived bioactive compounds, are involved in reducing or suppressing inflammatory processes. Some of the tests that are commonly used to evaluate the anti-inflammatory activity from plant-derived compounds are now briefly reviewed.

In-vivo models of inflammation

Collagen-induced arthritis

An in-vivo murine model of arthritis was first described by Trentham et al. (1977). The collagen-induced arthritis is normally induced in mice or rats by immunisation with autologous or heterologous type II collagen in adjuvant. As in rheumatoid arthritis, pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as TNF-α, and IL-1β, are abundantly expressed in the arthritic joints of mice, and blockade of these molecules results in a reduction of disease severity (Williams, 2004).

Adjuvant-induced arthritis

A useful in-vivo rat model was originally described by Pearson et al. (1956). Adjuvant-induced arthritis is developed after injection of complete Freund’s
adjuvant in the footpad of Wistar rats (Mizushima et al., 1972). It is a systemic disease that resembles rheumatoid arthritis, and is characterised by chronic evolution with recurrent inflammatory bouts resulting in periarticular, articular and bone lesions (Rotelli et al., 2003).

Carrageenan-induced paw oedema
Carrageenan-induced paw oedema, originally described by Winter et al. (1962), is a good model of non-immune acute inflammatory reaction with which to assess the contribution of mediators involved in vascular changes associated with acute inflammation and to evaluate potential treatments. Mice or rats are injected with carrageenan in the paw to produce acute inflammation, involving an initial release of histamine and serotonin, a second phase mediated by kinins, and a third phase mediated by prostaglandins (Di Rosa et al., 1971). This methodology has recently been used to evaluate the anti-inflammatory activity of several flavonoids (Rotelli et al., 2003).

In-vitro models of inflammation
As commented above, mediators related (or unrelated) to the arachidonic acid pathway are involved in inflammatory diseases, and therefore assays of some of these compounds may be useful to evaluate biological properties of potential drug compounds (Calixto et al., 2003, 2004). A number of primary and immortalised cell lines (e.g. RAW 264.7 and J774A.1, both mice monocyte macrophage cell lines) stimulated with endotoxin (e.g. LPS) and/or cytokine (e.g. IFN-γ), in the presence or absence of test compound, are currently used for the evaluation of their effects on inflammation mediator production, signal transduction pathway activation, transcription factor activity or gene expression.

Medicinal plant extracts and isolated plant compounds in the inflammatory process
Phytotherapy may be defined as the prevention and treatment of human diseases using plants, parts of plants or plant preparations. For most purposes, extracts are used (Gaedcke and Steinhoff, 2003). Herbal extracts range from simple infusions (herbal tea) to a purified single chemical entity. It is not always possible to isolate a single active principle, e.g. if it is very unstable, or unknown, or if a range of compounds are responsible for the biological activity. In this case bioassays can be performed using a suitable purified extract (Williamson et al., 1996).

In this section, we review the mechanisms of action of some plant extracts and specific secondary metabolites (classified according to main chemical family, i.e. terpenes, phenolic compounds, and alkaloids) on the inflammatory process.

Plant extracts
Crude extracts from numerous species show some sort of anti-inflammatory activity (Diewiejua and Zeitlin, 1993). Here we review the most recent data related to the effects of plant extracts on inflammatory process mediators, in both in-vivo and in-vitro models. We focus on extracts with potent and specific effects that have been characterised in detail.

It has been reported that administration of Uncaria tomentosa (UT) inhibits LPS-induced iNOS expression and NO production in the RAW 264.7 cell line, through inactivation of NF-κB transcription factor (Sandoval-Chacon et al., 1998). It also protects mice against ozone-induced lung inflammation, probably through antioxidant effects (Sandoval-Chacon et al., 1998; Cisneros et al., 2005).

Harpagophytum procumbens (HP, commonly known as Devil’s claw) has been used in traditional southern African medical therapies for arthritis and low back pain (Stewart and Cole, 2005). The validity of HP as an effective anti-inflammatory and analgesic preparation, particularly in the relief of arthritic symptoms, has been investigated in numerous animal, clinical and in-vitro studies (Grant et al., 2007). In studies of the mouse fibroblast cell line L929, it has been demonstrated that administration of aqueous extract of HP to LPS-induced L929 cells suppresses prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) synthesis and NO production by inhibiting COX-2 and iNOS expression (Jang et al., 2003). These effects may be mediated by inhibition of NF-κB activation and/or of AP-1 activation (Kundu et al., 2005; Huang et al., 2006).

In a randomised double-blind pilot study, Chrubasik et al. (2003) evaluated the administration of an extract of HP versus administration of
non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs to patients with acutely exacerbated low back pain. There were no intergroup differences, but the authors suggest that studies with larger numbers of patients will be needed to show equivalence.

It has also recently been demonstrated that oral administration of HP (960 mg of dry extract per day, during 8 consecutive weeks), to a sample of 259 patients with arthritis and other rheumatic conditions, significantly improved global pain, stiffness and function, as well as increases quality of life, reduces or stops concomitant pain medication, and is associated with few gastrointestinal side-effects, suggesting that HP is suitable for medium-term use as a potential treatment option for mild-to-moderate degenerative disorders (Warnock et al., 2007). A recent review concluded that HP should not be neglected as a possible treatment for painful osteoarthritis and chronic low back pain before use of NSAIDs (Chrubasik et al., 2007).

The mechanisms of action of Eucalyptus globulus, Thymus vulgaris, Pinus sylvestris, and Plantago lanceolata on inflammatory processes have been evaluated in vitro, in the murine macrophage cell line J774A.1 (Vigo et al., 2004, 2005). All of these extracts showed a significant capacity to scavenge NO radicals released by an NO donor, PAPANONOate, and significantly inhibited iNOS expression, suggesting that their anti-inflammatory properties may reflect decreased NO production, whether caused by inhibitory effects on iNOS gene expression or to NO-scavenging activity.

The effects of cannabinoids on inflammatory processes have been reviewed recently (Walter and Stella, 2004; Klein, 2005). Synthetic and plant-derived Δ⁹-tetrahydrocannabinol (THC) inhibits NO production in LPS/IFN-γ-stimulated mouse macrophages and in LPS-stimulated RAW 264.7 macrophages, but endogenous cannabinoids induce NO production. THC induces arachidonic acid release from RAW 264.7 macrophages, which implies a proinflammatory influence. With regard to cytokine production, THC inhibits the production of IFN-γ and the proinflammatory IL-12, as well as the expression of IL-12 receptors, and increases the expression of the anti-inflammatory IL-4.

Anandamide, an endogenous cannabinoid, inhibits pro-inflammatory TNF-α production, soluble cytokine receptors, and inhibits IL-6 and IL-8 in LPS-stimulated monocytes. Although these results indicate an anti-inflammatory effect of cannabinoids, there are other results suggesting that cannabinoids may in some cases be proinflammatory. Indeed, THC has been shown to increase release of IL-1β from macrophages. In addition, a synthetic cannabinoid, CP55940, but not anandamide or THC, induces pro-inflammatory IL-8 and monocyte chemotactic protein 1 (MCP-1) gene expression in unstimulated HL60 human leukaemia cells. These data suggest that the therapeutic use of these drugs in chronic inflammatory diseases needs to be reassessed.

Several extracts from plants used in traditional Chinese medicine to treat inflammatory conditions were evaluated by Li et al. (2003). The most potent for COX-1, COX-2, PLA₂, and 5-LOX inhibition was Tripterygium wilfordii, a plant containing triptolide, a diterpene that has been demonstrated to inhibit NF-κB activation (Kim et al., 2004a). Extracts of Alchornea cordifolia, Ulmus davidiana, and Pfaffia glomerata have been evaluated for their anti-inflammatory effects in vivo in animal models and showed beneficial properties in the management of inflammatory states (Osadebe and Okoye, 2003; Kim et al., 2005; Neto et al., 2005). Zingiber officinale extract inhibits the induction of several genes involved in the inflammatory response (Grzanna et al., 2005; Kim et al., 2005; Zhou et al., 2006). Finally, a hexane extract from the rhizome of Curcuma comosa, a plant traditionally used as an anti-inflammatory agent in Thailand, significantly suppressed NO/iNOS synthesis and IL-6 in immortalised microglia HAPI cells (Jantararatnotai et al., 2006).

Terpenes

Terpenes are comprised of multiple C₅ units, and can be classified as monoterpenes (C₁₀), sesquiterpenes (C₁₅), diterpenes (C₂₀), triterpenes (C₃₀), and polyterpenes (C₅₀)ₙ where n is very large. Several terpenes have been shown to have anti-inflammatory activity, although triterpenes and sesquiterpenes are probably the most interesting.

Monoterpenes

Essential oils are composed mainly of monoterpenes, although essential oils are always mixtures of many
compounds. One of the most widely studied monoterpenes is eucalyptol (1.8-cineole), which is present at a high concentration in eucalyptus oil. This compound is used in cough drops, and is believed to be responsible for the expectorant and cough-suppressing activities of eucalyptus extracts. 1.8-cineole significantly inhibits metabolites of arachidonic acid (leukotriene B4 and PGE2), as well as several cytokines (Juergens et al., 1998a,b), suggesting that it may be of value for long-term treatment of airway inflammation in bronchial asthma. 1.8-Cineole also can prevent colitis induced by trinitrobenzene sulphonic acid, at least in part, by an antioxidant mechanism which may involve glutathione, one of the most abundant intracellular antioxidants (Santos et al., 2004). With regard to the antioxidant capacity of monoterpenes, the essential oil of *Melaleuca alternifolia* (tea tree oil) significantly suppresses superoxide-induced production in human monocytes; mainly because of the effects of *α*-terpineol, a water-soluble component of this oil (Brand et al., 2001).

**Sesquiterpenes**

In an interesting study, Siedle et al. (2004) performed a preliminary evaluation of the structure–activity relationships of 103 different sesquiterpene lactones, and demonstrated that strong NF-κB inhibitory activity is correlated with the number of alkylate centres. Helenalin and parthenolide are probably the most extensively studied lactones. Lyss et al. (1998) were the first to demonstrate that helenalin (a sesquiterpene present in *Arnica montana* and *Arnica chamissonis* ssp. *foliosa*) inhibits the binding of transcription factor NF-κB to DNA, and thus substantially attenuates the inflammatory process. Since then, numerous studies have been performed using this compound as a selective NF-κB inhibitor, although it also inhibits both 5-lipoxygenase and leukotriene C4 synthase (Tornhamre et al., 2001), which seems to indicate that helenalin acts on both NF-κB and leukotriene pathways.

Parthenolide, the principal active component in medicinal plants such as *Tanacetum parthenium* (feverfew), *Magnolia grandiflora*, and *Smallanthus wendalinus*, is reported to have anti-inflammatory activity. In vitro, it inhibits IL-1 and TNF-α-mediated NF-κB activation (Bork et al., 1997; Hehner et al., 1999), and also inhibits the expression of inducible COX-2, pro-inflammatory cytokines and inducible nitric oxide synthase (Hwang et al., 1996; Fukuda et al., 2000). A recent study (Smolinski and Pestka, 2005) in vivo in animal models, found that only one gene, IL-6, was suppressed by parthenolide, and that the suppression was only moderate; this seems to indicate that further studies using animals as models should be performed.

**Diterpenes**

In view of the clinically effective antineoplastic activity, taxol (paclitaxel), originally isolated from *Taxus brevifolia*, is probably the best-known diterpene. This compound generates an LPS-like signal, increasing the production of several cytokines and nitric oxide (Kirikae et al., 1996; Moos and Fitzpatrick, 1998). Kahweol and cafestol, two coffee diterpenes, suppress PGE2, COX-2 and iNOS in LPS-activated RAW 264.7 macrophages (Kim et al., 2004b,c). Triptolide, a diterpene extracted from *Trypterygium wilfordii*, inhibits NO production and iNOS expression through blockade of NF-κB and c-Jun NH2-terminal kinase activation (Kim et al., 2004a). A recently discovered diterpene isolated from *Euphorbia peplus*, named pepluanone, inhibits both in vivo the carrageenin-induced rat paw oedema and in-vitro production of nitric oxide, PGE2, and TNF-α by reducing iNOS, COX-2 and TNF-α mRNA levels through the down-regulation of NF-κB binding activity (Corea et al., 2005).

**Triterpenes**

Triterpenes of oleane-, ursane- and lupane-types extracted from *Eriobotrya japonica* have been reported to have anti-inflammatory activity by reducing inflammatory effects on TPA-induced inflammation in mice (Banno et al., 2005). Celastrol, a triterpene extracted from *Trypterigium wilfordii*, inhibits IL-1β, -6, -8, and TNF-α production by LPS-activated human mononuclear cells, and in activated whole blood and inflammatory human colonic biopsies, by reducing LPS-induced NF-κB translocation (Pinna et al., 2004).

Ursolic acid, a pentacyclic triterpene carboxylic acid found in various plants, attenuates the expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase and COX-2 by repression of NF-κB in LPS- or IFN-γ-activated
mouse macrophages (Suh et al., 1998), but also triggers the release of intracellular macrophage migration inhibitory factor, a protein linked to pro-inflammatory events in resting macrophages (Ikeda et al., 2005), which seems to suggest a dual action of ursolic acid depending on the biological status of macrophages. Saponins are triterpeneglycosides and many possess anti-inflammatory activity. Glycyrrhizin, a triterpene glycoside extracted from liquorice root (Glycyrrhiza glabra), has a variety of activities, including those related to inflammation (Duwiejua and Zeitlin, 1993).

Recently, it has been reported that glycyrrhizin induces production of several cytokines, and inhibition of IL-8 and eotaxin 1 chemokines (Dai et al., 2001; Abe et al., 2003; Matsui et al., 2004). Other saponins isolated from Platycodon grandiflorum (Platycodi Radix) or from Panax ginseng inhibit the expression of LPS-induced iNOS and COX-2 mRNA and protein in RAW 264.7 macrophages without appreciable cytotoxic effects, through the blocking of NF-κB activation, and also suppress the pro-inflammatory cytokine PGE₂ (Ahn et al., 2005; Park et al., 2005).

Tetraterpenes

In addition to their better-known antioxidant effects, it has recently been demonstrated that carotenoids possess anti-inflammatory activity by inhibiting NO and PGE₂ production and iNOS, COX-2, TNF-α and IL-1β expression in both LPS-stimulated RAW 264.7 cells and primary cultures of mice macrophages, via suppression of IkB degradation and subsequent NF-κB activation by scavenging of intracellular ROS (Bai et al., 2005). Using both in-vivo and in-vitro models, Shiratori et al. reported that fucoxanthin, a carotenoid found in common edible seaweed, suppresses the development of endotoxin-induced uveitis in rats and reduces PGE₂, NO and TNF-α concentrations in the aqueous humour, with an anti-inflammatory effect on the eye comparable with the effect of prednisolone (Shiratori et al., 2005).

Phenolic compounds

This group includes flavonoids, tannins, coumarins and phenolic acids, all of which show some degree of anti-inflammatory activity (Yoon and Baek, 2005).

Flavonoids

Flavonoids act as powerful antioxidants, providing high levels of protection against oxidative and free-radical damage, and the anti-inflammatory activities of flavonoids have been extensively reviewed (Kim et al., 2004a; Yoon and Baek, 2005).

Apigenin, genistein, and kaempferol inhibit both COX-2 and iNOS in a dose-dependent manner in LPS-activated RAW 264.7 macrophages, and these effects may be mainly mediated through inhibition of IkB kinase activity (Liang et al., 1999). In addition, administration of two of these compounds, apigenin and kaempferol, or another flavone, chrysin, to RAW 264.7 macrophages induced activation of PPAR-γ, which seems to indicate that inhibition of COX-2 and iNOS may be also be mediated by PPAR-γ activation (Liang et al., 2001). In these cells, quercetin and (−)-epigallocatechin-e-gallate also inhibit iNOS activity, but slightly enhance COX-2 activity (Liang et al., 1999).

Apigenin, chrysin, or luteolin administration to LPS-stimulated human peripheral blood mononuclear cells inhibits TNF-α, IL-1β and IL-6 production, and increases apoptosis of monocytes (Hougue et al., 2005). Luteolin also inhibits the activity of IL-5, a modulator of the chemotactic responses of eosinophils, which plays an important role in eosinophilia-associated allergic inflammation (Park et al., 1999).

Using human endothelial cells as in-vitro models, it has been demonstrated that apigenin-inhibited IL-1α-induced prostaglandin synthesis and TNF-α-induced IL-6 and IL-8 production, suggesting that apigenin may act as a general inhibitor of cytokine-induced gene expression (Gerritsen et al., 1995). In addition, apigenin blocks cytokine-induced intracellular adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1), which is associated with a variety of inflammatory diseases and modulation of ICAM-1 expression is an important therapeutic target.

This inhibitory effect of apigenin and other flavonoids on ICAM-1 is mediated by attenuation of mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) activities (Chen et al., 2004). Myricetin-3-Oβ-D-glucuronide, isolated from Epilobium angustifolium, is a potent inhibitor, not only of COX-1 and COX-2 but also of 5-LOX (Porath et al., 2005). A fraction of a blackberry extract with high anthocyanin content showed
inhibitory effects on NO biosynthesis in the LPS-stimulated murine J774A.1 macrophage cell line, through inhibition of iκB degradation and thus blocking of NF-κB activation (Pergola et al., 2006).

Several pioneer studies have demonstrated that chalcones inhibit inflammatory mediator generation (Ballesteros et al., 1995). Suppression of iNOS and COX-2 induction by several chalcones has been reported (Herencia et al., 1999; Hsieh et al., 2000), and some of these compounds show potent scavenging of superoxide (Herencia et al., 1998), but they also inhibit TNF-α- and LPS-induced NF-κB activation, and PPARγ ligand-binding activity (Alcaraz et al., 2004; Jung et al., 2006).

**Tannins and phenolic acids**

It has been reported that some caffetannins and related compounds inhibit 5-HETE and 5-LOX production, whereas others, such as caffeic acid and caffeoylmalic acid have been reported to enhance PGE₂ formation in a concentration-dependent fashion (Kimura et al., 1987). In-vivo studies on proanthocyanidins from grape seeds and from blackcurrant (Ribes nigrum) showed reduction in carrageenan-induced paw oedema in rats, and inhibition of NOS activity and NO, IL-1β, TNF-α and PGE₂ levels in exudate (Li et al., 2001; Garbacki et al., 2004), but no effect on IL-6 and IL-10 levels (Garbacki et al., 2004).

Contradictory results have been described with regard to the effect of gallotannin (GT) on poly(ADP-ribose) (PAR), an emerging key regulator of chromatin superstructure and transcription activation. Pharmacological inhibition of PAR formation impairs the expression of several genes, including those of the inflammatory response. It has been reported that in the RAW 264.7 macrophage cell line, GT inhibits PAR glycohydrolase (PARG), the sole depoly(ADP-ribose)latining enzyme, triggering nuclear accumulation of PAR and concomitant PAR-dependent expression of iNOS and COX-2, but not of IL-1β and TNF-α. Neither NF-κB nor AP-1 transcription factor were increased (Rapizzi et al., 2004).

By contrast, a study of A549 type-II lung epithelial cells did not detect either a GT-dependent PAR increase or a PARG inhibition, but did detect potent inhibitory effects of GT on cytokine and chemokine expression, probably due to the antioxidant effect of GT, which inhibits NF-κB/AP-1 activation (Erdelyi et al., 2005). It has previously been demonstrated that tannins (e.g. those isolated from Terminalia catappa) show potent antioxidant activity (Lin et al., 2001).

**Coumarins**

Several coumarins have been reported that possess anti-inflammatory activity. Aesculetin and scopolin isolated from Santolina oblongifolia show marked activity as inhibitors of release of eicosanoids from ionophore-stimulated mouse peritoneal macrophages (Silvan et al., 1996). Treatment of LPS-activated RAW 264.7 macrophage cells with any of several furanocoumarins isolated from Ledebouriella seseloids led to inhibition of NO production by decreasing iNOS expression (Wang et al., 2000), while cloricromene, a coumarin derivative, protects against collagen-induced arthritis in rats by reducing levels of iNOS, COX-2, nitrotyrosine and poly(ADP-ribose) synthetase (PARS) (Cuzzocrea et al., 2000). Blocking of IL-1β-induced PGE₂ release by coumarins has been evaluated by several groups, finding that coumarins inhibit COX-2 expression and that this effect might be mediated, at least in part, through suppression of NF-κB activity (Lin et al., 2002; Yang et al., 2002).

**Alkaloïdes**

Phenanthroindolizidine alkaloids extracted from the stems of Ficus septica (Damu et al., 2005) have been evaluated for their anti-inflammatory activity. Tylophorine and ficuseptine-A potently suppressed NO production and did not show significant cytotoxicity in LPS/IFN-γ-stimulated RAW 264.7 cells. Tylophorine also reduced TNF-α, iNOS and COX-2 protein levels, probably through inhibition of AP-1 activation (Yang et al., 2006) and its analogue DCB 3503 had similar effects (You et al., 2006).

Berberine, a benzodioxoloquinolizine alkaloid reduces carrageenan- and zymosan-induced paw oedema (Ivanovska and Philipov, 1996; Kuo et al., 2004), probably by inhibition of iNOS, NO, COX-2 and PGE₂ production and increased IL-12 levels through activation of p38 MAPK (Kang et al., 2002; Lee et al., 2003).

Capsaicin has been shown to inhibit the in-vitro production of superoxide anions, hydrogen peroxide and nitrite radicals by macrophages (Joe and Lokesh, 1994). In LPS/IFN-γ-stimulated RAW 264.7
macrophages, capsaicin inhibits COX-2 and iNOS expression, and subsequently NO and PGE₂ production (Chen et al., 2003). These effects seem to be mediated by inhibition of capsaicin of NF-κB and AP-1 activation (Han et al., 2001; Chen et al., 2003).

Sanguinarine shows antioxidant activity against spontaneous oxidation (Firatlı et al., 1994), and is a potent inhibitor of NF-κB activation (Chaturvedi et al., 1997). Tetrandrine and fangchinoline, the major alkaloids of the tuberous root of the creeper Stephania tetrandrae, show anti-inflammatory effects in acute paw oedema assay, in adjuvant-induced arthritis, and in rat subcutaneous air pouch models of inflammation (Wong et al., 1992; Whitehouse et al., 1994). However, in-vitro studies showed varying results for these related alkaloids, suggesting different biochemical mechanisms of action (Choi et al., 2000).

Oxymatrine, from Sophora flavescens, decreased TNF-α levels by inhibition of p38 MAPK in an in-vivo mouse model of oleic-acid-induced acute lung injury (Xu et al., 2005). Brucine, an alkaloid extracted from the seeds of Struchonis nux-vomica, significantly reduced PGE₂ and 6-keto-PGF₁α levels in carrageenin-induced paw oedema and in Freund’s complete adjuvant-induced arthritis in rat (Yin et al., 2003).

Using in-vitro models, it has been demonstrated that stylopine (a major component of the leaf of Chelidonium majus) and rutaecarpine (isolated from the fruits of Evodia rutaecarpa) inhibit both COX-2 activity and PGE₂ production (Moon et al., 1999; Jang et al., 2004), while stylopine also reduces levels of iNOS and NO, as well as of TNF-α (Jang et al., 2004).

Finally, evodiamine, an alkaloid extracted from the fruit of Evodia, abolishes constitutive and inducible NF-κB activation by inhibiting IkBα kinase activation in several cell types (Takada et al., 2005).

**Conclusions**

Inflammation is a complex physiopathological process in which an inflammatory stimulus produces a cascade of intracellular signalling leading to the synthesis of specific mediators that in turn induce the inflammatory response. Thus, evaluation of herbal substances that can either reduce levels/activity of pro-inflammatory mediators, or increase levels/activity of anti-inflammatory mediators, may be a useful strategy for studying their efficacy for the treatment of inflammatory disease. In this chapter, we analysed the mechanisms of action of stimuli that induce mediators involved in the inflammatory process, and reviewed the most recent studies, in both in-vivo and in-vitro models, about the ways in which certain plant extracts and/or isolated plant compounds may act on inflammatory signalling pathways to reduce inflammatory processes.

**References**


Osadebe PO, Okoye FB (2003). Anti-inflammatory effects


Introduction

Free radicals are chemical species possessing one or more unpaired electrons and can be considered as a fragment of molecules that are extremely reactive and short lived. They are produced continuously in cells, either as accidental byproducts of metabolism or deliberately (for example, during phagocytosis). Unpaired electrons usually make a molecule more reactive than the corresponding non-radical. The molecule acts as an electron acceptor and essentially ‘steals’ electrons from other molecules. Free radicals are referred to as oxidising agents since they cause other molecules to donate their electrons (Halliwell, 1997). Free radicals can be formed by the homolytic cleavage of a covalent bond of a normal molecule, with each fragment retaining one unpaired electron; by the loss of a single electron from a normal molecule; or by the addition of a single electron to a normal molecule.

The most common cellular oxygen free radicals are superoxide radical (O$_2^-$), hydroxyl radical (OH$^-$) and nitric oxide (NO$^-$) (Simonian and Coyle, 1996). Other molecules, such as hydrogen peroxide (H$_2$O$_2$) and peroxynitrate (ONOO$^-$) are not free radicals themselves but can lead to their generation through various chemical reactions.

Oxygen free radicals and related molecules are often classified together as reactive oxygen species (ROS), to signify their ability to promote oxidative changes within the cell.

All aerobic organisms produce free radicals, predominantly superoxide, formed as a side product during the reduction of molecular oxygen by mitochondria. An average cell utilises $10^{13}$ molecules of O$_2$ per day. It is estimated that 1% of respired molecular oxygen will form ROS, thus approximately $10^{11}$ ROS are produced by each cell in a day. Cells normally employ a number of defence mechanisms against damage induced by free radicals (Simonian and Coyle, 1996; Evans et al., 2002). Oxidative stress is the term referring to the imbalance between generation of reactive oxygen species and the activity of the antioxidant defences.
There is increasing evidence to support the involvement of free-radical reactions in several human diseases since ROS play a role in a variety of normal regulatory systems, the de-regulation of which may play an important role in inflammation. ROS and other free radicals have long been known to be mutagenic and have more recently emerged as mediators of other phenotypic and genotypic changes causing mutations and neoplasia.

In the last decade, evidence has accumulated that the free-radical process known as lipid peroxidation plays a crucial and causative role in the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis, cancer, myocardial infarction and also in ageing (Harman, 1992). Participation of free-radical oxidative interactions in promoting tissue injury in conditions such as brain trauma, ischaemia, toxicity and also in neurodegenerative diseases such as Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's dementia, multiple sclerosis and lipofuscinosis are now well documented (Cheeseman and Slater, 1993). The involvement of ROS in the pathogenesis of several lung diseases has also been suggested while the pioneering studies on the role of ROS reactions in the genesis and the expression of cellular and tissue damage has been carried out mainly in the liver, using acute rat poisoning with carbon tetrachloride (Cheeseman and Slater, 1993; Raja et al., 2007).

Studies in experimental models have incriminated ROS as primary mediators in the pathogenesis of renal injury. Diabetes mellitus is also associated with oxidative reactions, particularly those that are catalysed by decompartmentalised transition metals, but their causative significance in diabetic tissue damage remains to be established (Cheeseman and Slater, 1993).

In 1956, Harman proposed the free-radical theory of ageing (Tripathi, 1995), the assumption that ageing results from random deleterious effects of tissue brought about by ROS and it is very likely that ROS contribute considerably to the development of stochastic disorders observed during the progress of ageing (Mukherjee et al., 2007a).

In recent years, increasing experimental and clinical data have provided compelling evidence for the involvement of oxygen free radicals in the three main disorders of prematurity – chronic lung disease, retinopathy of prematurity and intraventricular haemorrhage, the hypothesis being that oxygen-centred radical and related reactive oxygen metabolites are formed too rapidly to be detoxified by antioxidant defence mechanisms (Rai et al., 2006).

Defence against free radicals: antioxidants

Antioxidant defences fall in to two main categories, those whose role is to prevent the generation of free radicals and those that intercept any radicals that are generated. They exist in both the aqueous and membrane compartments of cells and can be enzymes or non-enzymes. Various animal studies have shown that antioxidants delay or protect against the oxidative damage produced by the free-radical reaction and a protective role against ailments mediated by free radicals is now well established (Cheeseman and Slater, 1993).

Antioxidants are exogenous (natural or synthetic) or endogenous compounds acting in several ways, including removal of $O_2^•$, scavenging reactive oxygen/nitrogen species or their precursors, inhibition of ROS formation and binding metal ions needed for catalysis of ROS generation and up-regulation of endogenous antioxidant defences. The protective efficacy of antioxidants depends on the type of ROS that is generated, the place of generation and the severity of the damage (Halliwell et al., 1994; Halliwell, 1997). The natural antioxidant system can be classified into two major groups: endogenous enzymes and low-molecular-weight antioxidants.

Endogenous enzymes include extensively studied enzymes such as superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase, glutathione peroxidases, DT diaphorase, and glutathione-regenerating enzyme systems (Sies, 1991). Some enzymatic systems such as SOD and catalase act specifically against ROS, while certain other enzyme systems reduce thiols. The low-molecular-weight antioxidants can be further classified into directly acting antioxidants (e.g. scavengers and chain-breaking antioxidants) and indirectly acting antioxidants (e.g. chelating agents). The directly acting antioxidants are extremely important for defence against oxidative stress. Direct scavenging of ROS is one of the many antioxidant actions required to restore oxidative equilibrium once it is lost in different pathologies. This subgroup of antioxidants currently contains several hundred compounds including ascorbic acid (vitamin C), retinoic acid.
(vitamin A), melatonin, lipoic acids, polyphenols, and carotenoids, being derived from dietary and herbal sources. The hypothesis that restoring redox equilibrium through activation of intracellular signals is also an important step of the antioxidation process is gaining increasing support (Shohami et al., 1997). It is likely that the trapping of excess free radicals could restore redox equilibrium in the initial states of cellular oxidative stress.

**Free radicals in various diseases**

According to Halliwell and Gutteridge (1999), oxidative stress occurs in most human diseases, although this is not the same as saying that it is the cause of most diseases. The increase in free radicals may be secondary to the disease process. Free radicals are very short lived and difficult to study in vivo. Direct detection of free radicals is possible with electron spin resonance, but it is very expensive and complex (Clarkson and Thompson, 2000; Tarpey and Fridovich, 2001), so a variety of surrogate markers to ascertain free-radical activity must be used. Developing accurate methods to measure biomarkers for DNA damage and lipid peroxidation is challenging and methods in the current literature include urine levels of F2-isoprostanes as a biomarker for lipid peroxidation, measurement of oxidised low-density lipoprotein (LDL), use of a chemical mutagenic product of fat oxidation, and 8-oxo-deoxyguanosine, associated with a decline in mitochondrial function (Halliwell, 1999; Tarpey and Fridovich, 2001). There have also been efforts to detect changes in the levels of antioxidants such as SOD, glutathione or vitamin E in the body in response to oxidative stress, to identify many conditions associated with free-radical formation, but results have not been consistent. The implications of the presence of ROS in cardiovascular, pulmonary (Halliwell and Gutteridge, 1999), carcinogenesis (Kasai and Nishimura, 1984; Floyd, 1990) diabetes (Langenstroer and Pieper, 1992) and neurological diseases (Kontos, 2001) as well as inflammation (McCord, 2000) are currently under intense investigation.

It is easy to appreciate that the lungs are vulnerable to inhaled agents, e.g. ozone, nitrogen dioxide, sulphur dioxide and other toxins, that stimulate ROS production. ROS can stimulate lipid peroxidation and oxidation of DNA bases in the lungs. The irritant effect of smoke also activates lung macrophages and neutrophils with resultant production of additional ROS (Halliwell and Gutteridge, 1999). Chronic lung inflammation such as asbestosis, asthma and cystic fibrosis is also associated with elevated markers of oxidative stress so ROS may contribute to the ongoing pathology (Halliwell and Gutteridge, 1999).

The brain may be especially sensitive to oxidative damage. Oxidative stress can damage neurones and glial cells in a manner similar to other issues: via products of lipid peroxidation that are neurotoxic, DNA damage, etc. (Halliwell and Gutteridge, 1999). Reperfusion injury also occurs in the brain after a stroke and superoxide produced during reperfusion results in abnormalities of cerebral vascular responses and blood–brain barrier permeability. Extracellular glutamate levels in the brain increase rapidly during ischaemia, leading to increased production of OH radicals, calcium ion imbalance and increased neurotoxicity (Halliwell and Gutteridge, 1999). If bleeding occurs with the stroke, normally sequestered iron molecules are released and may initiate harmful free-radical chain reactions. Neurodegenerative diseases associated with ROS include Parkinson’s, Alzheimer’s, and many others (Halliwell and Gutteridge, 1999; Tarpey and Fridovich, 2001). It is possible that although the initiators of the disease state vary, free radicals are involved in a common pathway that leads to neural cell death.

The acute inflammatory response is typically beneficial to the organism, being a major defence against microorganisms and normally self-limited. However, the superoxide-producing neutrophil itself is destroyed in the process and healthy surrounding cells may also be damaged (McCord, 2000). With chronic inflammation, such as in rheumatoid arthritis, the overall impact of the continued generation of free radicals is deleterious. Degradation of hyaluronic acid (synovial fluid) is driven by the presence of OH. These radicals may be produced by phagocytic cells in the joint, by changes in tissue oxygenation caused by swelling, followed by reperfusion, or by some of the drugs used to treat RA. A role for ROS in the endothelial dysfunction associated with diabetes was proposed (Langenstroer and
Pieper, 1992) and levels of manganese superoxide dismutase have been reported to be decreased in streptozotocin-induced diabetes in rats. Normalising mitochondrial $O_2^-$ has been shown to block pathways involved in hyperglycaemic damage. Consistent with these observations, SOD pretreatment improved vasodilation in isolated aortic rings from streptozotocin diabetic rats. Levels of $O_2^-$ are also increased in hyperinsulinaemic rats, which is believed to be related to activation of NAD(P)H oxidase.

The progression of heart failure is associated with programmed cell death or apoptosis, which studies suggest occurs in response to ischaemia, reperfusion, pressure overload and in dilated cardiomyopathies (Chien, 1999). Oxidative stress may also be critical for the activation of apoptosis in dilated cardiomyopathies.

**Free radicals in cardiovascular diseases**

Cardiovascular disease is a heterogeneous group of disorders that affects the heart and blood vessels. The diseases are characterised by angina pectoris, hypertension, congestive heart failure, acute myocardial infarction (heart attacks), stroke and arrhythmia. There is now considerable biochemical, physiological and pharmacological data to support a connection between free-radical reactions and cardiovascular tissue injury. Evidence shows that these disease conditions are directly or indirectly related to oxidative damage and share common mechanisms of molecular and cellular damage. As these mechanisms are elucidated, it may be possible to improve the techniques for clinical and pharmacological intervention.

**Ischaemia–reperfusion myocardial injury**

Exposure of myocardial tissue to a brief, transient ischaemia, followed by reperfusion, has attracted much attention in recent years as an explanation for some cardiac diseases. Myocardial ischaemia occurs when myocardial oxygen demand exceeds oxygen supply. Unless reversed, this situation results in cell injury and, clinically, myocardial infarction. Logically, reperfusion of ischaemic myocardium is recognised as potentially beneficial, because mortality is directly proportional to infarct size, and this latter to the severity and duration of ischaemia. Reperfusion of the ischaemic myocardium can restore oxygen and substrates to the ischaemic myocardial cells, but this process may create another form of myocardial damage termed ‘reperfusion injury’ (Bolli, 1991, 1992; Ferrari *et al.*, 1993). Thus, restoration of a normal blood flow in the heart by methods such as angioplasty, thrombolytic agents or cardiopulmonary bypass can lead to specific lesions (arrhythmias, deficit in contractility, necrosis), the importance of which also depends on the duration of ischaemia.

Evidence suggests that this may be due, in part, to the generation of toxic ROS (Bolli, 1991; Fox, 1992 Starkopf *et al.*, 1995). The active involvement of ROS in the ischaemia–reperfusion damage is demonstrated by direct and indirect experimental evidences. Direct evidence arises from the possibility of measuring radicals in myocardial tissue by electron spin resonance (ESR) and spin trapping methodology (Garlick *et al.*, 1987; Pietri *et al.*, 1989); indirect evidence by the measurement of the products of free-radical attack on biological substrates (e.g. malondialdehyde as a measure of lipid peroxidation extent), and intracellular and extracellular antioxidant capacity (Dousset *et al.*, 1983; Ytrehus and Hegstad, 1991). Experimental findings suggest that in ischaemic tissue there is an impairment of antioxidant mechanisms (Starkopf *et al.*, 1997). Evidence to support this statement comes also from the cardioprotective effects of agents capable of inducing antioxidant enzymes in the heart and from the beneficial effects of several enzymatic free-radical scavengers, antioxidants and iron chelators in reperfused myocardium (Jeroudi *et al.*, 1994).

**Free-radical hypothesis of atherosclerosis**

Considerable in-vivo evidence, animal and human, supports the important role of ROS in atherosclerotic coronary heart disease (Parthasarathy and Rankin, 1992; White *et al.*, 1994). While the exact mechanisms for atherogenesis are not completely understood, recent studies suggest that oxidative modification of low-density lipoproteins (LDL) is a critical factor (Morel *et al.*, 1984). LDL may be oxidatively modified by all major cell types of the arterial wall via their extracellular release of reactive oxygen species (ROS) (Morel *et al.*, 1984). Hydroxyl radicals (thus formed) may initiate the peroxidation of long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids within LDL, giving rise to conjugated dienes and lipid...
hydroperoxy radicals (LOO•) (Mukherjee, 2003). This process is self propagating, since LOO• can attack adjacent fatty acids until complete fatty acid chain fragmentation occurs. A number of highly reactive products then accumulate in the LDL particle, including malondialdehyde and lysophosphatides, which interact with the amino side chain of the apoprotein B 100 and modify it to form new epitopes that are not recognised by the LDL receptor.

**Hypertension**

Essential hypertension (EH) appears associated with increased superoxide anion and hydrogen peroxide production, as well as decreased antioxidant capacity (Kuman and Das, 1993; Jun et al., 1996). The involvement of ROS in EH is also suggested by the observation of increased level of lipid peroxides and decreased concentrations of antioxidant vitamin E in plasma of EH patients. Recently, Simi et al. (1998) have shown that patients with EH have plasma concentrations of free-radical scavengers lower than healthy normotensive subjects. The elevated consumption of plasma antioxidants was accompanied by increased activity of extracellular antioxidant enzymes (glutathione peroxidase and SOD), suggesting that ROS production in EH overwhelms antioxidant defence capacity. Oxidative stress in patients with EH is accompanied with the decreased red blood cell counts (Simi et al., 1998) and decreased (Tse et al., 1994) SOD and glutathione peroxidase activity in neutrophils.

**Chronic heart failure**

Chronic heart failure is a state characterised by a number of processes that may promote ROS generation in vivo, including cytokine activation (Cross and Jones, 1991; Berry and Clark, 2000), recurrent hypoxia–reperfusion (Ferrari et al., 1998), possibly genetic susceptibilities (Guzik et al., 2000) and activation of the renin–angiotensin system (Berry and Clark, 2000). There are a number of potential cellular sources implicated in enhanced ROS generation in chronic heart failure. It has recently been demonstrated that patients with chronic heart failure may have increased leucocyte O2– production, which is, in turn, related to severity of disease (Ellis et al., 2000). Other sources of enhanced ROS generation in human chronic heart failure are both the myocardium (Dieterich et al., 2000) and peripheral blood vessels. Increased activity of myocardial NADPH oxidase has been reported in heart failure (Heymes et al., 2003).

**Myocardial damage**

ROS have direct effects on cellular structure and function and may be integral signalling molecules in myocardial remodelling and failure. ROS result in a phenotype characterised by hypertrophy and apoptosis in isolated cardiac myocytes (Siwik et al., 1999). ROS have also been shown to activate matrix metalloproteinase (MMP) in cardiac fibroblasts (Siwik et al., 2001). Myocardial MMP activity is increased in the failing heart (Creemers et al., 2001) and an MMP inhibitor has been shown to limit early left ventricular dilatation in a murine model of myocardial infarction (MI) (Rohde et al., 1999). Hayashidani et al. (2003) showed significant improvement in the survival after MI in MMP-2 knockout mice, which was mainly attributable to the inhibition of early cardiac rupture and the development of subsequent LV dysfunction. Because MMP can be activated by ROS (Rajagopalan et al., 1996), one proposed mechanism of ventricular remodelling is the activation of MMPs secondary to increased ROS production. Sustained MMP activation might influence the structural properties of the myocardium by providing an abnormal extracellular environment with which the myocytes interact. Kinugawa et al. (2000) demonstrated that the OH scavenger, dimethylthiourea, inhibits the activation of MMP-2 in association with the development of ventricular remodelling and failure. These data raise the interesting possibility that increased ROS after MI can be a stimulus for myocardial MMP activation, which might play an important role in the development of HF.

**Left ventricular hypertrophy**

In animal models of heart failure, levels of ROS are elevated and cardiac protection is observed with antioxidant treatment (Cargnoni et al., 2000). The increase in ROS associated with left ventricular hypertrophy appears to be NAD(P)H oxidase-dependent. Myocardial NAD(P)H oxidase activity is elevated and expression of p22phox, gp91phox, p67phox and p47phox is increased in left ventricular tissue from guinea pigs after aortic banding (Li et al.,
Cardiac hypertrophy occurs in response to a sustained increase in cardiac work. The mechanisms underlying this progression from compensated hypertrophy to decompensated heart failure remain poorly understood and incompletely explored (Chien, 1999). There are data supporting at least a contributory role for alterations in ROS production in the pathophysiology of cardiac hypertrophy. There is substantial evidence from animal studies indicating that ROS, and particularly \( \text{O}_2^- \), production is increased in cardiac hypertrophy. Recently, Date et al. demonstrated attenuated cardiac hypertrophy in mice subjected to pressure overload following treatment with the free-radical scavenger, N-2-mercaptopropionyl glycine (Date et al., 2002). This is the first evidence in an experimental model suggesting a causal role for ROS in the development of pressure overload hypertrophy. The precise source of ROS in this study was not apparent. In a similar study using a guinea pig model of pressure overload, an attenuation of LV hypertrophy was observed in animals treated with vitamin E. Taken together, these data support an important functional role for ROS, in particular NADPH oxidase derived ROS, in the development of pressure-overload hypertrophy.

Free radicals in hypercholesterolaemia

Increased levels of \( \text{O}_2^- \) generation and attenuated NO mediated responses have been demonstrated in aortic rings from cholesterol-fed rabbits (Mugge et al., 1994). Treatment of the animals with polyethylene glycolated SODs improved endothelium-dependent vasodilation (White et al., 1994). Supplementation with L-arginine has also been shown to reduce \( \text{O}_2^- \) levels and restore NO-mediated responses in cholesterol-fed animals (Boger et al., 1995). \( \text{O}_2^- \) levels are also raised in WHHL (Watanabe heritable hyperlipidaemic) rabbits (Miller et al., 1998). Multiple mechanisms appear to be involved in \( \text{O}_2^- \) production in association with hypercholesterolaemia. Stepp and colleagues (Stepp et al., 2002) provided evidence that in canine carotid arteries eNOS, mechanisms dependent on xanthine oxidase and possibly NAD(P)H-oxidase were involved. Further evidence for the involvement of NAD(P)H oxidase was obtained in WHHL rabbits (Warnholtz et al., 1999). In monkeys with atherosclerosis, disease severity is related to \( \text{O}_2^- \) levels, and regression of atherosclerosis is associated with decreases in \( \text{O}_2^- \) levels and NAD(P)H oxidase activity (Hathaway et al., 2002).

Free radicals in skeletal muscle dysfunction

Oxidative stress could be the mechanistic basis also for muscle fatigue and reduced exercise tolerance in patients with heart failure (Wilson, 1995). This notion is supported by a positive correlation between ROS and exercise intolerance in these patients (Nishiyama et al., 1998). Further, Tsutsui et al. (2001) demonstrated that the production of ROS was increased in the skeletal muscle homogenates obtained from a murine model of HF and increased ROS were identified as \( \text{OH}^- \) originating from \( \text{O}_2^- \), which was associated with a concomitant increase in the oxidation of lipids. These results are consistent with the previous studies that the oxidative capacity is reduced and \( \text{O}_2^- \) utilisation is inadequate in skeletal muscle mitochondria from patients with heart failure (Mancini et al., 1989). Skeletal muscle mitochondria from heart failure are associated with a decrease in the activities of complex I and complex III (Tsutsui et al., 2001). As has been shown in the failing hearts (Ide et al., 1999), the defects in electron transfer function may lead to ROS production. ROS may play an important role in the muscle atrophy commonly seen in patients with heart failure through the induction of apoptosis. In addition, ROS impair myoplasmic \( \text{Ca}^{2+} \) homeostasis and inhibit the oxidative energy production in the mitochondria, both of which may contribute to the muscle contractile dysfunction. An attempt to attenuate oxidative stress would improve, to some extent, the exercise capacity of patients with heart failure.

Tests for antioxidant activity

Antioxidant activity can be evaluated both in vitro and in vivo. There are potential models for
evaluation of the antioxidant activity. Animals such as mice, rats, guinea pigs and rabbits can be used for in-vivo evaluation with the oxidative stress induced by some external chemical agent (e.g. carbon tetrachloride), physical, emotional, mental or environmental stress (e.g. torturing the animals, depriving animals from food, water and sexual activity, increasing noise or temperature of the animal housing). Even surgery can be performed for inducing oxidative stress in rats, e.g. cerebral ischaemia/reperfusion induced oxidative stress in which the induction of ischaemia in rats was performed by occluding bilateral common carotid arteries with clamps for 30 min followed by 24 h reperfusion (Jingtao et al., 1999). Following any of the methods whereby the oxidative stress can be induced in the animals, they should be grouped as treated (at least two or more doses), control and normal animals. In the end of study the animals can be sacrificed to isolate the vital organs. Enzymes such as SOD, catalase and glutathione can be measured in these tissues, together with the extent of lipid peroxidation caused by the oxidative stress, using assays such as barbituric acid reactive substances (TBARS) (Mukherjee, 2002; Mukherjee and Mukherjee, 2005).

In-vitro methods consist of chemical methods in which free radicals can be generated using chemical reactions, e.g. nitric oxide method or chemicals which themselves act as the source of free radicals such as DPPH (2,2-diphenyl-1-picrylhydrazyl). In-vitro methods are also available in which generated free radicals can attack tissues isolated from the animal body leading to the oxidation of lipids present in the tissues, e.g. thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances (TBARS) assay. Details on some of the in-vitro methods used for the evaluation of antioxidant activity are given below.

**DPPH radical scavenging assay**

The antioxidant activity of the plant extract and pure compounds was assessed on the basis of radical scavenging effect of the stable DPPH free radical, which is purple. Antioxidants react with DPPH, and convert it to 1,1-diphenyl-2-(2,4,6-trinitrophenyl) hydrazine, which is colourless. Reaction mixtures containing test samples (dissolved in DMSO) and 300 μmol/L DPPH ethanolic solutions in 96-well microtitre plates are incubated at 37°C for 30 min, and absorbances measured at 515 nm. The degree of discolouration indicates the scavenging potentials of the antioxidant compounds and IC50 values can be calculated, i.e. the concentration of sample required to scavenge 50% DPPH free radicals (Gamez et al., 1998). DPPH reagent (0.5% in methanol) can be sprayed on to preparative TLC plates to identify active antioxidant compounds in plant extracts. Active radical scavengers give yellow colour zones against a purple background (Mukherjee, 2006a).

**Nitric oxide radical scavenging assay**

Nitric oxide (NO·) is a free radical and scavengers of nitric oxide compete with oxygen, leading to reduced production of nitric oxide. NO is generated from sodium nitroprusside and measured by the Griess Illosvoy reagent (Garratt, 1964), which can be modified by using naphthylethlenediamine dihydrochloride (0.1% w/v) instead of 1-naphthylamine (5%). The extent of NO radical scavenging can be assessed by colorimetry whereby reaction mixtures containing 10 mmol/L sodium nitroprusside, phosphate buffer saline and extracts or standard solution are incubated at 25°C for 150 min. After incubation, 0.5 mL of the reaction mixture is mixed with 1 mL of sulphonic acid reagent (0.33% in 20% glacial acetic acid) and allowed to stand for 5 min to complete diazotisation. Naphthyl ethlenediamine dihydrochloride is then added, mixed and allowed to stand for 30 min at 25°C and a pink coloured chromophore is formed in diffused light whose intensity is measured at 540 nm (Rai et al., 2006a).

**Scavenging of superoxide anion radicals assay**

Various cellular enzymes can catalyse chemical reactions involving molecular oxygen, including admission formation of superoxide radicals, which can inactivate vital cell components. Superoxide can be generated by enzymatic oxidation of hypoxanthine with xanthine oxidase and can be detected colorimetrically by nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) reduction. The reaction is started by adding 100 μL of phenazine methosulphate (PMS) solution (60 μmol/L PMS in 100 mmol/L phosphate buffer, pH 7.4) to the
mixture, incubating at 25°C for 5 min, and measuring the absorbance at 560 nm. Decreased absorbance of the reaction mixture indicates increased superoxide anion scavenging activity (Liu and Ng, 2000).

**Deoxyribose degradation assay**

In this method hydroxyl radicals are generated by incubating a mixture containing KH$_2$PO$_4$-KOH, H$_2$O$_2$, FeCl$_2$-EDTA and deoxyribose (Paya et al., 1992). The extent of deoxyribose degradation by the formed hydroxyl radical can be assessed by the thiobarbituric acid method. The typical reaction is started by adding Fe(II) at a final concentration of 6 μmol/L to a 0.5 mL final volume of 20 mmol/L phosphate buffer, 5 mmol/L of 2-deoxyribose, Cu(II) (5 μmol/L) (pH 7.2) and 100 μmol/L H$_2$O$_2$ with and without 10 μmol/L of ascorbate as an iron chelator. Reactions were carried out for 10 min at 25 °C and were stopped by adding 0.5 mL of 50 mmol/L NaOH containing 4% (w/v) phosphoric acid. After boiling for 15 min, the absorbance of the solution containing the oxidation products is measured at 532 nm (Juliana Khouri et al., 2007).

**Thiobarbituric-acid-reactive substances assay**

In this method the lipid peroxidation is measured in terms of malondialdehyde (MDA) content following the thiobarbituric acid method of Ohkawa et al. (1979). MDA is formed in vivo and in vitro through oxidation of unsaturated lipids by ROS, and other oxidative agents. Thiobarbituric acid reacts with MDA to form a pink chromogen, which can be detected spectrophotometrically at 532 nm (Halliwell and Gutteridge, 1989).

**β-Carotene-linoleic acid (linolate) assay**

The antioxidant activity is measured by the ability of a compound to minimise the coupled oxidation of linoleic acid and β-carotene in an emulsified aqueous system. β-Carotene loses its orange colour when reacting with ROS (Al-Saikhan et al., 1995), so colorimetry can be used to investigate the decline in colour caused by oxidative stress. In this method a stock solution of β-carotene and linoleic acid is prepared by dissolving 0.5 mg of β-carotene in 1 mL of chloroform and adding 25 μL of linoleic acid together with 200 mg of Tween 40, evaporating the chloroform and adding 100 mL of aerated water to the residue. To 2.5 mL of this mixture, 300 μL of extract is added and the mixture incubated in boiling water for 2 h together with two blanks, one containing the antioxidant BHT and the other without antioxidant, before measuring the absorbance at 470 nm.

**DNA nicking assay**

The ability of a test drug to prevent the DNA damage caused by agents such as 2,2′-azobis (2-methylpropionamide) dihydrochloride (APPH) is measured in this method. The test substance is mixed with DNA and APPH, dissolved in phosphate-buffered saline, is added to start the reaction. The resultant mix is developed on agarose gel, electrophoresis carried out and then staining with ethidium bromide. DNA bands are visualised under illuminated ultraviolet light and examined for DNA breakage (Wejewickreme and Kitts, 1997).

**Herbal antioxidant products**

The ethnomedical literature contains a large number of plants that can be used against diseases, in which ROS are thought to play a major role. A large number of plants and phytoconstituents possess antioxidant properties (Table 19.1) and many of them are now articles of commerce, claiming to prevent or reduce diseases associated with high levels of ROS. Antioxidants can also be used in the preservation of food products. An important source of antioxidants is the diet, which contains numerous plants with antioxidant activity, including the spices and condiments. The traditional medical literature describes the potential role of spices as a source of many vitamins and as domestic remedies for many human diseases (Mukherjee et al., 2006b, 2006c) and the consumption of fruits and vegetables, olive oil, red wine and tea is inversely correlated with rates of incidence of many diseases.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Phytoconstituents</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Artemisia monata</em></td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td>Luteolin-7-O-rutinoside and Escutcin</td>
<td>Kim et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Andrographis paniculata</em></td>
<td>Acanthaceae</td>
<td>Arial parts</td>
<td>Andrographolide 14-deoxy-11-oxo-andrographolide, neo-andrographolide</td>
<td>Maiti et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Allium sativum</em></td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Bulb</td>
<td>Garlicin, allicin, S-allylcysteine, S-allylmercaptocysteine, allin, allixin, N-acetyl-S-allylcysteine</td>
<td>Rekka and Kourownakis, 1994; Ide et al., 1996; Imai et al., 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Anoectochilus formosanus</em></td>
<td>Orchidaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Kinsenone (diaryl pentanooid) and flavonoid glycosides</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Asparagus racemosus</em></td>
<td>Scrophulariaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Bacoside A&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;, bacosaponin C</td>
<td>Pawar et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bulbine capitata</em></td>
<td>Asphodelaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Isofuranonaphthoquinones</td>
<td>Bezabih et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Burkea africana</em></td>
<td>Leguminosae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Proanthocyanidins</td>
<td>Mathisen et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cedrus decodara</em></td>
<td>Pinaceae</td>
<td>Heartwood</td>
<td>Matairesinol</td>
<td>Tiwari et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Crocus sativus</em></td>
<td>Iridaceae</td>
<td>Stigmas</td>
<td>Crocin</td>
<td>Pham et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Curcuma longa</em></td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizomes</td>
<td>Curcumin, turmeric antioxidant protein</td>
<td>Sreejayan et al., 1997; Selvam et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Chrysophyllum cainito</em></td>
<td>Sapotaceae</td>
<td>Seeds, fruits</td>
<td>Quercetin and other polyphenols</td>
<td>Luo et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Corylus column</em></td>
<td>Betulaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Flavonoids</td>
<td>Benov and Georgiev, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Crataegus monogyna</em></td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Leaves, flowers and fruits</td>
<td>Flavonoids, proanthocyanidins, catechins</td>
<td>Bahorun et al., 1994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cyanchum wilfordii</em></td>
<td>Asclepiadaceae</td>
<td>Roots</td>
<td>Cynandione A and a biacetophenone</td>
<td>Lee et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dalbergia odorifera</em></td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Benzophenone derivative and flavonoids</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dirca palustris</em></td>
<td>Thymelaeaceae</td>
<td>Twigs</td>
<td>Five novel phenolic glycosides</td>
<td>Ramsewak et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Daphniphyllum calycinum</em></td>
<td>Daphniphyllaceae</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>Flavonoid glycoside</td>
<td>Gamez et al., 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ephemerantha lonchophylla</em></td>
<td>Orchidaceae</td>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>Dihydrostilbene, phenanthrene</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1999b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eucalyptus globulus</em></td>
<td>Myrtaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Ellagic acid</td>
<td>Kim et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eriobotrya japonica</em></td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Flavonoids; chlorogenic acid, quercetin-3-sambubioside, methyl chlorogenate kaempferol, quercetin-3-rhamnoside</td>
<td>Jung et al., 1999b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 19.1 Potent antioxidant plants and their phytoconstituents (continued overleaf)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Phytoconstituents</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Emblica officinalis</em></td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Emblicanin A and B, gallic acid, punigluconin and pedunculagin</td>
<td>Bhattacharaya <em>et al.</em>, 2000; Ghosal <em>et al.</em>, 1996; Bandyopadhyay <em>et al.</em>, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ficus bengalensis</em></td>
<td>Moraceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>Rhamnoside and cellobioside</td>
<td>Daniel <em>et al.</em>, 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Garcinia subelliptica</em></td>
<td>Clusiaceae</td>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>Three prenylated xanthones</td>
<td>Minami <em>et al.</em>, 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Garcinia kola</em></td>
<td>Clusiaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Kolaviron (biflavones)</td>
<td>Farombi <em>et al.</em>, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Camellia sinensis</em></td>
<td>Theaceae</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
<td>Epigallocatechin, gallicatechin and epigallocatechin gallate</td>
<td>Yokozawa <em>et al.</em>, 2000; Miura <em>et al.</em>, 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hordeum vulgare</em></td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Isovitexin derivatives</td>
<td>Arimoto <em>et al.</em>, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Helenium aromaticum</em></td>
<td>Compositae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Sesquiterpene lactones; helenalin, mexicanin-I, linifolin A, geigerin</td>
<td>Jodynis-Liebert <em>et al.</em>, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hedyotis diffusa</em></td>
<td>Rubiaceae</td>
<td>Fresh aerial</td>
<td>New acylflavonol diglycoside; kaempferol and quercetin derivatives, flavonol and iridoid glycosides</td>
<td>Lu <em>et al.</em>, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hierochloe odorata</em></td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td>Benzophenanthrone derivatives</td>
<td>Pukalskas <em>et al.</em>, 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hibiscus syriacus</em></td>
<td>Malvaceae</td>
<td>Root bark</td>
<td>Lignans: hibiscuside, syringaresinol, E&amp;Z feruloyltyramines and isoflavonoids</td>
<td>Lee <em>et al.</em>, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hypericum erectum</em></td>
<td>Hypericaceae</td>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td>Flavonoids-quercetin, hyperoside, isoquercetin, orientin</td>
<td>Jung <em>et al.</em>, 1999a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Helichrysum picardii</em></td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td>Gnaphalin</td>
<td>Puerta <em>et al.</em>, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Iryanthera lancifolia</em></td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Pericarps</td>
<td>Two dihydrochalcones and two flavonolignans</td>
<td>Silva <em>et al.</em>, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Iresine herbstii</em></td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td>Waxes, $\beta$-sitosterol, cam, pestrol and methoxy flavone</td>
<td>Kubinova <em>et al.</em>, 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Iberis amara</em></td>
<td>Brassicaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>6-O-sinapoyl sucrose</td>
<td>Fabre <em>et al.</em>, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lavandula angustifolia</em></td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td>Phenolics-romarinic acid, caffeic acid, luteolin and methyl carnosoate</td>
<td>Hohmann <em>et al.</em>, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Larix gmelini</em></td>
<td>Pinaceae</td>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>Dihydroquercetin</td>
<td>Kolhir <em>et al.</em>, 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mahonia aquifolium</em></td>
<td>Berberidaceae</td>
<td>Root and leaf</td>
<td>Alkaloids</td>
<td>Misik <em>et al.</em>, 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Muscaria racemosum</em></td>
<td>Liliaceae</td>
<td>Flower</td>
<td>homoisoflavonoids</td>
<td>Juranek <em>et al.</em>, 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Magnolia coco</em></td>
<td>Magnoliaceae</td>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>Lignans-sesamin, fargesin, syringaresinol</td>
<td>Chen <em>et al.</em>, 1999a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plants</td>
<td>Family</td>
<td>Part used</td>
<td>Phytoconstituents</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrica gale</td>
<td>Myricaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td>Flavonoids- C-methylated dihydrochalcones, myrigalone A &amp; B</td>
<td>Mathiesen et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mangifera indica</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves, bark, fruits</td>
<td>Mangiferin, myricetin, protocatechuic acid, quercetin, friedelin, gallic acid, homomangiferin, kaempferol and lupeol</td>
<td>Rai et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nelumbo nucifera</td>
<td>Nymphaeaceae</td>
<td>Rhizomes, seed, leaves, flower</td>
<td>Gallic acid</td>
<td>Rai et al., 2006a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panax pseudoginseng</td>
<td>Araliaceae</td>
<td>Roots</td>
<td>Trilinolein</td>
<td>Chan and Tomlinson, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyllanthus amarus</td>
<td>Phyllanthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Chlorogenic acid derivatives</td>
<td>Kweon et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punica granatum</td>
<td>Punicaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Flavonoids</td>
<td>Schubert et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prunus cerasus</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Cholorgenic acid methylite derivatives</td>
<td>Wang et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prunus amygdalus</td>
<td>Rosaceae</td>
<td>Fruit skin</td>
<td>Catechin, protocatechinic acid and flavonoids</td>
<td>Sang et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phaseolus aureus</td>
<td>Fabaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Flavonoids</td>
<td>Kim et al., 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pteleopsis hyodendron</td>
<td>Combretaceae</td>
<td>Stem bark</td>
<td>Ellagic acid derivatives</td>
<td>Atta-Ur-Rahaman et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psoralea corylifolia</td>
<td>Leguminosae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Monoterpene phenol-bakuchiol</td>
<td>Haraguchi et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pistacia weinmannifolia</td>
<td>Anacardiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Pistafolia A</td>
<td>Wei et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Picrorhiza kurroa</td>
<td>Scrophulariaceae</td>
<td>Roots and rhizomes</td>
<td>Picrovil</td>
<td>Rastogi et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panax ginseng</td>
<td>Araliaceae</td>
<td>Roots</td>
<td>Ginsenosides</td>
<td>Facino et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palm spp.</td>
<td>Arecaaceae</td>
<td>Oil</td>
<td>Tocotrienols</td>
<td>Kamat et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Podocarpus nagi</td>
<td>Podocarpaceae</td>
<td>Root bark</td>
<td>Totarane diterpenoids</td>
<td>Haraguchi et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosmarinus officinalis</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Diterpenoids</td>
<td>Haraguchi et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvia officinalis</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Phenolics-abietane diterpenes, caffeoyl glycosides, rosmarinic acid</td>
<td>Zupko et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saururus chinensis</td>
<td>Saururaceae parts</td>
<td>Underground</td>
<td>Machilin-D</td>
<td>Abn et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saururus cernuus</td>
<td>Saururaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
<td>Feruloylgeraniol derivative</td>
<td>Rajbhandari et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silybum marianum</td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
<td>Silybin, silymarin</td>
<td>Borsari et al., 2001; Psotova et al., 2002; Farghali et al., 2000; Pietrangelo et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinacia oleracea</td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>p-Coumaric acid derivative and flavonoids</td>
<td>Bergman et al, 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminalia catappa</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Punicalagin and punicalin</td>
<td>Lin et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and a shortage of antioxidants in the diet might enable diseases caused by ROS to arise. Many vegetables and fruits used as foods are particularly rich in natural antioxidant nutrients, e.g. including vitamin C, the tocopherols and carotenoids. Phenolic antioxidants such as flavonoids, tannins, coumarins, xanthenes and more recently, procyanidins, have been shown to scavenge radicals in a dose-dependent manner and therefore are viewed as promising therapeutic potential for free-radical pathologies. A sufficient supply of antioxidants from the diet might help to prevent or delay the occurrence of pathological changes associated with oxidative stress. When diet fails to meet the antioxidant requirements, dietary supplement might be used to enhance health but more needs to be done to test this hypothesis by good clinical studies. Consumer demand for healthy food products provides an opportunity to develop food rich in antioxidants as new functional foods or nutraceuticals (Mukherjee et al., 2007b).

**Gingko biloba (ginkgo)**

Gingko biloba extract is widely used in traditional medicine for a great number of therapeutical properties. A large number of studies confirm the antioxidant nature of the extract and its phytoconstituents. A study by Butnaru et al. (1997) in rats showed that the treatment with this extract before stress inhibited the post-stress growth MDA concentration and the process of stress ulcer formation. Gingko protects against cardiac ischaemia and reperfusion injury and these effects are shown to be dependent on its antioxidant properties (Haramaki et al., 1994). Its in vivo free-radical scavenging action and proof of its haematological properties in rats was confirmed (Louajri et al., 2001). G. biloba extract and kaemferol isolated from it were demonstrated to be antioxidant in a lipid peroxidation assay. G. biloba extracts have properties indicative of potential neuroprotective ability (Sloley et al., 2000). From the n-butanol extract of G. biloba leaves, flavonoids were isolated, which showed strong antioxidant activities in DPPH and cytochrome-c reduction assays using the HL-60 cell culture system (Tang et al., 2001).

**Bacopa monniera (brahmi)**

*B. monniera* is a component of several popular drugs of the Ayurvedic system of medicine. Its ethanol extract showed strong protection against lipid peroxidation induced by ferrous sulphate and cumene hydroperoxide (Tripathi and Chaurasia, 1996). *B. monniera* alcohol extract exerted a

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plants</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Phytoconstituents</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Terminalia bellerica</em></td>
<td>Combetaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Gallic acid, ellagic acid, ethyl gallate,</td>
<td>Mukherjee et al., 2007,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>galloyl glucose, chebulagic acid, bellericanin</td>
<td>Mukherjee et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Telekia speciosa</em></td>
<td>Asteraceae</td>
<td>Leaves and Roots</td>
<td>Sesquiterpene lactones</td>
<td>Jodynis-Liebert et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vaccinium myrtillus</em></td>
<td>Ericaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Anthocyanosides</td>
<td>Martin-Aragon et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vitis rotundifolia</em></td>
<td>Verbenaceae</td>
<td>Fruits</td>
<td>Labdane and abietane-type diterpenoids</td>
<td>Ono et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Withania somnifera</em></td>
<td>Solanaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>Glycophthanolides</td>
<td>Bhattacharya et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Triticum aestivum</em></td>
<td>Poaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
<td>Ferulic acid dehydrodimers</td>
<td>Garcta-Conesa et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vitis vinifera</em></td>
<td>Vitaceae</td>
<td>Fruits and seeds</td>
<td>Proanthocyanidins and resveratrol</td>
<td>Pataki et al., 2002;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Martinez and Moreno, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zingiber cassumunar</em></td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>Cassuminin A &amp; B (cucurminoids)</td>
<td>Nagano et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zingiber officinalis</em></td>
<td>Zingiberaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>6-gingerol</td>
<td>Rai et al., 2006b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
hepatoprotective effect against morphine-induced liver toxicity, which was found to be related to its antioxidant nature (Sumathy et al., 2001). The effect of a standardised extract of B. monniera was assessed on rat brain frontal cortical, striatal and hippocampal SOD, catalase and glutathione peroxidase activities and the results indicated a significant antioxidant effect.

**Mangifera indica (mango)**

The standardised aqueous extract of crude mango stem bark showed a powerful scavenger activity of hydroxyl radicals and hypochlorous acid and acted as an iron chelator. The extract also showed a significant inhibitory effect on the peroxidation of rat brain phospholipid and inhibited DNA damage by bleomycin or copper phenanthroline system (Martiniz et al., 2000). Oral administration of an M. indica extract (QF 808) was found to reduce ischaemia-induced neuronal loss and oxidative damage in gerbil brain (Martinez Sanchez et al., 2001). QF 808 has the ability to scavenge free radicals involved in microsome peroxidation (Martiniz et al., 2001). An aqueous decoction of mango bark has been developed in Cuba on an industrial scale to be used as a nutritional supplement, cosmetic and phytomedicine. It is useful in preventing the production of reactive oxygen species and oxidative tissue damage in vivo. Polyphenols including mangiferin were found to be the major constituents (Nunez Selles et al., 2002). Mangiferin has shown to be able to maintain the cellular oxidant/antioxidant balance (Ghosal et al., 1996; Rai et al., 2007).

**Curcuma longa (turmeric and curcumin)**

*Curcuma longa* and a large number of its constituents exhibit potent antioxidant properties in several models. Curcumin and its sodium salt have been shown to have a strong antioxidant activity. Curcumin exhibited a significant time- and concentration-dependent effect on lipid peroxidation induced by radiation (Sreejayam et al., 1997) and other curcumin analogues exhibited an antioxidant activity stronger than α-tocopherol (Sreejayam and Rao, 1994; Bonte et al., 1997). Turmeric antioxidant proteins isolated from the aqueous extract of turmeric were found to prevent Ca^{2+}-stimulated ATPase from inactivation in the presence of promoters of lipid peroxidation, as well as the depletion of the thiol content during peroxidation (Selvam et al., 1995).

**Withania somnifera (ashwagandha)**

*Withania somnifera* is used as an antistress adaptogen. Its glycowithanolides showed antioxidant effects in chronic footshock stress-induced perturbations of oxidative free-radical scavenging enzyme and lipid peroxidation in rats (Bhattacharya et al., 2001). Administration of plant extract, along with equivalent doses of lead acetate for 20 days, significantly decreased lipid peroxidation and increased SOD and catalase, thus retaining normal peroxidative status of the tissues (Chaurasia et al., 2000). The antioxidant effects depend on the presence of steroidal lactones, the withanolides (Dhuley, 1998).

**Allium sativum (garlic)**

The inhibitory property of garlic on ROS generation and lipid peroxidation has been reported in a number of in-vitro studies. Banerjee et al. (2002) showed that chronic garlic intake dependently augmented endogenous antioxidants, which might have important direct cytoprotective effects on the heart, especially in the event of oxidative stress-induced injury. Diallyl sulphide is a flavour component from garlic and is found to attenuate lipid peroxidation in mice infected with *Trichinella spiralis* (Grudzinski et al., 2001). Antioxidant activity of the diallyl sulphide garlicin was due to its ability to scavenge peroxy or alkoxyl radical intermediates of lipid peroxidation. Allicin, another component, may have multiple mechanisms of action, acting both as a stronger chain-breaking antioxidant and as an inhibitor of first chain reaction by scavenging an initiating radical species (Rekka et al., 1994).

**Punica granatum (pomegranate)**

*Punica granatum* fermented juice and seed oil flavonoids exhibited antioxidant activities (Schubert et al., 1999) and the methanol extract of pomegranate demonstrated potent antioxidant activity
using various in-vitro models (Singh et al., 2002). Three major anthocyanidins isolated from *Punica granatum* fruits showed free-radical scavenging activity and inhibitory effects on lipid peroxidation in rat brain homogenates (Noda et al., 2002).

**Ocimum sanctum** (tulsi, holy basil)

An aqueous extract of the leaves of *Ocimum sanctum* has been found to protect mice against radiation lethality and bone marrow damage and had strong radical scavenging activity in vitro. The extract also protected against radiation-induced lipid peroxidation, where GSH and antioxidant enzymes play an important role in protection (Uma Devi and Ganasoundari, 1999). The hydroalcoholic extract, investigated against isoproterenol-induced myocardial infraction in rats, caused a significant reduction in GSH, SOD, LDH and TBARS levels, thus demonstrating antioxidant and cardioprotective effects (Sharma et al., 2001).

**Garcinia**

G. kola, *G. indica*, *G. subelliptica*, *G. atroviridis* and several other *Garcinia* species were found to possess strong antioxidant activity and a large number of active constituents isolated from *G. kola* fruits possess inhibitory activity against lipid peroxidation (Adegoke et al., 1998). Kola-viron, a mixture of *Garcinia* biflavonoids 1 and 2 and kolaflavonone isolated from *G. kola* seed extract, acts as an in-vivo natural antioxidant and effective hepatoprotective and is as effective as BHA in rats (Farombi et al., 2000). Garcinol, a polyisoprenylated benzophenone derivative isolated from *G. indica* fruit rind, has shown potent free-radical scavenging activity and was able to scavenge both hydrophilic and hydrophobic ROS, the activity being stronger than that of DL-α-tocopherol. Oral administration prevented acute ulceration in rats induced by indometacin and water-immersion stress caused by radical formation (Mackeen et al., 2000; Yamaguchi et al., 2000).

**Emblica officinalis**

The fruits of *Emblica officinalis* contain polyphenolic compounds such as emblicanin A and B which have been reported to exhibit antioxidant activity in vitro and in vivo (Bhattacharya et al., 2000). A study showed that emblicanin A and B preserve erythrocytes against oxidative stress induced by asbestos, a generator of superoxide radical (Scartezzini and Speroni, 2000). The active tannoids administered intraperitoneally for 7 days showed augmentation of brain SOD, catalase and reduction in lipid peroxidation. The results indicate that the antioxidant activity may reside in these tannoids rather than vitamin C itself (Ghosal et al., 1996). Pretreatment with the butanol extract of the water fraction of *Emblica officinalis* fruits, orally administered to rats for 10 consecutive days, was found to prevent indometacin-induced gastric ulcer; this activity was attributed to its antioxidant property (Bandyopadhyay et al., 2000).

**Salvia officinalis** (sage)

*Salvia* is an important genus, widely cultivated and used in flavouring and folk medicine. It is a rich source of polyphenols, and a large number of these are apparently constructed from the caffeic acid building block (Lu and Foo, 2002). *S. officinalis* 50% methanol extract demonstrated considerable inhibition of lipid peroxidation in both enzyme-dependent and enzyme-independent systems (Hohmann et al., 1999) and supercritical fluid extracts of *S. officinalis* also showed antioxidant activity (Dauksas et al., 2001). *S. officinalis* leaves and terpenoids and flavonoids showed strong antioxidant properties using DPPH and by the oil stability index method (Miura et al., 2002). Various constituents such as rosmarinic acid, abietene diterpenes and caffeoylglycosides have been identified as antioxidant principles (Zupko et al., 2001). The extracts of other *Salvia* species also displayed considerable concentration-dependent antioxidative effects that were comparable with those of *S. officinalis* (Chen et al., 2001; Choi et al., 2001; Perry et al., 2001; Zupko et al., 2001).

**Vitis vinifera** (grapevine)

Resveratrol is a polyphenolic stilbene occurring in grapes and various other medicinal plants and has been the subject of a considerable amount of recent research. It has been identified as a potential cancer
chemopreventive agent and its presence in red wine has been suggested to be linked to the low incidence of heart diseases in France (Burkitt and Duncan, 2000). It acts as a powerful antioxidant, both by classic hydroxyl radical scavenging and also via a novel glutathione-sparing mechanism. Various studies have demonstrated the effects of resveratrol on biological mechanisms involved in cardioprotection. These include modulation of lipid turnover, inhibition of eicosanoid production, prevention of low-density lipoprotein oxidation and inhibition of platelet aggregation.

Based on the quantity and diversity data available on the biological activity of resveratrol, it has to be considered to be a very promising chemoprotector and chemotherapeutic. Urgent investigation on its bioavailability and effects on in-vivo systems, especially in humans, are necessary (Olas et al., 1999; Ignatowicz and Baer, 2001). Martinez and Moreno (2000) showed that resveratrol treatment caused a significant impairment of COX-2 induction, stimulated by lipopolysaccharides and phorbol esters or by O$_2^-$ or H$_2$O$_2$ exposure. It also significantly decreased $[^3$H]arachidonic acid release induced by these agents. These results support the anti-inflammatory action of resveratrol.

**Silybum marianum (milk thistle)**

*Silybum marianum* fruits are reported to exert antioxidant and free-radical scavenging action. Silymarin and silybin, the flavonolignans present, were found to be the active constituents. Silymarin prevents doxorubicin-mediated damage to rat heart membrane primarily through free radical scavenging (Psotova et al., 2002). Oral administration of silybin protected against iron-induced hepatotoxicity in vivo and can be used in chelation therapy of chronic iron overload (Pietrangelo et al., 1995; Borsari et al., 2001).

**Conclusions**

It is obvious that a large number of plants possess strong antioxidant potential and these include commonly used fruits, vegetables and spices. Concentration of total phenols in the plant show close correlation with the antioxidant activity, so it is useful to determine the total phenol content of the plants before antioxidant screening. A large number of plants have been tested, based on their uses in folklore and have been found to be active, and still there is scope for antioxidant screening of a large number of plants belonging to families rich in antioxidants. Fermented extracts have been found to be more potent and the production of low-molecular-weight compounds during fermentation is responsible for the action. There is scope for evaluation of antioxidant properties of fermented extracts of plants known to possess strong antioxidant properties.

**Acknowledgements**

The authors are thankful to the Department of Science & Technology, Government of India for financial support through WOS-A program to Dr. Kakali Mukherjee. Thanks are due to The All India Council for Technical Education, New Delhi, India for MODROB Project grant.

**References**


Banerjee SK, Maulik M, Mancahanda SC et al. (2002).


Li J, Gall NP, Grieve DJ et al. (2002). Activation of NADPH oxidase during progression of cardiac hypertrophy to failure. *Hypertension* 40: 477–484.


Sloley BD, Urichuk LJ, Morley P et al. (2000). Identification of kaempferol as a monoamine oxidase inhibitor and...


Introduction

The human brain is very complex and is based on specialised cells designed to transmit information, called neurones. Neurones are an integral part and basic functional unit of the brain, which contains almost one billion of these cells. The neurones consists of a cell body containing a nucleus and an electricity-conducting fibre called an axon, which also gives rise to many branches before ending at nerve terminals. Neurones send signals by transmitting electrical impulses along their axons. When the signals reach the end of the axons, they trigger the release neurotransmitters, which then bind to receptors in adjacent neurones. This point of vital contact is called the synapse. The synaptic response involves the closing and opening of ion channels, which pass through the cell membranes and enable the ions to flow through them. This phenomenon creates an electrical current that provides tiny voltage changes across the membrane which leads to altered synaptic connectivity.

This network is capable of controlling a vast array of activities, including heart rate, body movement, perception, sexual function, emotions, learning and memory. The organisation and neurotransmitter content of intrinsic cerebral cortical and hippocampal neurones, and those of extrinsic inputs to these regions, are described below with respect to neuronal systems known to be affected in Alzheimer-type dementia. For the intrinsic neurones, particular attention is focused on the neuropeptides such as cholecystokinin, vasoactive intestinal polypeptide, somatostatin and neuropeptide Y, which are apparently stable post mortem and provide biochemical markers that can be used to judge the integrity of neuropeptide-containing cells in dementia (Emson and Lindvall, 1986).
Neurochemistry of cognition and cognitive dysfunction: cholinergic hypothesis

The first neurochemical was identified 70 years ago as acetylcholine. The neurones that release acetylcholine are called cholinergic neurones and control the heartbeat and voluntary muscles, causing them to contract. Acetylcholine also serves as a neurotransmitter in many regions of the brain and plays an important role in learning and memory function. Mammalian brain contains several groups of cholinergic projection neurones located within the basal forebrain and brainstem (Nagai et al., 1983). Cholinergic axons exert their neurotransmitter effect through the mediation of nicotinic and muscarinic receptors. Cholinergic neurones and cholinergic neurotransmitter pathways are highly implicated in cognition and cognitive dysfunction (Scarpini et al., 2003). The cholinergic neurones are centred on the medial septum, around the vertical limb of the diagonal band of Broca, around the horizontal limb of the diagonal band of Broca, and are also found around the nucleus basalis of Meynert (Parent et al., 1989; Mesulam et al., 1983).

All cholinergic neurones of the human basal forebrain and brain stem contain the cholinergic enzymes choline acetyltransferase and acetylcholinesterase (Hedreen et al., 1984; Geula et al., 1989). Much of the research on the participation of neurotransmitter systems in cognitive decline associated with ageing and Alzheimer’s disease has concentrated on the role of acetylcholine, because of its correlation with the degree of cognitive dysfunction, and learning and memory deficits produced in humans, even though the role of interaction between acetylcholine and other neurotransmitters such as noradrenaline, dopamine, serotonin, γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) and several neuropeptides affecting cognition are also important (Perry et al., 1981; Coyle et al., 1983). To improve cholinergic transmission, different strategies have been suggested including increased acetylcholine synthesis, the augmentation of presynaptic acetylcholine release, and stimulation of postsynaptic acetylcholine muscarinic and nicotinic receptors and reduction of acetylcholine synaptic degradation with cholinesterase inhibitors. Several aspects of the functional features of the cholinergic system are shown in Figure 20.1.

Assessment of neurodegeneration

Animal models used for the assessment

Drugs effective in neurodegenerative disease should have several aims: to improve the cognitive impairment, control the behavioural and neurological symptoms, delay the progression of the disease and to prevent the onset. To attain these targets, cell and animal models are needed in which pathogenetic hypothesis and potential effectiveness of new drugs are to be tested, exploiting links between the molecular and biochemical studies on the disease and the reality of human pathology. Animal models of Alzheimer’s disease can provide insight into the neurological and pathological mechanisms of cognitive and behavioural changes in patients. Monitoring...
of behavioural changes in animal models could both provide insight into the neurobiology of these behavioural changes and help validate the felicity of the model to Alzheimer’s disease. Animal models will play a critical role in further defining the events and processes underlying the final phenotypic expression.

**Aged animals models**

Aged animals (rats, mice and monkeys) have been investigated on a variety of learning and memory tasks. Aged rodents have been shown to have memory impairment on tasks such as the Morris water maze and passive avoidance tests. This behavioural impairment has provided a model that resembles the neuropsychiatric symptoms commonly observed in Alzheimer’s disease. The senescence-accelerated mouse (SAM) exhibits age-related deficits in learning and memory in the Morris water maze and radial arm maze and decreased acetylcholine synthesis in hippocampus pyramidal neurones (Flicker et al., 1983; Bartus et al., 1985; Allain et al., 1998). The effect of nerve growth factor (NGF) on cognition of aged rats has been assessed by intraventricular infusion of NGF, delayed alternation, Morris water maze, and sensory motor tasks. NGF has been most thoroughly assessed in this setting and has shown effects in rats (Koliatsos et al., 1991; Tuszynski et al., 1991; Frautschy et al., 1996), which have provided a model for the assessment of cholinergic neurones and the cholinoprotective effects of compounds potentially useful in the treatment of Alzheimer’s disease.

**Brain lesion models**

In concert with the recognition of the importance of the cholinergic deficit in Alzheimer’s disease, early models of the disease concentrated on surgical or chemical lesions of the basal forebrain. Transection of the fornix results in degeneration of cholinergic cells in the basal forebrain. These experiments involved primarily rats, monkeys and baboons, which demonstrated deficits in attention and memory, tested in various maze paradigms such as passive active avoidance, Morris water maze and the eight-arm radial maze (Flicker et al., 1983; Bartus et al., 1985; Allain et al., 1998). Lesion studies have focused primarily on the behavioural changes of the animals, with only limited attention to the pathological to the neuropsychiatric symptoms commonly observed in Alzheimer’s disease. Ageing studies are all likely to contribute information important to our understanding of the disease, and none are likely to represent a completely isomorphic model that is fully predictive of the pathogenesis, course, and treatment of human Alzheimer’s disease.

**Amyloid beta protein infusion induced model of Alzheimer’s disease**

Artificially created amyloid (AS) deposits in normal rats, and transgenic mice overexpressing amyloid precursor protein (APP) are the models in which possible treatments are tested. They are aimed at preventing formation of AS deposits or its transformation in neuritic plaques. Synthetic amyloid beta protein (Aβ_{1-42}) application in vitro, using neuroglial and astrocytes, has also been used to screen various neuroprotective drugs. The injection of synthetic Aβ peptides β_{12-28}, β_{25-35} and β_{1-40} into the septum of adult rats induced a marked decrease in basal and potassium-evoked acetylcholine release in the hippocampus. These findings confirmed in vivo the neurotoxic effects of Aβ observed in primary neuronal cell cultures exposed to Aβ peptides (Koh et al., 1990; Yankner et al., 1990).

The multiple mechanisms through which Aβ peptides, involving oxidative stress, loss of cellular calcium homeostasis and mitochondrial dysfunction have been reviewed and, in both in-vitro and in-vivo experiments, it has been shown that Aβ neurotoxicity depends on its fibrillary aggregation forming a sheet (Giovannelli et al., 1998). These preclinical experiments give support to the hypothesis of the pivotal pathogenetic role of AS deposit in Alzheimer’s disease, throw some light on the molecular mechanisms of AS toxicity, and offer an experimental model for testing potentially useful drugs. Undoubtedly, there are limitations in the validity of intracerebral Aβ injections as a model of Alzheimer’s disease.

**Amyloid precursor protein transgenic mouse model**

The development of transgenic mice, mimicking the genetic mutations occurring in familial Alzheimer’s disease and showing some of the neurochemical and morphological alterations of the disease, is another example of the interactions between clinical and
preclinical investigations into this disease. The clinical and genetic investigations have identified the early-onset, familial forms of the disease, and the genes in which autosomal dominant mutations take place. There is a clear recognition of autosomal dominant cases induced by mutations of APP (chromosome 21), presenilin 1 (chromosome 14), or presenilin 2 (chromosome 1), which allowed development of transgenic mouse models of Alzheimer’s disease (Sarter et al., 1992). These transgenic animals exhibit some of the pathological hallmarks of the disease, including neuritic plaques, although they have not evidenced neurofibrillary tangles and have limited cell death. These models facilitate investigation of the relationship of amyloid deposition to other aspects of the pathology of Alzheimer’s disease, including inflammation, hormonal levels, trophic factor influences, calcium metabolism, amino acid toxicity and apoptosis. However, there has been limited behavioural testing of transgenic mice, but impairments of memory have been reported on the Morris water maze, spatial reference memory and Y-maze alternation tasks.

**Apolipoprotein knockout models**

Cognitive tasks analogous to the deficits observed in human Alzheimer’s disease need to be developed for application to transgenic, knockout and other models currently used to investigate pathogenesis. Tests of language are obviously not applicable but assessment of attention, memory, spatial orientation and executive function are feasible (Hsiao et al., 1996; Weiss and Kilts, 1998). A variety of transgenic and knockout apolipoprotein models are available to screen novel molecules for the treatment of the disease. The E-4 allele of apolipoprotein (ApoE-4) confers an increased risk for Alzheimer’s disease and a decreased age of onset. Review of the cognitive testing and behavioural measures of the various available animal models reveals the impoverished state of these assessments and the need to develop new evaluation technologies.

**Brain inflammation models**

Epidemiological and clinical studies (Mcgeer and Mcgeer, 1995), reporting the efficacy of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) in reducing the incidence and progression of Alzheimer’s disease, provided strong support for the critical involvement of inflammatory processes in the pathogenesis of the disease. Brain inflammation is considered to be a pathogenetic link in many neurodegenerative diseases, including Alzheimer’s disease (Mcgeer and Mcgeer, 1998). The long-term lipopolysaccharide (LPS) infusion into the fourth ventricle was followed by astrocyte activation, an increase in microglia cells, an increase in the levels of interleukin (IL)-1β, tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α, APP mRNA and the degeneration of hippocampal neurones.

**In-vitro screening methods for acetylcholinesterase inhibition**

Several methods have been reported for the screening of acetylcholinesterase inhibitory activity from herbal medicinal products (HMPs). Acetylcholinesterase inhibition was initially detected by the use of gut-bath pharmacological methods with isolated tissue preparations such as guinea pig ileum (Houghton et al., 2006). These methods are costly in several respects, including time, animal tissue and amounts of compound needed, so they have been replaced by more sensitive chemical methods. Consideration of the relative merits of various methods that might be useful in studying the time course of acetylcholinesterase activity in very small tissue samples use a combined method reported by Koelle (1951) with a sulphydryl reagent studied by Ellman (1959). This Ellman method is extremely sensitive and is applicable to either small amounts of tissue or to low concentrations of enzyme.

The principle of this colorimetric method is the measurement of the rate of production of thiocholine, as acetylthiocholine is hydrolysed by the acetylcholinesterase enzyme. Thiochoine reacts with Ellman reagent \([5,5’\text{-dithiobis-(2-nitro-benzoic acid)} (DTNB)]\) to produce 2-nitrobenzoate-5-mercaptothiocholine and 5-thio-2-nitrobenzoate (Figure 20.2). This product has a yellow chromophore that can be detected at 405 nm. The reaction with the thiol has been shown to be sufficiently rapid so as not to be rate limiting in the measurement of the enzyme, and in the concentrations used does not inhibit the enzymatic hydrolysis. The absorbance obtained using a standard volume of a known concentration of the substrate with a fixed dose of acetylcholinesterase is
compared with that in the presence of an added compound or extract, a significant reduction indicating an inhibitory role for the substance added.

This visible spectroscopy procedure requires several millilitres of reaction mixture and it was sometimes difficult to obtain enough material to show an effect. The development of the method for use on a smaller scale, using microtitre well plates and a microplate reader, has been introduced and has enabled determinations to be performed with a much higher throughput. Microtitre plate assay method requires smaller amounts of reagents and test substances (Ingkaninan et al., 2000; Brlihlmann et al., 2004).

The Ellman reaction has also been adapted for thin-layer chromatography (TLC) bioautography assay for acetylcholinesterase inhibitory activity (Rhee et al., 2001). The TLC plate is developed in the usual way. After development, enzyme-inhibitory activities of the developed spots were detected by spraying the substrate, dye and enzyme based on Ellman’s method. After incubating the plates, white spots on a yellow background showed inhibition of acetylcholinesterase. A false-positive test is carried out, to confirm any acetylcholinesterase-inhibiting activity arising from inhibition of thiocholine hydrolysis caused by the enzyme. To detect false-positive reactions, the plate is sprayed with substrate, dye and enzyme without test compounds. After a few minutes incubation, a yellow background appeared, the occurrence of white spots indicating false-positive reactions.

A similar method for TLC detection has been introduced by Marston et al. (2002), which uses acetylnaphthol as the substrate and measures the amount of naphthol, the reaction product formed, by its chromogenic reaction with Fast Blue B salt (Mukherjee et al., 2007a).

High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) with online coupled ultraviolet, mass spectrometric and biochemical detection methods for the identification of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors has also been developed (Ingkaninan et al., 2000). This uses a reverse-phase column with the column eluate being split into two streams, one with an ultraviolet detector and the other connected to a biochemical detection system. This latter system consisted of the eluant being mixed with acetylcholinesterase and DTNB before the online introduction of acetylthiocholine. The intensity of the reaction product was measured at 405 nm by means of a spectrophotometer as an indication of the amount of thiocholine-DTNB product formed. A
HPLC method for the detection of acetylcholinesterase inhibition on immobilised acetylcholinesterase column and HPLC with online coupled ultraviolet, mass spectrometric and biochemical detection for acetylcholinesterase inhibitory activity has also been reported (Ingkaninan et al., 2000).

**Effect of HMPs on neurotransmission and enhancing cognition**

HMPs have played a pivotal role in development of CNS-active drugs that affect neurotransmissions in the brain (Mukherjee et al., 2002; Howes and Houghton, 2003; Howes et al., 2003; Mukherjee, 2007e). The interest of CNS-active HMPs originated from opioid alkaloids, e.g. morphine from *Papaver somniferum* and the tropane alkaloid cocaine from *Erythroxylon coca*. Anticholinesterase agents such as physostigmine from *Physostigma venosum* have shown significant activity on the CNS (Mukherjee, 2002; Houghton et al., 2006; Mukherjee et al., 2007a; 2007b). This chapter deals with various medicinal plants, and compounds derived from them, which affect neurotransmission related to behaviour and memory dysfunction.

**Acorus calamus** L. (*sweet flag, calamus*)

*Acorus calamus* L. (Araceae) is a semi-aquatic, perennial, aromatic herb with creeping rhizomes. In Ayurveda, herbal medicines with rasayana effects (plants having adaptogenic-like properties) are believed to be restorative, to attain longevity, intelligence and freedom from age-related disorders. *A. calamus* (AC) is regarded in Ayurvedic medicine as promoting rasayana effects and has been used to treat memory loss (Mukherjee and Wahile, 2006). *A. calamus* is used in Ayurvedic medicine on a regular basis for the treatment of loss of memory and other mental disorders (Howes and Houghton, 2003). AC extract has also been used as a traditional Chinese prescription and its beneficial effects on memory disorder, on learning performance, lipid peroxide content and anti-ageing effect in senescence have been reported (Mukherjee et al., 2007c). The in-vitro acetylcholinesterase inhibitory effect of hydro-alcoholic extract and essential oil of AC rhizomes has been reported, based on Ellman’s method. The essential oil showed stronger inhibition than the hydroalcoholic extract (Mukherjee et al., 2007d). Methanol extracts of AC showed significant acetylcholinesterase enzyme inhibition at the concentration 200 μg/mL (Oh et al., 2004). Mukherjee et al. (2007d) reported the in-vitro acetylcholinesterase inhibitory effect of β-asarone and α-asarone from the AC. β-Asarone is at least an order of magnitude more active than its trans isomer α-asarone, so the acetylcholinesterase-inhibitory activity of the oil can be ascribed to β-asarone. Since cognitive performance and memory are related to acetylcholine levels, the acetylcholinesterase-inhibitory effect of the plant may account for its traditional use.

**Albizia lebbeck** Benth. (*lebbeck*)

*Albizia lebbeck* Benth. (Mimosaceae), is a well-known Indian medicinal plant and it has been reported to possess nootropic activity. The saponin-rich *n*-butanol fraction separated from leaves of *A. lebbeck* has been shown to affect the normal and impaired memory function in rats (Pal et al., 1995; Pratibha et al., 2004). Semi-purified saponins at doses of 10, 25 and 50 mg/kg, when administered orally, enhanced the learning and memory of normal and amnesic rats induced by scopolamine. Administration of 10 and 25 mg/kg of the saponin-containing butanol fraction increased the step-down latencies in acquisition and retention period as measured by inflexion ratio on the second and ninth day at levels comparable with the standard nootropic agent piracetum (100 mg/kg) tested in both the passive avoidance ‘step-through test’ using a passive avoidance chamber and the elevated plus maze test.

The nootropic effect of the natural saponins was correlated with concentrations of various neurochemicals of the rat brain, since dopamine and GABA levels decreased, and serotonin and noradrenaline increased in the *A. lebbeck*-treated mice. The memory-enhancing property of the saponin fraction from *A. lebbeck* is considered to be due to inhibition of GABA and enhancement of noradrenaline in the brain (Chintawar et al., 2002). Three active albizia saponins A, B, and C were isolated and identified (Pal et al., 1995; Al-Showiman, 1998).
**Amaranthus paniculatus** L. (amaranth)

*Amaranthus paniculatus* L. (Amaranthaceae) is said to overcome the problems of psychological stress and affordability and its effects have been tested in stress-induced memory dysfunction. Stress was induced by gamma radiation in mice and methanolic extract of *A. paniculatus* at a dose of 600 mg/kg and 800 mg/kg was administered orally for 15 days. It was observed that mice supplemented with the extract, and trained in Hebb William’s maze model D, took less time to reach the goal than those without any treatment. The mice treated with *A. paniculatus* were further exposed to gamma radiation by $^{60}$Co-beam therapy; the surviving mice took less time to reach their goals than those without plant extract (Bhatia *et al.*, 2003). This finding is explained by presuming that mice supplemented with *A. paniculatus* have a lower concentration of free radicals formed by the radiation stress and so less damage occurs to the relevant parts of the brain, therefore leading to sustenance of the learning ability even after irradiation. The study has been correlated with the antioxidative property of nutrients and their effect on maintaining cholinergic neurone integrity, which is essential for maintaining the learning and memory process.

**Azadirachta indica** A. Juss. (neem)

*A. indica* (Meliaceae) is a well-known traditional herb in India and is reported to exert therapeutic effects relating to the CNS. Azadirachitin is a major constituents found in neem. The aqueous extract of leaves at the dose of 500 mg/kg for 7 days significantly improved the memory, which was impaired by cerebral hypoperfusion inducing ischaemic insult (Yanpallewar *et al.*, 2005). The memory task of the ischaemic rats was tested after 2 weeks of hypoperfusion period in the Morris water maze. The aqueous extract from *A. indica* significantly prevented the delay in escape latencies and increased the acquisition memory of rats.

**Bacopa monniera** L. (brahmi)

*Bacopa monnieri* L. (Scrophulariaceae) has a long history of use in India as an anti-ageing and memory-enhancing ethnobotanical therapy. It has been mentioned in religious, social and medical treatises of India since the time of Atharvan Ved (800 BC); the first clear reference to its CNS effect is to be found in Charak Samhita, written in the first century AD. It is mentioned in the authentic Ayurvedic treatise, Susrutu Samhita, which describes brahmi as efficacious in the loss of intellect and memory.

The alcoholic extract of brahmi showed a beneficial effect on the acquisition, consolidation and retention of three newly acquired behavioural responses in albino rats (Singh *et al.*, 1982). Alcoholic extract of brahmi (40 mg/kg) and its two important chemical constituents, bacosides A and B (10 mg/kg), were investigated for shock-motivated brightness discrimination reaction, active conditioned avoidance and conditioned taste aversion response. Preadministration for 3 days with bacosides A and B significantly improved the acquisition, consolidation and retention in all three behavioural paradigms. Beside this effect bacosides attenuated the retrograde amnesia produced by immobilisation-induced stress, and scopolamine (Singh and Dhawan, 1997).

In another experiment, standardised *B. monniera* extract was concluded to be beneficial in animal models of Alzheimer’s disease and elevated levels of their central cholinergic markers such as choline acetyltransferase and acetylcholine (Bhattacharya *et al.*, 1999). Chronic administration of *B. monniera* given orally for 12 weeks improved the speed of early information processing, verbal learning rate and memory consolidation in humans (Stough *et al.*, 2001). This finding supported previous preclinical animal studies and clinical studies in children (Sharma *et al.*, 1987) and patients with anxiety neurosis. *B. monniera* interferes with cholinergic transmission and also has some serotonergic modulation (Singh and Singh, 1980).

**Celastrus paniculatus** Willd. (staff tree)

*C. paniculatus* (Celastraceae) seeds and seed oil have been used in Ayurvedic medicine for stimulating intellect and sharpening the memory. It has been reported to have beneficial effects in psychiatric patients (Warrier *et al.*, 1995; Nadkarni, 1996). Administration of the seed oil, rich in sesquiterpenes, to rats also reversed a scopolamine-induced memory
deficit assessed in navigational memory performance, but this effect was not associated with acetylcholinesterase activity (Gattu et al., 1997). The seed oil (3 g/kg) significantly improved the retention ability of the drug-treated rat passive avoidance paradigm and decreased levels of noradrenaline, dopamine, serotonin and their metabolites (Nalini et al., 1995). Beside this, the memory-enhancing effect of C. paniculatus was correlated with the antioxidant-enhancing effect of the drug on brain tissue (Kumar et al., 2002a; Godkar et al., 2003). These data indicate that C. paniculatus oil causes an overall decrease in the turnover of the three central monoamines and implicates the involvement of these aminergic systems in the learning and memory process.

**Centella asiatica L. (gota kola)**

*C. asiatica* (Umbelliferae) is a reputed ancient Ayurvedic remedy to enhance memory and longevity (Kapoor, 1990). The pharmacological basis to explain the reputed anti-amnesic effects of *C. asiatica* has been explored experimentally. Studies have shown that the alcoholic extract has a tranquillising effect in rats, which was attributed to *α*-triterpene and brahmoside (Sakina and Dandiya, 1990). *Centella asiatica* ethanolic extract was also found to elicit a marked increase in neurite outgrowth in human SH-SY5Y cells in the presence of nerve growth factor. Asiatic acid in *Centella* ethanolic extract showed marked activity at 1 μg/mL. Neurite elongation by Asiatic acid was completely blocked by the extracellular-signal-regulated kinase (ERK) pathway inhibitor PD 098059 (10 μmol/L). Male Sprague–Dawley rats given *Centella* ethanolic extract in their drinking water (300–330 mg/kg daily) demonstrated more rapid functional recovery and increased axonal regeneration (larger-calibre axons and greater numbers of myelinated axons) compared with controls, indicating that the axons grew at a faster rate (Soumyanath et al., 2005). Further studies showed that the extract of *C. asiatica* leaf possessed cholinomimetic action in vivo (Sakina and Dandiya, 1990) and that it may also influence cholinergic activity, and thus cognitive function.

Cognitive-enhancing effects have been observed in rats following oral administration of an aqueous extract of *C. asiatica*, this effect being associated with an antioxidant mechanism in the CNS (Kumar et al., 2002b). The essential oil from *C. asiatica* leaf contains monoterpenes, e.g. *α*-pinene, *β*-pinene and *γ*-terpinene (Brinkhaus et al., 2000), which are reported to inhibit acetylcholinesterase (Ryan and Byrne, 1988; Miyazawa et al., 1997; Perry et al., 2000). However, monoterpenes acetylcholinesterase inhibitors are weak compared with the anticholinesterase alkaloid, physostigmine (Perry et al., 2000). In view of the relatively weak anticholinesterase activity of monoterpenes reported to date, it is unlikely that they would be therapeutically effective in cognitive disorders. Asiatic acid, a triterpene from *C. asiatica* (L.) has been patented as a treatment for dementia and an enhancer of cognition by Hoechst (EP 0 383 171 A2).

**Clitoria ternatea L.**

The root of the Indian medicinal plant *C. ternatea* (Fabaceae) has a reputation for promoting intellectual behaviour (Misra, 1998). *C. ternatea* contains the triterpenes taraxerol and taraxerone as major phytoconstituents (Kumar et al., 2007). Administration of *C. ternatea* root extract to rats showed an increase in acetylcholine and choline acetyltransferase in rat brain and they were shown to increase the acetylcholinesterase activity in cortical regions (Taranalli and Cheeramkuzhy, 2000). An aqueous extract of the root also increased acetylcholine levels in rat hippocampus, and it was hypothesised that this effect may be due to an increase in acetylcholine synthesis (Rai et al., 2002).

**Coptis chinensis Franch.**

*Coptis chinensis* (Ranunculaceae) has been used in traditional Chinese medicine for several conditions. Studies have shown that methanol extract fraction of *C. chinensis* improved scopolamine-induced learning and memory deficit in rats (Hsieh et al., 2000). The contained alkaloids berberine and palmatine have been shown to possess acetylcholinesterase inhibition in vitro (Park et al., 1996).

**Curcuma longa L. (turmeric)**

*Curcuma longa* (Zingiberaceae) has also been used for culinary purposes. Turmeric has several components
with immunomodulatory and antioxidant properties. Curcumin, an antioxidant present in turmeric, has been shown to protect the brain in vivo from ethanol-induced oxidative stress. It modulated glutathione-linked detoxification enzymes and reduced the lipid peroxidation in rat brain under oxidative stress (Rajakrishnan et al., 1999). Some compounds from C. longa, including curcumin, demethoxycurcumin, bisdemethoxycurcumin and calebin-A (and some of its synthetic analogues), were shown to protect PC12 cells from β-amyloid insult in vitro, and this activity was suggested to be due to an antioxidant effect (Kim et al., 2001).

In another study using a rat intraventricular Aβ infusion model, curcumin at a dose of 25 mg/kg reduced the isoprostane index of oxidative damage, amyloid plaque burden and Aβ-induced spatial memory deficits in the Morris water maze in rats. Curcumin has been shown to lower the oxidised proteins and interleukin-1β in the transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer’s disease (Lim et al., 2001).

**Ocimum sanctum L. (tulsi)**

In Ayurveda, *Ocimum sanctum* (Lamiaceae) is described as rasayana. These Ayurvedic rasayanas have been reported in literature to improve physical and mental health, increase non-specific resistance of body, promote physiological functions and augment cognition (Rege et al., 1999). The aqueous extract of leaves of *Ocimum sanctum* at a dose of 500 mg/kg for 7 days significantly improved memory in rats, which was impaired by cerebral hypoperfusion-induced ischaemic insult. The memory task of the ischaemic rats was tested after 2 weeks of hypoperfusion period in the Morris water maze and those treated with *O. sanctum* extract had delayed escape latencies. This effect was correlated with their ability to reduce the lipid peroxidation, superoxide dismutase and increase in tissue sulphydryl groups and ascorbic acid contents of the hypoperfused brain tissue (Yanpallewar et al., 2005).

**Panax ginseng C.A. Mey. (ginseng)**

Interest in the use of *Panax ginseng* (Araliaceae) comes from its purported ‘adaptogen’ or ‘tonic’ activity, which is thought to increase the body’s capacity to tolerate external stresses, leading to increased physical or mental performance (Schulz et al., 1998). *P. ginseng* alone was tested in young (3 months) and old (26 months) rats, on a battery of negatively reinforced learning tests (two-way active avoidance; passive avoidance/step-down; passive avoidance/step-through), and on the Morris water maze (Petkov et al., 1993). Ginseng (17, 50, 150 mg/kg), administered orally to young rats, increased the number of avoidance responses in the two-way passive avoidance test at all doses tested.

Although an extensive literature documenting adaptogenic effects in laboratory animal systems exists, results from human clinical studies are conflicting and variable. However, there is evidence that extracts of ginseng can have an immunostimulatory effect in humans, and this may contribute to the adaptogen or tonic effects of these plants (Attele et al., 1999). The major secondary products present in ginseng roots are an array of triterpene saponins, collectively called ginsenosides. The ginsenosides, of which there are at least 30, glycosylated derivatives of two major aglycones, panaxadiol and panaxatriol (Petkov et al., 1993), are considered to be the most relevant for pharmacological activity. From laboratory studies, it has been suggested that the pharmacological target sites for these compounds involve the hypothalamus–pituitary–adrenal axis, owing to the observed effects on serum levels of adrenocorticotropic hormone and corticosterone (Huang, 1999).

**Salvia species (sage)**

Several species of *Salvia* (Lamiaceae) have been reported to have potential activity in CNS.

Al-Yousuf et al. (2002) reported that *S. aegyptiaca* L. is used for treating various unrelated conditions that include nervous disorders, dizziness and trembling. This work examines some effects of the crude acetone and methanol extracts of the plant given at single oral doses of 0.25, 0.5, 1 or 2 g/kg, on the CNS in mice. It is concluded that the crude methanol and acetone extracts of *S. aegyptiaca* have CNS depressant properties, manifested as antinociception and sedation.

Perry et al. (2002) reported that *S. lavandulafolia* Vahl. (Spanish sage) extracts and constituents
have demonstrated anticholinesterase, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, oestrogenic and CNS depressant (sedative) effects, all of which are currently relevant to the treatment of Alzheimer’s disease. The essential oil inhibits the enzyme acetylcholinesterase from human brain tissue and bovine erythrocyte and individual monoterpenoid constituents inhibit acetylcholinesterase with varying degrees of potency.

In a study in healthy volunteers, essential oil administration produced significant effects on cognition. In a pilot open-label study involving oral administration of the essential oil to patients with Alzheimer’s disease, a significant increase in diastolic and systolic blood pressure was observed in two patients; however, this may have been due primarily to pre-existing hypertension and there were no abnormalities in other vital signs or blood samples during the trial period (Perry et al., 2003).

*S. elegans* Vahl, popularly known as *mirto*, is a shrub that has been widely used in Mexican traditional medicine for the treatment of different CNS diseases, principally anxiety.

The antidepressant and anxiolytic-like effects of hydroalcoholic (60%) extract of *S. elegans* (leaves and flowers) have been reported in mice. The extract, administered orally, was able to increase the percentage of time spent and the percentage of arm entries in the open arms of the elevated plus maze, as well as to increase the time spent by mice in the illuminated side of the light–dark test, and to decrease the immobility time of mice subjected to the forced swimming test. The same extract was not able to modify the spontaneous locomotor activity measured in the open-field test. These results provide support for the potential antidepressant and anxiolytic activity of *S. elegans* (Maribel et al., 2006). Wake et al. (2000) also reported that *S. elegans* displayed differential displacement at nicotinic and muscarinic acetylcholine receptors, with the highest [3H](N)-scopolamine displacement.

In a double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover study, 30 healthy participants received a different treatment in counterbalanced order on each occasion (placebo, 300, 600 mg dried sage leaf). On each day mood was assessed before the dose and at 1 h and 4 h afterwards. Both doses of sage led to improved ratings of mood in the absence of the stressor (that is, in pre-DISS mood scores) post-dose, with the lower dose reducing anxiety and the higher dose increasing ‘alertness’, ‘calmness’ and ‘contentedness’ on the Bond-Lader mood scales. Task performance was improved for the higher dose at both post-dose sessions, but reduced for the lower dose at the later testing session (Kennedy, 2006).

**Withania somnifera** L. (*ashwagandha*)

Withania somnifera (Solanaceae) root is one of the most highly regarded herbs in Ayurvedic medicine. *W. somnifera*, an Ayurvedic rasayana (memory-facilitating drug), was shown to attenuate amnesic effects in animal models of Alzheimer’s disease by reversal of cholinergic dysfunction induced by ibotenic acid (Bhattacharya et al., 1995; Mukherjee et al., 2007e). Ayurvedic formulations based on *W. somnifera* induced a similar amnesia-reversal effect in rats (Bhattacharya et al., 1998). The steroidal derivatives sitoindosides IX and from *W. somnifera*, augmented learning acquisition and memory in both young and old rats (Ghosal et al., 1989). The root extract of *W. somnifera* reversed scopolamine-induced disruption of acquisition and attention and attenuated amnesia following electroconvulsive shock in mice. These effects are attributed to nootropic activity (Dhuley, 2001).

The mechanism of this memory-enhancing effect is attributed to enhanced acetylcholinesterase activity and reversed the ibotenic acid altered cholinergic marker such as acetylcholine and choline acetyl transferase. Therefore preferential action is on cholinergic neurotransmission in the cortical and basal forebrain areas involved in cognitive function. In another experiment *W. somnifera* (50 mg/kg) which contains sitoindosides VII–IX and withaferin A as the major bioactive entities, the relative abundance of these compounds in the extract being responsible for 28–30% significant enhancement of leaning as tested in passive avoidance test in chronically stressed rats (Bhattacharya et al., 2003).

**Acknowledgements**

The authors wish to express their gratitude to the Department of Science & Technology (DST), Government of India, for providing financial...
assistance through the research project to the School of Natural Product Studies, Jadavpur University.

References


Introduction

Over the centuries herbal medicinal products formed the basis of medicaments in Africa, China, India and in many other civilisations (Chattopadhyay, 2006; Chattopadhyay and Bhattacharya, 2008). Traditional healers have long used herbal products to prevent or to cure infectious conditions but scientific interest in natural antivirals is more recent, spurred on by the rapid spread of emerging and re-emerging infectious diseases. Additionally the rapid rate of species extinction leads to irretrievable loss of structurally diverse and potentially useful phytochemicals, compounds which are often species/strain-specific with diverse structures and bioactivities, synthesised mainly for defence against predators (Chattopadhyay and Naik, 2007). This chapter will describe some promising extracts and compounds of herbal origin, having antitherpes virus activity, with in-vitro and some documented in-vivo activities, along with structure–activity relationship considerations.

The herpes virus

The herpes virus belongs to Herpesviridae, a family of DNA viruses that cause diseases in humans and animals. There are eight distinct viruses in this family, presented in Table 21.1, known to cause disease in humans. Viruses of the herpes group are morphologically indistinguishable, share many common features of intracellular development, but differ widely in biological properties. All human herpes viruses (HHV) contain a large double-stranded, linear DNA with 100–200 genes encased within an icosahedral protein capsid wrapped in a lipid bilayer envelope, called a virion. Following the binding of viral envelope glycoproteins to host cell-membrane receptors, the virion is internalised and dismantled, allowing viral DNA to migrate to the host cell nucleus, where viral DNA replication and transcription occurs.

One replication cycle of herpes virus depends upon a number of steps:
• virion entry
• expression of immediate-early (α) genes such as those for infected cell proteins (ICP) 0 and 4
• early (β1, β2) genes including DNA polymerase and thymidine kinase
• late genes (γ1, γ2) containing glycoprotein B (gB), C (gC) and ICP5
• unpaired DNA replication (Sandri-Goldin, 2006).

During symptomatic infection, infected cells transcribe lytic viral genes, but sometimes a small number of latency associated transcript (LAT) genes accumulate, which help the virus to persist in the host cell indefinitely. The primary infection is a self-limited period of illness, but long-term latency is symptom-free. Following reactivation, transcription of viral genes switches from LAT to multiple lytic genes that lead to enhanced replication and virion production.

Herpes viruses cause localised skin infections of the mucosal epithelia of the oral cavity, pharynx, oesophagus and the eye, or genitals, depending upon the type involved (Habif, 2004). Moreover, the herpes viruses establish latent infections that can be periodically reactivated, and sometimes produce serious infections of the CNS, such as acute encephalitis and meningitis, and can be fatal in immune-deficient patients (Sandri-Goldin, 2006). The immediate-early genes of herpes simplex virus (HSV) can also activate the genes of HIV (Ostrove et al., 1987), varicella-zoster virus (Felser et al., 1988) or human papillomavirus type 18 (Gius and Laimins, 1989), causing a significant risk factor for transmission of HIV/AIDS (Corey et al., 2004). The herpes virus can also lead to scarification, a major cause of blindness in developing nations (Habif, 2004; Sandri-Goldin, 2006).

HSV-2 is also known as an oncogenic virus as it can convert infected cells into tumour cells (Habif, 2004). The search for selective antiherspex virus agents is an urgent need as the problems such as viral resistance, conflicting efficacy in recurrent infection and immunocompromised patients with available antiherspex drugs remain unresolved. Moreover, herpes viruses (HSV-1 and HSV-2) spread silently (asymptomatic), cause opportunistic infections in immunocompromised patients, and develop resistance to acyclovir.

**Control of herpes virus infection**

The herpes virus causes a lifelong infection with high morbidity, and is underdiagnosed because of its mild and asymptomatic nature. HSV alone affects more than one third of the world’s population and is responsible for a wide array of human disease. Before the 1970s, when acyclovir was introduced as an antiviral drug, cutaneous HSV infection was managed with drying agents and other local care.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Synonym</th>
<th>Subfamily</th>
<th>Pathophysiology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HHV-1</td>
<td>Herpes simplex virus-1 (HSV-1)</td>
<td>Alphaherpesvirinae</td>
<td>Oral and/or genital herpes (orofacial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHV-2</td>
<td>Herpes simplex virus-2 (HSV-2)</td>
<td>α (alpha)</td>
<td>Oral and/or genital herpes (genital)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHV-3</td>
<td>Varicella zoster virus (VZV)</td>
<td>α (alpha)</td>
<td>Chickenpox and shingles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHV-4</td>
<td>Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) Lymphocryptovirus</td>
<td>Gammaherpesvirinae</td>
<td>Infectious mononucleosis, Burkitt’s lymphoma, CNS lymphoma (in AIDS patients), post-transplant lymphoproliferative syndrome (PTLS), nasopharyngeal carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHV-5</td>
<td>Cytomegalovirus (CMV)</td>
<td>Betaherpesvirinae</td>
<td>Infectious mononucleosis-like syndrome, retinitis, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHV-6, 7</td>
<td>Roseolovirus</td>
<td>α (beta)</td>
<td>Roseola infantum or exanthem subitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHV-8</td>
<td>Kaposi’s sarcoma-associated herpes virus (KSHV), a rhadinovirus</td>
<td>γ (gamma)</td>
<td>Kaposi’s sarcoma, primary effusion lymphoma, some multicentric Castleman’s disease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Newer antiviral drugs such as famciclovir and valacyclovir with once-daily dosage benefits have emerged during the past several years but are more expensive. Although no cure is available to date, the nucleoside analogue acyclovir is widely used, as it is selectively phosphorylated by thymidine kinase enzyme in infected cells. However, acyclovir-resistant herpes virus has been isolated in immunocompromised patients and is not suitable in neonatal infections (Habif, 2004). Therefore, new antiherpes virus agents are highly desirable.

The development of antitherpetic agents from herbal sources is less explored probably because there are very few specific viral targets for small natural molecules. However, studies have shown that a variety of compounds inhibit the replication of herpes viruses, e.g. phloroglucinol (Arisawa et al., 1990), anthraquinones (Sydiskis et al., 1991), polysaccharides (Marchetti et al., 1996), triterpenes and saponins (Simões et al., 1999) and polyphenols (Kuo et al., 2002; Chattopadhyay and Naik, 2007). A topical preparation from Glycyrrhiza glabra (liquorice root) containing triterpene glycyrrhetinic acid (Glycyrrhizin) used for the prevention and treatment of herpes outbreaks was found to inhibit acyclovir-resistant HSV-1, by induction of CD4+ T cells (Utsunomiya et al., 1995).

Oryzacystatin from rice plant (Oryzae sativa) showed in-vitro and in-vivo anti-HSV-1 activity by inhibiting proteinase enzyme of herpes viruses (Aoki et al., 1995). When 19 plant-derived compounds were tested by plaque reduction assay against HSV-2, it was found that eugenol, cineole, curcumin and carrageenan lambda type IV (ED₅₀=7.0 mg/mL), provided significant protection (P<0.05) in intravaginal HSV-2-mice infected and guinea pigs (Bourne et al., 1999). All these findings indicated that the herbal products are still potential sources for new antitherpetic agents. Owing to their amazing structural diversity and broad range of bioactivities, herbal medicinal products can be explored as a source of complementary antitherpetic agents, as many of them inhibit several steps of replication cycle and certain cellular factors of herpes viruses (Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008).

The objective of this chapter is to summarise the potential uses of natural products, especially derived from herbal sources, for the prevention and treatment of infections caused by herpes viruses, especially HSV-1 and HSV-2.

Screening models for herbal anti-HSV agents and their value in drug discovery

**In-vitro primary screening assays**

The most commonly used in-vitro method for preliminary screening of extracts or compounds is the study of cytopathic effect (CPE) by plaque reduction assay on HSV-infected cells. Here the Hep2 or Vero cells are grown in suitable cell culture media with incubation at 37°C for 24 h. Confluent cell monolayers are then infected with 100–200 plaque-forming units (PFU) of the virus. After 1 h incubation (to allow viral adsorption), the cells are washed with phosphate buffer saline and overlaid with agar in cell culture medium containing twofold dilutions of the extracts or test compounds, and recultured at 37°C, until plaques appeared. Finally the monolayer cells are fixed with formalin, stained, dried and the number of plaques are microscopically counted. The percentage inhibition of plaque formation [(mean number of plaques in control – mean number of plaques in test)/(mean number of plaques in control) × 100], or the effective concentration for 50% plaque reduction (EC₅₀; the lowest extract concentration that reduced plaque number by 50% in the treated cultures compared with untreated ones), or the 50% inhibitory concentration (IC₅₀; the extract concentration required to reduce the virus plaque number by 50%) is calculated. When different herbal preparations (cold aqueous, hot aqueous, ethanolic, acid ethanolic, and methanolic) were analysed by plaque reduction assay, it was observed that the ethanolic extract of Rheum officinale and methanol extract of Paeonia suffruticosa inhibited attachment and penetration of HSV-1; whereas the aqueous extract of P. suffruticosa and ethanolic extract of Melia toosendan inhibited attachment and replication of HSV-1 and HSV-2 (Hsiang et al., 2001), indicating that these herbs have some potential for new anti-HSV leads.

The pioneering work of Vanden Berghe and his group showed that the inhibition of cytopathic effect on Vero cell monolayer infected with HSV can be measured by endpoint titration method (Vanden
Berghe et al., 1993), which is also helpful to determine virucidal activity after preincubations of test compound and virus (Vlietinck et al., 1997; Apers et al., 2002). The 50% endpoint titration (Figure 21.1) was performed on confluent monolayers of Vero cells (10⁴ cells per well) infected with serial tenfold dilutions (10⁷ TCD₅₀/mL) of virus suspension and the first monolayer of cells was infected with multiplicity of infection of 10 to 10⁻⁴ by serial tenfold dilution. The virus was allowed to absorb for 1 h at 37°C, and then serial twofold dilutions of extract or test compound (in maintenance medium, supplemented with 2% fetal bovine serum and antibiotics) were added. The plates were incubated (37°C) and viral CPE was recorded by light microscopy for 7 days (Figure 21.1).

It is important to run cytotoxicity control (uninfected but treated cells), and cell control (uninfected untreated cell) at each treatment concentration, with the virus control (infected but untreated) at each viral dilution. Toxic doses (CT) of the test extract or compound are considered to be dilutions that cause destruction of monolayer of cells, so that no virus titre can be determined. The antiviral activity is expressed as the virus titre reduction at the maximum non-toxic dose of the test extract or substance, i.e. the highest concentration that does not affect the monolayers under test conditions. In this method virus titre reduction factors (RF, the ratio of the virus titre reduction in the absence and presence of the maximum non-toxic dose of the test sample) of 10³ to 10⁴ indicate a pronounced antiviral activity and are suitable as selection criteria for further investigation of the said extract or compound. It was observed that the antiviral activity should be present in at least two subsequent dilutions of the test substance, otherwise the activity is likely to be due to its toxicity, or the activity is only virucidal. The extracellular virucidal activity can also be determined by the titration method of the residual infectious virus at room temperature after incubation of the test compound with virus suspension (10⁶ TCD₅₀/mL) during 1 h at 37°C (Vanden Berghe et al., 1993; Apers et al., 2001).

Another rapid and sensitive in-vitro procedure of evaluating anti-HSV agents is based on spectrophotometrical assessment for viability of virus- and mock-infected cells via in situ reduction of a tetrazolium dye 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-

diphenyltetrazolium bromide (MTT), and is proved to have similar sensitivity to the plaque reduction assay (Sudo et al., 1994). The MTT test not only significantly simplifies the assay procedures, but also allows the evaluation of larger numbers of compounds at a time. Kira et al. (1995) reported the development of another highly sensitive assay system
using a suspension cell line derived from human myeloma cells, that are sensitive to several HSV strains such as HSV-1: standard strain KOS, acyclovir-resistant A4D, clinical isolate Hangai and HSV-2 standard strain G; and many known antiherpetic virus compounds (acyclovir, sorivudine, arabinoside, 9-(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl guanine, phosphonoformate and dextran sulphate). This produced good results when tested against KOS and G strains of HSV. Kurokawa et al. (1999) reported the in-vitro anti-HSV activity of Rhus javanica extracts by plaque reduction assay against wild-type, acyclovir-phosphonoacetic acid-resistant, thymidine kinase-deficient HSV-1 and wild-type HSV-2 (EC50 2.6–3.9 μg/mL) and the in-vivo efficacy of the cutaneously infected mice with HSV-1.

**High-throughput screening assays**

High-capacity anti-HSV drug screening assay is available for the primary analysis of compounds in a 96-well microtitre assay. The basic assay methods involve infection of Vero cells with HSV-1 or HSV-2 in the presence of test compounds. The ability of the compounds to inhibit HSV-induced cell killing is measured 5 days post-infection using the tetrazolium dye MTS. Mitochondrial enzymes of viable cells convert MTS to a soluble, coloured formazan. The quantitation of the amount of the formazan product present in each well of the microtitre plate is then determined spectrophotometrically at 490/650 nm, while the toxicity of the test compounds to host cells is measured concurrently in the same microtitre plate. Data can be analysed by a statistical software program along with determinations of the efficacy (IC50), toxicity (TC50) and selectivity (therapeutic index, TI) of the compounds.

Several primary screens are also available for the evaluation of compounds against human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) using a method similar to the anti-HSV assay. The MRC-5 cells are infected with HCMV in the presence of drugs for a period of 7 days. Compound efficacy and toxicity are then measured using MTS. Standard plaque reduction assay as well as an ELISA is also available. For varicella zoster virus (VZV), the primary screen currently available is a standard plaque reduction assay, while for Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), a moderate-throughput polymerase chain reaction (PCR)-based assay is developed to identify inhibitors of EBV using P3HR1 cells, a cell line that is latently infected with EBV. Lytic virus replication spontaneously occurs in approximately 5% of the cell population resulting in the release of virus particles from the cells. The P3HR1 cells are incubated with compounds for a period of 6 days; supernatant virus is collected and quantitated using TaqMan PCR methodology. Compound toxicity is evaluated in parallel using MTS. A virus-induced CPE-inhibition assay is employed to evaluate compounds against HHV-6. Uninfected HSB-2 cells are co-cultured with HHV-6-infected HSB-2 cells in the presence of test compounds. After 6 days incubation, CPE inhibition is determined by microscopic inspection of the cultures.

Upon infection and replication of HHV-6 in HSB-2 cells, the cells increase in size and become light refractory. These changes are readily apparent by microscopic examination of the wells, which allows for the quantitation of the numbers of infected cells in each of the cultures. Compound toxicity is evaluated in parallel using MTS. An HHV-6 ELISA is also developed. A moderate-throughput PCR-based assay to identify inhibitors of HHV-8, using BCBL-1 cells, a cell line that is latently infected with HHV-8, is developed. Lytic virus replication is induced using the phorbol ester TPA, resulting in the release of virus particles from the cells. BCBL-1 cells are incubated with compounds for a period of 4 days. Supernatant virus is collected and quantitated using TaqMan PCR methodology. Compound toxicity is evaluated in parallel using MTS.

**Secondary testing assays**

Compounds or extracts that are evaluated for their ability to inhibit herpes virus infection need a variety of phenotypically distinct susceptible cell lines including Vero, MRC-5, HFF, BHK, HEP-2 as well as other human and mammalian cell lines. To evaluate compounds that inhibit replication of viruses a panel of virus isolates is needed, including clinical and/or drug-resistant herpes virus isolates. Currently there are ten HSV-1, five HSV-2, sixteen HCMV, five VZV, two EBV, two HHV-6 and two HHV-8 isolates used throughout the globe. To study the titre reduction of HSV-1, HSV-2, HCMV and VZV, supernatant virus from drug-treated cultures is collected and titrated to
determine the level of reduction in virus produced as a result of drug treatment. This is an in-vitro model for estimating the log-fold reduction in virus that could be obtained by antiviral treatment in-vivo. The extracts or compounds can also be evaluated for their activity in combination with other drugs including other known herpes virus inhibitors, or HIV-1 inhibitors or any other compound of interest. Interactions (synergy, additivity, antagonism) of the compounds can be evaluated in terms of antiviral efficacy and toxicity.

Studies on the mechanism of action

Compounds can also be evaluated for activity when challenged with different amounts of virus such as HSV-1, HSV-2, HCMV and VZV ranging from very low to very high multiplicity of infection. Compounds are added or removed from cultures at various times pre- and post-infection. By comparison with other known herpes virus inhibitors, this allows the relative point in the virus life cycle that is being inhibited to be determined (immediate-early, early, late functions, DNA polymerisation, etc.). This standard technique is typically used early during the process of determining the mechanism of action, as it allows one to concentrate on a smaller target window of activity for further experimentation and gives an easy way to determine if a compound is acting by a unique or novel mechanism compared with other known inhibitors. Furthermore, time of removal studies allow one to determine the reversibility of activity. The effect of compounds on the production of viral DNA can be evaluated using various hybridisation techniques, PCR or TaqMan PCR. The effect of compounds on the production of immediate-early, early and late viral proteins can be evaluated using Western blots and/or flow cytometry. Resistant virus isolates are selected in tissue culture by serial passage of the virus in the presence of gradually increasing concentrations of the compound. Resistance selection can be evaluated using combinations of anti-HSV agents to judge the relative ability of the virus to become resistant to multiple agents.

In-vivo models

To test the in-vivo toxicity and efficacy of the herbal products in animals, several models have been developed. HSV infections of mice provide a good model for human disease, but other animals provide receptors for HSV entry and expression of viral glycoproteins that influence disease and pathogenicity in man, and these are discussed below. The most commonly used method of in-vivo toxicity determination is dermal toxicity testing of the extract or substance, usually done by the skin irritation test; while the efficacy of any extract or compound is measured by cutaneous lesion development in guinea pigs (Figure 21.2).

For dermal toxicity testing of any extract or formulations guinea pigs of either sex (200–250 g) are used. After removing body hair from the dorsal side of the animal, the naked skin (6 cm × 7 cm) is washed with warm water, dried and abraded with dermal (Seven-Star) needles. The extract or formulations of different potency are then applied to the abraded area of cohorts of animals (n = 5) usually at the rate of 2 g per animal. After 24 h, the extract is removed with warm water and the animals are examined for erythema and/or oedema 1 h later, up to the next 72 h.

To study the extract potency on HSV-1-induced cutaneous lesions, the abraded dorsal area of the animals is first divided into four quadrants and each of the quadrants is then infected with 30 μL of tenfold diluted HSV-1. The animals are observed for up to 10 days for typical herpes lesion development and, once the lesion develops, cohorts of fresh animals (n = 15) are infected as above and treated with the extract or formulations, control drug (acyclovir) or vehicle control to the infected area with sterile cotton swabs twice daily for 6 days (Figure 21.2). The extent of lesion should be scored daily as: 1.0–1.6 lesions on a quarter of the infected area; 1.7–2.4 lesions on a half of the infected area; 2.5–3.2 lesions on three-quarters of the infected area; and 3.3–4.0 lesions on the entire infected area (Zhang et al., 2007).

A fast, simple reactivation model to study the ocular herpes virus infection and latency was successfully established by Gordon et al. (1990) in New Zealand female rabbits. Each unscarified rabbit eye was inoculated with a suspension of thymidine-kinase-positive HSV-1W strain (5×10⁴ PFU/eye) into the lower fornix, following a topical anaesthesia with eye drops. The HSV-1W establishes latency and
Figure 21.2 In-vivo testing protocols for anti-HSV extract/agents.
reactivates in a manner similar to mouse pathogenic strain HSV-1 McKrae (Gordon et al., 1986). Successful inoculation (100%) of eyes was found on day 7 with typical herpetic dendritic ulcers and significant HSV-1 titre (10^4 PFU/mL) and viral shedding can be determined by neutralisation test. After satisfactory anaesthesia the globe was proposed with a wooden cotton applicator and an operating microscope used to facilitate all surgical manipulations. Intrastromal injection by a no. 30 short bevel needle attached to a 0.25-mL tuberculin syringe is made into the central corneal stroma. One group receives deionised, sterile, endotoxin-free water, another group 100 µL air while the third group receives no injection, and for all three groups, the needle should be carefully withdrawn, and the proposted globe gently returned to the orbit by gentle digital pressure. The anterior chamber injection with deionised sterile water is made at the limbus, inserted into the anterior chamber parallel to the iris plane. The needle is carefully withdrawn, and the insertion site pressed with a cotton swab for 30 s, to avoid aqueous loss. This pressure also returned the proptosed globe to its proper place in the orbit. For topical administration, 100 mL deionised sterile water is washed on to the cornea of the proptosed globe by a pipette and the globe returned to the orbit by gentle digital pressure. Viral shedding (detection of latent HSV-1 after reactivation and induced shedding into the tear film) is determined by swabbing the eyes 2 days prior to treatment and for 7 consecutive days after treatment. Each eye swab is mixed with 0.3 mL MEM (modified Eagle’s medium with Earle’s salt, 10% newborn calf serum, 1% penicillin streptomycin, 1% Fungizone), vortexed, and the eluant is plated on to a Vero cell monolayer. After a 1-h adsorption period, an additional 1.5 mL media is added to the well, and the plate can be examined daily for 7 days for the progressive CPE characteristic of HSV-1. Random HSV-1 isolates can be confirmed by neutralisation (Gordon et al., 1983, 1990).

To test the in-vivo efficacy of an extract or formulation against HSV-2, the genital-herpes model was developed in random-breed BALB/c female mice or in female Sigmodon hispidus (cotton) rats (Yim et al., 2005) by intravaginal inoculation of HSV-2 in anaesthetised inbred 6-week-old mice or rats. After 1-week acclimatisation at room temperature (23 ± 3°C), the animals (10 animals for each dilution) are inoculated with HSV-2 (30 µL of 10^3 virus stock) to the vagina by a size 12 needle, and the animals observed for 12 days to see if they develop vaginitis or die, to determine the median lethal dose (LD_{50}).

To test the efficacy of the extract or formulation, fresh batches of animals are infected with 10 LD_{50} dose of the virus (10^4 PFU) as described above. Following inoculation, a vaginal cotton swab sample is collected from each animal, transferred to 0.5 mL of PBS and stored at −20°C. The animals are divided into test groups (different potency), positive control group (acyclovir), negative control group (solvent or base cream), and one no treatment (virus control) group as well as an additional group of uninfected control. Symptoms of viral vaginitis (topical oedema of the vaginal tract with turbid secretions) will be observed on the third day of infection.

Treatment began on day 3 post-infection, by applying the extract or formulations to the vaginal tract with cotton swabs, at a dose of 2 mg per mouse twice daily for a 6-day period (Zhang et al., 2007). Mortality and the number of days for mortality to occur are recorded. From day 1 following the completion of the treatment, as well as from the animals immediately after death, vaginal swab samples should be collected (Figure 21.2). The vaginal samples are then diluted five times in MEM and used to infect Vero cells. Samples that gave positive CPE are considered positive for HSV-2 (Zhang et al., 2007).

A polysaccharide lignin–carbohydrate complex from Prunella vulgaris (PPS-2b), when tested by the plaque reduction assay showed strong activities against HSV-1 and HSV-2, as the complex block HSV binding and penetration; while a cream with semi-purified fraction of P. vulgaris showed a significant reduction (P < 0.01) in skin lesions and animal (P < 0.01) mortality in a HSV-1 skin lesion guinea pigs model and HSV-2 genital infection model in BALB/c mice, indicating that this complex had potent anti-HSV activity (Zhang et al., 2007).

**In-vitro and in-vivo activity of crude herbal extracts**

The search for natural antivirals was actually initiated by the Boots drug company (UK) in 1952. Since
then many broad-based screening programmes have been undertaken throughout the world to evaluate the in-vitro and in-vivo antiviral activity of plant extracts and many of them revealed strong antiherpes virus activity, while some can be used as a lead for the development of antivirals agents (Khan et al., 2005; Yarnell and Abascal, 2005; Chattopadhyay et al., 2006; Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008). These reviews report the in-vitro and sometimes in-vivo antiviral virus activities of many plant extracts, mainly against HSV-1 and HSV-2.

Garlic (Allium sativum) extracts showed strong inhibitory activity against HCMV (Khan et al., 2005; Chattopadhyay and Bhattacharya, 2008; Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008). Interestingly the intraperitoneal administration of black seed (Nigella sativa) oil to BALB/c mice strikingly inhibited HCMV in-vitro murine CMV titres in spleen and liver (Salem and Hossain, 2000) while the extract of Terminalia chebula not only significantly inhibited HSV in vivo, but also the replication of HCMV in vitro and murine CMV in immunosuppressed mice (Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008).

Canadian researchers first reported the antiviral activities of grape, apple and strawberry juices against HSV and other viruses; while leaf extract of Azadirachta indica inhibited DNA viruses (Khan et al., 2005). British Columbian ethnomedicines Cardamine angulata, Conocephalum conicum, Polypondium glycyrrhiza showed anti-HSV-1 activity (McCutcheon et al., 1995); while strong anti-HSV activity was found with Byrsonima verbascifolia extract, a folk remedy for skin infections (Rao et al., 1969). The aqueous extracts of Nepeta nepetella, Dittrichia viscosa and Sanguisorba minor magnolii of the Iberian peninsula inhibited vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV) and HSV-1 at 50–125 µg/mL (Glatthaar-Saalmuller et al., 2001); while the Nepalese ethnomedicine Nerium indicum inhibited HSV and influenza A virus (Alche et al., 2000). The Chinese antipyretic and anti-inflammatory folk medicine Rheum officinale and Paeonia suffrutescens prevented HSV attachment and penetration (Hsiang et al., 2001). The extracts of Aglaia odorata, Moringa oleifera and Ventilago denticulate, folk medicines of Thailand, inhibited thymidine kinase-deficient and phosphonoacetate-resistant HSV-1 and delayed the development of skin lesions at 750 mg/kg per dose, increased the mean survival times and reduced the mortality of infected mice similar to acyclovir (Fortin et al., 2002). The Taiwanese folk remedy Boussingaultia gracilis and Serissa japonica extract was shown to inhibit HSV and adenoviruses (ADV) 3, 8 and 11. (Chiang et al., 2003). Interestingly the viral adsorption, replication and transcription of HSV-1 and HSV-2 were inhibited by Ceratostigma willmattianum extract, an ethnomedicine of China, with IC$_{50}$ of 29.46 and 9.2 mg/L respectively (Chen et al., 2004).

The extracts of Semia petersiana, a folk remedy for sexually transmitted diseases, have strong anti-HSV activity (Dong et al., 2004). The aqueous extract of Carissa edulis (Forssk.) Vahl (Apocynaceae) root from Kenya, significantly (100%) inhibited plaque formation in Vero E6 cells infected with 100 PFU of wild-type HSV or resistant HSV strains at 50 µg/mL in vitro with minimal cell cytotoxicity (CC$_{50}$ 480 µg/mL). The extract at an oral dose of 250 mg/kg significantly (50%) delayed the onset of HSV infections in a murine model using Balb/C mice, cutaneously infected with wild-type or resistant strains of HSV (Tshikalange et al., 2005).

Methanol and hot-aqueous extracts of 25 different plant species, used in Yemeni traditional medicine when tested in two in-vitro viral systems using HSV-1 in Vero cells and influenza virus A in MDCK cells, showed greater activity against HSV-1 at non-cytotoxic concentrations.

### In-vitro and in-vivo antitherpetic activity of compounds from herbal extracts

A list of some potential herbal extracts along with the isolated compounds having antiviral virus activities with probable mode of action are presented in Table 21.2.

### Phenolics and polyphenols

The simplest bioactive polyphenols are the phenylpropanoids, and in a high oxidation state these have a wide range of antiviral activities. The aqueous extract of Geranium sanguineum L. aerial roots containing polyphenolic complex catechins and condensed tannins was reported to inhibit both HSV-1 and
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Natural product</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Antiviral activity (lg/mL)</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Whole extract</td>
<td>Aglaria odorata&lt;br&gt;Moringa oleifera&lt;br&gt;Ventilago denticulata&lt;br&gt;Boussingaultia gracilis&lt;br&gt;Serissa japonica&lt;br&gt;Cretastigma willmaltianum&lt;br&gt;Senna petterisan&lt;br&gt;Trifalia trifolia&lt;br&gt;Artocarpus lakoocha&lt;br&gt;Milletia erythrophylax&lt;br&gt;Carisa edulis&lt;br&gt;Geranium sanguineum</td>
<td>HSV-1, HSV-2</td>
<td>Fortin et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propolis</td>
<td>Stephania cepharantha&lt;br&gt;Stephania cepharantha&lt;br&gt;Ophiorrhiza nicobarica</td>
<td>HSV*&lt;br&gt;HSV-1(7.8) a, h&lt;br&gt;HSV-2 (300) a, h</td>
<td>Nawawi et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkaloids</td>
<td>Cepharanthine&lt;br&gt;FK-3000&lt;br&gt;Harmine&lt;br&gt;Bis-benylisoquinoline&lt;br&gt;Protoberberine&lt;br&gt;N-methylcrotsparine</td>
<td>HSV*&lt;br&gt;HSV-1(9.12 a, 36.5)k, m&lt;br&gt;HSV-1&lt;br&gt;HSV-1, HSV-2</td>
<td>Nawawi et al., 1999&lt;br&gt;Chiang et al., 2004&lt;br&gt;Dong et al., 2004&lt;br&gt;Likhitwitayawud et al., 2005&lt;br&gt;Likhitwitayawud et al., 2005&lt;br&gt;Tshikalange et al., 2005&lt;br&gt;Serkedjiev and Ivancheva, 1999&lt;br&gt;Huleihel and Isanu, 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenolics</td>
<td>Caffeic acid&lt;br&gt;Chlorogenic acid&lt;br&gt;Procyanidin A1&lt;br&gt;Procyanidin C1&lt;br&gt;Prodelphinidine-o-gallate&lt;br&gt;Rosmarinic acid&lt;br&gt;Xanthohumol&lt;br&gt;Polypheonols&lt;br&gt;Cochinolide B, tremulacin&lt;br&gt;Asiaticoside&lt;br&gt;Mangiferin&lt;br&gt;Rutin, rutin sulphate&lt;br&gt;Phenolics</td>
<td>HSV-1(15.3) b, VZV*&lt;br&gt;HSV-2 (87.3) a, f&lt;br&gt;HSV-1 (47.6) a&lt;br&gt;HSV-2 (86.5) a&lt;br&gt;HSV-2 (5.3) a, f&lt;br&gt;VZV*&lt;br&gt;HSV*&lt;br&gt;HSV-1, HSV-2 (3.6–6.2) a, f&lt;br&gt;HSV-1, HSV-2*&lt;br&gt;HSV*&lt;br&gt;HSV-1*, HSV-2*&lt;br&gt;HSV-1 (3–8.8) u, i&lt;br&gt;HSV-1, HSV-2&lt;br&gt;HSV-1, HSV-2*</td>
<td>Nawawi et al., 1999&lt;br&gt;Chiang et al., 2002&lt;br&gt;Sydiskis et al., 1991&lt;br&gt;Cheng and Lin-Chun, 2005&lt;br&gt;Sahahat et al., 2002&lt;br&gt;Cheng et al., 2003&lt;br&gt;Chiang et al., 2002&lt;br&gt;Buckwold et al., 2004&lt;br&gt;Serkedjiev and Ivancheva, 1999&lt;br&gt;Yoosook et al., 2000&lt;br&gt;Yoosook et al., 2000&lt;br&gt;Tao et al., 2007&lt;br&gt;Hsiang et al., 2001&lt;br&gt;Hsiang et al., 2001&lt;br&gt;Hsiang et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flavonoids</td>
<td>Catechin&lt;br&gt;Hesperidin&lt;br&gt;Resveratrol&lt;br&gt;Oxyresveratrol&lt;br&gt;Quercetin&lt;br&gt;Phloroglucin methyl gallate&lt;br&gt;Apiginin&lt;br&gt;Epiaczelechin</td>
<td>HSV-1 m,&lt;br&gt;HSV*&lt;br&gt;HSV*&lt;br&gt;HSV*&lt;br&gt;HSV-1 (24.3) a, (20) k, f&lt;br&gt;HSV*&lt;br&gt;HSV-1*&lt;br&gt;HSV-2*</td>
<td>Kaul et al., 1985&lt;br&gt;Kaul et al., 1985&lt;br&gt;Faith et al., 2006&lt;br&gt;Likhitwitayawud et al., 2005&lt;br&gt;Chiang et al., 2003a&lt;br&gt;Arisawa et al., 1990&lt;br&gt;Lyu et al., 2005&lt;br&gt;Cheng et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural product</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Antiviral activity (lg/mL)</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terpenes/sterols</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Betulinic acid</td>
<td>Ocimum basilicum, Rhus javanica</td>
<td>HSV (2.6) (^b)</td>
<td>Chiang et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iso borneol</td>
<td>Melaleuca alternifolia</td>
<td>HSV-1, 2 (0.06)(^{a,f})</td>
<td>Farag et al., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lupenol</td>
<td>Euphorbia segetalis</td>
<td>HSV-1, HSV-2*</td>
<td>Chattopadhyay, 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moronic acid</td>
<td>Myricaeugenia euosma, R. javanica</td>
<td>HSV (3.9) (^b) HSV-2*</td>
<td>Kurokawa et al., 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycyrrhetic acid</td>
<td>Glycyrrhizin glabra</td>
<td>HSV-1</td>
<td>Utsunomiya et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulegone</td>
<td>Minthostachys verticillata</td>
<td>HSV-1 (10) (^c)</td>
<td>Primo et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Putranjivain A</td>
<td>Euphorbia jolkini</td>
<td>HSV-2, (6.3 (\mu)M) (^{a,c})</td>
<td>Cheng et al., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ursolic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td>HSV-1(^{b,f})</td>
<td>Chiang et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sclerocarpi acid (sesquiterpenes)</td>
<td>Scoparia dulcis L.</td>
<td>HSV-1(16.7) (^d,f)</td>
<td>Khan et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scopadulic acid B (diterpenoid)</td>
<td></td>
<td>HSV-2 (38.5–53)(^h)</td>
<td>Bunyaphraphatsara et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morin</td>
<td>Maclura cochinchnensis</td>
<td>EBV*</td>
<td>Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quassainoids</td>
<td>Melia azedarach</td>
<td>HSV-1(1.46) (^{a,k})</td>
<td>Alche et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28-deacetylsendanin (Limonoid)</td>
<td></td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td>Yooosook et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meliacine</td>
<td></td>
<td>HSV-2*</td>
<td>Yooosook et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asiaticoside</td>
<td>Centella asiatica L.</td>
<td>HSV-1*, HSV-2*</td>
<td>Ishikawa et al., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mangiferin</td>
<td>Mangifera indica L.</td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td>Primo et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cochinolide B, tremulacir</td>
<td>Hormailium cochinchnensis</td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td>Saddi et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential oil</td>
<td>Mirthostachys verticillata</td>
<td>HSV-2*</td>
<td>Salem and Hossain, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black seed oil</td>
<td>Artemisia arborescen</td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td>Kuo et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-N-B5</td>
<td></td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td>Betz et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiazolysulphonamide</td>
<td>Nigella sativa</td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td>Sacks et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-docosanol</td>
<td>Nelumbo nucifera</td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td>Aoki et al., 1995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oryzacystatin</td>
<td></td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Saponins</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>HSV-1(500)(^a)</td>
<td>Chattopadhyay, 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-Acetylharpagide, scorodioside</td>
<td>Bupleurum nigidum</td>
<td>VSV*</td>
<td>Ikeda et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saikosaponin</td>
<td>Scrophularia scorodonia</td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saponin glycosides (spirostane, tomatidiane)</td>
<td>Solanum spp.</td>
<td>HSV-2 (1.5 (\mu)M)(^{a,k})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tannin</strong></td>
<td>Terminalia arjuna</td>
<td>HSV-1*, HSV-2*, EBV*</td>
<td>Cheng et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casuarinin</td>
<td>Geum japonicum</td>
<td>HSV, VZV</td>
<td>Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eugeniin</td>
<td>Syzygium aromaticum</td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td>Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samaragenin B</td>
<td>Lirimun sinensi</td>
<td>EBV*</td>
<td>Kuo et al., 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ellagitanins</td>
<td>Phyllanthus myrtifolius, R. urinaria</td>
<td>HSV-1*</td>
<td>Ikeda et al., 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euglobal-G1,G2,G3 n-docosanol</td>
<td>Eucalyptus grandis</td>
<td>HSV-2(^m)</td>
<td>Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lignans</td>
<td></td>
<td>HSV-1(^{k,m})</td>
<td>Sakagami et al., 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lignan</td>
<td>Rhus javanica</td>
<td>HSV-2(^m)</td>
<td>Kuo et al., 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yatein</td>
<td>Chamaeyparis obtusa</td>
<td>HSV-1(^{k,m})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued overleaf)
HSV-2 (EC$_{50}$ 3.6–6.2 µg/mL) and at minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC)90 (120 µg/mL) it strongly inactivated HSV-1 Kupka strain in plaque reduction assay, and delayed the development of herpetic vesicles in guinea pigs (Serkedjieva and Ivancheva, 1999). Propolis, a crude extract of the balsam of various trees collected by bees, inhibits acyclovir-resistant HSV-1 and VZV because of the synergistic action of a mixture of terpenoids, flavonoids, benzoic acid esters and phenolic acid esters (Huleihel and Isanu, 2002). Interestingly the anticancer, anti-inflammatory and immunomodulatory agent caffeic acid phenethyl ester (CAPE), an active component of propolis from Brazilian honeybee hives, inhibited plaque formation in HSV at 10 mg/mL dose by 70%, while at higher concentrations it inhibited RNA, protein synthesis and proliferation of HSV (Huleihel and Isanu, 2002).

The aqueous extract of Plantago major L., a popular medicine of Ayurvedic, traditional Chinese medicine and Chakma Talika Chikitsa of Bangladesh showed anti-HSV activity. Caffeic acid, chlorogenic acid and rosmarinic acid from P. major exhibited strongest activity against both HSV-1 (EC$_{50}$ 15.3 µg/mL) and HSV-2 (EC$_{50}$ 87.3 µg/mL) (Chiang et al., 2002). Structure–activity relationship studies revealed that the site(s) and number of -OH groups on phenols are responsible for their antiviral activity.

The Myrica rubra barks containing prodelphinidin-di-O-gallate inhibited HSV-2 attachment and penetration, and reduced viral infectivity by affecting the late stage of infection (Cheng et al., 2003). Similarly Homalium cochinchinensis root bark containing cochinolide B, tremulacin and tremuloidin, inhibited HSV-1 and HSV-2 (Ishikawa et al., 2004). The in-vitro anti-HSV activity of Vaccinium vitis-idaea Linn (Ericaceae) by XTT assay (IC$_{50}$ 73.3 ± 14.5 µmol/L) and plaque reduction assay (IC$_{50}$ 41.9 ± 2.0 µmol/L for HSV-1 and 62.8 ± 6.3 µmol/L for HSV-2) was found to be due to proanthocyanidin A-1. This compound blocks HSV-2 infection at a non-toxic dose (CC$_{50}$ 282.1 ± 27.5 µmol/L) by inhibiting viral attachment and penetration and affects the late stage(s) of infection (Cheng and Lin-Chun, 2005). Similarly proanthocyanidins isolated from Hamamelis virginiana bark and oligomeric procyanidin C1 of Crataegus sinaica showed remarkable anti-HSV-1 activity in the plaque reduction assay (Shahat et al., 2002).

It was observed that proanthocyanidin C1 non-specifically bound proteins, but selectively inhibited nuclear factor kB (NF-κB)-dependent gene expression, which modulates apoptosis (Cos et al., 2004). A xanthohumol-enriched Humulus lupulus extract showed moderate antiviral activity against HSV-1, HSV-2 and CMV in the plaque reduction assay.

### Table 21.2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Natural product</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Antiviral activity (µg/mL)</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polysaccharide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anionic polysaccharide</td>
<td>Selerotium glucanicum</td>
<td>HSV-1*, HSV-1(100)$^a$, HSV-2(10)$^b$</td>
<td>Marchetti et al., 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polysaccharide lignan complex</td>
<td>Prunella vulgaris</td>
<td>HSV-1, HSV-2 (20—100)$^{bc}$</td>
<td>Xu et al., 1999; Chiu et al., 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphated galactans</td>
<td>Prunella vulgaris</td>
<td>HSV$,^f$</td>
<td>Zhang et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galactofucan</td>
<td>Bostrychia montagnae</td>
<td>HSV-1, HSV-2$^*$</td>
<td>Duarte et al., 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Undaria pinnatida</td>
<td></td>
<td>Thompson and Dagar, 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteins and peptides</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannose-specific lectins</td>
<td>Listera ovata</td>
<td>CMV (0.08)$^b$</td>
<td>Balzarini et al., 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlcNAc n-specific lectin</td>
<td>Urtica dioica</td>
<td>CMV (0.3—9)$^b$</td>
<td>Balzarini et al., 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peptide</td>
<td>Sorghum bicolor</td>
<td>HSV-1$^{bc}$</td>
<td>Filho et al., 2008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*IC$_{50}$, $^a$EC$_{50}$, $^b$ED$_{50}$, $^c$TI, $^d$SI, Inhibit: virus replication/multiplication, $^e$virus-induced cytopathic effects, $^f$virus entry, cellular fusion, attachment and penetration, $^g$thymidine kinase, $^h$helicase-primase, $^i$infected cell polypeptide/DNA polymerase/DNA replication/gene expression.

HSV = herpes simplex virus; VZV = varicella zoster virus; CMV = cytomegalovirus; MCMV = murine cytomegalovirus; EBV = Epstein-Barr virus.

*IC$_{50}$/EC$_{50}$/ED$_{50}$ not available.
An interesting structure–activity relationship study is noted with dimeric procyanidins and related polyphenols, where epicatechin-containing dimers show pronounced anti-HSV activities, and the ortho-trihydroxyl groups in the B-ring with the double interflavan linkages leads to a significant increase of anti-HSV activity.

The flavonoids and dimeric stilbenes from _Arctocarpus gomezianus_ Wall, phloroglucinols from _Mallotus pallidus_ Airy Shaw, and coumarins from _Triphasia trifolia_ (Burm.f.) inhibit both HSV-1 and HSV-2 owing to bis-hydroxyphenyl moiety (Likhitwitayawuid et al., 2005), which can be the potential target for anti-HSV drug development. Sakagami et al. (2005) opine that the virucidal activity of polyphenols is due to their association with proteins and/or host cell surfaces, resulting in reduction or prevention of viral adsorption. The health-promoting, disease-preventing dietary compounds called flavonoids are therapeutically useful or can be used as prototypes for drug development. Some recent reviews report that flavonoids can inhibit diverse viruses, including herpes viruses, both in vitro and in vivo by direct inactivation or blocking replication (Khan et al., 2005; Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008). Flavonoids such as quercetin, procyanidin, and pelargonidin are virucidal to HSV while catechin and hesperidins can inactivate HSV (Kaul et al., 1985). Similarly quercetin, galangin, naringenin, kaempferol and 3-methyl kaempferol are potent antitherpetic compounds, as these agents inhibit viral attachment and penetration (Sarisky et al., 2002). An extract of _Sapium sebiferum_ containing methyl gallate and methyl-3,4,5-trihydroxybenzoate is a potent and specific inhibitor of herpes viruses; while phloroglucinol of _Mallotus japonicus_ can only reduce HSV plaque formation (Arisawa et al., 1990).

Hesperidin from orange (_Citrus aurantium_ L.) and grape (_Vitis vinifera_ L.) can inhibit HSV replication; catechin inhibits infectivity of HSV-1, but quercetin inhibits both, so the small structural differences of these compounds are critical to their activity. _Centella asiatica_ L., _Maclura cochinchinensis_ Connor, and _Mangifera indica_ L., used as herpes virus remedies in Thailand, can inhibit HSV-1 and HSV-2 virion production in plaque inhibition assay and combinations of these extracts with acyclovir resulted in synergistic or additive interaction in a dose-dependent manner, probably because of asiaticosidein in _C. asiatica_ and mangiferin in _M. indica_ (Yoosook et al., 2000). Bunyapraphatsara et al. (2000) reported that the flavonoid morin, from _Maclura cochinchinensis_, had powerful anti-HSV-2 activity (EC$_{50}$ 38.5–53.5 μg/mL), owing to its free hydroxyl groups.

Extracts of _Rhus succedanea_ and _Garcinia multiflora_ containing amentoflavone and robustaflavone, inhibited in-vitro growth of HSV, while VZV was inhibited by rhusflavanone and succedaneflavanone (Chattopadhyay, 2006). It was reported that the quercetin from _Caesalpinia pulcherrima_ Swartz had a broad antitherpes virus activity (EC$_{50}$ 24.3–50 mg/L), by inhibiting early stage of multiplication (Chiang et al., 2003), suggesting its potential use for anti-HSV drug development. Similarly isoquercitrin of _Waldsteinia fragarioides_ had significant anti-HSV activity (Khan et al., 2005).

Eighteen flavonoids of five classes were tested against HSV-1 and HSV-2 and the result was that epicatechin (EC), epicatechin gallate (ECG) and quercetin (flavanols); genistein (isoflavone) and naringenin (flavanone) showed a high level of CPE inhibitory activity. EC, ECG, galangin and kaempferol showed strong anti-HSV activity, while catechin, epigallocatechin, epigallocatechin gallate, naringenin, apigenin, chrysin, baicalin, fisetin, myricetin, quercetin, and genistein had moderate effect on HSV-1 in plaque reduction assay. Hence, flavonols and flavonoids appeared to be more active than flavones.

Vero cells treated with ECG and galangin before virus adsorption led to an enhancement of inhibition, indicating that an intracellular effect may also be involved (Lyu et al., 2005). The potent antiviral flavonoids appear to block viral DNA/RNA polymerase, where the degree of inhibition depends on the structure and side chain. A recent study with ent-epiafzelechin-(4α-8)-epiafzelechin (EEE) from fresh leaves of _Cassia javanica_ L. var. ‘Agnes de Wit’ revealed the inhibition of HSV-2 replication in a dose-dependent manner (IC$_{50}$ 83.8 ± 10.9 μmol/L) by inhibiting penetration and replication at the late stage of its life cycle (Cheng et al., 2006).

Tannins are polymeric phenolics (molecular weight 500–3000) and are grouped into hydrolysable and condensed tannins. It is believed that the
consumption of tannin-containing beverages, such as green teas and red wines, can cure or prevent a variety of illnesses. Some recent reviews reported that tannins can stimulate phagocytic cells, inhibit tumours and a wide range of microbes by forming complexes with microbial proteins. They can inactivate virus adsorption, transport proteins, polysaccharides and viral enzymes (Chattopadhyay, 2006; Chattopadhyay and Naik, 2007). A detailed study on ellagittannins from Phyllanthus myrtifolius and P. urinaria (Euphorbiaceae) demonstrated the inhibition of Epstein-Barr virus DNA polymerase, probably because of the corilagin moiety of these tannins. Terminalia arjuna L. bark contains the virucidal hydrolysable tannin casuarinin which, at 25 µmol/L dose, reduced viral titres up to 10^5-fold (IC_{50} 3.6 ± 0.9 and 1.5 ± 0.2) in XTT and plaque reduction assay, and at C_{50} 89 ± 1.0 µmol/L it inhibited HSV-2 attachment and penetration (Cheng et al., 2002).

**Coumarins**

Coumarins are reported to have antithrombotic, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, anticarcinogenic, antiallergic, vasodilatory and hepatoprotective activities (Chattopadhyay and Bhattacharya, 2008); some being enzyme inhibitors or precursors of toxic substances, and are defences against infection. As coumarins can stimulate macrophages, they can exert an indirect effect on viral infections, e.g. recurrences of cold sores caused by HSV-1 (Khan et al., 2005; Chattopadhyay, 2006). Hence, this plant can be a potential candidate as an anti-HSV agent. The coumarin derivatives 1,4-dihydropyridine-5-carboxylic acid and pyridine-5-carboxylic acid from some herbal products showed antiviral activities against CMV (AD-169 and Davis strain), HSV-1 (KOS, F, McIntyre, TK-B2006, TK-VMW1837, TK-Cheng C158/77, TK-Field C137/101), HSV-2 (G, 196, Lyons), and VZV (TK OKA, TK YS, TK-07/1, TK-YS/R strains) (Patent WO 01/14370, Rephartox B.V.).

Hydroxylated coumarins are produced by many plants as defence in response to microbial infection, and so are a type of phytoalexin. A polyphenolic phytoalexin, resveratrol (3,5,4′-trihydroxystilbene) occurs in cis- (Z) and trans- (E) form. The trans-form can undergo isomerisation to the cis- form in presence of heat or ultraviolet irradiation in grapes, berries, plums, peanuts, Vaccinium species, pines and knotweed. Resveratrol is reported to inhibit HSV-1 and HSV-2 replication by suppressing NF-κB activation, an essential step of its lifecycle during infection (Gregory et al., 2004). Further study by electromobility shift assays demonstrated that resveratrol suppressed NF-κB activation of both HSV types as well as acyclovir-resistant HSV-1 in a dose-dependent and reversible manner, impairing expression of essential immediate-early, early and late genes and synthesis of DNA (Faith et al., 2006). Similarly oxyresveratrol of Millettia erythrocalyx and Arctocarpus lakoocha inhibited herpes virus replication (Likhitwitayawuid et al., 2005a).

**Essential oils and terpenoids**

Essential oils and terpenoids have antiviral activities against many viruses (Khan et al., 2005). The monoterpene isoborneol can block HSV-1 replication within 30 min of exposure and can inhibit glycosylation of viral polypeptides and gB without affecting the glycosylation of host cell polypeptides; while pulegone inhibits HSV-1 replication (Primo et al., 2001). On the other hand Santalum album oil had a dose-dependent anti-HSV-1 activity, but the essential oil of the Italian food plant Santolina insularis inhibited cell-to-cell transmission of herpes viruses (Khan et al., 2005).

Terpinen-4-ol from Mentha alternifolia oil, used as an antimicrobial preservative in cosmetics, exhibited strong virucidal activity against HSV-1 and HSV-2 and, at a nontoxic dose, plaque formation was reduced by 98.2% (HSV-1) and 93.0% (HSV-2). The IC_{50} for plaque formation in RC 37 cell was 0.0008 (HSV-1) and 0.009% (HSV-2). Although the active antiviral components of tree tea oil are not yet fully characterised, its application in recurrent herpes infection is promising.

The essential oils of Artemisia douglasiana and Eupatorium patens inhibit HSV-1 (65–125 ppm) while Melissa officinalis oil inhibits HSV-2 replication (Khan et al., 2005; Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008); while the volatile oil 1,8-cineole and terpinen-4-ol of Melaleuca armillaris are effective virucidal agents (Farag et al., 2004). The essential oil obtained from A. arborescens is reported to inhibit HSV-1 (IC_{50} 24 µg/mL) and HSV-2 (4.1 µg/mL) at CC_{50}...
132 µg/mL in MTT reduction assay and CC_{50}/IC_{50} ratio of 55 for HSV-1, and 32.2 for HSV-2 with a direct virucidal effect, inhibiting the virus and cell to cell virus diffusion (Saddi et al., 2007).

The stem bark of Glyptopetalum sclerocarpum, containing a sesquiterpene sclerocarpic acid, showed antiviral activity against HSV-1 and HSV-2 (Chattopadhyay, 2006); while the quassinoids inhibit Epstein-Barr virus (Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008). The diterpenoid scopadulcic acid B, isolated from Scoparia dulcis L., inhibits HSV-1 replication in vitro by interfering with early events of viral growth, while in hamsters it delayed the appearance of herpetic lesions and increased the survival time at 100–200 mg/kg/day dose (Chattopadhyay and Khan, 2008). Another diterpene putranjivain A of Euphorbia jolkini significantly reduced infectivity (IC_{50} 6.3 µmol/L), attachment and penetration and the late stage of HSV-2 replication (Cheng et al., 2004).

It was observed that the triterpenes betulinic acid and moronic acid of Rhus javanica inhibited acyclovir-resistant, thymidine kinase-deficient and wild-type HSV-1 (EC_{50} of 2.6–3.9 µg/mL). Orally administered moronic acid fed to mice infected cutaneously with HSV-1 significantly retarded skin lesions and/or prolonged the mean survival times at non-cytotoxic dose by suppressing virus yields in the brain (Kurokawa et al., 1999). Hence, moronic acid may be a good anti-HSV lead with a mechanism of action different from that of acyclovir.

Interestingly both aqueous and ethanolic extract of Ocimum basilicum along with purified apigenin, linalool and ursolic acid showed strong anti-HSV-1 activity. The ursolic acid showed the strongest activity against HSV-1 (EC_{50} 6.6 mg/L), while apigenin revealed the highest activity against HSV-2, by blocking the infection process and the replication phase (Chiang et al., 2005), indicating its potential candidature as an antiherpes agent. Again the tetracyclic triterpenes lupone of Euphorbia segetalis strongly inhibited plaque formation of HSV-1 and HSV-2 (Chattopadhyay, 2006).

It was found that a tetranortriterpenoid (limonoid) meliacine, isolated from Melia azedarach L. leaves, inhibited HSV-1 replication in vitro. Meliacine exerts potent anti-HSV-1 activity by inhibiting ICPs, DNA synthesis, nucleocapsids assembly and late stages of HSV life cycle. Ultrastructural analysis of infected cells showed that meliacine treatment results in accumulation of unenveloped nucleocapsids in the cytoplasmic vesicles of infected cells, suggesting that it also blocks the syntheses of viral DNA and its maturation (Alche et al., 2000). Corneal herpetic stromal keratitis, a leading cause of human blindness, when developed in Balb/c mice by HSV-1 (KOS strain) and treated with meliacine topically, significantly reduced the development of keratitis and the histological damage in corneas. The results revealed that the viral titres in eyes of infected and treated mice were twofold lower than the corresponding controls (Alche et al., 2000).

Another limonoid terpene, 28-deacetylsendanin, of Melia azedarach fruit, showed anti-HSV-1 activity (IC_{50} 1.46 µg/mL) at 400 µg/mL. Triterpenoid saponins of the oleanane group inhibit DNA synthesis, while the ursane group inhibits capsid protein synthesis of HSV-1. Apers et al. (2001) observed that alcoholic extract of Maesa lanceolata leaves contains a maesasaponin VI2 which showed virucidal effect against HSV (reduction factor 10^3 at 50 µg/mL), owing to diacylation of replicating enzymes. On the other hand, the saponin glycosides (spirastane, tomatidane, solasodane, nuatigenin, ergostane and furostane dimers) of some Solanum species inhibit HSV-1, probably because of their oligosaccharide moiety (Khan et al., 2005).

**Lignans**

Larrea tridentates, Rhinacanthus nasutus and Kadsura matsudai extracts showed antitherpuses activities owing to the lignan nordehydroguanoferate; while Rhus javanica lignans exhibited anti-HSV-2 activity similar to acyclovir. The cones of various pine trees (Pinus spp.) inhibited the proliferation of HSV, owing to lignin–carbohydrate complexes. It was observed that the anti-HSV activity was maximal when lignin was added at the time of virus adsorption (Sakagami et al., 2005). A bioassay-guided study with the Chinese herb Chamaecyparis obtusa, yielded yatein, a lignan that significantly inhibited HSV-1 multiplication in HeLa cells. It was found that yatein can impede the levels of gB and gC mRNA expression in HeLa cells, can arrest DNA replication, inhibit the expression of a gene, ICP0 and ICP4 genes, arresting DNA synthesis and expression of structural protein of HSV-1(Kuo et al., 2006).
Alkaloids

Many alkaloids have antiviral activities. The methanol extract of *Stephania cepharantha* root tubers, used in Chinese and Mongolian traditional medicine, contains isoquinoline alkaloids with in-vivo antitumour, anti-inflammatory, antiallergic and immunomodulatory activity and with potent anti-HSV-1 activity (IC$_{50}$ 18 µg/mL). Further study revealed that cepharanthine from *S. cepharantha* inhibited HSV-1 (Nawawi et al., 1999; Chattopadhyay, 2006). N-methylcrotsparine showed antiviral activity against HSV-1, thymidine kinase-deficient (acyclovir-resistant) HSV-1, and HSV-2 by plaque reduction assay; while the alkaloid FK-3000 was a more promising anti-HSV candidate (Nawawi et al., 1999). Cepharanthine has strong antiviral activity against both RNA and DNA viruses. The ethanol extracts of lotus (*Nelumbo nucifera* Gaertn.) seed, used throughout south Asia for over a thousand years for gastrointestinal and bleeding disorders, significantly inhibits HSV-1 and HSV-2 replication at 100 µg/mL, with IC$_{50}$ 50 µg/mL and IC$_{50}$ 62.0 ± 8.9 µg/mL respectively; while its subfraction NN-B-5 from the bioactive butanol part showed the highest activity at 50 µg/mL by inhibiting thymidine kinase-deficient HSV-1 replication in HeLa cells (Kuo et al., 2005).

*Ophiorrhiza nicobarica*, part of the folklore of Shompen and Nicobarese tribes of the Nicobar Islands, contains a β-carboline alkoloid harmine, which was found to inhibit plaque formation of HSV-1 and HSV-2, and delayed the eclipse phase of HSV replication at 300 µg/mL (Chattopadhyay et al., 2006).

Lectins, polypeptides and polysaccharides

Lectins are natural proteins that target the sugar moieties of various glycoproteins and are widespread in higher plants. Mannose-specific lectins of *Cymbidium hybrid*, *Epipactis helleborine* and *Listera ovata* showed a marked anti-HCMV activity, while the (GlcNAc) n-specific lectin from *Urtica dioica* was inhibitory to CMV-induced cytopathicity at an EC$_{50}$ of 0.3–9 µg/mL (Balzarini et al., 1992). The antimicrobial peptides are often positively charged and contain disulphide bonds. Recently a 2-kDa peptide from seeds of *Sorghum bicolor* L. was shown to dose-dependently inhibit the replication of HSV-1, with EC$_{50}$ and EC$_{90}$ values of 6.25 and 15.25 µmol/L, respectively. The IC$_{50}$ value of the 2-kDa peptide against Vero cells was 250 µmol/L. Preincubation of HSV-1 with various concentrations of the 2-kDa peptide showed dose-dependent CPE reduction at 6.25-50 µmol/L. Similar results were observed when the 2-kDa peptide was assayed against bovine herpes virus, an enveloped virus such as HSV-1, but there was only weak activity against non-enveloped poliovirus type 1 (Filho et al., 2008).

The sulphated galactans from a marine alga *Bostrychia montagnei* were found to inhibit herpes virus multiplication in cell culture and replication in vitro (Duarte et al., 2001), while the polysaccharide of *Cedrela tubiflora* leaves inhibited HSV-2 replication at non-cytotoxic doses, indicating that the anti-HSV activity of polysaccharides correlates with molecular weight and sulphate content.

Recently Thompson and Dragar (2004) reported that a seaweed *Undaria pinnatida*, containing a sulphated polysaccharide galactofucan, had anti-HSV-1 activity, inhibiting viral binding and entry into the host cell (IC$_{50}$ 32 µg/mL), and was highly active against HSV-2 (IC$_{50}$ 0.5 µg/mL; P < 0.001). A water-soluble anionic polysaccharide from *Prunella vulgaris* L. (Labiatae) inhibited HSV-1 at 100 µg/mL and HSV-2 at 10 µg/mL by plaque inhibition assay (Xu et al., 1999) while the anionic polysaccharide of the same herb collected from Japan showed specific anti-HSV activity (IC$_{50}$ 10 µg/mL) by competing for cell surface receptor (Chiu et al., 2004).

Conclusions

The diseases caused by human herpes viruses (HSV, VZV, CMV, EBV and Kaposi’s sarcoma-associated herpes virus) are of global concern. A ‘cure’ or development of effective vaccines are not yet possible; hence, cost-effective natural or complementary antivirals to prevent resistance development with reduced toxicity is of immediate need, especially since current antitherpes virus drugs are expensive, with high toxicity.

Compounds have been discovered with specific in-vitro and in-vivo activity and low toxicity. Some interfere with particular herpes virus enzymes, e.g. DNA polymerase inhibition by eugenol, eugenin and
ellagitannins, RNA and protein synthesis (CAPE, procyanidin C1), and DNA replication, e.g. prodelphinidine-di-O-gallate, ursolic acid, cellular fusion (essential oils, epicatechin gallate, galangin), attachment and penetration, e.g. casuarinin, putranjivain A, virus entry and target-cell binding, e.g. flavones. Although no plant-derived drug is currently in clinical use to treat herpes virus diseases, there are some promising herbal product/natural product-derived candidates in preclinical and clinical trials. Interestingly most of these compounds can block virus entry into host cells and/or specific cellular enzymes, alone or sometimes in combination with acyclovir, which is a very important aspect in the context of viral drug resistance and limited lifespan of antiviral drugs. The compounds having an alternative mechanism of action, unlike synthetic antivirals, are potential candidates to tackle the threats posed by drug-resistant herpes viruses, as it is quite difficult to eliminate herpes virus diseases by the available antivirals.

Acknowledgement

The authors wish to acknowledge Dr Sujit K Bhattacharya, the Additional Director General, Indian Council of Medical Research, New Delhi and the Officer-in-Charge, ICMR Virus Unit, Kolkata, for their kind help and encouragement during the preparation of this manuscript.

References


Cheng HY, Yang CM, Lin TC, Shieh DE, Lin CC (2006). ent-Epiafzelechin-(4\alpha-8)-epiafzelechin extracted from 
*Cassia javanica* inhibits HSV-2 replication. *J Med 

Chiang LC, Cheng HY, Liu MC et al. (2003). In vitro anti-
herpes simplex viruses and anti-adenoviruses activity of 
twelve traditionally used medicinal plants in Taiwan. 

Chiang LC, Ng LT, Cheng PW et al. (2005). Antiviral 
activities of extracts and selected pure constituents of 
*Ocimum basilicum*. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 32: 
811–816.

fraction from medicinal herb *Prunella vulgaris* down-
regulates the expression of herpes simplex virus antigen 

Corey L, Wald A, Celum CL, Quinn TC (2004). The effects 
of herpes simplex virus-2 on HIV-1 acquisition and 
transmission: a review of two overlapping epidemics. 

Cos P, de Bruyne T, Hermans N et al. (2004). Proantho-

Dong Y, Li H, Yao Z et al. (2004). The respiratory syncytial 
virus (RSV) effect of Radix Glycyrrhizae *in vitro*. 

Duarte ME, Noseda DG, Noseda M et al. (2001). Inhibitory 
effect of sulfated galactans from the marine alga 
*Bostrychia montagnei* on herpes simplex virus 

Faith SA, Sweet TJ, Bailey E et al. (2006). Resveratrol 
suppresses nuclear factor-kappaB in herpes simplex virus 

Farag RS, Shalaby AS, El-Baroty GA et al. (2004). Chemical 
and biological evaluation of the essential oils of 

containing varicella-zoster virus open reading frame 62 
and expressing the ‘IE’ 175 protein complement ICP4 
mutants of herpes simplex virus type 1. *J Virol* 62: 
2076–2082.

Forni H, Vigor C, Lohezic LDF et al. (2002). In vitro 
antiviral activity of thirty-six plants from La Reunion 

Filho IC, Cortez DAG, Ueda-Nakamura T et al. (2008). 
Antiviral activity and mode of action of a peptide 
isolated from *Sorgbum bicolor*. *Phytotherapy* 15: 
202–208.

Antiviral activity of an extract derived from roots of 

Gius D, Laimins LA (1989). Activation of human papillo-
mavirus type 18 gene expression by herpes simplex virus 

role of herpes virus type 1 thymidine kinase in 
experimental ocular infections. *Am J Ophthalmol* 95: 
175–181.

Gordon YJ, Araullo-Cruz TP, Romanowski E et al. (1986). 
The development of an improved reactivation model 
for the study of HSV-1 latency. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis 

Gordon YJ, Romanowski E, Araullo-Cruz T (1990). A fast, 
simple reactivation method for the study of HSV-1 
latency in the rabbit ocular model. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis 

Gregory D, Hargett D, Holmes D, Money E, Bachenheimer 
SL (2004). Efficient replication by HSV-1 involves 

Habif T (2004). Warts, herpes simplex, and other viral 

Inhibitory effect of anti-pyretic and anti-inflammatory 
herbs on herpes simplex virus replication. *Am J Chin 

effect of an aqueous extract of Propolis. *Isr Med Assoc 
J* 4: 923–927.

activity of *Solanum* steroidal glycosides. *Biol 

Ishikawa T, Nishigaya K, Takami K et al. (2004). Isolation 
of Salicin derivatives from *Homalium cochinclassicis* 


Extracts and molecules from medicinal plants against 

of anti-HSV screening system using suspension cell line 
and screening several nucleoside analogues in this 

Kuo YC, Lin LC, Tsai WJ et al. (2002). Samaragenin B 
identified from *Limonium sinensis* suppressed herpes 
simplex virus type 1 replication in Vero cells by regulation 
of viral macromolecular synthesis. *Antimicrob 

virus type 1 propagation in HeLa cells interrupted by 

Kuo YC, Kuo YH, Lin YL, Tsai WJ (2006). Yatein from 
*Chamaecyparis obtusa* suppresses herpes simplex virus 
type 1 replication in HeLa cells by interruption the 
initial-early gene expression. *Antiviral Res* 70: 
112–120.

Kurokawa M, Basnet P, Ohsugi M, et al. (1999). Anti-
herpes simplex virus activity of moronic acid purified 
from *Rhus javanica* in vitro and in vivo. *J Pharmacol 
Exp Ther* 289: 72–78.

(2005). Phenolics with anti-HSV and anti-HIV activities 
from *Artocarpus gomezianus*, *Mallotus pallidus*, and 

Likhitwitayawuid K, Sritularak B, Benchanak K et al.


The nature of tinnitus

Tinnitus is a chronic, auditory disorder characterised by a ‘ringing’ or ‘buzzing’ in the ears. The two main subtypes of tinnitus are ‘objective’ and ‘subjective’ tinnitus: whereas ‘objective’ tinnitus can be heard by someone else and is usually associated with a vascular problem in the ear, ‘subjective’ tinnitus is an auditory illusion. While objective tinnitus can be treated by surgery, there is no known cure for subjective tinnitus. Subjective tinnitus can be caused by damage to the inner ear as a result of physical trauma, excessive noise, vascular insufficiency, a viral or bacterial infection, Ménière’s disease or exposure to ototoxic chemicals (e.g. aspirin or cancer chemotherapeutic agents such as cisplatin) (Eggermont and Roberts, 2004). Tinnitus can occur on its own or in combination with vestibular symptoms (e.g. as in Ménière’s disease). Either way, it is a debilitating condition that can affect all aspects of life and sometimes even leads to suicide. Parnes (1997) estimated that approximately 1% of the population has chronic tinnitus that causes distress and that 90% of patients with hearing loss experience some tinnitus (Parnes, 1997). Almost 40% of people aged 60 or over have tinnitus (Abutan et al., 1993) and as many as 50% of all tinnitus sufferers also have depression (George and Kemp, 1991).

The mechanisms that underlie the development of subjective tinnitus are unclear. However, animal studies suggest that exposure to intense sound, resulting in cochlear hair cell damage, causes hyperactivity in the brainstem cochlear nucleus, which receives auditory information directly from the inner ear (Kaltenbach et al., 2000a, 2000b). Similar changes in cochlear nucleus neurones have been reported following outer hair cell loss as a result of treatment with cisplatin (Medlamed et al., 2000). Other studies have confirmed that this type of hyperactivity can be found in higher auditory centres in the brain, including the superior olive, the inferior colliculus and even the auditory cortex, following noise- or chemically induced trauma to the cochlea (Eggermont and Kenmochi, 1998; Rauschecker et al., 1999; Bauer et al., 2000; Komiya and Eggermont, 2000).

Such neuronal hyperactivity is similar to the epileptiform discharge that occurs in the trigeminal
nucleus during trigeminal neuralgia and in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord during phantom limb pain, and it has therefore been suggested that subjective tinnitus is a form of sensory epilepsy (Moller, 2000). Consistent with this hypothesis, antiepileptic drugs are sometimes used to treat tinnitus (Simpson and Davies, 1999). However, they are not always effective and can have serious adverse side-effects (Smith and Darlington, 2005). For this reason, many other drugs have been tested and the search for more effective treatments continues. Because of the shortcomings of the conventional medications used to treat tinnitus, herbal remedies have been investigated, particularly *Ginkgo biloba* extracts. This chapter evaluates their efficacy and safety in comparison with other drug treatments.

## Conventional medications for tinnitus

A diverse range of drugs has been used to treat tinnitus, but no single therapy is accepted by all clinicians. Only some of these drug treatment options are based on an understanding of the mechanisms of tinnitus; many others have been discovered serendipitously (Smith and Darlington, 2005). Unfortunately, there are many spurious claims for clinical effects.

Intratympanic gentamicin therapy has been used to treat tinnitus associated with Ménière’s disease. Diamond *et al.* (2003) concluded that a subjective improvement in tinnitus occurred in approximately 57% of patients. Similarly, Lange *et al.* (2004) reported a significant reduction in tinnitus in 50% of patients treated with intratympanic gentamicin 2–4 years earlier. By contrast, a 5-year follow-up study of patients who had received intratympanic gentamicin therapy showed no significant effect on any hearing measure, even though 74% still reported complete relief from vertigo (Atlas and Parnes, 2003).

Other kinds of intratympanic drug therapy have been investigated. Sakata *et al.* (2001) used intratympanic injection of 4% lidocaine in an attempt to depress cochlear hair cell function and relieve tinnitus. Lidocaine relieved tinnitus in 81% of patients; however, vertigo developed as a result of the infusion. Intratympanic administration of steroids has also been used. Cesarani *et al.* (2002) studied 50 patients who received transtympanic infusion of dexamethasone, 3 times per day for 3 months. Two weeks after the last administration, tinnitus had disappeared in 34% of patients, 40% experienced a significant decrease in its intensity, and 26% reported no effect. Shulman and Goldstein (2000) also reported relief from tinnitus in 7 of 10 patients after intratympanic steroid therapy. Intratympanic administration of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors and acetylcholine receptor agonists has also been investigated, with varying success (DeLucchi, 2000).

Because benzodiazepines activate the benzodiazepine-binding site on the GABA<sub>A</sub> receptor, increasing hyperpolarisation, benzodiazepine treatment is an obvious strategy to reduce neuronal hyperactivity associated with tinnitus. Benzodiazepines such as alprazolam have proven useful, but it is often difficult to determine how much of the therapeutic effect is attributable specifically to the relief of tinnitus and how much is due to a general anxiolytic effect (Simpson and Davies, 1999).

The benzodiazepine antiepileptic drug, clonazepam, as well as the antiepileptic drugs gabapentin and phenytoin, have also been used to treat tinnitus (Gananca *et al.*, 2002; Goldstein and Shulman, 2003). A retrospective survey of 25 years of clinical use suggested that tinnitus was improved in approximately 32% of patients treated with clonazepam. However, adverse side-effects, such as drowsiness, depression, nightmares and reduced libido, were reported in 16.9% of patients although they decreased with continued therapy (Gananca *et al.*, 2002).

Shulman *et al.* (2002) have argued that for patients with tinnitus of central origin, benzodiazepines can provide long-term relief in 90% of cases. In an imaging study using single photon emission computed tomography, Shulman *et al.* (2000) found that patients with severe tinnitus exhibited a reduction in benzodiazepine-binding sites in the medial temporal cortex, suggesting a possible neural basis for the therapeutic effects of benzodiazepines. By contrast, drugs that act as agonists at the GABA<sub>B</sub> receptor, such as baclofen, have not proven effective and have been associated with severe adverse side-effects (Simpson and Davies, 1999).

Antidepressants have also been used to treat tinnitus. If tinnitus causes depression in a particular
patient, then the relief of the depression will usually result in some relief from the tinnitus as well (Simpson and Davies, 1999). This finding demonstrates that tinnitus is not just a sensory problem but a phenomenon that involves the entire CNS, including emotional areas of the brain such as the limbic system. Folmer and Shi (2004) studied 30 patients who developed depression after the onset of their tinnitus and received selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor therapy as treatment. At 20.6 months, the patients showed a statistically significant reduction in their tinnitus severity scores, which correlated with a decrease in their depressive symptoms.

One of the more unusual treatments for tinnitus is the intravenous administration of local anaesthetics, which was discovered in 1937 (Simpson and Davies, 1999). Although lidocaine was shown to reduce tinnitus, its in-vivo instability and adverse side-effects (e.g. nausea, dizziness, potentially fatal cardiovascular effects) have limited its use. There has been some controversy about whether lidocaine actually achieved its effects as a result of blocking sodium channels or as a result of some other non-specific effect of the drug, since other agents with similar actions have not produced the same effect.

Recently, there have been a number of reports of the use of systemically administered lidocaine for the treatment of tinnitus. Marzo et al. (2004) reported that intravenous lidocaine successfully treated incapacitating tinnitus caused by inner-ear tertiary syphilis. Savastano (2004) reported that intradermal injection of lidocaine relieved tinnitus with no adverse side-effects. Otsuka et al. (2003) reported that intravenous lidocaine relieved tinnitus either partially or completely in 70.9% of cases studied over a 24-year period. However, it is not clear how or where lidocaine is acting to achieve these effects, although recent studies using intratympanic injection suggest that it may be working either as a vasodilator or sodium-channel blocker in the inner ear (Simpson and Davies, 1999).

Various other vasodilators have been investigated for the treatment of tinnitus but recent studies have failed to confirm their efficacy (Simpson and Davies, 1999). Because prostaglandins stimulate vasodilation, the synthetic prostaglandin E1 (PGE1) analogue, misoprostol, has been investigated and found to be effective in relieving tinnitus in about 33% of patients (Simpson and Davies, 1999). Yilmaz et al. (2004) studied 28 patients receiving misoprostol and 12 patients receiving placebo: 64% of the patients receiving misoprostol reported a reduction in tinnitus loudness (33% for placebo), with 33% showing an improvement according to their subjective tinnitus score (17% for placebo).

Finally, diuretics have been used to treat tinnitus associated with Ménière’s disease, which is believed to be caused by hypertension of the endolymphatic fluid. The loop diuretic, frusemide, has been effective in treating Ménière’s-associated tinnitus (Simpson and Davies, 1999). However, other attempts to regulate osmotic pressure, using mannitol and glycerol, have had little success (Simpson and Davies, 1999).

### Herbal remedies

The published peer-reviewed literature on herbal medicines to treat tinnitus is dominated by the use of *Ginkgo biloba* extracts. From extensive PubMed and other database searches, we could find virtually no other published papers in peer-reviewed journals on the effects of herbal medicines in tinnitus.

### *Ginkgo biloba* extracts

*Ginkgo biloba* (Ginkgoaceae) is an ancient Chinese tree that has been cultivated for thousands of years. Purified extracts, marketed under the trade names Rokan, Tanakan, Tebonin and Ginkgold, are used throughout the world, although they are especially popular in Europe and in the USA (Drew and Davies, 2001). *G. biloba* extracts have been licensed in Germany for the treatment of cerebral vascular insufficiency. They are available as over-the-counter medications in western Europe and as herbal preparations in the USA, Australia and New Zealand (see Maclennan et al., 2002 for a review).

EGb-761 is a standardised extract containing 24% flavonoids, 7% proanthocyanidins and 6% terpenoids. The flavonoids are mainly flavonol-glycosides with antioxidant properties, while the terpenoid fraction contains ginkgolides, sesquiterpene and bilobalide. Ginkgolide B in particular has potent platelet-activating factor receptor antagonist properties. Many of the CNS effects of EGb-761,
Herbal medicinal products for tinnitus have been attributed to the combination of its antioxidant and platelet-activating factor antagonist actions. However, it is also a vasodilator, which might be the only rationale for speculating that it would be useful in the management of tinnitus (Maclellan et al., 2002).

Hilton and Stuart (2004) critically evaluated the clinical evidence for the efficacy of G. biloba in treating tinnitus and concluded that there were insufficient reliable data on which to base a conclusion, as a result of the methodological flaws of the available studies. Very few studies have used double-blind, placebo-controlled designs. Interestingly, when these sorts of controls have been employed, the results have usually been negative (Meehan et al., 2004). In an effort to focus on the best-designed clinical trials, Ernst and Stevinson (1999) performed a meta-analysis of only those clinical trials that employed standardised Ginkgo extracts that were compared with either placebo or another active medication, and where the primary complaint was tinnitus. Only five trials fulfilled these criteria.

Meyer (1986a) studied 103 patients with tinnitus using a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled design. Patients received EGb 761 (Tanakan) daily for 1–3 months and their tinnitus severity was assessed using a three-point scale. The EGb 761 group experienced a decrease in tinnitus severity but Ernst and Stevinson (1999) point out that the paper, available in French only, lacked a clear description of the methods used.

In another study, Meyer (1986b) studied 259 patients with tinnitus over 1 year. Patients receiving EGb 761 (Tanakan) daily for at least 1 month were compared with those receiving nizergoline or almitrine-raubasine. According to a specialist analysis, tinnitus appeared to show greater improvement in the EGb 761 group compared with the other two treatments. However, Ernst and Stevinson (1999) criticised this study for lack of random allocation of patients to the different treatment groups and lack of methodological detail in the published report; for example, it was not clear whether the patients and experimenters were blind to the treatment groups.

Holgers et al. (1994) recruited 80 patients into an open trial in which all of them received a G. biloba extract daily (Seredrin). This was followed by a double-blind, placebo-controlled phase of the trial using only the 20 patients who appeared to respond to the extract. However, according to patients’ subjective reports, there were no significant effects of the G. biloba extract at the end of the trial.

Morgenstern and Bierman (1997) performed a randomised, double-blind study of 99 patients with chronic tinnitus, who received a G. biloba extract (Tebonin) or placebo daily for 12 weeks. The loudness of the tinnitus was evaluated using audiometry. They reported a significant reduction in loudness (from 42 to 39 dB) in the ginkgo-treated group. Juretzek (1998) treated 60 patients with chronic tinnitus with daily injections of EGb 761 for 10 days, and then randomly allocated them to oral EGb 761 or placebo for 3 months. The second phase of the design was double blind and tinnitus was assessed using audiometry. Juretzek also reported a significant reduction in tinnitus in the EGb 761 group compared with placebo.

The first large, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of the effect of G. biloba extracts on tinnitus was reported by Drew and Davies (2001). They recruited 1121 people between 18 and 70 years and matched 978 according to sex, age and the duration of their tinnitus. For 12 weeks, participants received either the ginkgo extract LI 1370 (Lichtwer Pharma, Berlin, Germany) or placebo. Subjects assessed their tinnitus in terms of loudness and how much it disrupted their daily life, using rating scales. However, there was no significant difference in either measure compared with placebo. In the most recent randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trial, Rejai et al. (2004) also found no therapeutic effect of G. biloba compared with placebo in 66 patients with tinnitus. The primary outcome measures were the tinnitus handicap inventory, the Glasgow health status inventory and the average hearing threshold at 0.5, 1, 2 and 4 kHz. In a meta-analysis of clinical trials by the same authors, they found that only 21.6% of patients with tinnitus reported benefit from G. biloba versus 18.4% of patients who reported benefit from a placebo (Rejai et al., 2004).

Because G. biloba extracts have vasodilatory effects, when they are combined with drugs such as aspirin, they can increase bleeding. Nonetheless, most of the evidence for haemorrhagic responses following the use of G. biloba extracts is based on
anecdotal and case reports. Kohler et al. (2004) compared bleeding time, coagulation parameters and platelet activity in response to 2 × 120 mg/day EGB 761, or placebo, for 7 days and found no significant difference in any of these measures.

To date, only one study has investigated the effects of EGB 761 on salicylate-induced tinnitus using a conditioned-behaviour paradigm in rats (Jastreboff et al., 1997). Daily oral administration of 25, 50 and 100 mg/kg EGB 761 was found to reduce tinnitus behaviour compared with vehicle. It should be noted, however, that these are very high doses and it is unlikely that they could be used in humans without adverse side-effects (even 25 mg/kg/day for a 70 kg adult corresponds to 1750 mg/day, which is more than five times the average daily dose used in humans).

Clearly, the investigation of the effects of G. biloba extracts on tinnitus has suffered from a lack of systematic clinical trials employing double-blind and placebo-controlled designs. While some clinical trials have yielded positive results (e.g. Meyer, 1986a, 1986b; Morgenstern and Biermann, 1997; Juretzek, 1998), these studies are few and have been limited either by design flaws (e.g. Meyer, 1986a, 1986b), the small size of the significant effects (e.g. Morgenstern and Biermann, 1997), or else the results have not been published in peer-reviewed journals (Juretzek, 1998). By contrast, the two most systematic clinical trials, which are double-blind and placebo-controlled, and are published in peer-reviewed journals, have yielded negative results.

**Other herbal medicines**

Very little has been published on the use of other herbal medicines to treat tinnitus. Yang (1989) has reported a blind trial in which patients with tinnitus were given either ‘Western medicines’ (i.e. diazepam, nicotinic acid, bromides, vitamin B, ATP, carbamazepine or lidocaine) and traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) or the Western medicines alone. TCM consisted of Rhizoma Gastrodiae, Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis, Poria cocos, Flos Chrysanthemi, Akebia Quinata, Radix Polygoni Multiflori, Fructus Liquidambris, Radix Rehmanniae, Rhizoma Alismatis, Radix Scrophulariae, Fructus Lycii, Radix Glycyrrhizae, Semen Plantaginis and Semen Vaccariae. Relief from tinnitus was observed in 84.4% of those receiving Western medicine and TCM and 55% of those receiving Western medicine only. Unfortunately, given the mixture of drug and herbal remedies the patients received, it is difficult to attribute an improvement in tinnitus to any particular agent, and in any case, there was no placebo control group.

It is important to recognise that in TCM, tinnitus is believed to be caused by changes in the relationship between the ear and the internal organs, such as the kidney, the liver, the gall bladder, the spleen and the stomach. TCM aims to treat tinnitus by achieving a balance of the yin and yang, external and internal, hot and cold, weak and strong. From the viewpoint of TCM, tinnitus is only one of the symptoms the patient presents with and the doctor needs to observe a series of symptoms using inspection, by listening and smelling, inquiring and palpation, to make the right diagnosis. For example, it is believed that normal kidney function will be reflected by normal hearing and a kidney dysfunction (Shen kui) will result in hearing loss or tinnitus. If the tinnitus is caused by kidney dysfunction, the patient tends also to experience vertigo and dizziness, a sore back, the tongue has a red look with no ‘fur’ or little fur and there is a weak pulse. There are many different types of tinnitus in TCM and most recently, tinnitus has been divided into five types at the Third Chinese Zhong Xi Yi Je He Otolaryngology Society Annual Meeting in 2002: Wai Gan Fen Re Xing (related to respiratory infection), Gan Hou Shang Rao Xing (related to abnormal liver function), Tan Re Yu Jie Xing (related to the ‘hot’ state in TCM), Shen Jing Kui Xu Xing (related to kidney dysfunction) and Pi Qi Xu Ruo Xing (related to abnormal spleen function).

Japanese herbal medicines have also been used to treat tinnitus. Okamoto et al. (2005) used Yoku-kan-san (TJ-54) to successfully treat tinnitus associated with undifferentiated somatoform disorder, presenting with headache and insomnia. Unfortunately, this was only a case report and therefore no controls were employed.
Importance of animal models for testing herbal remedies

A major problem for the development of new drug treatments for tinnitus is the paucity of animal models of the disorder. It is difficult to determine whether an animal such as a rat or a mouse is actually experiencing tinnitus, and many studies of the neurophysiological and neurochemical mechanisms of tinnitus simply assume that an animal has tinnitus following cochlear lesions produced by intense sound, surgery or chemical toxicity. This is not a valid assumption given that similar conditions in humans do not necessarily produce tinnitus.

To overcome this problem, a number of researchers have developed animal models of tinnitus in which rats are trained to respond differentially in a conditioned avoidance task depending upon whether they hear certain frequencies of background noise (Simpson and Davies, 1999; Bauer, 2003; Ruttiger et al., 2003). For example, rats trained to make a particular response in the presence of a 10-kHz background noise, will continue to make the trained response, in the absence of the background noise, if tinnitus has been induced by the administration of a drug such as salicylate. In humans, salicylates produce tinnitus of approximately 10 kHz (Eggermont and Roberts, 2004), and rats treated with salicylates respond in behavioural tasks as if they hear a continuous background noise at around 10 kHz (Bauer, 2003; Ruttiger et al., 2003). Using this type of conditioned-behavioural model, it is possible to screen new drugs for their potential application to the treatment of tinnitus.

Unfortunately, at present, such animal models have not been used extensively for the investigation of the neural mechanisms of tinnitus or for potential drug treatments. In addition to more well-controlled clinical trials, it is vital that herbal medicines be tested in realistic animal models of tinnitus.

Conclusions

It is clear from the studies reviewed here that the published literature on herbal medicines and tinnitus is small and in most cases focused on *G. biloba* extracts, where some evidence for efficacy has been found. Nevertheless, even the research on *G. biloba* and tinnitus lacks a substantial number of systematic, well-controlled clinical trials, in which double-blind protocols have been used. Unfortunately, most of the trials that have been well designed have failed to demonstrate efficacy for *G. biloba* in the treatment of tinnitus.

The only reasonable conclusion that can be reached at present is that the available data indicate that conventional medications offer more therapeutic benefit for patients with tinnitus than herbal alternatives. Given that clinical trials are expensive to run and are usually not undertaken unless there is substantial preclinical evidence to suggest that they may establish the efficacy of a new drug, it is probably very important that researchers and clinicians, who are interested in potential herbal treatments for tinnitus, use conditioned-behavioural models of tinnitus in animals to screen herbal agents. This would provide a clear path for the development of herbal remedies to treat tinnitus before initiating clinical trials.

References


Drew S, Davies E (2001). Effectiveness of *Ginkgo biloba* in


Simpson J, Davies WE (1999). Recent advances in the


Turmeric is the rhizome of *Curcuma longa* L. which has been widely used for centuries in traditional medicines for treatment of several diseases. It is also popular as a yellow colouring agent, spice and food preservative in India, China and South East Asia, especially Thailand. Its medicinal properties have been attributed mainly to the volatile oil and yellow pigment curcuminoids, including curcumin, demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin.

Curcumin, the main bioactive component of turmeric, has a wide spectrum of biological actions including antioxidant, anticarcinogenic, anti-inflammatory, antmutagenic, antimicrobial and hypocholesteremic activities. In cosmetics, turmeric powder and its extract are popularly used in anti-ageing products. Turmeric is being used in primary healthcare in many countries because of its several medicinal uses, ease of cultivation, cheapness and lack of toxicity. Turmeric varies in quality and quantity of active components, so it is important to establish standardisations of turmeric and its extract.

Ethnomedical uses, bioactivities, active components, analytical methods and standards for the active components in the standardised ethanolic turmeric extracts are discussed in this chapter.

Turmeric is an example of a traditional herb that is now popularly used as a dietary supplement, and also for more direct medical effects such as antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anticarcinogenic, hypotensive and hypocholesteremic.
In Thailand, the government has set up a national plan for development of medicinal plants to build up self-reliance on drug supplies. This chapter reviews chemical constituents and biological activities of turmeric, as an example of traditional herbs for healthcare.

Botanical origin and production of turmeric

Botanical origin and distribution

Turmeric *Curcuma longa* L. belongs to the Zingiberaceae (synonyms are *Curcuma domestica* Val., *C. rotunda* L., *C. xanthorrhiza* Naves and *Amomum curcuma* Jacq). Its common vernacular names are curcuma, common turmeric, yellow root, Indian saffron and Khamin chan. Turmeric is native to southern Asia and is widespread as a domestic spice plant throughout the tropics, including Africa (World Health Organization, 1999). In Thailand, turmeric is cultivated throughout the country, mostly in the south (ASEAN Countries, 1993) although India dominates the international trade producing 400,000 tonnes annually from 130,000 hectares (De Padua et al., 1994). The part of this plant used is the dried, bright orange to yellow rhizome, containing volatile oil and yellow pigments, the curcuminoids.

Ethnomedical uses

Turmeric has long been used as a yellow food colouring, spice and is one of the principal ingredients in curry powder (Tyler, 1994). It is extensively used in Ayurveda, Unani and Siddha medicines as a home remedy for various diseases (Ammon and Wahl, 1991; Eigner and Scholz, 1999) and, in north India, in the mountains, is used to protect the skin against sunburn (Scartezzini and Speroni, 2000).

In India, turmeric is taken orally for poor digestion, for fevers, skin conditions, vomiting in pregnancy and liver disorders (Chopra et al., 1982). Externally, it is used for conjunctivitis, skin infection, cancer, sprains, arthritis, haemorrhoids and eczema (Nadkarni and Nadkarni, 1976; Chopra et al., 1982). Indian women apply turmeric to the skin to reduce hair growth (Goh and Ng, 1987).

In China, different uses are attributed to the rhizome and tuber. It is normally used for diseases associated with abdominal pains (Araujo and Leon, 2001). Turmeric rhizome is said to be a blood and Qi (vital energy) stimulant with analgesic properties. It is used to treat chest and abdominal pain and distension, jaundice, frozen shoulder and amenorrhoea caused by blood stasis, and postpartum abdominal pain owing to stasis. It is also used for wounds and injuries. The tuber has similar properties but is used in hot conditions as it is more cooling and has been used to treat viral hepatitis (Chang and But, 1987).

In Thailand, turmeric has been used in traditional recipes for a long time as follows (Farnsworth and Bunyapraphatsara, 1992).

- **Treatment of ringworm and mosquito bite**: for ringworm, mix powdered turmeric with rainwater and apply on the infected area two times daily. For treatment of mosquito bite, scrape the turmeric rhizome and rub on the affected area, it will relieve itching and inflammation; or mix powdered turmeric with water and apply frequently on the area.
- **Carminative and for treatment of peptic ulcers**: pills are made by mixing powdered turmeric with honey and administered orally three times a day.
- **Antidiarrhoea and antidysentery**: bruise the rhizomes into small pieces and then add warm water in a ratio of 1:1. Take two teaspoonfuls of this mixture three to four times a day. Salt may be added to improve the taste. Alternatively, roast the rhizome, then bruise into small pieces, add lime water, then squeeze the mixture and take one to two cups of the liquid.
- **Treatment of wounds**: boil powdered turmeric with coconut oil or lard until yellow oil is obtained. Apply the oil on the wounds, or bruise turmeric rhizome and squeeze the juice out for treatment of wounds, or mix turmeric with a few millilitres of lime water and alum or potassium nitrate, and then apply on the wounds. This recipe may also be used for inflammations.
- **Use as cosmetic**: for use as a cosmetic, Thai women in rural areas apply turmeric powder to their faces and body skin to make them a beautiful gold colour. Turmeric powder mixed with honey and ripe tamarind pulp is used for
scrubbing face and body skin for whitening and anti-ageing effects.

**Active constituents and nutritative composition**

The rhizome usually contains 4–6% of a pale yellow to orange-yellow volatile oil, composed mainly of turmerone (58%), ar-turmerone, zingiberene (25%), cineole, borneol (Kelkar and Sanjiva, 1933; Institute of Materia Medica, 1982), and yellow colouring matter including curcumin (1.8–5.4%), demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin (Figure 23.1) (Institute of Materia Medica, 1982). Curcumin has a melting point of 176–177°C, forms a reddish-brown salt with alkali and is soluble in ethanol, alkali, ketone, acetic acid and chloroform.

Medicinal properties of turmeric are due to the volatile oil as a carminative and antifungal agent, while the yellow curcuminoids have potent antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties. In Thailand, turmeric is mainly used in forms of capsule/tablet of turmeric powder for carminative and antiflatulent medicines. The crude ethanolic extract containing curcuminoids and volatile oil is used in drug and cosmetic preparations. Chemical components isolated from turmeric are summarised in Table 23.1.

**Figure 23.1** Some constituents in turmeric rhizome.

---

### Variation of active constituents

Turmeric derived from different sources shows variation in the major constituents. The geographical, climate, aged and harvesting conditions all have an effect on curcuminoid and volatile oil content.

Our study on the variation of bioactive components in the powder of *C. longa* rhizomes from 13 locations in Thailand showed that turmeric rhizomes from the south, where the humidity is high, with year-round rain and no extremes of temperature, contained the highest content of curcuminoids (8.99% dry weight). The lowest content of curcuminoids (5.60% dry weight) is found in the samples from the central part of Thailand where the climate is warm and dry. In contrast, the southern samples display a low content of volatile oil (7% v/w of dried powder), while northern and northeastern samples contain a high content of volatile oil (8.20% and 8.00% v/w of dried powder, respectively) (Pothitirat and Gritsanapan, 2006).

### Extraction and isolation of curcuminoids from turmeric

Several methods of extraction and isolation of curcuminoids from *C. longa* rhizome have been developed. Usually, separation of curcuminoids has
### Table 23.1 Chemical constituents in turmeric rhizome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Curcuminoids</td>
<td>Su et al., 1982; Uehara et al., 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcumin</td>
<td>Masuda et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5’-Methoxycurcumin</td>
<td>Jentzsch et al., 1970; Toda et al., 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisdemethoxycurcumin</td>
<td>Jentzsch et al., 1970; Toda et al., 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demethoxycurcumin</td>
<td>Sanagi et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono-demethoxycurcumin</td>
<td>Kiuchi et al., 1993</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclocurcumin</td>
<td>Park and Boo, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-Hydroxy-cinnamoyl-methane</td>
<td>Park and Boo, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-Hydroxy-feruloyl-methane</td>
<td>Park and Boo, 1991</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bis-(4-Hydroxy-cinnamoyl)-methane</td>
<td>Toda et al., 1985; Rao et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di-feruloyl methane</td>
<td>Matthes et al., 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di-p-coumaroyl methane</td>
<td>Matthes et al., 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feruloyl-p-coumaroyl methane</td>
<td>Punyaratunj et al., 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p-Hydroxy-cinnamoyl-methane</td>
<td>Kiso et al., 1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p-Coumaroylmethane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential oil</td>
<td>Su et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α- and β-atlantone</td>
<td>Su et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisabolene, β-bisabolene</td>
<td>Ohshiro et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisacumol</td>
<td>Ohshiro et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisacurone</td>
<td>Su et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borneol, iso-borneol</td>
<td>Moon et al., 1976</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campesterol</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camphene</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caryophyllene</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,8-Cineol, cineol</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcumene, α-curcumene</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcumeneol</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcumenone</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curdione, dehydro-curdione</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curlone</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curzerenone</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p-Cymene</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eugenol</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germacron-13-al</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procurcumadiol</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabinene</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-Sesquiphellandrene</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terpinene</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terpineol</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmerin</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-Turmerin</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-Turmerone</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar-Turmerone</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curmerone</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar-(+)-s-turmerone</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeronal A</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmeronal B</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zedoarondiol</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zingiberene</td>
<td>Chen et al., 1983; Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued overleaf)
been achieved by thin-layer chromatography (TLC) and column chromatography (CC). The stationary phase most used is silica gel. The different solvent systems are shown in Table 23.2.

Ramussen et al. (2000) reported the simple and efficient separation of curcuminoids using dihydrogen phosphate impregnated silica gel TLC plates. Janaki and Bose (1967) reported the isolation of curcuminoids involving prior extraction of rhizomes with hexane to remove much of the volatile and fatty components and then extract with benzene. The concentrate extract readily crystallised on cooling and was further purified by crystallisation from ethanol to yield orange-yellow needles, but the yield of curcuminoids was poor (1.1%). Peter-Almeida et al. (2005) reported the first crystallisation of the curcuminoid pigment crystals containing 56.9% of curcumin and other curcuminoid pigments. Successive crystallisations improved the purity of curcumin but there was a loss in yield. In the third successive crystallisation, 92% pure curcumin was obtained with no bisdemethoxycurcumin detected. Krishnamurthy et al. (1976) reported the hot and cold percolation extraction methods with good yields with a high recovery of curcumin.

The best processing conditions to maximise the yield of essential oil and curcuminoids have been reported (Manzan et al., 2003). Autoclave pressure and distillation time were the variables studied for the steam distillation process. The highest yields of essential oil (0.46%) and curcuminoids (0.16%) are obtained at a pressure of $1.0 \times 10^5$ Pa and a time of 2 h. On the other hand, with extraction by volatile solvents, the best yield of essential oil (5.49%) is obtained when using 0.175, 0.124, 0.088 mm turmeric powder particles at 40ºC, for 6 h of extraction.

In recent years, supercritical fluid extraction has gained commercial importance as an efficient method of extraction for natural products. It has been also investigated for the extraction of essential oils and curcuminoids from C. longa (Marsin et al., 1993; Hisashige et al., 1994). Baumann et al. (2000) claimed efficient extraction of curcuminoids using supercritical CO$_2$ modified by 10% ethanol. Although supercritical fluid extraction is known to be a clean technology giving acceptable yields and purity, its major disadvantage lies in its high operating pressures. The scale-up problems could also be severe when the extraction is to be done at large scales.

### Table 23.1 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polysaccharide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ukonan A</td>
<td>Tomoda et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ukonan B</td>
<td>Tomoda et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ukonan C</td>
<td>Tomoda et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ukonan D</td>
<td>Tomoda et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peptide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turmerin</td>
<td>Srinivas et al., 1992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha$-Turmerin</td>
<td>Ohshiro et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatty acid and sterol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringic acid</td>
<td>Merh et al., 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol</td>
<td>Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\beta$-Sitosterol</td>
<td>Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stigmasterol</td>
<td>Fang et al., 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protocatechuic acid</td>
<td>Merh et al., 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-Coumaric acid</td>
<td>Merh et al., 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p-Coumaric acid</td>
<td>Schultz and Herrmann, 1980</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Hydroxy-methyl anthraquinone</td>
<td>Ogbeide et al., 1985</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

The best processing conditions to maximise the yield of essential oil and curcuminoids have been reported (Manzan et al., 2003). Autoclave pressure and distillation time were the variables studied for the steam distillation process. The highest yields of essential oil (0.46%) and curcuminoids (0.16%) are obtained at a pressure of $1.0 \times 10^5$ Pa and a time of 2 h. On the other hand, with extraction by volatile solvents, the best yield of essential oil (5.49%) is obtained when using 0.175, 0.124, 0.088 mm turmeric powder particles at 40ºC, for 6 h of extraction.

In recent years, supercritical fluid extraction has gained commercial importance as an efficient method of extraction for natural products. It has been also investigated for the extraction of essential oils and curcuminoids from C. longa (Marsin et al., 1993; Hisashige et al., 1994). Baumann et al. (2000) claimed efficient extraction of curcuminoids using supercritical CO$_2$ modified by 10% ethanol. Although supercritical fluid extraction is known to be a clean technology giving acceptable yields and purity, its major disadvantage lies in its high operating pressures. The scale-up problems could also be severe when the extraction is to be done at large scales.
Dandekar and Gaikar (2002) reported a microwave-assisted extraction (MAE) technique for selective and rapid extraction of curcuminoids. Turmeric powder irradiated for 2 and 4 min with microwaves showed marginally higher extraction of curcuminoids in 60 min by acetone.

High-speed countercurrent chromatography preparation with or without pH-zoning was used to separate multigram quantities of curcumin and other curcuminoids from turmeric powder (Patel et al., 2000).

Braga et al. (2003) compared yield, composition, and antioxidant activity of turmeric extracts obtained using various techniques such as hydrodistillation, low-pressure solvent extraction, Soxhlet extraction, and supercritical extraction using carbon dioxide and co-solvents. The result showed that the largest yield (27%) was obtained from the Soxhlet extraction using ethanol while the lowest yield was found in the hydrodistillation process (2.1%). For the supercritical extraction, the best co-solvent was a mixture of ethanol and isopropyl alcohol. The maximum amount of curcuminoids (8.43%) was obtained using Soxhlet extraction (ethanol/isopropyl alcohol). The extracts obtained by Soxhlet extraction and low-pressure extraction exhibited the strongest antioxidant activities.
From our studies (Pothitirat and Gritsanapan, 2004), we compared three extraction methods; maceration, percolation and Soxhlet extraction, using 95% ethanol as a solvent for extraction of the ethanolic extract. It was shown that percolation is the recommended method for the highest content of total curcuminoids (59.09 ± 11.73% of the crude extract), a moderate time consumption, and low cost.

**Quantitative analysis of curcuminoids in turmeric**

A variety of methods for quantification of curcuminoids have been reported. Most of them are spectrophotometric methods (The Medicine Commission, 1973; ASTA Method, 1985). Although ultraviolet (UV) spectrophotometry is a rapid and economical method, it is not possible to quantify the individual curcuminoids and it lacks precision because of interference by other pigments present in the plant.

Recently, there have been many methods to determine the content of individual curcuminoids. Karasz et al. (1973), Tonnesen and Karlsen (1986) and Navas and Ramos (1992) reported a direct fluorimetric method for analysis of curcumin in food products. Hiserodt et al. (1996) reported LC-MS and GC-MS methods for the separation of curcuminoids. These involve an octadecyl stationary phase using a mobile phase consisting of ammonium acetate with 5% acetic acid and acetonitrile. The presence of inorganic salts may contaminate the mass spectrometer ion source. Sun et al. (2002) reported the capillary electrophoresis with amperometric determination of curcumin using a running buffer composed of 15 mmol/L phosphate buffer (pH 9.7), separation voltage at 16 kV and detection at 1.2 V. However, this method does not describe the separation and identification of demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin.

Many HPLC methods have been reported for quantification (Tonnesen and Karlsen, 1983; Smith and Witowska, 1984; Russell, 1988). Guddadarangavanahally et al. (2002) reported a HPLC method for separation and quantification of curcumin, demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin using a tertiary mobile phase comprising methanol; 2% acetic acid and acetonitrile. The advantage of HPLC is that individual curcuminoids could be estimated from the varieties of turmeric rhizomes. HPTLC and TLC-densitometric methods have been developed for the simultaneous quantitation of three curcuminoid components in turmeric. The results indicated that the accuracy and precision of these methods are reliable. The methods were found to be suitable for rapid analysis and can be performed without any special sample pretreatment (Tewtrakul et al., 1992; Gupta et al., 1999; Pothitirat and Gritsanapan, 2005).

Pothitirat (2006) compared the analysis methods for total curcuminoids in 95% ethanolic extracts of C. longa collected from ten locations in Thailand using a UV spectrophotometer, TLC-densitometer, and HPLC. The results are shown in Table 23.3.

UV spectrophotometry is simple, fast and convenient, but it cannot determine individual curcuminoid content, but is used for analysis of total curcuminoid content in the *Thai Herbal Pharmacopoeia* (THP, 1995) and *The Standard of ASEAN Herbal Medicine* (ASEAN countries, 1993). TLC-densitometric method is also suitable for screening of the contents of each curcuminoid and total curcuminoids in *C. longa*. This method is fast and economical because one TLC plate (20 × 10 cm) can determine 15–18 samples in the same period. However, accuracy of this method is less than HPLC. HPLC gives the maximum accuracy although it consumes more time and solvents and the content of each curcuminoid and of total curcuminoids can be determined.

**Standardisation of C. longa raw material and its ethanolic extract**

Standardisation of dried rhizomes of *C. longa* has been recommended in WHO monograph, *The Thai Herbal Pharmacopoeia* and *The Standard of ASEAN Herbal Medicine* as summarised in Table 23.4. Chemical identification test of turmeric can be done by extracting 10 mg of powdered drug by shaking with 2 mL of acetic anhydride and a few drops of sulphuric acid, the solution giving a blood-red colour under UV 366 nm (ASEAN countries, 1993).

Standardisation of the ethanolic turmeric extract was reported by Pothitirat (2006) as shown in Table 23.5.
Table 23.3 Total curcuminoid contents in ethanolic turmeric extract of *C. longa* rhizomes collected from different locations in Thailand determined by UV-spectrophotometry, TLC-densitometry and HPLC (Pothitirat, 2006)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>UV Content</th>
<th>Average</th>
<th>TLC Content</th>
<th>Average</th>
<th>HPLC Content</th>
<th>Average</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>North</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>22.78±0.09</td>
<td>22.88±0.16</td>
<td>37.75±1.11</td>
<td>37.81±1.60</td>
<td>21.76±0.48</td>
<td>21.89±0.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>22.98±0.16</td>
<td></td>
<td>37.86±1.34</td>
<td></td>
<td>22.02±0.35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northeast</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24.15±0.09</td>
<td>22.34±1.99</td>
<td>39.45±2.02</td>
<td>35.33±4.70</td>
<td>24.49±0.79</td>
<td>20.84±4.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>20.53±0.12</td>
<td></td>
<td>31.22±0.60</td>
<td></td>
<td>17.19±0.80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>14.14±0.87</td>
<td>20.30±0.27</td>
<td>32.61±2.06</td>
<td>33.71±2.28</td>
<td>16.93±0.63</td>
<td>18.82±1.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>21.67±0.15</td>
<td></td>
<td>36.60±2.30</td>
<td></td>
<td>20.99±2.15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>20.11±0.26</td>
<td></td>
<td>32.81±1.38</td>
<td></td>
<td>17.97±0.88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>20.49±0.11</td>
<td></td>
<td>32.80±0.49</td>
<td></td>
<td>19.37±1.20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>23.62±0.22</td>
<td>25.19±1.73</td>
<td>36.31±1.11</td>
<td>40.20±4.32</td>
<td>20.38±1.82</td>
<td>24.87±5.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>26.76±0.17</td>
<td></td>
<td>44.08±0.40</td>
<td></td>
<td>29.37±0.90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td></td>
<td>21.72±3.24</td>
<td></td>
<td>35.95±3.93</td>
<td></td>
<td>20.90±3.83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 23.4 Specification of dried rhizome of *C. longa* recommended by WHO, Standard of ASEAN Herbal Medicine and Thai Herbal Pharmacopoeia (THP)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>WHO</th>
<th>ASEAN Herbal Medicine</th>
<th>THP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Volatile oil</td>
<td>&gt; 4 %v/w</td>
<td>&gt; 6 %v/w</td>
<td>&gt; 6 %v/w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total curcuminoids</td>
<td>&gt; 3 %w/w</td>
<td>&gt; 5 %w/w</td>
<td>&gt; 5 %w/w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign organic matter</td>
<td>&lt; 3 %w/w</td>
<td>&lt; 5 %w/w</td>
<td>&lt; 5 %w/w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ash content</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total ash</td>
<td>&lt; 8 %w/w</td>
<td>same as WHO</td>
<td>same as WHO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acid-insoluble ash</td>
<td>&lt; 1 %w/w</td>
<td>same as WHO</td>
<td>same as WHO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extractives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water-soluble extractives</td>
<td>&gt; 9 %w/w</td>
<td>same as WHO</td>
<td>same as WHO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol-soluble extractives</td>
<td>&gt; 10 %w/w</td>
<td>same as WHO</td>
<td>same as WHO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moisture content</td>
<td>&lt; 10 %v/w</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pesticide residues</td>
<td>&lt; 0.05 mg/kg</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy metals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>&lt; 10 mg/kg</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmiun</td>
<td>&lt; 0.3 mg/kg</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microbial contamination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation of decoction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmonella spp.</td>
<td>negative</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerobic bacteria</td>
<td>&lt; 10^7/g</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungi</td>
<td>&lt; 10^7/g</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. coli</td>
<td>&lt; 10^7/g</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation for internal use</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerobic bacteria</td>
<td>&lt; 10^7/g or mL</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fungi</td>
<td>&lt; 10^7/g or mL</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterobacteria and certain Gram-negative bacteria</td>
<td>&lt; 10^7/g or mL</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. coli</td>
<td>0/g or mL</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 23.5 Specifications of ethanolic turmeric extract of C. longa rhizome (Pothitirat, 2006)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Orange-brown/characteristic/semi solid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extract ratio</td>
<td>Crude drug: 95 % ethanol extract 3–5:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identification</th>
<th>Blood-red colour, of the solution of the extract in acetic anhydride, treated with concentrated sulphuric acid, detected under UV366</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>By colour test</td>
<td>Stationary phase: Silica gel 60 F 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By TLC</td>
<td>Mobile phase: chloroform:benzene:methanol (80:15:5) Detector: UV366 (hRf: Curcumin = 69; Demethoxycurcumin = 51; Bisdemethoxycurcumin = 39)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standardisation</th>
<th>Assay method: UV-vis spectrophotometer (λ. max= 420 nm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total curcuminoids &gt;13 % w/w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assay method: HPLC (λ. max = 425 nm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Curcumin &gt; 8 % w/w; total curcuminoids &gt;16 % w/w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assay method: TLC densitometer (λ. max = 420 nm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Curcumin &gt;11 % w/w; total curcuminoids &gt;30 % w/w</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Loss on drying                       | Not more than 10% w/w                                                                                                           |

| Solubility                           | Insoluble in water, soluble in 95% ethanol                                                                                      |

| Heavy metals                         | Cd <3.00 ppm; Pb <0.50 ppm; As <0.05 ppm                                                                                       |

| Pesticides                           | Not detected                                                                                                                   |
|                                      | Not detected                                                                                                                   |

| Microbial limits                     | <5 × 10^5 cfu/g                                                                                                                |
|                                      | <5 × 10^3 cfu/g                                                                                                                |
|                                      | None                                                                                                                             |
|                                      | None                                                                                                                             |
|                                      | None                                                                                                                             |
|                                      | None                                                                                                                             |
|                                      | None                                                                                                                             |
|                                      | None                                                                                                                             |

**Biological activities and pharmacological actions**

For the last few decades, extensive work has been done to establish the biological activities and pharmacological actions of turmeric and its extracts. Biological activities of curcuminoids and volatile oil from turmeric have been studied both in vitro and in vivo. Curcumin has been shown to have a wide spectrum of biological actions including anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, anticarcinogenic, antimutagenic, anticoagulant, antifertility, antidiabetic, antifungal, antiprotzoal, antiviral, antifibrotic, antivenom, antiulcer, hypotensive and hypocholesterolaemic activities (Chattopadhyay et al., 2004).

**Anti-inflammatory activity**

Curcumin is effective against carrageenin-induced oedema in rats (Ghatak and Basu, 1972; Srihari
et al., 1982; Srivastava and Srimal, 1985; Brouet and Ohshima, 1995) and mice (Srimal and Dhawan, 1985) and was reported to be an anti-inflammatory agent with ED$_{50}$ 2.10 µg/kg in rat (Ghatak and Busa, 1972), and LD$_{50}$ 2 g/kg in mice (Srimal and Dhawan, 1973). It can inhibit 12-lipoxygenase and phospholipase D (Satoskar et al., 1986; Yamamura et al., 1997).Demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin can inhibit oedema induced by TPA on mouse ears (Masuda et al., 1993). From our study (Pitakwongsaporn, 2000), we found that curcuminoids 0.026% w/w in creams containing 6% and 20% w/w of turmeric volatile oil can protect skin irritation because of anti-inflammatory activity of curcuminoids. The volatile oil (Chandra and Gupta, 1972) and the petroleum ether, alcohol and water extracts of C. longa showed anti-inflammatory effects (Yegnanarayan et al., 1976). The anti-inflammatory action of curcumin is mediated through down-regulation of cyclo-oxygenase-2 and inducible nitric oxide synthetase (Surb et al., 2001). Curcumin also enhances wound healing in diabetic rats and mice (Sidhu et al., 1999) and in H$_2$O$_2$-induced damage in human keratinocytes and fibroblasts (Phan et al., 2001).

### Antibacterial and antifungal activities

Volatile oil from C. longa rhizome inhibits bacteria such as Escherichia coli, Staphylococcus aureus and Pseudomonas aeruginosa (Lyengar et al., 1994) and fungi such as Trichoderma viride, Aspergillus flavus, Microsporum gypseum and Trichophyton mentagophytes (Banerjee and Nigam, 1978). The ethanolic extract of C. longa inhibits Clostridium botulinum (minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) 500 µg/mL), Bacillus subtilis, Staph. aureus, Salmonella typhi, E. coli, Agrobacterium tumefaciens, and Mycobacterium tuberculosis at LD$_{50}$ 500 µg/mL. Curcumin was reported to inhibit growth of Staph. aureus (Todd et al., 1949) and Helicobacter pylori in vitro at MIC 6.25–50 µg/mL (Mahady et al., 2002). Turmeric oil (1 : 5000) can inhibit Staph. albus and Staph. aureus (Chopra et al., 1941). Caichompoo et al. (2001) reported that turmeric oil exhibits a good inhibiting activity against dermatophytes and shows significantly better inhibition against Cryptococcus than Candida, but for bacteria, the oil shows unsatisfactory activity except against Strepctococcus pyogenes. MICs of freshly distilled and 18 months-aged oils were nearly the same at 7.8 and 7.2 µg/mL respectively.

Crude ethanol extract can inhibit fungi, yeasts and bacteria but the activity is less than turmeric oil. Curcumin, demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin show low activities against all organisms (Caichompoo, 1999). Furthermore, our studies demonstrate antidermatophytic effects for various concentrations, i.e. 3–15% w/w of turmeric oil, in cream preparations. These results reveal that turmeric oil and the crude ethanolic turmeric extract could be developed as medicinal and cosmetic products for skin diseases (Pitakwongsaporn, 2000).

### Antipeptic ulcer

Turmeric powder was reported to decrease gastric juice in rabbits (Muderji et al., 1981). Turmeric powder in capsule dosage form (250 mg/capsule), hexane extract and ar-turmerone show activity against HCl-induced peptic ulcer (Nutakul, 1994; Permpipat et al., 1996). It has also been studied for antiulcer activity of curcumin in an acute ulcer model in rats by preventing glutathione depletion, lipid peroxidation and protein oxidation. Both oral and intraperitoneal administrations of curcumin blocked gastric ulceration in a dose-dependent manner. It accelerated the healing process and protected gastric ulcer through attenuation of MMP-9 activity and amelioration of MMP-2 activity (Swarnakar et al., 2005). It is suggested that curcumin treatment results in a faster closure of wounds, better regulation of granulation tissue formation and induction of growth factors and acts at different levels to enhance wound repair (Maheshwari et al., 2006).

Another experiment reported that healing rates were increased by 23.3% and 24.2% in rabbits and rats, respectively (Gujral et al., 1953). It was found that turmeric increases the mucin content of the gastric juice, suggesting that the therapeutic effect of turmeric for gastric disorders may possibly be due to its mucous stimulatory effect (Muderji et al., 1981). Curcumin was reported to be effective in preventing and ameliorating gastric lesions experimentally.
induced by aspirin and phenylbutazone. Curcumin increases gastric mucin, therefore its activity on gastric ulcers is likely to come from the stimulation of mucin production (Sinha et al., 1975).

**Anticancer activity**

Recent studies have shown that curcumin acts as a potent anticarcinogenic compound and has a dose-dependent chemopreventive effect in several animal tumour bioassay systems, including colon, duodenal, stomach, oesophageal and oral carcinogenesis. It has been shown to reduce tumour promotion induced by phorbol ester (Huang et al., 1988) on mouse skin, on carcinogen-induced tumorigenesis in the forestomach (Huang et al., 1994). The molecular basis of anticarcinogenic and chemopreventive effects of curcumin is attributed to its effect on several targets including transcription factors, growth regulators, adhesion molecules, apoptotic genes, angiogenesis regulators and cellular signalling molecules (Aggarwal et al., 2003). Among various mechanisms, induction of apoptosis plays an important role in its anticarcinogenic effect (Chen and Huang, 1998). Curcumin, demethoxycurcumin and bis-demethoxycurcumin were compared for their cytotoxic, tumour-reducing and antioxidant activities. It was found that bis-demethoxycurcumin is a more effective cytotoxic agent and was able to significantly inhibit Ehrlich ascites tumour in mice (Ruby et al., 1995). Curcumin administration during both the initiation and post-initiation periods significantly inhibits colon tumorigenesis (Kawamori et al., 1999).

**Antioxidant activity**

Curcumin exhibits strong antioxidant activity, comparable with vitamins C and E (Toda et al., 1985). It was shown to be a potent scavenger of a variety of reactive oxygen species including superoxide anion radicals, hydroxyl radicals (Reddy and Aggarwal, 1994) and nitrogen dioxide radicals (Unnirishnan and Rao, 1995; Sreejayan and Rao, 1997). Curcumin was also shown to inhibit lipid peroxidation in different animal models (Reddy and Lokesh, 1992; Sreejayan and Rao, 1994). Studies in our laboratory have shown that the ethanolic extract, crude curcuminoids, curcumin and demethoxycurcumin show high free-radical scavenging activity when tested by the DPPH scavenging assay. Curcumin, which is a major component in the extract, plays an important role as a free-radical scavenger of *C. longa* with EC$_{50}$ of 6.38 ± 0.18 µg/mL, while demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin promote the activity with EC$_{50}$ of 10.50 ± 0.42 and 149.43 ± 0.03 µg/mL, respectively (Pothitirat, 2006).

It is suggested that dietary supplementation with curcumin may be beneficial in neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer’s disease (Calabrese et al., 2003; Yang et al., 2005). In a focal cerebral ischaemia model of rats, curcumin showed significant neuroprotective effect through inhibition of lipid peroxidation, increase in endogenous antioxidant defence enzymes and reduction in peroxynitrite formation (Thiyagarajan and Sharma, 2004). Curcumin promotes beneficial effects and appears to have a significant potential for treatment of various diseases which are a result of oxidative stress. These protective effects of curcumin are attributed mainly to its antioxidant properties and it could be further developed as a pharmaceutical (Maheshwari et al., 2006).

**Antimutagenic activity**

Curcumin promotes antimutagenic effect. At 100 and 200 mg/kg body weight doses, curcumin has been shown to reduce the number of aberrant cells in cyclophosphamide-induced chromosomal aberration in Wistar rats (Shukla et al., 2002). Turmeric also prevents mutation in urethane models (el Hamss et al., 1999).

**Antifertility activity**

Aqueous and petroleum ether extracts of turmeric show antifertility effect in rats when fed orally (Garg, 1974). Curcumin inhibits 5α-reductase, which converts testosterone to 5α-dihydrotestosterone, thereby inhibiting the growth of flank organs in hamster (Liao et al., 2001). Also, curcumin can inhibit human sperm motility and has the potential
to develop as a novel intravaginal contraceptive (Rithaporn et al., 2003).

**Antidiabetic activity**

Curcumin was reported to prevent galactose-induced cataract formation at very low dose (Suryanarayana et al., 2003). Curcumin and turmeric decrease blood sugar level in alloxan-induced diabetes in rat (Arun and Nalini, 2002). Also, it decreases advanced glycation and product-induced complications in diabetes mellitus (Sajithlal et al., 1998).

**Toxicity**

From our study on acute toxicity in mice, the ethanolic extract and crude curcuminoid extract from *C. longa* rhizomes showed no sign of toxicity (LD$_{50}$ 5 g/kg body weight) and no abnormal sign was observed upon gross examination of visceral organs. There was also no difference in average body weight of treated and controlled animals (Pothitirat, 2006). In Wistar rats, guinea pigs and monkeys, fed with turmeric at much higher doses (2.5 g/kg body weight) than normally consumed by human, no changes were observed in the appearance, kidney, liver and heart weights (Holder et al., 1978). For safety evaluation, the average intake of turmeric by Asians (0.5–1.5 g/person/day) produces no toxic symptoms (Eigner and Scholz, 1999). Human clinical trials also indicate that curcumin has no toxicity when administered at doses of 1–10 g/day (Aggarwal et al., 2003; Chainani-Wu, 2003).

**Pharmacokinetic studies on curcumin**

Curcumin is poorly absorbed from the intestine after oral administration (Ravindranath and Chandrasekhara, 1980, 1981, 1982). In rats, it was shown that oral consumption of curcumin resulted in approximately 75% being excreted in the faeces and only traces appeared in the urine (Wahlstrom and Blennow, 1978). Curcumin, after being metabolised in the liver, is mainly excreted through bile (Chattopadhyay et al., 2004). Intraperitoneal administration of curcumin showed a similar result for the level of faecal excretion of curcumin (Holder et al., 1978). The results suggest poor absorption of curcumin from the intestine. Curcumin has been shown to be biotransformed to dihydrocurcumin and tetrahydrocurcumin, then these products are converted to monoglucuronide conjugates (Pan et al., 1999).

**Clinical studies and medicinal applications of turmeric and curcumin**

In Nepal, powdered turmeric is used to treat wounds, bruises, inflamed joints and sprains (Surh, 2002). In India, current traditional medicines apply turmeric powder for treatment of biliary disorders, anorexia, cough, diabetic wounds, hepatic disorders, rheumatism and sinusitis (Jain and DeFillips, 1991). In 18 patients with rheumatoid arthritis, turmeric powder showed significant improvement in morning stiffness and joint swelling after 2 weeks with oral doses of 120 mg/day (Sinha et al., 1974). The powder used in combination with other plants was reported for purification of blood and for menstrual and abdominal problems (Eigner and Scholz, 1990).

In Thailand, a clinical trial on the effect of turmeric on peptic ulcer was carried out in 12 patients. Two turmeric capsules (250 mg each) were given orally, 4 times a day, 1 h before meals and at bedtime. The ulcers were completely healed in 5 patients within 4 weeks, and the other 7 patients within 4–12 weeks (Prucksunand et al., 1986). For treatment of gastritis in 25 patients, 2 capsules of turmeric powder (300 mg/capsule) were given orally 5 times/day for 4 weeks, 48%, 72% and 76% of patients recovered in 4, 8 and 12 weeks, respectively after the beginning of treatment (Prucksunand et al., 2001). A randomised double-blind study of turmeric powder for dyspepsia was carried out in hospitals in Thailand. One hundred and six adult patients who had acid dyspepsia or flatulent dyspepsia were included in the study. Each patient received 2 capsules of placebo or flatulence drug or turmeric...
(250 mg/capsule) 4 times/day for 7 days. Fifty-three per cent of the patients receiving placebo, 83% of patients receiving flatulence drug and 87% of patients receiving turmeric responded to the treatment. The differences in efficacy between placebo and turmeric were statistically significant (Thamlikitkul et al., 1989).

**Turmeric products on the Thai market**

In Thailand, turmeric is available in forms of dried powder for raw material and spice; curcuminoids extract for raw material; capsules/tablets of powdered turmeric or curcuminoids as dietary supplement and herbal drugs for carminative and anti-flatulence; cream preparations for antifungal, anti-acne and mosquito repellent; anti-ageing cosmetic products in forms of night cream, facial and body scrub, lotion and soap.

**Future prospects of turmeric**

Turmeric has long been traditionally used as a food, medicine and as a cosmetic. Much research has been done on various biological activities which indicate its possible medicinal applications. Toxicity studies also show that turmeric is safe and produces no serious toxic symptom (Aggarwal et al., 2003; Chainani-Wu, 2003). Moreover, curcuminoids and curcumin show a wide spectrum of biological actions. Therefore, turmeric and curcuminoids should be further developed in the form of modern medicines, especially curcumin, which might be developed as a novel anti-inflammatory, antioxidant and anticarcinogenesis drug.

**Conclusions**

Turmeric is a popular medicinal herb as yellow colouring agent, food flavour spice, and household medicine for various diseases. Biological activities of turmeric have been reported both in vitro and in vivo. Pharmacological actions of turmeric and curcumin, the main component, have been established. These include anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, anticarcinogenic, antimutagenic, antibacterial, antifungal, hypotensive, and hypocholesterolaemic activities. Turmeric has been used to reduce postoperative inflammation. Medicinal uses of turmeric arise from volatile oil and yellow curcuminoids which comprise mainly curcumin, demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin.

Turmeric is one of the most valuable plants used in primary healthcare in Thailand and other countries because of its low cost, it is easily grown and has no side-effects. It is one of the medicinal plants listed in the Thai Herbal Essential Drug List and has been selected as one of the 12 plant species to be developed as product champions of Thailand. However, the quality of turmeric products depends on the quality of the raw materials so standardisation of turmeric rhizome and its extract needs to be introduced and applied commercially. According to *The Standard of ASEAN Herbal Medicine* and *The Thai Herbal Pharmacopoeia*, dried turmeric should contain not less than 6% v/w of volatile oil and not less than 5% w/w of total curcuminoids, while WHO recommends not less than 4% and 3% of volatile oil and total curcuminoids, respectively. For the ethanolic extract of the rhizomes of *C. longa* cultivated in Thailand, an extract ratio (crude drug: 95% ethanolic extract) of 3–5 : 1, should contain total curcuminoids not less than 13% w/w when analysed by the UV-visible spectrophotometer; or not less than 8 and 16% w/w of curcumin and total curcuminoids, respectively when analysed by HPLC; or not less than 11% and 30% w/w of curcumin and total curcuminoids, respectively, when analysed by a TLC-densitometer.

Recently, turmeric has been valued worldwide as a functional food because of its health promotion properties. Safety evaluation studies indicate that turmeric and curcumin are well tolerated at very high doses without any toxic effects. Standardisations of turmeric and its extract, crude curcuminoids, and turmeric oil have been investigated.
References


Holder GM, Plummer JL, Ryan AJ (1978). The metabolism and excretion of curcumin (1,7-bis-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)-1,6-heptadiene-3,5-dione) in the rat. Xenobiotica 8: 761–768.


Moon CK, Park NS, Koh SK (1976). Studies on the lipid


Pothitirat W (2006). *Standardization and Antioxidant Activity of Curcuma longa Rhizome Extracts*. Thesis of Master of Science (Pharmaceutical Chemistry and Phytochemistry), Faculty of Graduate Studies, Mahidol University, Bangkok.


Introduction

Oxidative stress induced by free radicals has been considered as an important factor in many common and life-threatening human diseases over the last few decades, including diabetes. Hence, a therapeutic strategy to increase the antioxidant capacity would fortify long-term effective treatment with herbal medicines.

Oxidative stress and disease

Reactive oxygen species (ROS) are produced externally and endogenously (Nishikawa et al., 2000; Fialkow et al., 2007). In the latter instance they are essential for cell signalling, and thus ROS-mediated tissue injury is regarded as a final common pathway for a number of diseases including atherosclerosis, diabetes, and cancer, and also ageing. Many studies have been made on the connections between diabetes and ROS, being closely related to increased oxidative stress regarding the pathogenesis and development of its complications (Rahbar and Figarola, 2003). Diabetes affects approximately 170 million individuals worldwide, and is expected to alter the lives of at least 366 million individuals over the next 25 years. Moreover, diabetes is known as the single most common cause of end-stage renal disease, leading to serious mental, physical, and financial issues.

Intensive hyperglycaemic control in patients with type 1 diabetes has been promoted to delay the onset and slow the progression of diabetic complications (The Diabetes Control and Complication Trial Research Group, 1993). Hyperglycaemia itself leads to the overproduction of free radicals by the non-enzymatic glycation of proteins through the Maillard reaction, and these free radicals exert deleterious effects on the function of β-cells, making them vulnerable to oxidative stress (Brownlee et al., 1984; Njoroge and Monnier, 1989). Nishikawa et al. (2000), showed that the TCA cycle was the source of...
increased ROS-generating substrates induced by hyperglycaemia, and that the normalisation of mitochondrial ROS could prevent diabetic, pathological changes. Hence, a therapeutic strategy for diabetes incorporating an increase in the antioxidant capacity seems reasonable.

**Herbal medicines**

**General**

Up to now, we have performed in-vitro and in-vivo studies using 12 Chinese prescriptions in expectation of the possibility of curing diabetic nephropathy (Yokozawa et al., 2001a), and demonstrated the effects of a 5-week administration of four prescriptions: Wen-Pi-Tang, Keishi-bukuryo-gan, Sairei-to, and Hachimi-jio-gan, in an animal model of diabetic nephropathy by measuring biochemical parameters that are affected by persistent hyperglycaemia (Nakagawa et al., 2001). In these prescriptions, Hachimi-jio-gan (HJG) is used clinically to improve several disorders associated with diabetes (Goto et al., 1989; Furuya et al., 1999), and it has been used widely for the treatment of renal dysfunction in human subjects (Yamada, 1992), although scientific evidence supporting a pharmacological basis for its therapeutic effects has not been fully elucidated. Therefore, this chapter discusses the novel therapeutic potential of HJG, one of the constituent crude drugs Corni Fructus, and the effects of its fractions against oxidative stress in animal models.

**Hachimi-jio-gan extract**

The composition of HJG is shown in Table 24.1. The eight plants in the proportions stated were boiled gently in 10 times their volume of water for 60 min, filtered, and the filtrate was spray-dried to obtain the extract. The composition of the extract obtained was measured by HPLC fitted with a diode array detector. Morroniside, loganin, and paeoniflorin were seen to be the major components with penta-O-galloylglucose, benzoylmesaconine, cinnamic acid, benzoylpaeoniflorin, cinnamaldehyde, and 16-ketoalisol A as minor constituents.

**Corni Fructus, a constituent of HJG**

Corni Fructus (CF), the extract from the fruit of *Cornus officinalis*, has been used as a traditional medicine in Japan and China (Fan and Xiang, 2001) and contains iridoids and polyphenols (Hatano et al., 1989). It has a plasma glucose-lowering action in normal rats (Liou et al., 2004) and Vareed et al. (2006) reported that CF has been used for improving liver and kidney functions. The total iridoid glycosides had the effect of preventing the overexpression of transforming growth factor (TGF)-β1 and matrixes in glomeruli with a diabetic model (Xu and Hao, 2004) but the mechanisms of Corni Fructus against

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Botanical name</th>
<th>Common name</th>
<th>Family name</th>
<th>Part used</th>
<th>Content (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Rehmannia glutinosa</em> Libosch. var. purpurea Makino</td>
<td>Rehmanniæ Radix</td>
<td>Scrophulariaceae</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>27.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cornus officinalis</em> Sieb. et Zucc.</td>
<td>Corni Fructus</td>
<td>Cornaceae</td>
<td>Fruit</td>
<td>13.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dioscorea japonica</em> Thunb.</td>
<td>Dioscoreae Rhizoma</td>
<td>Dioscoreaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>13.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alisma orientale</em> Juzep.</td>
<td>Alismatis Rhizoma</td>
<td>Alismataceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
<td>13.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Poria cocos</em> Wolf</td>
<td>Hoelen</td>
<td>Polyporaceae</td>
<td>Sclerotium</td>
<td>13.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Paeonia suffruticosa</em> Andrews</td>
<td>Moutan Cortex</td>
<td>Paeoniaceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>11.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cinnamomum cassia</em> Blume</td>
<td>Cinnamomi Cortex</td>
<td>Lauraceae</td>
<td>Bark</td>
<td>4.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aconitum carmichaeli</em> Debx</td>
<td>Aconiti Tuber</td>
<td>Ranunculaceae</td>
<td>Tuber</td>
<td>2.27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
glucose- and oxidative stress-associated metabolic disorders in diabetes have not been fully investigated.

CF extract was fractionated on Sephadex LH-20 column chromatography with water containing increasing proportions of methanol and finally 60% acetone to give four fractions: S1 (94.52 g), S2 (1.20 g), S3 (2.15 g), and S4 (1.55 g). The fractions were further separated to give 7-O-galloyl-D-sedoheptulose (Zhang et al., 1999), mevaloside (Tschesche et al., 1971), loganic acid (El-Naggar and Beal, 1980), and 5-hydroxymethyl-2-furfural (5-HMF) (Liu et al., 2004), morroniside (Inouye et al., 1973; Otsuka et al., 2001) and loganin (Garcia and Chulia, 1986).

### Evaluation of efficacy

#### Effect on diabetic oxidative stress

**Efficacy of HJG**

A rat model with diabetes induced by streptozotocin, which destroys pancreatic β-cells as a result of damage caused by radicals and a deficit in antioxidative defences, was used. HJG was dissolved in distilled water and orally administered at doses of 50, 100, and 200 mg/kg body weight/day via gavage (Yokozawa et al., 1997). Rats with diabetes induced by streptozotocin and treated with HJG did not show body weight changes during the 10-day experimental period, whereas a duplicate untreated group showed loss of weight, thus showing that HJG successfully ameliorated diabetic oxidative stress (Table 24.2) and also significantly reduced the serum levels of glucose and glycosylated protein which were markedly elevated in rats with streptozotocin-induced diabetes (Figures 24.1a, b), while the serum creatinine level of groups given HJG were slightly lower than the control value. The elevated thiobarbituric acid (TBA)-reactive substance levels in serum and renal mitochondria of diabetic rats were markedly reduced by the administration of HJG, and a notable reduction was observed in the serum level from the lowest dose. From these results, it was supposed that HJG played a role in ameliorating glucose metabolism and attenuating oxidative stress under diabetes through scavenging free radicals and inhibiting lipid peroxidation, so it may be a beneficial therapy for pathological conditions associated with diabetic oxidative stress.

### Which is the major contributor among the eight crude drugs comprising HJG?

It was previously discovered that HJG had effects on metabolic disorders, especially on advanced glycation end-product (AGE) formation and elevated oxidative stress in diabetic nephropathy (Nakagawa et al., 2001) and that one of its constituent plants, Rehmanniae Radix extract, attenuated renal dysfunction in diabetic nephropathy, mainly because of its suppression of oxidative stress (Yokozawa et al., 2004). However, further chemical characterisation of the other components is needed and morroniside, loganin and paeoniflorin were detected by HPLC as the major compounds in HJG, morroniside and loganin being found in Corni Fructus (CF).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Dose (mg/kg body weight/day)</th>
<th>Body weight Initial (g)</th>
<th>Final (g)</th>
<th>Gain (g/10 days)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>220.8 ± 3.8*</td>
<td>284.4 ± 8.9*</td>
<td>63.6 ± 5.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes control</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>177.0 ± 3.1</td>
<td>205.4 ± 8.3</td>
<td>28.4 ± 6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachimi-jio-gan</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>172.7 ± 4.3</td>
<td>205.0 ± 8.3</td>
<td>28.8 ± 5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachimi-jio-gan</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>188.0 ± 2.4</td>
<td>213.8 ± 5.5</td>
<td>25.8 ± 4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachimi-jio-gan</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>178.3 ± 2.6</td>
<td>209.6 ± 6.1</td>
<td>31.3 ± 3.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P<0.05 compared with diabetic control rats.
Figure 24.1 Effect of Hachimi-jio-gan on (a) serum glucose; (b) glycosylated protein; (c) TBA-reactive substance; and (d) renal mitochondrial TBA-reactive substance levels at 10 days. *P < 0.05 compared with diabetic control rats.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Body weight Initial (g)</th>
<th>Final (g)</th>
<th>Gain (g/10 days)</th>
<th>Kidney weight (mg/100 g BW)</th>
<th>Food intake (g/day)</th>
<th>Water intake (ml/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>246.6 ± 4.3*</td>
<td>297.8 ± 7.1*</td>
<td>51.2 ± 4.4*</td>
<td>0.70 ± 0.02*</td>
<td>21.5 ± 1.3*</td>
<td>42.7 ± 3.8*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes control</td>
<td>199.0 ± 4.7</td>
<td>206.5 ± 6.0</td>
<td>11.4 ± 2.2</td>
<td>1.13 ± 0.02</td>
<td>30.0 ± 1.4</td>
<td>137.6 ± 3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S1D2 (20 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>199.3 ± 5.7</td>
<td>224.5 ± 7.3</td>
<td>17.5 ± 3.8</td>
<td>1.02 ± 0.03*</td>
<td>27.0 ± 0.9</td>
<td>120.9 ± 3.8*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2 (20 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>197.9 ± 6.0</td>
<td>211.1 ± 10.3</td>
<td>14.3 ± 3.9</td>
<td>1.03 ± 0.03*</td>
<td>28.3 ± 1.5</td>
<td>125.7 ± 3.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S3 (20 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>197.6 ± 6.3</td>
<td>202.6 ± 9.3</td>
<td>5.0 ± 5.2</td>
<td>1.06 ± 0.02</td>
<td>28.5 ± 0.6</td>
<td>134.8 ± 6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S4 (20 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>197.5 ± 3.6</td>
<td>201.1 ± 6.8</td>
<td>3.6 ± 5.1</td>
<td>1.05 ± 0.03</td>
<td>29.6 ± 0.6</td>
<td>128.9 ± 6.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P<0.05 compared with diabetic control rats.
(Nakagawa et al., 2001). Therefore, on the assumption that CF is a major contributor to the effects of HJG, the present study was carried out.

**Efficacy of Corni Fructus and its fractions**

A similar study to that performed for HJG in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats was carried out for CF using doses of 50, 100, and 200 mg/kg body weight/day and comparing effects with those given by the inhibitor of AGE formation, aminoguanidine (100 mg/kg body weight/day) over 10 days. In addition, an iridoid and three polyphenol fractions, all shown to possess high ROS scavenging activity of CF were also tested.

The extract of CF dose-dependently increased the body weight and ameliorated hyperglycaemia (Figures 24.2a,b) as well as glucose-associated metabolic disorders in the serum and kidney, e.g. AGE levels (Figures 24.3a,c). The effects seen were similar to those of HJG. Some of the polyphenol fractions had greater hydroxyl radical scavenging activity than the iridoid (Figures 24.4a–c) and led to a decrease in body weight gain compared with the diabetic control value (Table 24.3), although these fractions significantly

![Figure 24.2](image-url)

**Figure 24.2** Effect of Corni Fructus and aminoguanidine on (a) body weight changes and (b) serum glucose levels in STZ-induced diabetic rats during the 10-day experimental period. *P < 0.05 compared with each value of diabetic control rats.
Safety and efficacy of Hachimi-jio-gan against oxidative damage

inhibited the increase of serum and renal TBA-reactive substance levels (Figures 24.4c,e), suggesting that these two fractions may have radical scavenging activities but may include some toxic ingredients.

Increased oxidative stress also participates in renal structural changes, i.e. oxidative substances affect glomerular endothelial cells directly, infiltrating into the various parts of renal tissue, because of the abundant blood flow in the diabetic kidney. There is no doubt that microalbuminuria is an important indicator of the early stage of diabetic nephropathy because glomerular damage increases the albumin filtration rate, but proximal tubular reabsorption of this increased albumin is decreased via a decline in its endocytosis caused by a loss of megalin expression (Cui et al., 1996). In the study on CF, diabetic rats also showed renal dysfunction, i.e. increased serum creatinine, urea nitrogen, and proteinuria and decreased creatinine levels, reflecting a decline in glomerular filtration rate. However, the rats given CF showed an up-regulated renal function and decreased uraemic toxin levels (Table 24.4), with certain antioxidative activities such as nitric oxide scavenging (Table 24.5). Aminoguanidine, the positive control, had almost the same effects as those of CF except concerning renal function, shown by the serum creatinine levels, and these differences might reflect AGE clearance. Aminoguanidine is reported to inhibit nitric oxide production and to trap reactive di-carbonyls, impeding conversion to AGEs, prevent cross-linking, and inhibit free-radical formation.

Therefore, it may be hypothesised that differences between CF and aminoguanidine are that CF can improve AGE clearance with an activated renal function, while aminoguanidine mainly inhibits AGE formation via its antioxidant properties. In addition,
similar results were observed with the treatment of two fractions of CF, S1D2 and S2, in terms of renal function parameters (Table 24.6).

These two fractions were identified as the compounds morroniside and 7-O-galloyl-D-sedoheptulose. The biological activities of morroniside have recently been studied (Xu and Hao, 2004; Xu et al., 2004, 2006), which might be positively correlated with the activities of HJG. However, the biological activity 7-O-galloyl-D-sedoheptulose is as yet only poorly understood detected as a compound from Corni Fructus (Zhang et al., 1999).

![Figure 24.4 Effect of Corni Fructus fractions on (a) serum glucose; (b) glycosylated protein; (c) TBA-reactive substance; (d) renal ACEs; and (e) mitochondrial TBA-reactive substance levels in STZ-induced diabetic rats at 10 days. *P < 0.05 compared with diabetic control rats.](image)

**Table 24.4 Effect of Corni Fructus on renal function parameters in diabetes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Normal</th>
<th>Diabetes control</th>
<th>Corni Fructus (50 kg/kg body weight/day)</th>
<th>Corni Fructus (100 kg/kg body weight/day)</th>
<th>Corni Fructus (200 kg/kg body weight/day)</th>
<th>Aminoguanidine (100 kg/kg body weight/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s-Urea nitrogen (mg/dl)</td>
<td>18.5±0.7*</td>
<td>33.6±2.1</td>
<td>27.8±1.5*</td>
<td>23.1±1.6*</td>
<td>20.9±1.1*</td>
<td>24.7±3.1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-Cr (mg/dl)</td>
<td>0.341±0.010*</td>
<td>0.404±0.021</td>
<td>0.348±0.012*</td>
<td>0.351±0.015*</td>
<td>0.338±0.017*</td>
<td>0.364±0.007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ccr (ml/kg body weight/min)</td>
<td>7.68±0.14*</td>
<td>5.27±0.59</td>
<td>6.82±0.63*</td>
<td>7.47±0.48*</td>
<td>8.92±0.22*</td>
<td>5.73±1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urine protein (mg/day)</td>
<td>13.3±0.9</td>
<td>16.8±2.2</td>
<td>12.5±3.1</td>
<td>12.1±2.7</td>
<td>10.3±0.9</td>
<td>9.7±1.1*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P<0.05 compared with diabetic control rats.
Safety and efficacy of Hachimi-jio-gan against oxidative damage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Nitrite/nitrate (µmol/L)</th>
<th>Inhibition of NBT reduction (% diabetic control)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>15.7±1.9*</td>
<td>84.7±2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes control</td>
<td>32.6±5.7</td>
<td>100.0±5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corni Fructus (50 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>26.4±7.4</td>
<td>97.5±2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corni Fructus (100 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>19.0±3.4</td>
<td>93.7±1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corni Fructus (200 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>10.5±0.5*</td>
<td>91.5±3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminoguanidine (100 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>8.3±0.3*</td>
<td>91.1±5.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P<0.05 compared with diabetic control rats.

Table 24.6 Effect of Corni Fructus fractions on renal function parameters in diabetes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>s-Urea nitrogen (mg/dl)</th>
<th>s-Cr (mg/dl)</th>
<th>Ccr (ml/kg body weight/min)</th>
<th>Urinary protein (mg/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>22.4±1.0*</td>
<td>0.369±0.004</td>
<td>7.75±0.07*</td>
<td>9.9±1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S1D2 (20 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>38.5±2.4</td>
<td>0.370±0.007</td>
<td>6.62±0.20</td>
<td>11.2±0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2 (20 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>33.1±1.7</td>
<td>0.368±0.012</td>
<td>6.78±0.45</td>
<td>9.1±0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S3 (20 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>33.9±1.2</td>
<td>0.368±0.008</td>
<td>7.25±0.10*</td>
<td>9.3±0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S4 (20 mg/kg body weight/day)</td>
<td>36.8±2.1</td>
<td>0.369±0.009</td>
<td>6.68±0.25</td>
<td>11.8±0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34.9±3.8</td>
<td>0.371±0.018</td>
<td>6.68±0.35</td>
<td>9.8±0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P<0.05 compared with diabetic control rats.

Table 24.7 Effect of Hachimi-jio-gan on body weight changes in diabetic nephropathy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Dose (mg/kg body weight/day)</th>
<th>Body weight Initial (g)</th>
<th>Final (g)</th>
<th>Gain (g/15 weeks)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>292.0±6.6*</td>
<td>449.3±9.9*</td>
<td>157.3±4.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetic nephropathy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachimi-jio-gan</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>263.8±6.4</td>
<td>303.5±9.8</td>
<td>39.9±7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachimi-jio-gan</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>259.2±6.4</td>
<td>301.4±11.9</td>
<td>42.9±6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachimi-jio-gan</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>260.4±8.4</td>
<td>305.1±14.2</td>
<td>44.3±10.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>259.3±6.0</td>
<td>305.9±10.0</td>
<td>46.1±8.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P<0.05 compared with diabetic nephropathy control rats.
Effect of HJG on type 1 diabetic nephropathy

Typical characteristics

Diabetic nephropathy is characterised as advanced kidney disease caused by longitudinal hyperglycaemia and its metabolic abnormalities. The study carried out involved long-term administration for 15 weeks, to show the effect of HJG on advanced kidney disease in diabetic nephropathy. Rats underwent subtotal nephrectomy and streptozotocin injection and showed metabolic abnormalities and renal lesions resembling diabetic nephropathy in humans (Yokozawa et al., 2001b). The control rats, i.e. nephrectomised and treated with streptozotocin but not with extract, showed a decrease in body weight gain compared with normal rats, but the 15-week administration of HJG led to a slight increase in body weight gain, suggesting that there might be no or exceedingly little toxicity derived from long-term treatment with HJG (Table 24.7).

Over the experimental period, the serum glucose and urinary protein excretion levels were markedly higher in the rat model employed in this study than in normal rats (Figures 24.5a,b), indicating that disorders of glucose metabolism and changes in the capillary filtration barrier result in the increased permeability of the glomerular basement membrane (GBM). In addition, this rat model showed a significant decrease in creatinine clearance (Figure 24.5c), an effective index for expressing the glomerular filtration rate, which decreases exponentially until patients eventually develop nephritic syndrome (Bell, 1991). However, the present investigation demonstrated that the administration of HJG for 15 weeks reduced the serum glucose and urinary protein excretion levels, but increased creatinine clearance (Figure 24.6), suggesting that the good control of glucose metabolism has an important role in the prevention of diabetic complications, including diabetic nephropathy. In addition, the decreased serum albumin level in this animal model was reversed by the administration of HJG (Table 24.8). On the basis of these results, it was found that streptozotocin injection into subtotally nephrectomised rats resulted in progressive diabetic nephropathy but HJG prevented or delayed this.

Protein glycation reaction

Chronic hyperglycaemia results in irreversible tissue damage caused by the protein glycation reaction which leads to the formation of glycosylated proteins and AGEs, and stimulation of the polyol pathway (Cooper et al., 1998; Yabe-Nishimura, 1998). The glycosylated serum protein level increased in the animal model used, implying that the oxidation of sugars was stimulated (see Table 24.8), enhancing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Normal</th>
<th>Diabetic nephropathy control</th>
<th>Hachimi-jio-gan (50 mg/kg body weight/day)</th>
<th>Hachimi-jio-gan (100 mg/kg body weight/day)</th>
<th>Hachimi-jio-gan (200 mg/kg body weight/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glycosylated protein (nmol/mg protein)</td>
<td>13.2±0.7*</td>
<td>25.8±1.4</td>
<td>24.1±0.8</td>
<td>20.6±1.3*</td>
<td>20.3±0.7*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urea nitrogen (mg/dL)</td>
<td>20.7±0.5*</td>
<td>68.0±6.9</td>
<td>56.2±3.1</td>
<td>57.0±2.5</td>
<td>47.0±5.0*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albumin (g/dL)</td>
<td>3.43±0.33*</td>
<td>2.31±0.08</td>
<td>2.45±0.10</td>
<td>2.45±0.09</td>
<td>2.63±0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBA-reactive substance (nmol/mL)</td>
<td>2.44±0.47*</td>
<td>5.49±0.29</td>
<td>5.82±0.28</td>
<td>5.42±0.31</td>
<td>4.33±0.14*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P<0.05 compared with diabetic nephropathy control rats.
Safety and efficacy of Hachimi-jio-gan against oxidative damage

Figure 24.5 Effect of Hachimi-jio-gan on (a) serum glucose; (b) urinary protein; and (c) Ccr levels in experimental rats for 15 weeks. *P < 0.05 compared with each value of diabetic nephropathy control rats.

Figure 24.6 Effect of Hachimi-jio-gan on (a) renal AGE; (b) sorbitol; and (c) TBA-reactive substance levels at 15 weeks of the experimental period. *P < 0.05 compared with diabetic nephropathy control rats.
damage to both sugars and proteins in the circulation and vascular walls, continuing and reinforcing the cycle of oxidative stress and damage. In addition, accumulation of AGEs in the kidney was also observed (Figure 24.6a), and this excessive formation and accumulation can alter the structure and function of tissue proteins. In people with diabetes and/or chronic renal failure, AGEs accumulate in the kidney and are responsible for pathological changes (Vlassara et al., 1994). AGEs also stimulate free-radical mechanisms and induce membrane peroxidation, which in turn increases membrane permeability. Therefore, AGE accumulation in the kidney has been regarded as an index of progressive renal damage associated with diabetic nephropathy and is recognized as playing a central role in various other degenerative processes, e.g. dialysis-related amyloidosis, and Alzheimer’s disease (Niwa, 1997; Raj et al., 2000). HJG reduced the levels of glycosylated serum proteins and AGEs significantly and dose-dependently (see Table 24.8 and Figure 24.6a), suggesting that it can inhibit oxidative damage and irreversible renal damage caused by protein glycation reactions.

**Polyol pathway**

In the polyol pathway, glucose is reduced to sorbitol by aldose reductase and sorbitol dehydrogenase. Increased polyol pathway activity results in the depletion of myoinositol and changes in the cellular redox potential, which has been proposed as a causative factor in the development of diabetic nephropathy. Moreover, it has been hypothesized that the glycation reaction leads to the production of AGEs by increasing the supply of fructose, which is a reactive glycation agent with stronger reducing activity than glucose (Goldfarb et al., 1991; Hamada et al., 1996; Cooper et al., 1998). Our results showed that renal sorbitol levels were markedly elevated in rats with diabetic nephropathy compared with normal rats (Figure 24.6b). However, the administration of HJG significantly reduced the sorbitol level, suggesting that the disturbance of the glucose-dependent metabolic pathway, and irreversible tissue damage caused by such disturbance under conditions of diabetic nephropathy, would be ameliorated by decreasing the activity of the polyol pathway and inhibiting the protein glycation reaction.

**Oxidative stress**

The metabolic disorders associated with diabetic nephropathy induced lipid peroxidation caused by oxidative stress, which plays a potential role in diabetic glomerulosclerosis and renal fibrosis (Giugliano et al., 1996; Salahudeen et al., 1997). Under this pathological condition, free-radical production is exacerbated, leading to severe cytotoxic effects, such as lipid peroxidation and protein denaturation in cell membranes, followed by alterations in membrane receptors, fluidity, and properties. In the present study, the serum and renal TBA-reactive substance levels were measured to determine the effects of HJG on oxidative stress and the results are shown in Table 24.8 and Figure 24.6c. Lipid peroxidation levels in the serum and kidney were markedly elevated in rats with diabetic nephropathy compared with normal rats, while a 15-week course of HJG reduced these levels, suggesting that the administration of HJG would ameliorate the oxidative stress associated with diabetic nephropathy, and, thus improve the renal lesions caused by oxidative stress.

**Renal functional and structural changes**

The clinical manifestations of diabetic nephropathy, notably proteinuria, hypertension and renal insufficiency, are related to the severity of renal lesions (Winetz et al., 1982; Adler, 1997). In the animal model used, the histopathological characteristics of diabetic nephropathy, glomerular sclerosis, and tubulointerstitial lesions were observed, especially the diffuse expansion of mesangial regions and basement membrane thickening of renal tubules. Recently, it has been suggested that diffuse mesangial expansion in the glomerulus plays a critical role in the obliteration of the capillary lumen, ultimately leading to the cessation of glomerular function. The greatly expanded mesangial matrix results in a reduction of the surface area available for filtration (Giugliano et al., 1996), leading to the accumulation of urea nitrogen and creatinine in the serum, and a subsequent decrease in the creatinine clearance rate. The elevated serum urea nitrogen level was considered to be related to the renal lesions of glomerulosclerosis, while its reduction by HJG indicated amelioration of the renal lesions (Table 24.9 and
Figure 24.7). A substantial body of evidence suggests that progressive renal insufficiency is the ultimate expression of the pathological consequences of accumulating abnormalities of the glomerulus and tubulointerstitium (Winetz et al., 1982; Yaqoob et al., 1994; Adler, 1997). HJG had a significant protective effect against renal lesions (Table 24.9), suggesting that it would improve associated renal dysfunction. The results of the present study confirm that HJG has a protective effect in diabetic nephropathic rats through the amelioration of metabolic disorders, oxidative stress, and renal dysfunction associated with renal lesions.

### Effect of HJG on type 2 diabetic pancreas

#### Glycaemic control

Otsuka Long-Evans Tokushima fatty (OLETF) rats were used as a model of human type 2 diabetes. HJG-treated groups did not show any differences in weight from untreated rats, but the serum glucose level in diabetic rats was reduced from the latter half of the administration period (Table 24.10). Oral administration of HJG could ameliorate these changes dose-dependently in insulin content and wet weight of the pancreas. Liou et al. (2002, 2004) reported that CF plays an important role in the

![Figure 24.7](image)

**Figure 24.7** Photomicrographs of the glomeruli (upper panel, ×200), tubulus (middle panel, ×100), and interstitium (lower panel, ×20) obtained from (a) normal rats; (b) diabetic nephropathy rats in the control; and (c) Hachimi-jio-gan-treated (50 mg/kg body weight per day; (d) 100 mg/kg body weight per day; and (e) 200 mg/kg body weight per day) groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Normal</th>
<th>Diabetic nephropathy control</th>
<th>Hachimi-jio-gan (50 mg/kg body weight/day)</th>
<th>Hachimi-jio-gan (100 mg/kg body weight/day)</th>
<th>Hachimi-jio-gan (200 mg/kg body weight/day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glomerular sclerosis</td>
<td>0*</td>
<td>2.88±0.87</td>
<td>1.38±0.18*</td>
<td>0.79±0.17*</td>
<td>0.43±0.24*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubulointerstitial changes</td>
<td>0*</td>
<td>2.88±0.13</td>
<td>2.25±0.25</td>
<td>2.33±0.21</td>
<td>2.29±0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesangial matrix expansion</td>
<td>0*</td>
<td>2.38±0.18</td>
<td>2.00±0.01</td>
<td>1.83±0.17*</td>
<td>1.43±0.20*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arteriolar sclerosis</td>
<td>0*</td>
<td>2.13±0.23</td>
<td>2.00±0.27</td>
<td>1.50±0.22</td>
<td>1.43±0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>0*</td>
<td>11.82±2.66</td>
<td>7.38±0.69*</td>
<td>6.45±0.80*</td>
<td>5.58±1.04*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P<0.05 compared with diabetic nephropathy control rats.
plasma glucose-lowering action associated with an increase in insulin secretion, via the release of acetylcholine from nerve terminals, which stimulates muscarinic cholinoreceptors in the pancreatic islets. Taken together, HJG led to an increase in the pancreatic insulin level and might also stimulate insulin secretion, but the detailed mechanism requires further investigation.

**Pancreatic fibrosis**

An experiment was designed to elucidate the effect of HJG on the development of pancreatic fibrosis in relation with the effect on diabetic nephropathy. HJG was administered to rats from 32 weeks old to the age of 54 weeks old, HJG reduced the levels of TGF-β1 and fibronectin protein in the pancreas (Figure 24.8), and led to a reduction in pancreatic fibrosis via histological evaluation (Figure 24.9). Thus, these findings suggest that the hyperglycaemic control induced by HJG may, at least in part, be derived from the amelioration of pancreatic disorders such as pancreatic fibrosis.

**Pancreatic oxidative stress**

When they are exposed to oxidative stress, β-cells may be sensitive to ROS attack because they have a

---

**Table 24.10** Effect of Hachimi-jio-gan on serum glucose levels during 32 weeks of administration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Serum glucose levels (mg/dL)</th>
<th>8 weeks</th>
<th>16 weeks</th>
<th>24 weeks</th>
<th>32 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Before</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LETO Control</td>
<td>147.6±4.3*</td>
<td>142.3±4.4*</td>
<td>143.0±3.4*</td>
<td>143.3±4.7*</td>
<td>170.6±4.9*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachimi-jio-gan (50 mg/kg)</td>
<td>189.1±6.2</td>
<td>187.8±7.5</td>
<td>181.8±7.2</td>
<td>185.1±4.9</td>
<td>236.0±7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachimi-jio-gan (100 mg/kg)</td>
<td>188.6±8.6</td>
<td>188.2±6.6</td>
<td>171.4±8.1</td>
<td>170.2±3.6*</td>
<td>227.5±6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachimi-jio-gan (200 mg/kg)</td>
<td>189.5±6.3</td>
<td>191.8±6.0</td>
<td>165.8±4.2</td>
<td>164.2±3.0*</td>
<td>216.6±5.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*P<0.05 compared with each value of OLETF control rats.

LETO = Long-Evans Tokushima Otsuka rats; OLETF = Otsuka Long-Evans Tokushima Fatty rats.

---

**Figure 24.8** (a) Pancreatic weight and (b) relative insulin content in LETO rats or OLETF rats treated with Hachimi-jio-gan for 32 weeks. *P < 0.05 compared with the value of OLETF control rats. LETO = Long-Evans Tokushima Otsuka; OLETF = Otsuka Long-Evans Tokushima Fatty; HJG = Hachimi-jio-gan.
poor antioxidative defence status compared with the liver and other tissues (Tiedge et al., 1997). Eldor et al. (2006) reported that \( \beta \)-cell-specific activation of nuclear factor-kappa beta (NF-\( \kappa \)B) is a key event in the progressive loss of \( \beta \)-cells in diabetes, and inhibition of the NF-\( \kappa \)B pathway could be a potentially effective strategy for \( \beta \)-cell protection because it protects pancreatic \( \beta \)-cells from cytokine-induced apoptosis, while there are increased numbers of cytokine-sensitive genes including inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS) and cyclo-oxygenase-2 (COX-2), which possess binding sites for members of the NF-\( \kappa \)B family of transcription factors; thus, it is likely that oxidative stress plays a major role in \( \beta \)-cell deterioration in type 2 diabetes.

Pancreatic NF-\( \kappa \)B, inhibitor binding protein \( \kappa \)B-\( \alpha \) (IkB-\( \alpha \)), iNOS, and COX-2 levels by western blot analyses were measured as indicators of oxidative stress. Total levels of pancreatic NF-\( \kappa \)B and COX-2, except for iNOS, proteins in OLETF diabetic rats showed increases (Figure 24.10). However, oral administration of HJG reduced pancreatic NF-\( \kappa \)B, iNOS, and COX-2 protein levels dose-dependently; and, in particular, HJG-treated rats showed a greater reduction in iNOS protein than LETO rats (Figure 24.10). It had been noted that islet-constitutive NOS activity, which is stimulated by the entry of extracellular Ca\(^{2+} \) into \( \beta \)-cells as well as the production of NADPH generated from glucose metabolism, appeared to be more rapidly adjusted to the glucose concentration than iNOS activity, which suggested the independence of cytokine action (Zawalich and Rasmussen, 1990; Henningsson et al., 2002). However, iNOS is known to produce nitric oxide which inhibits glucose-stimulated insulin release from the pancreas. Although the intimate mechanisms behind glucose-stimulated iNOS activity and expression are presently unclear, the present data showed no increase in iNOS in OLET control rats compared with LETO control rats, and so
we hypothesised that HJG would stimulate pancreatic insulin secretion via the inhibition of iNOS expression.

## Conclusions

Oxidative stress is an important factor in many common and life-threatening human diseases because ROS-mediated tissue injury is regarded as a common pathway for a number of diseases. We investigated whether HJG could ameliorate advanced kidney disease in type 1 diabetic nephropathy and pancreatic fibrosis, and oxidative damage in type 2 diabetes. The results indicated that Hachimi-jio-gan could have a protective role in diabetic renal and pancreatic damage caused by oxidative stress. Morroniside and 7-O-galloyl-D-sedoheptulose in Corni Fructus were suggested to be important contributors to the effect of HJG against diabetic oxidative damage. However, it was discovered that some of the powerful antioxidant fractions might participate in the toxicity. Needless to say, herbal medicine would make full use of the efficacy of each crude drug synergistically to cure diseases and, this study on HJG provides novel information on bioactive ingredients of this herbal product.

Figure 24.10 Effect of Hachimi-jio-gan on pancreatic protein expression-associated oxidative stress. (a) The representative response of protein expression for NF-κB p65, phosphorylated and non-phosphorylated IκB-α, iNOS, COX-2, or β-actin in the pancreas isolated from LETO rats or OLETF rats treated with Hachimi-jio-gan for 32 weeks. Lane 1 = LETO control rats; lane 2 = untreated OLETF control rats; lanes 3, 4, and 5 = Hachimi-jio-gan (50, 100, and 200 mg/kg, respectively)-treated OLETF rats. (b–e) Quantification of NF-κB p65, phosphorylated IκB-α, iNOS, and COX-2 protein levels by the ratio to β-actin; each column with a bar represents the mean plus SEM. *P < 0.05 compared with the value of OLETF control rats. LETO = Long-Evans Tokushima Otsuka; OLETF = Otsuka Long-Evans Tokushima Fatty; HJG = Hachimi-jio-gan.
References


Part 3

Product development
Introduction

Essential oils, also referred to as volatile or ethereal oils, are highly volatile substances secreted in oil cells, glandular hairs or in secretion ducts or cavities of odoriferous plants. They have been in use since antiquity, having been employed as food and drink flavours, perfumes, deodorants, disinfectants, embalming antiseptics and medicines. Scientifically obtained evidence on the important biological activities of many essential oils has lent credence to their traditional and folkloric application in therapeutics. Intense scientific research efforts have also led to a tremendous increase in the number and types of essential oils as well as their potential uses and applications. In addition, modern distillation technology has resulted in the establishment of international markets and industries. As such, essential oils can now be regarded as industrial raw materials. However, only few products containing essential oils as active therapeutic agents are available in the market. This is because most current research efforts are focused on assaying the biological activity of both old and newly discovered essential oils and only a few attempts have been made at determining the effective concentration/dose of essential oils with proven activity as well as carrying out clinical trials to determine their efficacy and safety for human use.

The formulation of essential oils into dosage forms demands additional considerations compared with conventional orthodox medicinal agents. Essential oils are multi-chemical in their composition with only a few of the constituents being responsible for the desired biological effects, although the presence of other constituents may enhance activity. Hence, factors that affect the efficacy of the active compounds are critical in the choice of dosage forms and excipients employed in formulation. For some essential oils, the active constituents are highly volatile compounds, requiring controlled procedures for incorporation of the oils into preparations so as to ensure efficacy of the products. While the unoxidised constituents are the active compounds in some essential oils, products of oxidation reaction of some constituents are toxic. Hence, the inclusion of antioxidants in essential oil-containing products is inevitable.
Essential oils were earlier used without much consideration for possible toxic or untoward effects on the users. However, recent research efforts into some of the commonly used essential oils, including perfumes, have revealed toxic potentials that have resulted in the control of their use by appropriate regulatory bodies. While the concentrations of essential oils permissible in certain preparations have been pegged, the inclusion of some essential oils, such as peppermint oil, in oral preparations is being discouraged. The toxicity of some of these essential oils has been traced to one or two of their constituents, the permissible concentrations of which are specified for the oils to be included in products. Essential oils have also been shown to cause sensitisation as well as phototoxicity which, hitherto, could not have been traced to them. Some observed reactions are due to indirect contact with the offending oils through inhalation or even skin contact with the oil vapour dispersed in the environment. The toxicity of some essential oils has been traced to poor storage by consumers leading to oxidation of some of the constituents; the reaction products of which elicit toxic or allergenic effects. Extensive toxicity studies are, therefore, still desirable for essential oils with potential therapeutic and other applications to be fully utilised as medicinal or chemical agents.

**Essential oils as remedies for skin diseases**

The earliest applications of essential oils in home remedies as well as in alternative and complementary medicines have been for the treatment of skin disorders. Many essential oils have demonstrated antibacterial, antifungal, wound-healing, antiparasitic, antipROTOzoal antiviral, anti-inflammatory, hair-growth stimulating and insect-repellent properties (Hammer et al., 1999; Oyedele et al., 2000; Oladimeji et al., 2000; Orafidiya et al., 2003, 2004a). However, their efficacies at concentrations at which they can be used on humans without eliciting side-effects are mostly still being studied.

Many essential oils have demonstrated considerable broad-spectrum, antimicrobial activity comparable with existing antimicrobial agents. The essential oil obtained from the leaves and terminal branches of *Melaleuca alternifolia* (Maiden and Betch) Cheel (tea tree oil) was about the first to be subjected to antimicrobial screening. Penfold and Grant (1925) had rated the oil and some of its components such as cineole, cymene, linalool and terpinen-4-ol up to 16 times more active than phenol. Tea tree oil has remarkable activity against skin-infecting bacteria such as *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Tea tree oil also reduces skin carriage of meticillin-resistant *Staph. aureus* (MRSA). Clinical trial studies on the efficacy of tea tree oil in handwashes for hospital and healthcare settings have confirmed the antiseptic properties of the oil, with its aroma enhancing users’ compliance (Messager et al., 2005).

Baiju and Modax (2007) recently studied the antimicrobial activity of combinations of low concentrations of nine essential oils with fruit acids (citric and lactic acids). Although the test oils showed synergistic effects with citric acid, cinnamon leaf (*Cinnamomum zeylanicum* Blume) and citronella leaf (*Cymbopogon nardus* L.) essential oils exhibited superior activity against *Escherichia coli*, MRSA and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* but only cinnamon oil exhibited high activity against *Candida albicans*. A hand soap containing a synergistic combination of cinnamon oil and citric acid was formulated and found to be significantly more effective than triclosan (a standard disinfectant) soap. The authors concluded that skin and surface cleansers containing cinnamon oil and citric acid in combination might provide rapid and broad-spectrum activity.

Acne vulgaris (acne) is caused by blockage, inflammation and subsequent bacterial colonisation of the pilosebaceous follicles of the face and upper trunk. In-vitro susceptibility studies on the essential oils of citronella grass (*Cymbopogon nardus* L.), lemongrass (*Cymbopogon citratus* [DC. ex Nees] Otto Stapf), kaffir lime (*Citrus hystrix* DC), holy basil (*Ocimum sanctum* L.), sweet basil (*Ocimum basilicum* L.), plai (*Zingiber cassumunar* Roxb.) and ginger (*Zingiber officinale* Roscoe) against *Propionibacterium acnes* (*P. acnes*) showed citronella grass oil as the most effective in inhibiting the growth of the microorganism. In addition, holy basil, plai and citronella oils demonstrated appreciable anti-inflammatory activity that could help to relieve acne blemishes (Lertsatitthanakorn et al., 2006). Ocimum
oil (from the leaves of Ocimum gratissimum L.), at 2%, reduced acne lesions faster in subjects than 10% benzoyl peroxide and 1% clindamycin standard products, while the activity of the oil lotion was greatly enhanced in combination with aloe vera gel (Orafidiya et al., 2002, 2004b). On the other hand, 5% tea tree oil was less effective in reducing lesions than 5% benzoyl peroxide, although like the ocimum oil preparations, it was better tolerated than the benzoyl peroxide product (Bassett et al., 1990). However, Biju et al. (2005) have observed the effect of pH on the anti-bacterial activity of tea tree oil against P. acnes, Staph. aureus and Staph. epidermidis. Formulations containing 5% tea tree oil exhibited maximum effect at pH 5.5.

Microbial colonisation of wounds retards healing. Ocimum oil at 2% v/v has demonstrated marked antimicrobial activity against Staph. aureus, P. aeruginosa and Proteus spp. isolated from wounds and boils on human subjects, and Trichophyton mentagrophytes isolated from wounds on rabbits. Studies in rabbits showed that wounds colonised by S. aureus and T. mentagrophytes, previously treated with 0.5% cetrimide cream, did not heal until the 2% ocimum oil preparation, to which the microbes were susceptible, was applied (Orafidiya et al., 2003). Apart from antimicrobial effects, the wound-healing property of ocimum oil has been attributed to accelerated scab formation, wound contraction and granulation, and early onset of epithelialisation in rabbits (Orafidiya et al., 2003). However, in pigs, whose skin physiology is similar to that of humans, ocimum oil reduced wound contraction, but remarkably accentuated re-epithelialisation with the formation of epithelial pegs, conditions that may result in less scarification and may be useful in the management of keloids (Adesina, 2005). Another factor that may contribute to the wound-healing property of ocimum oil is its ability to increase cutaneous capillary permeability (Orafidiya et al., 2005). Anecdotally, some essential oils are used to reduce malodour from infected cancerous wounds in palliative care (Warnke et al., 2005).

Essential oils that have demonstrated considerable fungitoxicity against dermatophyte strains that cause Tinea pedis include those of Melaleuca alternifolia (Maiden and Betche) Cheel, Thymus pulegioides L., Eucalyptus pauciflora Sieber ex Spreng, Cymbopogon citratus (DC ex Nees) Otto Stapf, Chenopodium ambrosioides L., Artemisia nilagirica (Clarke) Pamp., Mentha arvensis L., Ocimum gratissimum L. and Caesulia axillaries Roxb. (Kishore et al., 1993). These essential oils, along with others such as that of Santolina chamaecyparissus L., are equally effective against Candida species that cause cutaneous mycoses; while tea tree oil may also be effective in the treatment of mild-to-moderate dandruff, a condition attributed to the yeast Pityrosporum ovale. The fungicidal activity of essential oils against Trichophyton mentagrophytes and T. rubrum has been shown to be enhanced by heat and sodium chloride. The effect was attributed to increase in mycelial adsorption of antifungal constituents of the essential oils in the presence of sodium chloride while hyphal damage by the oils occurred at 27°C (Inouye et al., 2007). The authors concluded that thermotherapy in combination with essential oils and sodium chloride might be effective in the treatment of Tinea pedis in a foot bath.

Shahi et al. (2000) observed that the essential oil of Eucalyptus pauciflora Sieber ex Spreng showed strong activity against Epidermophyton floccosum, Microsporum audouinii, M. canis, M. gypseum, M. nanum, Trichophyton mentagrophytes, T. rubrum, T. tonsurans and T. violacea, all of which are human pathogenic fungi. A 1% ointment formulation of the oil was tested on patients presenting with either Tinea pedis, T. corporis or T. cruris. At the end of the treatment period, 60% of the patients recovered fully with no relapse 2 months after, while 40% showed significant improvement from the disease. The authors proposed to carry out multicentre clinical trials of the ointment to exploit its commercialisation. Inouye et al. (2006) studied the vapour activity of 72 essential oils against T. mentagrophytes. The oils exhibited potent vapour activity depending on their major components of phenols > aldehydes > alcohols > ketones > esters > ethers/ oxides. Hydrocarbon-rich oils had the weakest activity. A similar pattern of activity was observed when the constituents were tested separately. In general, the antimicrobial activity of most essential oils has been attributed to a variety of monoterpenes or phenolic constituents, e.g. linalool, thymol, carvacrol, terpinen-4-ol, terpineol, eugenol, α-pinene, Δ-3-carene and nerolidol (Tyler et al., 1981).
Studies, including clinical trials, have proved the toxicity of some essential oils and pure constituents to the ova, larva and adults of human ectoparasites indicating prospects of their application as anti-parasitic agents. The utilisation of essential oils as antiparasitic agents may overcome the problem of resistance exhibited by parasites to products currently in use. Essential oils that have shown prospects as pediculocides/ovicides include cinnamon bark (Cinnamomum zeylanicum Blume), lippia (Lippia multiflora Moldenke) and tea tree oils. The vapour phases of these oils have demonstrated higher activity than by direct contact of the oils on the lice, implying that the highly volatile constituents of the oils have stronger pediculocidal activity (Oladimeji et al., 2000, 2005; Yang et al., 2005).

Lippia oil was observed to be more highly effective than Delvap Super (a brand of dichlorvos) concentrate against body lice (Pediculus humani corporis) and head lice (Pediculus humani capitis). While a 10% solution of lippia oil in liquid paraffin exhibited similar activity as the Delvap Super® concentrate, dilutions of the latter were relatively inactive (Oladimeji et al., 2000). Priestley et al. (2006) have reported (+)-terpinen-4-ol as being the most effective against body lice of a series of essential oil constituents studied.

Nerolidol, another essential oil constituent, was highly lethal to eggs of the lice but was ineffective against adult lice. Terpineol and α-pinene kill body lice (Weston et al., 1997) while α- and β-pinene are known insecticides (Windholz, 1983). Lippia oil contains terpineol (2.9%), α-pinene (1%) and β-pinene (4%) which in part, may be responsible for its strong pediculocidal activity (Oladimeji et al., 2000). Walton et al. (2004) found 5% tea tree oil highly more effective, killing mites in a shorter time than conventional drugs used in the treatment of scabies. Terpinen-4-ol, a constituent of the oil, at the concentration (2.1%) at which it is present in 5% tea tree oil was also effective though to a lesser extent than the whole oil. In a clinical trial study, Lippia oil (Lippia multiflora Moldenke) at 20% as an emulsion was more effective than 25% benzyl benzoate emulsion on human subjects suffering from scabies. The preparations, however, needed to be applied consecutively for 5 days to achieve complete cure (Oladimeji et al., 2000). The antimicrobial activity of these two essential oils on microorganisms that cause secondary infections in scabies is an added advantage (Oladimeji et al., 2004).

Leishmania amazonensis, a protozoan that causes cutaneous diseases, is susceptible to essential oils such as the eugenol chemotype ocimum oil, linalool-rich croton (Croton cajucara Benth.) oil and chenopodium (Chenopodium ambrosioides L.) oil as well as to pure eugenol (do Socorro et al., 2003; Monzote et al., 2006; Ueda-Nakamura et al., 2006). Tea tree and eucalyptus oils have anti-viral activity against the herpes simplex virus while some essential oils are used anecdotally to clear plantar warts (Forbes and Schmid, 2006). Koch et al. (2008) studied the in-vitro antiviral activity of some essential oils against herpes simplex virus type 2 (HSV-2) as well as their mode of inhibitory effect. The essential oils, which included hyssop (Hyssopus officinalis L.), thyme (Thymus vulgaris L.), ginger (Zingiber officinale Roscoe) and chamomile (Matricaria recutita L.) oils, were virucidal and they affected HSV-2 mainly before adsorption to cells possibly by interacting with the viral envelope. Chamomile oil was highly effective and demonstrated prospects of a potential topical therapeutic virucidal agent for the treatment of herpes genitalis (Koch et al., 2007). Burke et al. (2004) reported that a once-daily topical application of a 10% solution of Australian lemon myrtle (Backhousia citriodora F. Muell.) essential oil remarkably reduced lesions in children suffering from Molluscum contagiosum, which is a common viral illness of childhood.

Menthol, a constituent of some essential oils, is used in certain hair products as a hair growth stimulator. Although this compound is not a constituent of ocimum oil, the oil has been observed to stimulate hair growth on shaved animals and humans, and to prevent damage to hair and other skin structures caused by the administration of cyclophosphamide, a cancer chemotherapeutic agent (Orafidiya et al., 2003, 2004a, 2004b). Essential oils such as thyme (Thymus vulgaris L.), rosemary (Rosmarinus officinalis L.), lavender (Lavandula angustifolia Mill.) and cedar wood (Juniperus virginiana L.), when used alone, mixed or in conjunction with electromagnetic pulses, have demonstrated the ability to improve alopecia (Bureau et al., 2003).

Systemic studies on the anti-inflammatory activity of many essential oils have demonstrated
their high potential as anti-inflammatory agents. However, there is still a paucity of studies on the anti-inflammatory activity of essential oils on the skin. Koh et al. (2002) reported that neat tea tree oil reduced mean wheal volume but not mean flare area when topically applied on histamine-induced wheal and flare. The oil also reduced erythema and flare caused by nickel-induced contact hypersensitivity in humans. Studies revealed terpinen-4-ol, but not 1,8-cineole or α-terpineol, as modulating the vasodilation and plasma extravasation associated with histamine-induced inflammation in humans (Khalil et al., 2004). The leaf essential oil of Lippia sidoides Cham. exhibited anti-inflammatory properties by significantly reducing ear oedema induced by 12-otetradecanylphorbol 13-acetate (TPA) in mice (Monteiro et al., 2007).

Topical application of products with insect repellent activity is one way of controlling the spread of parasitic diseases for which such insects are vectors. Ocimum oil at 20% is repellent for at least 2 h against blackflies that spread onchocerciasis; and the mosquitoes that spread malaria, filariasis, yellow fever, dengue and mosquito-borne encephalitides (Oyedele et al., 2000; Usip et al., 2006). Vanillin (10%) has been shown to significantly increase the mosquito repellency of the essential oil of Zanthoxylum piperitum (L.) DC (Choochote et al., 2007). Gillij et al. (2008) while studying the mosquito repellency of some essential oils have suggested limonene and camphor as constituents that might be responsible for the repellent effects.

**Toxicity of essential oils**

Toxic manifestations of essential oils may be in the form of damage to internal organs and tissues or externally as allergic reactions, sensitisation or phototoxicity. The manifestation of systemic toxicity may not be due to direct oral administration of the causative essential oil, but may occur from inhalation of the vapour during topical application or through percutaneous absorption in topical preparations. Pulmonary and percutaneous absorption of limonene from sweet orange oil, cold expressed from Citrus aurantium var. sinensis L., Osbeck ex. Brazil, was reported to have occurred during aromatherapy by Fewel et al. (2007). In the pilot study, limonene was detected in blood within 10 minutes of commencing massage. Hayes and Markovic (2003) studied the percutaneous absorption of lemon myrtle (Backhousia citriodora F. Muell.) essential oil. Citral, consisting of isomers geranial and neral, was the only component of the oil that was found to have been absorbed through the skin throughout the 12-hour duration of the experiment. A formulated product of the oil also demonstrated absorption of citral only but elicited lesser damage to epidermal cells than the neat oil. Darben et al. (1998) reported a case of systemic eucalyptus oil toxicity following extensive application of a home remedy containing the oil on the body of a 6-year-old girl while treating urticaria. The girl presented with Slurred speech, ataxia and muscle weakness progressing to unconsciousness. This toxicity would have arisen from percutaneous and possible nasal absorption of the toxic components of the eucalyptus oil. Gynaecomastia has been observed in three prepubertal boys using topical products that contained lavender and tea tree oils. The condition resolved shortly after the use of the products was discontinued. Studies carried out using human cells showed that the two oils had oestrogenic and antiandrogenic activities suggesting that lavender and tea tree oils might be responsible for the gynaecomastia observed in the boys (Henley et al., 2007).

Orafidiya et al. (2004a) observed that ocimum oil demonstrated, in rats, the ability to prevent damage to hair and other skin structures caused by cyclophosphamide at skin sites other than where it was applied. The oil also enhanced hair growth at shaved sites on which it was not directly applied, implying percutaneous absorption of the oil into the circulatory system. Studies on the acute and subchronic toxicity of ocimum oil revealed a dose-dependent weakness, susceptibility to fatigue, sedative and sleep-inducing effects, suggesting that ocimum oil could have sedative and central nervous system depressant activities. Significant increases in the weights of the liver and brain were also observed (Orafidiya et al., 2004c). These effects could be expected to also manifest through extensive topical use of ocimum oil. Weyers and Brodbeck (1989) have shown that 1,8-cineole, the principal component of eucalyptus oil, was bioavailable after topical application. The extent of percutaneous absorption was
enhanced by the use of an occlusive dressing. However, topical application of eucalyptus oil preparations, when properly used, is well tolerated on the skin (Willms et al., 2005). Peppermint oil (Mentha piperita L.) is absorbed through the skin just as it is absorbed in the gastrointestinal tract. Menthol, a constituent of peppermint oil has demonstrated skin-enhancing penetration of other agents (Nair, 2001).

There are many reports of adverse reactions to topically applied essential oils. The effects range from burning sensation to contact dermatitis. The European Council (2003), in the amendment to the European Cosmetics Directive, listed 26 fragrance ingredients whose concentrations in finished cosmetic products should not exceed 0.01% for leave-on products. Included in the lists are cinnamyl alcohol, citral, eugenol, geraniol, linalool, limonene, citronellol and farnesol.

Lavender oil is regarded as one of the mildest essential oils and it is mainly used as a perfume in cosmetics. In-vitro studies using endothelial cells and fibroblasts revealed that this oil is cytotoxic to human skin cells (Prashar et al., 2004). The oil consists mainly of linalyl acetate (51%) and linalool (35%). When tested in their pure forms, linalool’s activity was the same as that of the whole oil, while linalyl acetate demonstrated a cytotoxicity that was higher than that of the neat oil, suggesting that some components of lavender oil suppress activity of linalyl acetate in the whole oil. When lavender oil was applied directly to human skin in a skin patch test, contact allergy was observed. In this study, which was carried out over a period of 9 years, an increase in the number of subjects reacting positively to lavender oil was observed when the use of dried lavender flowers in pillows, drawers, cabinets or rooms became a new fashion in Japan (Sugiura et al., 2000). The authors concluded that the increase in sensitivity to lavender oil was due to its aromatherapy administration rather than to the oil in cosmetic products. The sesquiterpene lactones, costunolide and dehydrocostuslactone, have been identified as the haptens responsible for the allergic contact dermatitis caused by costus (Saussurea lappa C.) essential oil which is used in perfumery. Cheminat et al. (1981) were able to remove these lactones from the oil by binding them to a polymer, aminoethyl-polystyrene. Tests carried out on guinea pigs showed that the animals could be sensitised to the untreated oil but not to the polymer-treated oil. Hence, the polymer could be used to render essential oils non-allergenic.

Tea tree oil causes low allergic contact dermatitis (Fritz et al., 2001). Khanna et al. (2000) reported erythema multiform-like reaction that is secondary to allergic contact dermatitis caused by tea tree oil. Subsequent to this, adverse reactions such as linear immunoglobulin A disease and systemic hypersensitivity reactions were reported (Perrett et al., 2003; Crawford et al., 2004). Mozelsio et al. (2003) have reported the case of an immediate systemic hypersensitivity reaction in a 38-year-old man after topical application of tea tree oil. The man experienced immediate flushing, pruritus, throat constriction and light-headedness. High concentrations of tea tree oil, applied to the round winder of the ear for a relatively short time could be ototoxic to the high-frequency region of the cochlea (Zhang and Robertson, 2000). High doses of tea tree oil used in the treatment of dermatological conditions in dogs and cats resulted in depression, weakness, incoordination and muscle tremors (Villar et al., 1994).

Peppermint oil is currently used in cosmetic formulations as a fragrance since its use as a flavouring agent is being discouraged. The oil has been found to be non-toxic, non-carcinogenic and to produce minimal skin reactions. However, pulegone, one of its constituents, is toxic and its safe concentration in the peppermint oil has been limited to ≤1%. This level could be achieved by controlling the time of harvest of the plant and the processing technique for the oil distillation (Nair, 2001).

There are some allergenic substances that do not elicit any obvious reaction at first exposure but would have sensitised the individual such that subsequent exposures manifest allergic reactions. As an example, the case of a patient with recurring eczema that was resistant to therapy was traced to her previous exposure to some essential oils (lavender, jasmine, etc.), which she had used for over a year in aroma lamps in her home and whose odours persisted even after she had discontinued the therapy. This can be regarded as a case of delayed manifestation of allergic reaction or sensitisation. For this patient, complete renewal of the interior of her flat
was considered essential to the management of the allergy (Schaller and Korting, 1995).

In a study carried out by Rubel et al. (1998), volunteers who initially tested negative to patch testing of tea tree oil reacted strongly to subsequent applications of preparations containing the sesquiterpenoid fractions of the oil. Aromatherapists are highly susceptible to allergic reactions as they are exposed to a wide variety of essential oils, either directly on the hands while massaging or indirectly through inhalation of vapours of the oils. They are, therefore, more exposed to cross sensitisation from multiple essential oils. Bleasel et al. (2002) have reported the case of three aromatherapists and one chemist with interest in aromatherapy, who apart from presenting with hand dermatitis, also exhibited sensitisation to multiple essential oils. Workers exposed to essential oils in factories and plantation fields are equally susceptible to sensitisation effects. The allergic contact dermatitis experienced by myoga (Zingiber mioga [Thunb.] Roscoe) cultivators in Japan has been attributed mainly to R-(+/-)-limonene, one of its volatile constituents, while limonene oxide was found to be a much stronger skin sensitisier than myoga itself (Wei et al., 2006). The main causes of allergic contact dermatitis observed among the staff of a perfume factory were two perfume oils and geraniol, benzaldehyde, cinnamic aldehyde, linalool, neroli oil, terpenes of lemon oil and orange oil which are ingredients of the perfumes (Schubert, 2006). Friedrich et al. (2007) assessed the sensitisation potential of 10 monoterpenes found in essential oils using rat popliteal lymph node assay (PLNA). The monoterpenes: citral, a-terpinene, b-myrcene, (−)-a-pinene, (−)-menthol, 1,8-cineole, (±) citronellal, (±)-limonene, (±) camphor and terpineol, however, proved to be non-sensitisising.

Phototoxicity is a skin reaction caused by concurrent topical or systemic exposure to a susceptible substance and ultraviolet radiation or direct sunlight. The furocoumarin derivatives found in lemon oil (Citrus limonum Risso) and bitter-orange oil (Citrus aurantium L.), in particular oxypeucedanin and bergapten, are known to cause phototoxicity. Oxypeucedanin elicited photopigmentation on guinea pig skin without a preceding visible erythema (Naganuma et al., 1985) while phototoxicity occurred in a subject who had applied bergamot (Citrus bergamia Risso et Poit.) oil on the body and had a session in a solarium (Weisenseel and Woitalla, 2005).

Poorly stored or oxidised essential oils have caused more allergic symptoms than fresh oil samples. They are also implicated in sensitisation and phototoxicity. The allergic reactions to oils rich in terpenes obtained from citrus (Citrus spp.), pine (Pinus sylvestris L.), juniper (Juniperus communis L.), black pepper (Piper nigrum L.), among others, have been attributed to the hydroperoxides found during storage. The peroxides, epoxides and endoperoxides, for example ascaridol and 1,2,4-tri- hydroxymenthane, formed during oxidation of tea tree oil were 3 times stronger in causing skin hypersensitivity than the fresh oil (Hausen et al., 1999; Khanna et al., 2000; Fritz et al., 2001). Ascaridol was found for the first time in tea tree oil in the oxidised samples which were kept in open and closed bottles placed on window sills. Poor storage of the oil by consumers was considered responsible for the development of allergic contact dermatitis seen in persons self-treating with tea tree oil. Orange peel oil was previously thought to be carcinogenic because of d-limonene. However, studies have shown that oxidised compounds derived from d-limonene and other terpenes induced cancer (Homburger and Boger, 1968; Elegbede et al., 1986). D-Limonene, on the other hand, is a chemopreventive agent against mammary, liver, lung and ultraviolet-induced skin cancer (Crowell, 1997; Brudnak, 2006).

A mild burning sensation whose intensity reduced with continuous application of 5% ocimum oil preparation was reported by subjects who were involved in the clinical trials for acne management (Orafidiya et al., 2002). However, when the neat oil was applied directly on shaved skin of rats, the skin wrinkled extensively, giving an appearance of burns, and was subsequently shed. Neat ocimum oil also caused hardening of the skin of rabbits (Orafidiya et al., 2004a). Concurrent administration of essential oils with other drug substances may modify the therapeutic outcomes of the latter as some essential oils have been shown to affect the activity of human cytochrome P450 enzymes, which are major drug-metabolising enzymes in man. Chamomile (Matricaria recutita L.) essential oil has inhibited CYP1A2, CYP3A4, CYP2C9 and CYP2D6 to varying extents.
Chamazulene, cis-spiroether and trans-spiroether, constituents of the oil, were observed to be potent inhibitors of CYP1A2 (Ganzera et al., 2006). Safrole caused potent competitive inhibition of CYP1A2 activity and non-competitive inhibition of CYP2A6 and CYP2E1 activities (Ueng et al., 2005).

Conclusions

Essential oils have found application in the management and treatment of many skin disorders. However, for these potential therapeutic agents to be used as pharmaceutical preparations, more research efforts are required in the area of their formulation, clinical trials and toxicity studies.

References


All products undergo changes, depending on the way that they are stored after they are manufactured, and herbal medicinal products (HMPs) are no exception; the World Health Organization has issued *Guidelines for Assessment of Herbal Remedies* (WHO, 1991), which suggest that all herbal remedies should also be assessed for their stability or shelf-life. However, none of the other guidelines issued by WHO elaborate this aspect, nor is there any guideline which advises on how this is to be done (WHO, 1994, 1998). A document issued by the US Food and Drug Administration (US FDA, 2004) requires submission of stability studies data for botanical drug applications, although no specific and detailed guidance on how such studies are to be performed is given in the document.

The European Medicine Agency (EMEA) has also dealt with this aspect and a few guidelines are understood to be in the draft stage (EMEA, 2006), although it is not expected that any specific guidance of how shelf-life of herbal preparations is to be assessed will be given in this document. In India regulatory requirements for traditional medicines, i.e. Ayurvedic, Unani and Siddha, do not make it mandatory for manufacturers to label the products with an expiry date or shelf-life period. However, in 2006, the government of India issued a draft notification in the *Gazette of India* providing for proposed shelf-lives to be marked on products of Ayurveda, Unani and Siddha systems, which is currently under scrutiny from academia and industry. It is noteworthy that in the *Ayurvedic Formulary of India*, expiry periods within which these products need to be used are specified.

The HMP formulations discussed in this chapter include dosage forms prepared with primarily plant-based raw materials, but may include one or more ingredients from minerals, metals, animal or marine origin. However, recently, formulation of single

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction</th>
<th>Determination of critical parameters and critical points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The need for shelf-life marking of HMPs</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing factors affecting shelf-life of HMP formulations</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficulties in conducting shelf-life studies in HMP formulations</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction**

All products undergo changes, depending on the way that they are stored after they are manufactured, and herbal medicinal products (HMPs) are no exception; the World Health Organization has issued *Guidelines for Assessment of Herbal Remedies* (WHO, 1991), which suggest that all herbal remedies should also be assessed for their stability or shelf-life. However, none of the other guidelines issued by WHO elaborate this aspect, nor is there any guideline which advises on how this is to be done (WHO, 1994, 1998). A document issued by the US Food and Drug Administration (US FDA, 2004) requires submission of stability studies data for botanical drug applications, although no specific and detailed guidance on how such studies are to be performed is given in the document.

The European Medicine Agency (EMEA) has also dealt with this aspect and a few guidelines are understood to be in the draft stage (EMEA, 2006), although it is not expected that any specific guidance of how shelf-life of herbal preparations is to be assessed will be given in this document. In India regulatory requirements for traditional medicines, i.e. Ayurvedic, Unani and Siddha, do not make it mandatory for manufacturers to label the products with an expiry date or shelf-life period. However, in 2006, the government of India issued a draft notification in the *Gazette of India* providing for proposed shelf-lives to be marked on products of Ayurveda, Unani and Siddha systems, which is currently under scrutiny from academia and industry. It is noteworthy that in the *Ayurvedic Formulary of India*, expiry periods within which these products need to be used are specified.

The HMP formulations discussed in this chapter include dosage forms prepared with primarily plant-based raw materials, but may include one or more ingredients from minerals, metals, animal or marine origin. However, recently, formulation of single
herb-based dosage forms has also been started and are included below.

**The need for shelf-life marking of HMPs**

Most of the regulatory bodies in the world do not mandate the printing of shelf-life or expiry date information for HMP formulations, although in recent years there has been a demand by consumers, and suggestions by others, that HMP formulations need to be labelled with an expiry date. However, it is a known fact that many regulators, by habit of reviewing conventional medicines dossiers, ask for such data for HMP formulations as well. These formulations are not based on single chemical entity compounds, and hence evaluation and discussions regarding their shelf-life can be compared easily on similar lines to food products. In such formulations it is extremely difficult to specify an expiry date (a date after which the potency of the actives would be lost or reduced to subpotent levels), so it is preferable to evaluate a ‘best before’ date. This is the date after which one or more properties of the formulations would have shown considerable changes/degradation, perceived by the consumers/patients and leading to doubts about the quality of the formulation and hence its efficacy. An attempt is made here to deal with evaluations for the ‘best before’ date.

**Changing factors affecting shelf-life of HMP formulations**

HMP medicines are used by consumers based on a recommendation/prescription from a traditional medicines practitioner (known by various names according to the culture), or based on informed self-medication in other cases, as for herbal dietary supplements. In the former, the traditional medicines doctor prepared these concoctions of formulations at their ‘pharmacies’, and dispensed in quantities for a week or so at a time, asking the patients to come for a review when the next dose is to be dispensed. In such circumstances, considerations for shelf-life were limited only to short time intervals and modern packaging technologies were not adopted.

However, in modern times, traditional medicines are manufactured in large batch sizes and are packaged and made available to practitioners as well as the public. Technologies are being adopted using modern equipment and processes so that large quantities can be processed, untouched by human hand, yet mimicking the processes prescribed in the traditional books. Many HMP formulations are known to use modern, safe, approved, pharmaceutical aids, i.e. excipients and adoption of modern dosage forms, e.g. tablets and capsules, to improve appeal and to provide unit dosages per serving. In such circumstances, considerations for shelf-life become necessary.

Various factors have an effect on the shelf-life of the formulations, related to manufacturing processes and environmental conditions. The initial quality of the material used is dealt with in Chapters 27 and 28 and it should be remembered that factors such as temperature, light, relative humidity/moisture and exposure to oxygen must be controlled for better shelf-life of the formulation.

Reference to various authentic Ayurvedic texts such as *Sharangdhar Samhita* (Vidyasagar, 1931) reveals that the aspect of shelf-life had been previously recognised. Some of the *Granthis* (Ayurvedic official texts) have given guidance regarding factors that make formulations degrade or become unfit for use and, in some cases, the period from the time from making the preparation to the end of its use is prescribed. This is continued in the *Ayurvedic Formulary of India* (Govt of India, 2003) where a period of 1 year is specified for a simple admixture of powdered herbs for oral or external usages.

Modern technological advances have made it possible to control and regulate various aspects of processing during production so as to minimise or even eliminate the ill-effects of factors affecting shelf-life. These include temperature and humidity in the processing and manufacturing areas, thereby consolidating stability of the formulation during processing and packing.

Advances in design and development of packaging technology have been achieved, so that the requisite barrier properties to build stability of the formulations can be provided, particularly with transportation and storage in mind.

The following factors have a direct bearing on the shelf-life of the formulations:
heat (temperature during storage)
• moisture/humidity (inherent moisture and moisture absorbed during storage)
• exposure to light
• exposure to oxygen (air)
• exposure to microbes (storage in unhygienic packs/conditions and ingress of air into pack).

Formulations need to be carefully studied to select suitable packaging material so that the products are compatible with the materials and retain their original properties. Changes in colour, odour, physical structure, particle size, moisture, viscosity, taste, pH and other physicochemical parameters give evidence of shelf-life of the product.

The use of inert excipients such as stabilisers and preservatives also serves to improve and maintain the stability of the formulations.

Judicious adoption of modern technologies has made it possible for formulations to be given a ‘best before’ date much higher than those applicable to HMPs made by traditional methods.

Difficulties in conducting shelf-life studies in HMP formulations

Until any regulatory authority prescribes or issues widely accepted guidelines for shelf-life studies of HMP formulations, it is best to compare and find the closest categories of products comparable with them. HMPs are different from synthetic, chemical-based conventional medicines so adoption of guidelines used, e.g. ICH (2003), for such is to be avoided. These ICH guidelines largely work on studying kinetics of degradation of known/characterised compounds and their impurities/degradation compounds by adopting sophisticated analytical techniques indicating stability of individual compounds. Elaborate guidance is available regarding storage conditions including challenge conditions for different climatic zones in the world, for accelerated stability studies.

However, HMP formulations do not easily fit into such constraints as they are predominantly poly-herbal and multi-component in nature. The closest category with which they can be compared is food products, as these are also of predominantly vegetal origin. In the case of HMP formulations, just as for foods and food products, the consumer can note degradation signs by apparent changes in appearance, colour, taste, smell, physical aspects and occasionally a combination of one or more of these properties.

However, many aspects of ICH guidelines can definitely be adopted while performing shelf-life studies on HMP formulations. Tables 26.1 and 26.2 show a comparison of physicochemical and quantitative assays for shelf-life studies for single chemical entities versus HMP formulations.

In the absence of ability to test the rate or extent of degradation of a known compound, it may be more appropriate to study other critical parameters in the case of HMP formulations.

**Determination of critical parameters and critical points**

To arrive at a point when a formulation can be considered to have ‘gone off’ and be not suitable for use, it is recommended that studies are conducted before shelf-life studies are initiated. These pre-shelf-life studies are aimed at identifying parameters that are critical to the particular formulation/dosage form and the point at which these parameters show changes, making it unfit for usage. This is done by intentionally exposing the formulation to conditions promoting their degradation and determining the critical parameter and critical point. In many cases a reasonable identification of the critical parameters can be made, while a set of experiments may be required to determine the critical point of such a parameter. A few examples are given below to elaborate this aspect.

**Colour of the formulation:** a change in colour, which would vary considerably from the normal colour of such formulation, raises doubts in the mind of the consumer about the stability of the product. The product may become darker or lighter when exposed to one or more factors such as heat, light and oxygen. It is desirable to confirm if such changes in colour are critical for the particular formulation. Samples of the same formulation may be exposed to higher temperatures, air or direct sun light and changes in colour can be observed. The minimum
### Table 26.1 Comparison of analysability of physicochemical and quantitative assays for shelf-life studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test parameters</th>
<th>For synthetic chemical actives based products</th>
<th>For HMP formulations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Can be measured in some cases where change occurs</td>
<td>Can be measured in most of the cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taste</td>
<td>Difficult to measure</td>
<td>Can be measured discerningly; is a test prescribed by traditional books(^a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colour</td>
<td>May not change always</td>
<td>Changes in most of the cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smell</td>
<td>Difficult to measure</td>
<td>Obvious and can be measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consistency</td>
<td>Can be measured</td>
<td>Can be measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH</td>
<td>Can be measured</td>
<td>Can be measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantitative assays for degradation compounds or impurities</td>
<td>Always possible</td>
<td>Rarely possible, examples of such possibilities not seen in literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quantitative assays</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

\(^a\)For medicated wine dosage forms (e.g., Asavas and Arishatas of Ayurveda) the classical texts declare a product to be unfit for use if it becomes sour. Sour taste development is an indication of conversion of alcohol to acetic acid.

\(^b\)Markers than can be analysed quantitatively may or may not be the bioactive compounds. Data related to dose–response relationship with reference to marker compounds and their percentages are not reported in literature commonly.

### Table 26.2 Comparison of consumer perceptibility of physicochemical changes seen during storage/shelf-life of products

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test parameters</th>
<th>For synthetic chemical actives based products</th>
<th>For HMP formulations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Consumer may not perceive</td>
<td>Generally perceivable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taste</td>
<td>Difficult to measure</td>
<td>Easily perceivable and give great importance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colour</td>
<td>The changes may not be consumer perceptible</td>
<td>Easily perceivable and give great importance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smell</td>
<td>Difficult to measure</td>
<td>Easily perceivable and give great importance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consistency</td>
<td>Can be perceived</td>
<td>Easily perceivable and give great importance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microbial growth</td>
<td>Can be perceived</td>
<td>Easily perceivable and give great importance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
change that can be allowed so as not to be perceived by the consumer as an indication of degradation will become the critical point of colour as a parameter. Changes in colour may be measured by a skilled person or instrumentally, e.g. a Levibound Tintometer, P-fund meter, use of standard colour shade cards or ultraviolet spectrophotometer.

Moisture: this is known to be absorbed by some herbal formulations, converting them to a coherent mass, reducing flowability and causing colour changes. Such absorption actually increases the degradation of the formulation rapidly. For some powdered dosage forms, moisture is a critical parameter and samples of such formulations should be intentionally exposed to high humidity and the moisture content measured at suitable time intervals until the product has absorbed enough water to make it unacceptable. For example Churnas (an Ayurvedic dosage form made of a coarsely powdered blend of herbs) has 3.5% moisture normally, but when their moisture increases to greater than 7–10%, they look different and degradation occurs rapidly. Determination of moisture in these experiments may be done by measuring loss on drying at 105°C or by infrared moisture balance or by Karl Fischer's titration method, depending upon the availability of the facility. Methods given in any of the pharmacopoeias may be adopted for these studies (British Pharmacopoeia 2008; Indian Pharmacopoeia 1996; USP National Formulary, 2004).

Similarly other critical parameters and their critical points need to be determined. Table 26.3 shows a few of the critical points for various dosage forms of HMP formulations.

Once the critical parameters and the point at which they would become the benchmarks for use in the accelerated or the real-time studies are determined, relevant tests on products can be carried out.

**Suggested evaluation methods**

There are two clear objectives of the stability study.

- Is the quality of a product intact for the required period of time irrespective of whatever it is packed in? (Inherent phytochemical stability.)
- Is the selected packaging material capable of protecting the product for the required period of time? (Evaluation of the packaging material.)

Keeping in mind the different needs for shelf-life studies of HMP formulations, three approaches are suggested, depending on the nature of product, i.e. existing product, product in a new packaging or a new formulation.

**Retrospective shelf-life studies**

Any guideline should be applicable to both existing formulations and new formulations (products under development). In many case, manufacturers may have access to control samples/materials from old batches of existing products. Using such products, for which the manufacturer is confident that no intentional/accidental change has occurred in its composition and standards of practice, makes it possible to adopt a ‘cross-sectional approach’ to determine the shelf-life of the products. Such studies are referred to as retrospective shelf-life studies and are a form of real-time study.

**Method**

Samples of existing formulations in their current packaging may be collected from control samples or even from storage. At least three samples of each formulation should be collected from each station covering at least 6 months from their manufacturing dates. These samples may be tested for the critical parameters (see Table 26.3) and any other parameters that the manufacturer may feel necessary for that particular formulation. The results of these tests are compared with results from a freshly manufactured batch of the same formulation, or the specifications for those tests, for deciding the shelf-life.

The following aspects must be recorded in the data of such studies:

- name of formulation
- sample number and packing in which the sample is packed
- batch number, date of manufacture and time elapsed from manufacture (months/years)
- parameters/critical parameters analysed/studied
- specifications/requirements for each of the parameters/critical parameters
- actual results for each of the parameters/critical parameters
- inference of the results and calculation of shelf-life period to be assigned for the product.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Dosage forms for herbal formulations</th>
<th>Critical parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Powdered herbs</td>
<td>Colour, odour, moisture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Pills and compressed tablets</td>
<td>Colour, moisture, DT, hardness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Calcined metallic preparations including those prepared using mercury and sulphur</td>
<td>Colour, moisture, flowability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Metallic preparations</td>
<td>Colour, moisture, flowability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Self-fermented, medicated wines</td>
<td>Colour, moisture, hardness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Semi-solid pasty mass for oral administration</td>
<td>Colour, consistency, separation, smell and taste, appearance, pH, TPC, YMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Preparations made with Guggulu resin</td>
<td>Colour, moisture, hardness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Calcined Iron ore based preparations</td>
<td>Appearance, colour, moisture, particle size, TPC, YMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Preparations of herbalised ghee (clarified butter-based preparations)</td>
<td>Colour, consistency, acid value, peroxide value and smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Medicated oils</td>
<td>Colour, consistency, acid value, peroxide value and smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Distillates of herbs (essential oil distillates)</td>
<td>Colour, pH, content of volatile matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Extracts (infusions/decoctions)</td>
<td>Appearance, colour, physical separation, pH, any specific marker(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Salts/salts left behind after herbs or fruits are incinerated to get ash like substances</td>
<td>Appearance, colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Ointments for external application</td>
<td>Colour, physical separations, cracking, TPC, YMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Liniments</td>
<td>Colour, physical separations, cracking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Concentrated extracts/dry or liquid extracts</td>
<td>Appearance, colour, physical separation, pH, any specific marker(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Products obtained by sublimation process</td>
<td>Colour, moisture, flowability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Fruit pulps fried with oil/ghee to get pasty mass</td>
<td>Colour, consistency, separation, smell and taste, appearance, pH, TPC, YMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Aqueous decoction</td>
<td>Colour, sedimentation, pH, TSS, TPC, YMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Drops for eye, nose and ear administration – may be oily or ghee based or water based</td>
<td>Colour, smell, clarity, pH (acidity and peroxide value where applicable), sterility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Granules for oral administration</td>
<td>Colour, odour, moisture, YMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Inhalers</td>
<td>Weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Compressed tablets with or without coating</td>
<td>Colour, moisture, DT, hardness, TPC, YMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Hard or soft capsules</td>
<td>Moisture, DT, caking of contents, TPC, YMC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Prospective shelf-life studies for new formulations or for formulations in new packaging

An approach of adopting simple quality-assessment parameters, and the methods of testing these parameters as a means of evaluating shelf-life of HMP formulations has been developed by the present authors. This is directly relevant to what a consumer or a patient recognises as a change which shows that a particular HMP formulation is different from what it was expected to be, raising the doubts about the quality of the product. Some would expect HMP formulation also to be studied for their stability using typical pharmaceutical approaches for single chemical entity drugs, where not more than 10% deterioration of the active molecule occurs when it is stored at conditions that the manufacturers decide. This approach is not suggested nor recommended for HMP formulations for the following reasons.

- Formulations are generally polyherbal or herbomineral.
- Formulations, even if based on single herbs are multi-component in terms of chemical constituents.
- Active chemical molecules in the HMP formulations are inadequately known and markers, which are currently used, do not necessarily reflect a true correlation with biological activity.
- Assaying a single marker is against the principle of the holistic approach of therapy of HMP formulations, as it is difficult to pinpoint that the entire health benefit of HMPs is caused by one such compound identified.

As an alternative, it is suggested that the easiest and most practical method to evaluate shelf-life of HMP formulations is to decide requisite conditions and parameters during processing, and conditions during packing as well as a selection of intended packaging materials. The packs are then exposed to challenging conditions with a view to studying the behaviours of the formulations. One to three batches of samples of formulations manufactured using conditions that would be used during manufacturing should be taken for conducting the shelf-life studies. Properly closed, selected packs with one or more intended packaging materials should be also taken and exposed to controlled conditions of temperature, humidity, light and exposure to air. Samples from production batches may also be used for stability studies. If more than one packaging material (with different constructions) or packaging changes are to be studied, portions of the same batch of formulations would need to be packed in each packaging material or pack to get adequate numbers for study. ICH has divided the world into four different zones depending on the climatic conditions: temperature and humidity, so the conditions for storage for various zones as specified in ICH guidelines may be drawn up.

Examples of challenging conditions for storage of packs for accelerated studies include:

- At 45°C ± 2°C.
- At 40°C ± 2°C/75% ± 5% relative humidity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Dosage forms for herbal formulations</th>
<th>Critical parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Modern gel formulations</td>
<td>Appearance, colour, physical separation, pH (content of volatile if present)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Liquid orals like syrups, suspensions</td>
<td>Colour, taste, pH, sedimentation/cracking, TPC, YMC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1: Additional parameters may be selected for particular formulations.
Note 2: Wherever in the above formulation, knowledge of one or more actives and the method of determination of the same are available, the same may be selected as the critical parameters, e.g. menthol content, camphor content, antioxidant activity.
Note 3: Preservative efficacy tests are not included in these guidelines.
Note 4: It may not be necessary to do microbiological tests such as TPC, YMC at all ‘stations of studies’. They may be analysed for TPC/YMC at initial and at selected stations as preservative efficacy studies are done normally at pre-formulations stage.
For comparison purposes one set of samples is stored in a refrigerator (not in the freezer chamber). Samples are to be evaluated on predetermined parameters at 0, 1, 2, 3 and 6 months.

**Real-time studies**

While the above would apply to studies done under accelerated conditions, manufacturers may also conduct real-time studies by keeping the packs of formulations at 30ºC ± 2ºC/65% ± 5% RH for long periods and evaluate them for predetermined parameters. For such real-time studies samples may be evaluated at 0, 3, 6, 12, 18 and 24 months.

**Parameters to be evaluated**

Parameters mentioned in Table 26.4 may be selected for the stability studies on varying formulations depending on the dosage forms, ingredients, stabilisers and preservatives present or absent. A thorough knowledge of the formulations would help

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 26.4 Parameters to be assessed for stability studies of HMP formulations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the identification of parameters that are likely to change or show changes caused by the ill effects of the factors affecting the stability of formulations.

**Accelerated stability studies**

The current guidelines for synthetic chemical-based drugs and formulations adopt accelerated stability studies as a common approach. Most of the regulatory requirements demand accelerated stability data of at least 6 or 9 months from the manufacturers as part of the registration dossier. This approach is valid and scientific, since synthetic drugs usually consist of a single, well-characterised chemical substance. Exposing them to high temperature and humidity and measuring the degraded compounds are not only analytically possible but also provide good information. No national or international regulatory agency has commented on the applicability of accelerated stability studies for HMP formulations. However, it is logical that industry would need to perform accelerated studies, to be able to decide a shelf-life and reduce the time to market. A cautious approach of an accelerated study protocol and studies up to 3–4 months under challenging conditions can still be adopted for HMP formulations. Such short studies would provide possible gross changes that may occur as a measure of good caution.

**Documentation**

Records of all the shelf-life studies need to be maintained. It is necessary to record the batch number of formulations, batch size, date of manufacturing, different packaging materials, packs taken up for studies, condition of exposure for studies, stations at which samples were analysed are recorded. Tests conducted at each time point for formulations and their packs and their actual results obtained are recorded for both formulations and packs. Wherever microbiological tests are to be done, a separate/unopened pack is used. Tests for parameters of assessment can be done from public test houses or other laboratories/research labs. At the end, such data may be tabulated so that conclusions and shelf-life may be assigned, based on data generated.

**Additional approaches**

The above strategy provides a basic framework for assessing, in a systematic way, the shelf-life of the HMP formulations. Wherever possible and practicable, additional techniques such as fingerprinting by TLC and/or HPTLC methods, or testing by HPLC may be done. Such techniques for the presence and absence of marker compounds, qualitatively or quantitatively, may be undertaken by those who wish to do shelf-life evaluation using such technologies. Manufacturers may add their own parameters and methods to further strengthen the guideline.

It is normal to accept that, when comparative HPTLC or HPLC testing is done of samples of HMP formulations from different stations, they should have a comparable chromatographic profile. The word ‘comparable’ here means ‘similar’, though in some cases appearance or absence of one or more additional spots/peaks in a TLC/HPTLC may be seen. In the absence of data, whether these changes in fact affect the bioactivity or the safety profile, it is difficult to make a reasoned conclusion, hence more scientific data need to be generated before prescribing chromatography testing as part of the stability studies requirement.

As an example, amla (*Emblica officinalis*), commonly called ‘Indian gooseberry’, is well known for its antioxidant and immunomodulatory activity and a few commercial dietary supplements are available. These products are either powder of dried fruits or an aqueous extract of the same. Amla is rich in tannins and polyphenols and ascorbic acid, ellagic acid, and other polyphenolic compounds are seen in a TLC test. It is known that exposure of amla to higher temperature in the presence of moisture actually increases the gallic acid content and such samples actually show a higher antioxidant activity when tested by DPPH titrimetric methods. However, despite the changes seen in the chromatographic profile, the product has not shown any change in safety and efficacy historically. Hence adoption of ion chromatographic testing has to be done carefully.

Manufacturers may take another approach in monitoring TLC/HPTLC fingerprinting by including
assays of markers and generation of data, by deter-
moving the extent of bioactivity as a means of
stability testing. Bioactivity of the product against
standard bacterial/fungal strains or in-vitro bioactiv-
ities, including those involving cell lines, also
provides excellent stability data. In fact, studying
biological activity data using validated in-vitro
methods would be an ideal method, though its adopt-
ability by large sections of the HMP industry is in
doubt.

By determining the time required for formula-
tions to degrade to a level of the critical points of
the parameters selected under accelerated condi-
tions, one can assess and extrapolate to ambient
conditions for deciding the ‘best before’ dates for
them. It is obvious that optimisation of packaging
material with shelf-life requirements will need to be
done to achieve the desired shelf-life at an affordable
cost of packaging.

Communication with consumers

Consumers need to be told how to store and handle
HMPs, as well as about their ‘best before’ dates. Such
communications need to be done in a consumer-
friendly form, so that it is well understood by the
user. Information needs to be provided on the inner-
most packaging material in contact with the pack
and on all subsequent packaging materials. In a study
conducted involving the storage conditions given on
the well-regulated pharmaceutical products, the situ-
ation was contrary to this. The language and texts
used by manufacturers on products surveyed showed
a high level of ‘consumer un-friendliness’ and in some
cases even the pharmacists who stored them in their
pharmacies did not understand them correctly
(Narayana et al., 2002).

A small survey on labels of pharmaceutical
formulations also reveals the following different
texts, obviously meant for consumer benefit/
education.

- Sealed for freshness
- Keep away from children
- Replace lid after each use tightly
- Store in cool place
- Store in cool and dry place
- Store in cool, dry place and away from moisture
- Store protected from sunlight
- For external use only
- Keep away from your eyes
- Use before . . . (please see bottom of pack) (Seen
  only on some packs; not very common.)
- Expiry date . . . (please see bottom of pack)
- Shake well before use.

We did not encounter any pack of HMP formulation
requiring or directing the pack to be stored in chilled
or frozen conditions.

Table 26.5 shows meanings of some of the state-
ments generally printed on the labels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text to be printed on the label/wrapper</th>
<th>What it means</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘Do not store over 8ºC’</td>
<td>To be stored in refrigerator (from +2ºC to 8ºC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Do not store over 30ºC’</td>
<td>To be stored at room temperature (from +2ºC to 30ºC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Do not freeze’</td>
<td>To be stored in refrigerator (from +2ºC to 8ºC but not in the freezer chamber)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Store in a cool place’</td>
<td>To be stored at room temperature (from +2ºC to +30ºC, away from exposure to direct sunlight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Protect from moisture’</td>
<td>To be stored in normal humidity at room temperature (RH &lt; 60%), product to be provided by the manufacturers in a moisture-resistant container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Protect from light’</td>
<td>To be stored in light-resistant cupboards/drawers; product to be provided by the manufacturers in light-resistant containers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It is obvious that the consumers may not be able to decipher these directions properly as they cannot be expected to decide the temperatures that meet the terms ‘cool’ or ‘cold’. Nor can they be expected to fully understand the terms such as ‘keep away from moisture’ or ‘protect from sunlight’. Even if some consumers are able to do so, they are not equipped to achieve them by way of proper packaging, if manufacturers have not provided such packaging. The publication *Good Storage Practices for Pharmaceutical Substances* (WHO, 2003) has dealt with this aspect and provided fairly clear, consumer-friendly guidelines for labelling related to storage aspects of medicines. It puts the onus of providing proper packages to achieve storage for protection from moisture, as well as storage for protection from sunlight, on the manufacturer, who has to provide such products in packs which can achieve such storage.

**Labelling**

Packs of formulations need to be labelled in a manner that is easily understood by consumers as well as wholesale and retail personnel. Drawing from the above document from WHO, this would be broadly applicable to HMP formulations as well. The following statements are hence recommended for use on labels, wrappers and other printed packaging materials for HMP formulations also. In addition to the storage guides, it is necessary to specify the ‘best before’ date suitably. These dates would then mean that the HMP formulations are not recommended to be used after this date. The exact way this needs to be done can be by giving the ‘month and year’ as the use before dates or can also be given as ‘. . . months from manufacturing for use’.

**Conclusions**

There is a strong case to be made for more systematic shelf-life studies to be carried out and also for more open publications of data made available by industrial companies. Such shelf studies would benefit from a cross-functional team of scientists expert in the chemistry of natural products, analytical science and biological science.

**References**


Part 4

Evaluation of quality and safety
Introduction

The tremendous increase in interest in the use of herbal drugs over the past decade has led to an increased desire to subject these drugs to scientific evaluation, to determine their true potential as medicinal agents in modern healthcare. Numerous national and international organisations and initiatives such as those by the American Herbal Pharmacopoeia (AHP), European Pharmacopoeia (EP), European Scientific Cooperative on Phytotherapy (ESCOP), United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA), Office of Dietary Supplements (ODS), US Pharmacopoeia (USP), and World Health Organization (WHO) are working to ensure that herbal drugs are subjected to critical scientific review (see Table 27.1). Additionally, there are increased funding opportunities for the evaluation of herbal drugs (e.g. National Institutes of Health and National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine in the US).

Such trials require complete characterisation of the raw materials and finished product of the herbal drug being investigated to ensure its identity, purity, quality, consistency, and reproducibility (Table 27.2). Without such knowledge, the findings of any clinical trial will be subject to question as well as be irreproducible. Testing methodologies that are applied to medicinal plants include botanical, macroscopic, microscopic, chemical and molecular methods of testing, which provide analytical tools that can be used for full botanical product characterisation. Each testing methodology has advantages and disadvantages and has specific application for assessing a particular aspect of herbal product quality that will vary from herb to herb. Most often it is best to use both physical and chemical methods of assessment.

A key principle in choosing the appropriate tests is to ensure that the methodology has a sufficient degree of specificity for the desired analytical endpoint. Additionally, herbal product quality is neither dependent upon the presence of chemical
marker compounds alone, as is often done in clinical investigations of herbal drugs, nor can herbal product quality be assessed by chemical means alone. Rather herbal quality is very much dependent upon growing, harvesting and processing conditions, the application of good manufacturing practices (GMP) in the manufacture of the actual product, and a host of other considerations. The need for a comprehensive approach to herbal assessment has not been a focus in the herbal trade in North America but has been given considerable attention in Europe, with many European Union countries being much more advanced and sophisticated in their approach to herbal medicine than the US.

### Table 27.1 Organisations and resources contributing to scientific knowledge on medicinal plants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organisation</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>American Herbal Pharmacopoeia</td>
<td><a href="http://www.herbal-ahp.org">http://www.herbal-ahp.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Herbal Products Association</td>
<td><a href="http://www.ahpa.org">http://www.ahpa.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOAC International</td>
<td><a href="http://www.aoac.org">http://www.aoac.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ayurvedic Pharmacopoeia: Government of India, Ministry of Health and Family</td>
<td>Questions &amp; Answers for the Identification of Herbal Materials and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensuring Raw Material Quality and Safety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>European Scientific Cooperative on Phytomedicines (ESCOP):</td>
<td><a href="http://www.escop.com/">http://www.escop.com/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>European Medicines Agency (EMEA)</td>
<td><a href="http://www.emea.eu.int/index/index1.htm">http://www.emea.eu.int/index/index1.htm</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPMP/QWP/2819/00 (EMEA/CVMP/814/00) Note for Guidance on Quality of Herbal</td>
<td><a href="http://www.emea.eu.int/pdfs/human/qwp/281900en.pdf">http://www.emea.eu.int/pdfs/human/qwp/281900en.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medicinal Products (CPMP/CVMP adopted July 01):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test procedures and Acceptance Criteria for Herbal Drugs, Herbal Drug</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparations and Herbal Medicinal Products (CPMP/CVMP adopted July 01):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health Canada Natural Health Products Regulations</td>
<td><a href="http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/hpfb-dgpsa/nhpdp-dpsn/regs_cg2_tc_e.html">http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/hpfb-dgpsa/nhpdp-dpsn/regs_cg2_tc_e.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingredient Identity Testing records and Retention</td>
<td><a href="http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/facgmp.html">http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/~dms/facgmp.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Pharmacopoeias: e.g. Japan</td>
<td><a href="http://jpdb.nih.go.jp/jp14e/">http://jpdb.nih.go.jp/jp14e/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welfare NSF International</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saskatchewan Herb and Spice Association and the National Herb and Spice</td>
<td>Good Practices for Plant Identification for the Herbal Industry:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacturing, Packing, or Holding Dietary Ingredients and Dietary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplements:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Accepted standards for herbal products are collated in monographs in pharmacopoeias which identify, assess for purity and usually also give some quantitative standard for the drug in question (see Chapter 1). The tests described below deal primarily with techniques and approaches used for identity tests, i.e. verifying that the herbal material is what it is claimed to be.

**Botanical drug versus drug from botanical**

The unique differences of herbal drugs present unique challenges in establishing the identity, quality, and consistency of efficacy of herbal drugs – requirements of all medicinal compounds. The differentiation of conventional and herbal drugs can be minimally considered from regulatory, economic, and technical perspectives.

Internationally, most nations regulate herbal medicines as ‘traditional medicines’, applying an approval criteria that is much less onerous and expensive than the approval of conventional drugs. This is due to the long history of use of traditional medicines, the historical record of safety and efficacy, and the long-standing presence of herbal preparations in the public domain. This is in contrast to most conventional medications, which have not been in the public domain and for which little, or no historical data regarding safety or efficacy exist.

Economically, the cost of development and/or approval of traditional medicines is much less than for conventional drugs. There is also a greater degree of patent protection typically offered for the often novel compounds of modern pharmaceuticals rather than those in the public domain. The costs associated with drug approval differ from nation to nation and substance to substance. As a point of reference, in the US, the cost for conventional drug development has been estimated at a staggering US$802 million (DiMasi et al., 2003) to US$1.7 billion per single drug (Crawford, 2004). As the US has no traditional medicines or natural health product regulatory model, no cost can be estimated for approval of a traditional herbal drug.

In the European Union (EU), unofficial estimates for the approval of a new active substance as of 2006 is €62 300. For approval of a known active substance, including an herbal drug, it is €17 700. Currently, the new EU traditional medicines regulations are too new for an accurate estimate of approval of a traditional drug. However, this has been estimated to be approximately €5000–10 000

### Table 27.2 Botanical characterisation requirements of the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plant identification</td>
<td>Identify to genus/species including botanical authority, reference to archived voucher including botanical expert who identified; harvest information, compliance with WHO or other guidelines for wild material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplier</td>
<td>Name and contact information for supplier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adherence to independent standard</td>
<td>Compliance with pharmacopoeial monograph (e.g. AHP, EP, USP, WHO), justification for deviating from a monograph, or a description of suitable tests performed specific to the botanical study material; comparison against an authenticated reference material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macroscopic description</td>
<td>Physical characteristics of plant part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product specifications</td>
<td>Characterisation of extraction conditions, starting extract, and finished product: e.g. solvent used, herb to extract ratio, excipients and % excipients, markers for standardisation, chemical fingerprint to the extent allowed by current science including method, contaminant analysis, e.g. heavy metal, microbial; identification of process controls to assure consistency of product; stability, disintegration, dissolution, bioavailability (if known), assurance of batch to batch reproducibility, analytical guidelines for testing during course of study and information on matching placebo, if applicable; availability of retention samples for future testing if desired</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
From a technical perspective, generally speaking, conventional drugs are well characterised, typically consisting of single ingredient preparations (e.g. morphine from the opium poppy) in which the composition, pharmacokinetics, pharmacology, dosage, safety, quality control requirements, etc., are well known. In contrast these parameters are seldom known for botanicals as the active compound(s) are often not known, multiple species of plants may be used as the same medicine (e.g. Radix Rheum), there is inherent natural variability in raw botanical materials that can only be partially controlled for, and different manufacturers will manufacture by different parameters resulting in varying constituent profiles and varying levels of efficacy.

Moreover, the majority of herbal practitioners worldwide utilise combinations of botanicals (consisting of 2–45 different botanicals), each with dozens or hundreds of constituents, the individual activity of which, from a Western biomedical perspective, has not been investigated, let alone the activity of the combination of compounds. While the safety and use of many traditionally used herbal preparations are well understood by traditional herbalists, such preparations defy conformity to testing and characterisation requirements applied to modern single-entity drugs.

It is equally important to note what does not constitute a traditional medicine. Multiple definitions for traditional medicines exist internationally (see Box 27.1). Generally speaking, crude plant materials and relatively crude herbal preparations, also often referred to as Galenic preparations, that have been used historically, and which do not contain chemically defined or isolated chemical compounds, may be classified as traditional medicines.

**Physical identification and quality assessment tests**

Skilled physical assessment of a plant part is one of the most effective means for determining the identity and relative quality of a medicinal plant part and has been utilised for many centuries, e.g. by Dioscorides in classical Greek medicine (Riddle, 1985) and in Ayurvedic medicine (Kaviratna and Sharma, 1996). Coupled with appropriate chemical characterisation these two methodologies allow for a relatively complete characterisation of an herbal drug. The greatest limitation of physical assessment is its relative inappropriateness for evaluating material that has been extracted, as the structural characteristics of extracted botanicals are not present. The only physical assessment of herbal extracts that can be performed is an organoleptic analysis, which can provide indicators to identity and quality, but is less than definitive.

**Botanical identification**

Accurate identification of botanicals for use in herbal medicines is both a fundamental and regulatory requirement. Botanical identification is the primary means by which a plant is accurately identified and must be done by someone with the requisite skills, ideally a formally trained botanist. From earliest times until the mid-19th century much attention was given to plant identification, specifically so that adulterations could be avoided. The very early works suffered botanically because of the relative infancy of botany as a science, but the later works were drawn with exquisite detail, providing medical professionals

---

**Box 27.1 World Health Organization definition of a traditional medicine**

‘Finished, labeled medicinal products that contain as active ingredients aerial or underground parts of plants, or other plant material, or combination thereof, whether in the crude state as plant preparations. Plant material also includes juices, gums, fatty oils, essential oils, and any other substances of this nature. Herbal medicines may contain excipients in addition to active ingredients. Medicines containing plant material combined with chemically-defined active substances, including isolated constituents of plants, are not to be considered herbal medicines.’
with a relatively high degree of accuracy to ensure the identity of their materia medica.

Unfortunately, in the present medicinal herb trade, botanicals are seldom subjected to direct identification by a trained botanist but are gathered either by wildcrafters who, by experience, believe they are gathering the correct botanical, or are cultivated by farmers who purchase seeds from suppliers they believe to be reputable. In both cases documentation regarding an appropriate assessment is often lacking and therefore, not documentable. Additionally, medicinal plants are traded as plant parts after harvest and processing, often lacking the flowers, typically critical for making a definitive botanical identification. The lack of formal botanical identification can lead to adulteration, sometimes with dire consequences, since toxic herbs are sometimes substituted for those that are non-toxic (e.g. Aristolochia fang ji for Stephania tetrandra).

Identification of botanicals to be used medicinally should be made either in their native habitat when flowering or at the source of cultivation. Alternatively a representative of the plant population is identified by comparison with a botanical voucher (a pressing of the plant with characteristic identifiers). Vouchers should be properly archived in a herbarium in case future reference to the specimen must be made, such as if a question arose about the accuracy of the identification. Without a botanical documentation trail, the identity of the botanical used in a study or product will always be in question.

There are advantages and disadvantages of only using botany in the identification and quality assessment of medicinal plants. The primary advantage is that there is a plethora of botanical keys in floras clearly articulating the unique identifying characteristics of the plant species, so that a definitive identification to genus, species and subspecies can be made. Botany can only be applied in the medicinal plant trade for identification purposes and, unless the botanist is also trained in principles of commercial sourcing or traditional herbal practices, they may not know that a plant is ideally picked at a specific time of year, might have to be a certain age before being used or needs to be processed in a certain way. Botanists may not be familiar with changes with age in the cellular structures and organoleptic qualities.

Familiarity with these subtleties of herb quality is critically important if using botany as the primary identification tool for the subsequent physical and chemical characteristic of plant parts and should ideally be coupled with knowledge about proper harvesting and initial processing guidelines. There are some plant genera, such as Crataegus and Salix that can be extremely difficult for even trained botanists to identify to species definitively. In such cases, and especially when potentially toxic compounds or adulterants may be present, chemical testing for those compounds or chemical fingerprinting should be employed as a complementary verification.

Harvest and post-harvest conditions

In addition to appropriate botanical identification, botanicals must be harvested at the proper time. Herbalists historically adhered to such principles and many of these principles continue to be adhered to by professional herbal wildcrafters. However, where herbs are grown industrially, greater consideration is often given to commercial issues, such as time of increased biomass, or maximum yield of specific marker compounds, which may or may not relate to ‘quality’ or efficacy.

After optimal harvest times, post-harvest processing such as washing, drying, initial processing, and storage is most critical in ensuring the quality of a botanical drug. For example, the activity of valerian root (Valeriana officinalis) is predominantly found in the essential oil, partially associated with valerenic acid content, and contained within cells that are highly concentrated at the surface of the rhizome (Bos, 1997). If subjected to inappropriate handling these cells are damaged, thus exposing the valerenic acid to oxidation and therefore a decrease in essential oil yield. Valerenic acid is also subject to degradation at drying temperatures in excess of 45°C (Samuelsson, 1992; Bos, 1997). Therefore, post-harvest conditions for medicinal plants should be controlled for and documented as a quality control parameter. This is seldom done in the medicinal herb trade.

Macroscopic characterisation

After botanical identification, macroscopic assessment is an effective tool for determining identity of
plant material. Macroscopic evaluation is an assessment of the plant material, either with the naked eye or with simple magnification such as with a hand lens or stereomicroscope. It typically includes gross morphological characteristics including colour, form, size, texture, and fracture (how the plant part breaks; usually associated with roots and barks) along with the plant’s organoleptic characteristics (taste, aroma, quality). Similar species of plants can share similar morphological characteristics and so appropriate training is needed to acquire macroscopic identification skills.

Early texts, e.g. by Wallis and Greenish (UK), and Sayer and Youngken (US) provided a tremendous amount of information about these characteristics of medicinal plants which were in international trade, but it should be noted that many widely used contemporary herbal drugs were not included in these texts. Emphasis of macroscopy has been almost completely discarded in relatively modern texts of pharmacognosy (e.g. Tyler et al., 1988) and its use in identification is now rare in North America where trade of powdered material is predominant, but important in other parts of the world, e.g. traditional Chinese herbs.

Macroscopic examination also allows for a relative qualitative assessment of adulterating species, filth, organic and non-organic contaminants, and material degradation is readily observed. This is in contrast to powders that do not allow for such an assessment. It should also be noted that when plants are retained in as whole a form as possible they generally retain their potency as less surface area is exposed to air, heat, and light.

### Microscopic characterisation

Botanical microscopy was also once an integral part of pharmacognosy training and is currently in a rapid decline, not only because of the over-reliance on chemistry, but also because of the lack of skilled personnel familiar with the techniques. Microscopy of medicinal plants focused on the observation of the cellular structures, and their content, of plant material by use of a compound microscope.

Today, electron microscopy is also used, predominantly for investigative purposes, but it is not readily applied for analysis of medicinal plants in commercial trade. For a period of time in the late 1800s to middle 1900s microscopy was one of the most utilised techniques for the identification of plant parts and purity assessment and, when properly performed, can be used to identify plant parts to genus and species and detect adulterating matter such as other organic and non-organic matter, insect fragments, and in some cases, deteriorated materials.

In their relatively whole form, many plant parts possess a uniquely characteristic arrangement of cells that give the plant its unique identifiable characteristics. Once powdered, the arrangement of the cells, thus the plant part’s unique characteristics, are lost and, in some cases, even diagnostic cell structures are destroyed (Houghton, 1998). Microscopy can be applied to powders but many similar plant parts will share the same cellular structures making identification of actual species difficult or impossible.

Advantages of microscopy include the inability to identify powders with definitiveness; less of an ability to perform a qualitative purity assessment as compared with macroscopic evaluation; a lack of appropriately trained personnel; and a general lack of appropriate keys and reference texts to which to refer.

### Botanical reference standards

Physical assessment of botanicals is ideally performed using a botanical reference standard. A standard for the medicinal plant part of interest has its identity, purity and/or quality independently determined and may comprise whole, fragmented or powdered material. It should be as consistent as possible with material in commercial trade and, ideally, chemically characterised to reflect a minimum quality standard as established by appropriate pharmacopoeias, or as reflected in the historical or clinical literature.

Using such a standard, other commercial samples can be compared for consistency either physically or
chemically and this can greatly increase the accuracy of a physical or chemical examination of a test sample. Many pharmacopoeias provide such standards for those botanicals for which pharmacopoeial monographs exist. Analysts using botanical reference standards should know the means by which identity, purity and/or quality of the reference standard were ascertained and whether or not the reference material can be used for both qualitative (identification) and quantitative (constituent concentration) purposes.

Chemical characterisation

Since the turn of the 19th century, chemical detection, identification, elucidation, isolation, and synthesis have dominated as an analytical technique in the development of modern medicines. Chemistry has also been extensively applied to medicinal plant characterisation, so that modern pharmacognosists are almost completely chemical in orientation and almost completely lacking in the physical skills so prevalent in earlier generations.

Chemical characterisation is an important technique in determining absolute concentrations of particular compounds, assessing relative consistency of products, and in some cases, determining plant identity and detecting adulterants. Many plants contain unique sets of compounds in characteristic ratios that can allow for the differentiation of even closely related species (e.g. *Echinacea*) (Bauer and Tittel, 1996) and even different plant parts of the same plant (e.g. *Panax quinquefolium*) (Ma *et al.*, 1998).

Chemistry is especially useful when specific active compounds of a plant are known or if a product is to be standardised to a particular compound for quality control purposes. Chemical analysis can be applied to determine optimum harvesting, drying, processing and extracting conditions, stability, and batch-to-batch consistency, and can provide a relatively objective tool for quality-control documentation. There are many different techniques that can be applied, ranging from simple colorimetric tests to sophisticated chromatography (see below). However, chemical analysis without physical assessment (botanical, macroscopic, or microscopic) has its limitations since alone it often will not be able to determine the identity of a plant so definitively as physical assessment. This is because there are some closely related species and different plant parts of the same plant that share remarkably similar chemical profiles, so they that cannot be easily differentiated.

Chemistry alone often cannot be used to make a qualitative assessment of a plant part, e.g. an immature fruit can have a similar chemical profile as an appropriately ripe fruit (e.g. *Crataegus* berries). Organic and inorganic impurities cannot be readily detected chemically but they can physically. Chemical tests can also oftentimes be easily fooled by adding pure compounds to medicinal plants to increase the yield of a particular compound or group of compounds, e.g. *Ginkgo biloba* extract often has pure flavonoids (e.g. rutin and quercetin) added to increase flavonol glycoside concentration (Xie, 2002).

A key challenge in all types of chemical evaluation is in the interpretation of the analytical data. Plants and plant products can vary greatly in their constituent profile despite all the best efforts of growers and manufacturers to standardise all processes, so the absence or presence of key compounds and their varying levels or ratios may only tell part of the story of the medicinal efficacy of the plant.

Chemical analysis is very expensive relative to physical testing methodologies, and by its very nature, is not an environmentally sound technique, since it requires the use of highly toxic solvents and reagents. Use of such compounds, and the negative impact they have on the environment, are inconsistent with the philosophy of a large segment of the population who chooses natural medicines over synthetic. This is a point often not realised or considered in the medicinal plant trade. As noted, in most cases, the combination of both physical and chemical tests is ideal for the identity and qualitative assessment of medicinal plants.

Colorimetric tests

In the early development of chemical testing, colorimetric tests, where a reagent applied to a test material produces a consistent colour reaction, were commonly used. For example, Chinese star anise *Illicium verum* is often adulterated with Japanese star anise *I. anisatum*. When boiled in dilute potassium hydroxide solution, Chinese star anise produces a
blood-red colour reaction while the adulterating Japanese star anise produces a yellowish-brown colour reaction (Youngken, 1930). The predicted colour reaction provides a confirmatory piece of evidence to determine identity. Colorimetric tests are generally very easy to perform and are cost-effective, but are usually specific to groups of compounds rather than individual species of plants so can be used as an indicator of identity but not for making a definitive identification.

**Thin-layer chromatography and high-performance thin-layer chromatography**

Thin-layer chromatography (TLC) assessment was among the earliest of chemical methods applied to medicinal plants. With it, characteristic chemical fingerprints can be developed that represent the identity and relative quality of a medicinal plant. As an analytical technique, TLC has been far overshadowed by other, more specific analytical methodologies, such as high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) with a prevailing perception of a superiority of specific methods over TLC. Many chemists remain unaware of the value of modern high-performance TLC (HPTLC) technologies in the assessment of medicinal plants. In recent years, increasing levels of sophistication have been applied to TLC, including higher-quality silica plates, automatic application and plate development equipment, the ability to perform quantitative analyses, and documentation systems with automated software interfaces.

The most important consideration regarding TLC or HPTLC as an analytical technique is to recognise the technique as another tool, with both advantages and disadvantages, available to the medicinal plant analyst. Many analysts believe TLC to be among the most valuable and versatile tool for chemical assessment of medicinal plants. The primary advantage of HPTLC is the relatively inexpensive cost in comparison with more specific analytical techniques. Another advantage is that much more chemical profiling information can be obtained from a single run using HPTLC than with many other methods, because of the ability to utilise a variety of detection methods which gives a multidimensional profile of a plant, compared with the typical single-dimensional chromatogram of HPLC. Additionally, up to 20 samples of the same or different botanicals can be assayed in a single analytical run, whereas with HPLC only one sample at a time can be assayed.

Disadvantages of HPTLC include those that exist with most chemical methods, i.e. that they will often not detect foreign organic or inorganic matter, cannot provide a non-chemical assessment of quality, and are relatively environmentally unsound because of the need for large amounts of chemical solvents and reagents. Additionally, while HPTLC can be used for the quantitation of specific compounds, other, more specific methods of quantitation such as HPLC are more accurate in this regard for quantitation, although in some cases, limits for detecting the presence of compounds may be more sensitive with HPTLC.

**Quantitative analytical methods**

Spectrophotometric and chromatographic (especially HPLC and gas chromatography [GC]) are the primary analytical tools for quantifying specific compounds in a substance. Spectrophotometric methods generally lack specificity and can be used for quantifying groups of similarly related structures such as proanthocyanidins in bilberry (*Vaccinium myrtillus*) or the hypericins (hypericin and pseudohypericin analysed collectively) in St John’s wort.

Other spectrophotometric techniques such as Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (FTIR) are also applied to medicinal plant analysis, since some botanical FTIR patterns will be characteristic, although in many others there is too much interference to give a distinguishing fingerprint. As the activity of many botanicals is often associated with groups of compounds, photometric analysis may provide a more representative picture of the composition of certain medicinal plants than more specific methods. They generally lack the specificity needed if analysis of an individual compound is required.

GC is specifically useful in the analysis of essential oil-rich materials and has a tremendous amount of analytical power to separate hundreds of closely related compounds when great specificity is required.

In the American and European herbal trade, individual active or marker compounds are typically tested for, often mimicking the Western conventional drug model. HPLC is the technique most often applied in the North American herb trade to quantify individual compounds. Both HPLC and GC can also
be applied to quantify multiple compounds. In Asia, these techniques are as much applied with a focus of obtaining a characteristic chemical fingerprint or profile, as they are for quantitative purposes. This is in recognition of the fact that the activity of a medicinal plant is very seldom correlated with a single constituent. In addition, with chemical fingerprinting, attention is given to specific ratios that may help in differentiating closely related species or detecting adulterations. Such fingerprint analysis allows for broader assessment of identification and quality than the identification of a single marker compound, which cannot be used to determine identity and can only partially be used to assess quality.

Quantitative methods of analysis are best employed when there is a specific analyte of interest, such as an active or surrogate marker. HPLC and GC specifically can yield more accurate data regarding concentrations of compounds contained within a plant than non-specific methods and can be powerful tools for assessing consistency of a product. Their most significant disadvantage is that they seldom can be used to establish the identity of a plant ingredient definitively, although they can help to determine the identity of the plant material. The equipment needed is also relatively expensive to purchase and run and can only analyse one sample at a time, so there is slow output compared with some of the other methods described. Lastly, there are very few, well-validated HPLC methods for medicinal plants. Different laboratories performing different analyses of exactly the same sample, using the same testing parameters, can produce widely different results.

**Chemical reference standards**

Chemical assessment of botanicals most often includes or requires the use of a pure chemical reference standard, such as hypericin for the analysis of St John’s wort. Chemical reference standards are typically individual compounds that ideally have the highest degree of characterisation and purity as is practically possible. Chemical reference standards are available from commercial suppliers (e.g. Chromadex, US and Phytolab-Addipharma, Germany), from pharmacopoeial sources (e.g. American Herbal Pharmacopoeia or European Pharmacopoeia), or from government sources (e.g. National Institute for Standards Testing, US).

For the results of quantitative analyses to be considered valid, the purity of the reference standard(s) used must be accurately disclosed. Many commercial suppliers of reference standards do not accurately disclose either the purity of the standards or the manner in which purity was determined. Often, standards purity is determined using methods that are not optimal for purity assessment, such as TLC. Use of inaccurately characterised standards will yield varied quantitative values that will skew the results of testing. Those involved in the analysis of medicinal plants must ensure that the identity and purity of the chemical reference standards used are accurately disclosed.

**Conclusions**

Each of the analytical techniques described has advantages and disadvantages regarding their technical applicability, cost and environmental impact. In most cases, a combination of physical and chemical tests is needed for a complete identity and quality assessment of botanical drugs, which is a minimal requirement for all botanical products. Physical and chemical assessments typically require quality control personnel consisting of those with requisite training in botany, pharmacognosy, traditional herbal practices, microscopy and chemistry. The tests applied must have a great enough degree of specificity for the intended analytical endpoint.

In most cases, use of authenticated botanical and chemical reference standards is either required or can greatly increase the accuracy of both identification and qualitative assessment. Each of the methods discussed should be applied, as appropriate, to the assessment of herbal products, either if used as dietary supplements or medicines. There is a legal and ethical responsibility of manufacturers for ensuring the identity, purity, and relative quality of herbal products and the tools presented above can be used for these purposes.

Ultimately, well-characterised herbal medicine products must be subjected to appropriate preclinical and clinical testing to determine what analytes are most correlated with efficacy, which will then provide guidance as to the most appropriate analytical methods to be applied to individual medicinal plants.
References


In recent decades, traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) has become very popular in Western countries. However, incidents such as the cases of nephropathy after consumption of adulterated Chinese herbs in Belgium have reinforced the requests for enhanced quality and safety control of these preparations.

Apart from the implementation of good agricultural practice (GAP), good sourcing practice (GSP) and good manufacturing practice (GMP) rules in cultivation, harvesting and processing, analytical methods have to be adapted to the special needs of TCM preparations. Great scientific effort has been made in the past few years to develop methods for correct authentication, detection of contaminants and quality assurance.

Authentication of Chinese medicinal herbs is crucial as, on the one hand, nomenclature is not always consistent and one common name can refer to different drugs in different geographical regions, but, on the other hand expensive and scarce drugs are sometimes substituted with cheaper ones. The most common authentication methods are macroscopic and microscopic analysis and chromatographic methods such as thin-layer chromatography (TLC), high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), gas chromatography (GC) and capillary electrophoresis (CE). More recently, DNA-related techniques have increasingly been used.

Many problems of contamination are similar to those concerning herbal drugs in Europe, e.g. microbial contamination, pesticide and heavy metal residues. A special problem occurring in TCM preparations is adulteration with synthetic drugs. These adulterations are most often detected by GC, HPLC and hyphenated techniques, but because of the big variety of possible adulterations, their reliable detection is critical.

For quality assurance, mainly chromatographic techniques such as TLC, HPLC, CE and GC are used and hyphenation with detection methods such as ultraviolet, diode array detection (DAD), mass spectrometry (MS) or evaporative light scattering detection (ELSD) are very common. Apart from analysis of markers and biomarkers, fingerprint analysis is increasingly applied, as it has been shown to be
feasible for the analysis of very complex mixtures. For a meaningful fingerprint analysis, combination with chemometric methods has proven to be useful.

Background

Traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) has its origin at the beginning of civilisation in China. The first written documents dealing with the effort to cure diseases in China date from the Shang dynasty (2nd millennium BC). Over the centuries, the medical system developed in an empirical manner through observation of effects a treatment produced on specific ailments and on certain parts of the body (Siow et al., 2005).

In contrast with other traditional medical systems, TCM has always been regarded as a science, and it has been taught at medical schools for more than 2000 years.

TCM herbs

In total, more than 6000 medicinal plants are known in herbal medicine in China. Approximately 300–500 of them are currently used regularly in TCM (Dobos et al., 2005). Herbs contained in a prescription are mainly classified according to four categories:

- The major one is called ‘chief’ or emperor (Zhing), containing the bioactive components.
- The minor ones are classified as ‘adjuvant’ or ‘minister’ (Chen), providing support for the major herb or alleviating secondary disease symptoms.
- The helper-like herbs are known as ‘assistant’ (Zhou). They modulate the action of the emperor herb (enhance activity, alleviate secondary symptoms or counteract adverse effects of the prescription).
- The additive herbs or ‘guides’ are called Shi in Chinese. They direct the action of the other herbs towards specific parts of the body. Each property may be represented by several herbs in the mixture (Cheng, 2000). A TCM prescription usually consists of 2–10 herbs, in differing quantities.

The pharmacological classification of TCM herbs strongly differs from Western understanding: first, the physical properties of an herb such as colour or taste can be linked to the theory of Five Phases. Second, the herbs are classified according to four properties: cold, hot, warm and cool (Su-Chi). Furthermore a herb can be classified by direction of its action: ascending (sheng), descending (jiang), floating (fu) and sinking (chen). The direction is also connected to the Su-Chi and the Woo-Wei theory: Herbs with acrid and sweet taste and warm to hot properties are mostly ascending and floating in action, whereas herbs with bitter, sour and salty tastes and cool to cold properties are mostly sinking and descending in action (see also Chapter 4).

TCM in Western countries

In recent decades, the acceptance of TCM as a form of complementary and alternative medicine has strongly increased in Europe and North America. However, contrary to China, where the education of TCM physicians and pharmacists is standardised by law, clear legal regulations on this issue are still missing in most Western countries. The legal status of herbal TCM drugs which are sold in China as over-the-counter drugs in specialised pharmacies or as prescription medicines, differs from country to country in the West.

In the USA, TCM herbs are generally classified as dietary supplements and not as conventional drugs. They have to comply with the Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act (DSHEA), which regulates statements and claims on product labels and prohibits misbranding and adulteration of dietary supplements.

In Germany, all Chinese herbs which are considered as drugs have to be sold in pharmacies and fall under the same legislation as conventional drugs. Their pharmaceutical quality has to be guaranteed by pharmacists who rely on certificates from qualified laboratories that ensure identity, purity and quality of a batch; additional identity testing has to be performed in the respective pharmacy. The quality of ready-made formulas also has to be guaranteed (Dobos et al., 2005).

In the United Kingdom, crude drugs derived from herbs are exempt from licensing by law. This means
that crude TCM herbs do not have to meet UK standards of pharmaceutical quality in manufacturing or purity. Ready-made herbal TCM formulas are currently also not required to hold a market authorisation. However, the UK health authorities are interested in changing this situation, and thus the UK Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency recently played a major role in initiating the new EU legislation designed to regulate the traditional herbal sector (Traditional Herbal Medicinal Products Directive, 2004/24/EC), which passed into law in November 2005. This directive regulates herbal products sold over-the-counter without intervention of health professionals. According to the new directive which must be fully implemented throughout the EU by 2011, safe traditional use over at least 30 years, 15 years of which within the EU, has to be demonstrated for these products. Furthermore, they have to be produced according to GMP, and indications should be limited to minor health disorders (Dobos et al., 2005).

Quality issues in Chinese herbal drugs

Authentication issues

The problem of correct authentication starts with nomenclature: In China, a particular trivial name can refer to different plants or drugs, depending on the region. For example, fangji is the name for *Stephanieae tetrandrae radix*, which is mainly harvested in the north and is officially known as *hanfangji*. However, fangji roots from southern parts of China, known as *guanfangji*, are derived from *Aristolochiae radix*. Mixing up these drugs was associated with more than 100 cases of kidney intoxication in Belgium. A weight-loss regimen containing a Chinese herbal preparation in combination with orthodox drugs has been applied. Radix *Aristolochiae* (guanfangji), containing aristolochic acids – compounds known to be nephrotoxic and carcinogenic – had been admixed to the herbal preparation instead of Radix *Stephanieae Tetrandrae* (hanfangji). Aristolochic acids are present in plants of *Aristolochia*, *Bragantia* or *Asarum* species and are the most monitored toxic adulterants so far (Vanherweghem et al., 1993; Nortier and Vanherweghem, 2002).

Similar problems can occur with the drugs mutong (*Akebia quinata* Decne), chuanmutong (*Clematis armandii* Franch.) and guanmutong (*Aristolochia manshurienis* Kom.) (Lord et al., 1999; Zhao et al., 2006).

Problems might also arise due to the fact that the Chinese pharmacopoeia (PRC Pharmacopoeia Committee, 2005) allows more than one species as a source for certain herbs as they possess similar functions in treating certain diseases. For example, according to the 2005 Chinese pharmacopoeia, Flos *Magnoliae* can be derived from *Magnolia biondii* Pamp., *M. denudate* Desr. and *M. sprengeri* Pamp.

In addition to the substitutes allowed in the Chinese pharmacopoeia, locally distributed varieties or species are common in China. These substitutes have a long regional practice and history, but since they are derived from different plant sources, their chemical constituents and therapeutic effects may differ (Zhao et al., 2006).

Adulteration, substitution and contamination issues

Species variability, cultivation conditions and harvest time have an influence on the quality of plant material. Besides, the quality of herbal drugs can be deteriorated by substitution, contamination or adulteration.

Substitution means the replacement of a drug by another species, while adulteration is the intentional addition of undeclared substances. Herbs can be adulterated by ‘spiking’ with marker compounds, to reach the targeted level, by addition of pharmaceutical drugs or other plant material, to increase perceived potency or by admixture of inexpensive substances such as starch or pre-extracted plant material in case of rare or precious drugs. Contamination is the accidental inclusion of undeclared substances such as microorganisms, heavy metals, pesticides, radioactivity or the wrong plant or plant part (McCutcheon, 2002; Techen et al., 2004).

Contamination of herbal material can have several reasons. First of all it can come from the environmental conditions under which the herbs are grown. Even though a GAP system for the cultivation
of Chinese herbs has been established, most Chinese herbs are not yet cultivated under controlled conditions, but are collected from their natural habitat or harvested from small cultivation bases (Gao et al., 2002). It was reported that, until June 2004, only 13 TCM herbs were grown in agricultural sites complying with GAP (Siow, 2005). Because only 1% of the TCM plants produced in China are currently exported to Europe, for many Chinese farmers it is not profitable to implement new cultivation processes. This situation may cause inconsistent quality and contamination problems.

In addition, contamination with foreign plant and non-plant materials may also happen during drying, processing, transport, storage and manufacturing processes.

Some of these factors can be controlled by implementation of standard operating procedures (SOPs) according to GAP, good laboratory practices (GLP), GSP and GMP (Chan, 2003). Thus, the first step in quality assurance is finding reliable raw material suppliers who are applying GAP, GSP and GMP for raw material production. This will become easier in future, as the number of suppliers from China implementing these rules will definitely increase. Apart from that, attempts have been made to cultivate Chinese plants under controlled conditions in other countries, and in some, e.g. Germany, quite promising results have been achieved with this approach (Bomme et al., 2005, 2006).

Adulteration, contamination or substitution with foreign or toxic plant material

Admixture of toxic herbs may occur erroneously because of incorrect identification or for economic reasons, when a cheaper herb is substituted to replace a safer, more expensive one. Especially popular or scarce herbs are sometimes sold in poor quality, and in some cases traders even supplied toxic, fake herbs (Chan, 2003).

For some crude drugs, certain processing steps are obligatory for a safe and correct use. This processing may be needed to reduce toxicity of the respective material. For example in case of Aconiti Radix (fuzi) the use of non- or improperly processed plant material can have fatal effects (Chan, 2003; Bauer and Wagner, 2004).

Adulteration with undeclared synthetic drugs

To achieve a quick relief of disease symptoms, preparations of traditional Chinese medicines are sometimes illegally adulterated with synthetic drugs. This can be hazardous to health and result in various side-effects or drug allergies (Song et al., 2000).

An investigation of 2609 TCM preparations in Taiwan revealed that 23.7% of the preparations were adulterated with at least one undeclared conventional pharmacological compound (Huang et al., 1997).

In a systematic review dealing with this issue, Ernst (2002b) identified 18 case reports, two case series and four analytical investigations concerning TCM preparations contaminated with synthetic drugs. In several cases serious or life-threatening symptoms were described, such as agranulocytosis, Cushing’s syndrome, coma, hypoglycaemia, somnolence, hypertension and massive gastrointestinal bleeding. In other cases the adulterants were only discovered by chance without causing any symptoms, or because the suspicion of adulteration was raised because of an extraordinary good clinical response to the preparation. Detected adulterants cover a wide range of pharmaceuticals and some of them are associated with severe side-effects, e.g. corticosteroids, phenylbutazone, glibenclamide, sildenafil and phenytoin.

The screening for undeclared synthetic drugs in Chinese herbs is very challenging, as the variety of possible adulterations is very large. Chromatographic techniques such as TLC, GC, HPLC and CE are the techniques used most frequently. Hyphenation with mass spectrometry has been shown to be very feasible for this kind of analysis.

For example, Liu et al. (2001) developed an HPLC-DAD screening method for undeclared therapeutic substances in Chinese proprietary medicine preparations. GC-MS was used for confirmation of results. The method was applied to 41 samples from 7 categories, 25 of which were anti-asthmatic preparations. In one of them, undeclared codeine was detected.

Au and coworkers (2000) selected 134 synthetic compounds commonly found as adulterants in Chinese preparations sold in the United States and screened more than 500 Chinese patent medicine samples for the presence of these compounds using GC-MS analysis. About 10% of the samples contained undeclared drugs and/or toxic levels of
heavy metals, which had been detected by atomic absorption spectroscopy (AAS). The authors state that GC-MS screening has limitations because non-volatile, large molecules or inorganic compounds cannot be detected by this technique. Therefore, negative GC-MS results do not necessarily mean that the respective preparations are free from synthetic adulterations.

Tseng and Lin (2002) employed LC-MS-MS for the detection and quantification of sildenafil citrate in a Chinese dietary supplement which was claimed to enhance sexual activity. The authors found an average sildenafil citrate amount of 48.2 mg/capsule, which corresponds to the sildenafil dosage of Viagra.

**Contamination with heavy metals**

According to a review of Ernst and Coon (2001), numerous case reports and case series of heavy metal poisoning associated with the use of TCM have been published. Lead, in particular, has relatively often been described as the substance of contamination but mercury, cadmium, arsenic and thallium have also been detected in Chinese herbs. There are several reasons for these findings: first, some Chinese prescriptions intentionally contain heavy metals; for example, arsenic and mercury are sometimes added as a part of certain formulations (Au et al., 2000). Second, heavy metals might be present because of accidental contamination during manufacture, for example, from grinding weights or lead-releasing containers or manufacture utensils. Finally, the herbs themselves accumulate heavy metals when grown in heavily polluted soil, and some plants even accumulate heavy metals, especially cadmium, from regular soil (Kabelitz, 1998; Ernst and Coon, 2001; Ernst, 2002a; Chizzola et al., 2003).

For detection of heavy metals, techniques such as atomic absorption spectroscopy (AAS) or induced coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS) can be used. ICP-MS is more sensitive and allows the synchronous analysis of heavy metals, which makes the method more cost-efficient (Kabelitz and Sievers, 2004).

Lin et al. (2006) made a new approach to the quality control of Chinese herbs with regard to inorganic trace elements by developing a fingerprint analysis of inorganic compounds for Gan-Yu-Lin, a Chinese formulation consisting of 10 herbs, using ICP-MS. According to the authors this kind of fingerprint can provide valuable additional information on the quality of herbal formulations.

The *European Pharmacopoeia* (2005) provides a general monograph on the determination of heavy metals in plant drugs and fatty oils by AAS, but no limits are stipulated yet. Recommended limits differ from country to country in Europe. These tolerance levels are not without controversy, and for some plant materials exceedings are inevitable. The cadmium tolerance level especially is often difficult to maintain (Kabelitz, 1998; Chizzola et al., 2003). The German Pharmaceutical Manufacturers’ Association recently made a proposal to set a cadmium limit of 1 mg/kg. This is based on results of an industrial database which pooled the heavy metal contents of 20,000 analysed herbal drug samples. Additionally, for cadmium-accumulating species (e.g. *Salix, Hypericum*), higher tolerance levels have been suggested which can be matched by 90% of the batches of the respective herbal drugs (Kabelitz, 1998; Kabelitz and Sievers, 2004).

Nevertheless, since medicinal plants are predominantly consumed by ill people, a reasonable limitation of heavy metal contaminants in medicinal plants and a harmonised regulation for heavy metal limits in herbal drugs is highly desirable.

**Contamination with pesticides**

In the past, most Chinese herbs were collected in the wild, and therefore pesticide treatment did not play an important role for TCM herbs (Leung et al., 2005). Nowadays, however, many TCM plants are cultivated. The cultivation of TCM plants often takes years and requires the use of pesticides, to reduce pest damage. Improper use of pesticides not only pollutes soil and ground water, but also leads to accumulation of pesticides in plants. Pesticide residues may therefore be present in Chinese herbs and preparations thereof (Ling et al., 1999).

Pesticide residues can cause various adverse effects in humans, ranging from acute symptoms such as skin rashes and asthma attacks to chronic diseases such as emphysema or cancer (Leung et al., 2005). Owing to their long residual actions, the use of organochlorine pesticides such as DDT has been restricted or banned in many countries (Zuin and Vilegas, 2000; Sohn et al., 2004). The use
of pentachloronitrobenzene (PCNB, quintozene), lindane and DDT has been prohibited in the US and many other countries, and the use of hexachlorobenzene has been banned worldwide. For various pesticides, regulatory standards have been stipulated in many pharmacopoeias (Leung et al., 2005), e.g. the 2005 European Pharmacopoeia sets limits for 34 pesticides and guidelines for the determination of limits for other pesticides are provided. In several developing countries however, legislation concerning pesticide residues in herbal drugs is lacking or largely ignored.

The determination of pesticide residues in plant material is difficult because of the complexity of the plant matrix and the large variety of pesticides. In general, the methodology of pesticide residue analysis includes three main steps: extraction (usually followed by a clean-up procedure), separation and detection of pesticides. If the plant material of interest is of unknown origin and several groups of pesticides might be present, it is necessary to use methods that measure total organic chlorine, phosphorus, arsenic or lead prior to a detailed analysis, to find out which group of pesticides is present. For detailed identification and quantification, most frequently GC or HPLC methods are used (Zuin and Vilegas, 2000).

Extraction and clean-up of pesticides is a crucial step in pesticide analysis of herbal drugs as the compounds have to be extracted from a complex matrix. Ling et al. (1999) propose supercritical fluid extraction (SFE) as it is rapid and only requires small solvent amounts. In their study, the authors developed an SFE method for the simultaneous extraction and clean-up of 13 organochlorine pesticides from Chinese herbal materials.

In the 2005 Chinese pharmacopoeia, a GC-ECD (gas chromatography-electron capture detector) method is described for the determination of organochlorine pesticides in Chinese materia medica, traditional Chinese patent medicines and simple preparations. The 2005 European Pharmacopoeia gives a GC method for determination of pesticides in plant materials; the clean-up procedure and detection method differ depending on the respective class of pesticides.

Leung et al. (2005) used GC-ECD for screening and GC-MS for quantitative determination of 20 organochlorine pesticides in four frequently used Chinese herbs, namely Radix Angelicae Sinensis, Radix Notoginseng, Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae and Radix Ginseng. Ten representative batches of different provenances were analysed from each herb. In all drugs except Radix Angelicae Sinensis, varying levels of quintozene and hexachlorocyclohexane could be detected. In Radix Ginseng, hexachlorobenzene and lindane were also found. In Radix Notoginseng samples, even the banned pesticide DDT and its derivatives were identified.

Some attempts have also been made to remove pesticide residues present in harvested or processed materials. For example, Sohn et al. (2004) presented a method for the removal of pesticide residues from aqueous ginseng extract by two-phase partition between water and soybean oil. The authors describe the method as cost- and labour-efficient, however, avoiding pesticide residues, for example, by applying GAP rules, might be the better approach than their later removal. The GAP system for the cultivation of Chinese medicinal plants provides an SOP on controlling insect pest and plant diseases and on the utilisation of agricultural chemicals (Gao et al., 2002). Implementation of this model to as many cultivation bases as possible should ameliorate the problem of pesticide accumulation in future.

Microbiological contamination

Although microbiological contamination of medicinal plants is an important quality issue, literature reports dealing with the microbiological contamination of Chinese herbal drugs are scarce.

In the 2005 Chinese pharmacopoeia, limits are given for preparations. The limits stipulated for bacteria, yeast and mould counts are dependent on the kind of preparation, on the presence of crude plant material in the preparation and on the intended application (for examples, see Table 28.1). The 2005 European Pharmacopoeia provides tolerance levels for the microbial load of medicinal plants, which depend on intended application and on preparation technique. Herbal products are mainly assigned to categories 3B, 4A and 4B (Table 28.1). The allowed microbial load is higher when the plant drug is intended to be treated with boiling water prior to use, as this leads to a decrease in microbial contamination. The criteria of the European Pharmacopoeia
are not mandatory, but are used as a recommenda-
tion for target levels. The tolerance levels recom-
mended by WHO are also dependent on the intended 
use of the material (WHO, 1998). The European 
Herbal Infusion Association (EHIA) recommends 
tolerance levels for herbal infusion raw materials, 
which are generally higher than those given by the 
European Pharmacopoeia (EHIA, 2005) (Table 28.1). 
The limits recommended by these authorities are 
not without controversy, and in many cases it is 
rather difficult to comply with them. Especially 
organically produced materials are treated with 
natural fertilisers such as stinging-nettle broth which 
contains considerably higher microbial levels, and 
they are also preferred by many insects which often 
carry contaminants (Kneifel et al., 2002). Another 
problem is insufficient drying of the material, which 
often leads to the growth of moulds.

A reduction of microbial load can mainly be 
reached by application of GAP to the processes of 
harvesting, drying, storing and packaging of herbal 
material. Antimicrobial treatment of harvested or 
processed drugs is very problematic as methods such 
as ethylene oxide treatment or irradiation are either 
forbidden or handled very restrictively in most coun-
tries. Steam treatment is currently the method of first 
choice, however it is expensive and can lead to degra-
dation of plant constituents and quality (Kabelitz, 
2001; Kabelitz and Sievers, 2004).

Contamination with mycotoxins

Mycotoxins are metabolites produced by toxigenic 
fungi, such as Aspergillus, Penicillium or Fusarium 
species and include aflatoxins, ochratoxins and zear-
alenone (Kabelitz and Sievers, 2004). Mycotoxins are 
heat-stable, so they are not destroyed by cooking 
or normal industrial processing. The presence of 
mycotoxins and mycotoxin-producing fungi has 
repeatedly been reported in medicinal plants and 
preparations derived from them.

Mycotoxins demonstrate a wide range of toxic 
effects including teratogenicity and carcinogenicity 
(Creppy, 2002) and mycotoxin limits for certain food 
products have been specified in EU food regulations 
for a long time. In these regulations limits are given 
for aflatoxin B1, aflatoxin M1 as well as for total 
aflatoxins (B1, B2, G1, G2) and for other mycotoxins 
such as ochratoxin A, fusarium toxins and patulin. In 
these regulations the maximum levels for several 
spices such as Capsicum ssp., Piper ssp. and Zingiber 
officinale Rosc. have been set to 5 μg/kg aflatoxin B1 
and 10 μg/kg aflatoxin B1+B2+G1+G2 (EC No. 
1881/2006, EC No. 1126/2007). In the 2005 Euro-
pean Pharmacopoeia, no mycotoxin limits are speci-
fied yet for herbal drugs or herbal medicinal products 
but a method for the determination of aflatoxins in 
certain herbal drugs is currently in preparation. 
Germany has stipulated maximum levels for herbal 
drugs (Table 28.2) (Aflatoxin Verbots V, 2000).

Mycotoxins can be detected by TLC, HPLC, 
GC-MS or ELISA techniques. WHO suggested an 
HPLC method for aflatoxin determination including 
precolumn derivatisation and fluorometric detection 
(2004) used HPLC for the determination of aflatoxins 
in 28 Thai herbal medicinal products where extracts 
prepared from the samples were cleaned up by an 
immunoaffinity column, followed by post-column 
derivatisation with iodine and fluorescence detection. 
They could detect aflatoxins in five of the samples, 
with total aflatoxin levels ranging from 1.7 to 
14.3 ng/g, which is below the current tolerance level 
stipulated in Thailand (20 ng/g). However, attention 
has to be paid when exporting these products in 
countries with lower tolerance levels, e.g. Europe.

Reports on mycotoxin contamination of Chinese 
herbal drugs are scarce. Ihrig et al. (2004) found afla-
toxin B1 levels significantly above the German limit 
of 2 μg/kg aflatoxin B1 in Semen Biotae samples (2.4 
and 22 μg/kg in two different samples). The used 
determination method (DIN EN 12955, 1999) includes 
HPLC immunoaffinity column cleanup and post-
column derivatisation.

Methods used for authentication, 
quality control and standardisation 
of Chinese herbal drugs

Quality can only be produced; it cannot be trans-
ferred into a product by applying analytical methods 
to it. Nevertheless, methods of quality control have 
to be applied at different stages of production (Chan, 
2003).

In general, the methods for identification and 
quality control of herbal medicines involve sensory
### Table 28.1 Microbiological threshold levels tolerated by Ph Eur\(^a\), PhPRP\(^d\), WHO\(^c\) and EHIA\(^b\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authority</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Bacteria, yeast and mould count</th>
<th>Enterobacteria and certain other Gram-negative bacteria</th>
<th>E. coli</th>
<th>Salmonella</th>
<th>Staph. aureus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Ph. Eur.\(^a\)** | 3B (oral preparations containing raw materials of natural origin for which antimicrobial treatment is not feasible and for which microbial contamination exceeding \(10^7\) viable counts/g or mL. is accepted, with exception of category 4) 4A (crude herbal materials to which boiling water is added before use) 4B (crude herbal materials to which boiling water is not added before use) | bacteria: \(\leq 10^4\) aerobic CFU/g or mL  
moulds: \(\leq 10^2\) aerobic CFU/g or mL  
Bacteria: \(\leq 10^3\) aerobic CFU/g or mL  
Moulds: \(\leq 10^3\) aerobic CFU/g or mL  | \(\leq 10^2\) CFU/g or mL  
not specified  
\(\leq 10^3\) CFU/g or mL  | absent in 1 g or 1 mL  
\(\leq 10^2\) CFU/g or mL  | absent in 10 g or 10 mL  
absent in 1 g or 10 mL  | not specified  
not specified  
not specified  |
| **EHIA\(^b\)**    | Herbal infusion raw materials                                            | bacteria: \(\leq 10^5\) aerobic CFU/g  
yeasts: \(\leq 10^6\) CFU/g  
moulds: \(\leq 10^5\) CFU/g  | not specified  | \(\leq 10^5\)/g  | absent in 25 g  | not specified  |
| **WHO\(^c\)**     | Untreated plant material harvested under acceptable hygienic conditions and intended for further processing (including additional decontamination by a physical or chemical process) Pretreated plant materials (e.g. infusions with boiling water) or topically used preparations Other plant materials for internal use | moulds: \(\leq 10^5\) CFU/g  
bacteria: \(\leq 10^7\) aerobic CFU/g  
yeasts and moulds: \(\leq 10^4\) CFU/g  
bacteria: \(\leq 10^3\) aerobic CFU/g  
yeasts and moulds: \(\leq 10^5\) CFU/g  | \(\leq 10^4\) CFU/g  
\(\leq 10^2\) CFU/g  | \(\leq 10^6\) CFU/g  | not specified  | not specified  |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authority</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Bacteria, yeast and mould count</th>
<th>Enterobacteria and certain other Gram-negative bacteria</th>
<th>E. coli</th>
<th>Salmonella</th>
<th>Staph. aureus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PhPRP^d</td>
<td>Tablets</td>
<td>Without crude drug powder</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>absent in 1 g or 1 mL</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>not specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medicinal granules</td>
<td>Without crude drug powder</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>absent in 1 g or 1 mL</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>not specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medicinal teas</td>
<td>Without sugar</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>not specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>With sugar</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>not specified</td>
<td>not specified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*European Pharmacopoeia, 2005; ^EHIA, 2005; ^WHO, 1998; ^Pharmacopoeia of the People’s Republic of China (2005).*
inspection (macroscopic and microscopic examination), molecular biological methods and analytical inspection comprising mainly chromatographic and spectroscopic techniques.

**Macroscopic, microscopic and botanical authentication**

For botanical identification, the intact plant material is examined, ideally during collection or harvest, while for macroscopic identification the morphological or organoleptic (sensory) characteristics of particular plant parts or fragments are studied. These techniques require high expertise, and often access to voucher specimens in working herbaria or to a photographic reference library if necessary (Techen et al., 2004).

Microscopic examination allows the identification of crude plant material in the whole, fragmented or powdered stage. The method also requires high expertise, and sometimes it may not provide unequivocal authentication because of the fact that different medicinal materials, particularly from related species, often possess similar microscopic characteristics. Factors such as climate, harvesting period and storage conditions may also influence the microscopic structure of the material (Shaw et al., 2002a; Bauer and Wagner, 2004).

Compared with other techniques, macroscopic and microscopic identification are very cost- and time-efficient. Therefore, these authentication methods play an important role in the monographs on herbs in many pharmacopoeias, including the Chinese and the European pharmacopoeias. The book *Microscopic Identification of Chinese Materia Medica*, edited by Zhao (2005) contains photographs of the microscopic characteristics of 126 commonly used Chinese materia medica, which are very helpful for microscopic authentication of these materials.

**DNA-based techniques**

DNA-based authentication comprises various techniques which are used for analysing DNA sequences and fingerprints. These techniques are employed in various fields such as taxonomy, physiology, embryology and genetics and have been successfully applied in the field of commercially important plants such as food crops and horticultural plants. The application of molecular methods to the authentication of Chinese medicinal materials was initiated in the mid-1990s (Shaw et al., 2002b; Joshi et al., 2004) when DNA-based techniques were used for differentiation of accessions collected at different geographic regions, differentiation of inter- and intraspecific variations, authentication of plants frequently substituted with species which are indistinguishable by macroscopic, microscopic or phytochemical methods, and for detection of adulterations. Attempts have also been made to identify DNA markers that can correlate DNA fingerprinting data with the quantity of phytochemical markers since this would allow the prediction of the concentration of active compounds and the marker-assisted selection of desirable chemotypes (Joshi et al., 2004).

DNA markers are reliable for informative polymorphisms as the genetic composition is unique for each species and is not affected by age, physiological conditions and environmental factors. They are not tissue-specific and can be detected at any stage of organism development (Shaw et al., 2002a; Chan, 2003). Only small sample amounts are needed for most methods. This makes DNA-based methods interesting for authentication of fragile, animal-derived and precious drugs. Despite these advantages, DNA-related techniques are not yet routinely used for authentication of TCM drugs as the methods are relatively expensive and as their application can be problematic in case of dried or processed materials (Zhao et al., 2006).

**Hybridisation-based methods**

Hybridisation-based methods use cloned DNA elements or synthetic oligonucleotides as probes to hybridise DNA. The probes are labelled with

---

**Table 28.2 Tolerance levels for aflatoxins in drugs according to the German regulations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Afalatoxin</th>
<th>Tolerance level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>≤0.05 μg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
<td>≤2 μg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B1, B2, G1, G2</td>
<td>≤4 μg/kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Afalatoxin Verbots V, 2000.*
radioisotopes or with conjugated enzymes which catalyse a colour reaction to detect hybridisation. DNA is either cleaved with restriction enzymes or first amplified by polymerase chain reaction (PCR), subsequently separated by gel electrophoresis and transferred to a solid support matrix (Shaw et al., 2002a, Joshi et al., 2004).

Restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) is a technique in which organisms may be differentiated by analysis of patterns derived from cleavage of their DNA. It is a mostly hybridisation-based method used in paternity cases or criminal cases to determine the source of a DNA sample, but also widely applied in genome mapping, marker-aided breeding and phylogenetic studies. In this technique, restriction polymorphisms are detected by using a hybridisation probe. The quality of the assay is highly dependent on the choice of the DNA probe. Two types of DNA probes can be used, namely tandem repeats which occur as clusters among chromosomes and dispersed repeats which are scattered all over the chromosomes. Shorter repeating sequences (generally fewer than six base pairs) which are repeated from a few to many thousands of times, are abundant in the eukaryote genome. They are called microsatellites or single sequence repeat (SSR) (Shaw et al., 2002a).

The major limitation of this method is its low sensitivity. It requires a large amount of high-quality genomic DNA, which is very difficult to obtain from processed herbal drugs. Also the stability and reproducibility are rather low because the quality of the assay highly depends on DNA quality and technical factors (Hon et al., 2003).

For Chinese medicinal materials, PCR-RFLP is more suitable, as it requires a much lower amount of DNA. In this method a defined DNA sequence is first amplified by PCR and then selected restriction enzymes are employed to generate fragments unique to the respective species (Shaw et al., 2002a).

### Polymerase-chain-reaction-based methods

PCR enzymatically multiplies particular DNA sequences or loci of a template DNA with the help of arbitrary or specific oligonucleotide primers.

It is not easy to standardise PCR-based authentication procedures for medicinal plants. Reasons for variations are different DNA polymerases used, different buffer formulations as well as different equipment used. Variations can be reduced if the same commercial kits or polymerase mixtures are used in each lab performing the same test. Problems also occur when the plant material of interest contains compounds such as phenolics which can interact with the DNA and directly inhibit DNA polymerase or damage the structural integrity of DNA. The way a plant is harvested, stored and processed can also influence DNA quality (Techen et al., 2004).

Various PCR-based techniques have been employed to authenticate and characterise medicinal plants; some of them do not require prior knowledge of the DNA sequence, for example AFLP, random amplified polymorphic DNA (RAPD), arbitrarily primed PCR (AP-PCR) and inter simple sequence repeat (ISSR); while for others, such as SSR, prior sequence information is required.

### Amplified fragment length polymorphism

This fingerprinting technique is based on the detection of multiple DNA restriction fragments by means of PCR amplification and has the capacity to detect thousands of independent loci (Joshi et al., 2004). Genomic DNA is digested by appropriate restriction enzymes (preferably a hexa-cutter or tetra-cutter), which cut DNA at defined sequence sites. A subset of the resultant fragments is then ligated to synthetic double-stranded adaptors (DNA segments) at each end and subsequently amplified using two specific adaptor-homologous primers. The amplified and labelled restriction fragments are separated on denaturing gels or by capillary electrophoresis. The complexity of the AFLP profiles depends on the primers and restriction enzymes chosen and on the level of sequence polymorphism between the tested DNA samples (Shaw et al., 2002a).

The number of amplified bands of the preselected PCR is usually so high that a second round of PCR (selective PCR with fluorescent dyes) has to be performed to reduce the number of amplified products. This is done by using primers that possess 1–3 additional bases at the 3’ end. Several combinations have to be tested for optimisation. Digestion, ligation and two rounds of PCR make this method expensive and time-consuming. However, it is a very reliable and robust technology, and it has been widely applied in screening DNA markers linked to genetic
traits, parentage analysis, forensic genotyping and population genetics (McGregor et al., 2000; Techen et al., 2004). However, the feasibility for the authentication of Chinese herbs might be limited, because high-quality DNA, especially high-molecular-weight DNA, is required, which might be a problem in the case of processed or dried medicinal materials (Ha et al., 2002).

Arbitrarily primed PCR and random amplified polymorphic DNA

These methods have been simultaneously developed by two groups in 1990. Basically, instead of using region-specific PCR primers or adaptors, one single, arbitrarily chosen oligonucleotide is used as both the forward and reverse primer in a PCR reaction. This sequence consists of about 10 nucleotides in case of RAPD and about 20 nucleotides in case of AP-PCR. A product is produced when the primer binds on opposite strands, in the reverse orientation and within an amplifiable distance. PCR fragments are generated from different locations of the genome, because there are multiple sites within the genome for the primer to bind. Thus, multiple loci may be examined simultaneously. Using series of different primers allows the generation of a genetic fingerprint of a plant or a specific species (Shaw et al., 2002a; Techen et al., 2004).

RAPD analysis is a quick, rather easy and relatively cheap method; a major drawback is that reproducibility between laboratories has been shown to be low because the procedure is very sensitive to different PCR parameters, especially to slight variations in annealing temperature because of the low annealing temperatures required (McGregor et al., 2000; Techen et al., 2004). Nevertheless, RAPD and AP-PCR have extensively been used to study the genetic diversity of various Chinese medicinal plants, to discriminate different plant populations and to differentiate plant batches of different provenances (Shaw et al., 2002a).

Zhang et al. (2001) successfully used an RAPD technique to distinguish Lycium barbarum L. from other closely related species of the same genus which are not listed for medical use in the 2005 Chinese pharmacopoeia.

Cheng (2002) employed an RAPD method for the identification of three plant species from an herbal mixture with one single primer. After screening 40 different primers, one was selected to simultaneously identify Astragalus membranaceus (Fisch.) Bge., Atractylodes macrocephala Koidz and Ledebouriella seseloides Wolff in the prescription. Ten samples purchased from different stores were evaluated and showed the three markers simultaneously, but the intensity of the L. seseloides marker varied among the samples. According to the authors, it remains to be investigated whether the admixture of closely related species can be detected with this method.

Fico et al. (2003) investigated different Aconitum species and subspecies using both RAPD and phytochemical analysis, and they found that the patterns of relatedness observed in the chemical profiles seem to correspond with the genetic profiles, suggesting that there may be a genetic basis for the chemical profiles observed.

Inter simple sequence repeat (ISSR)

ISSR makes use of anchored primers to amplify simple sequence repeats. The primers are not totally arbitrary but are composed of repeated di-, tri-, tetra- or pentanucleotid motifs which are scattered throughout the eukaryote genome. As in RAPD analysis, a product is achieved when the same repeat is present in the two DNA strands within an amplifiable distance. Specificity and reproducibility can be enhanced by addition of a different base at 3′ or 5′. Because longer primers are used, the method is more reliable and less sensitive to annealing temperature than RAPD analysis; however, the annealing temperature has to be optimised for each primer and species DNA. Compared with AFLP and SSR analysis, the method is rather quick, straightforward and economic (McGregor et al., 2000; Techen et al., 2004).

Simple sequence repeat (SSR)

For this technique, prior sequence information is required. SSR markers or microsatellites (also termed simple sequence length polymorphism [SSLP] or sequence-tagged microsatellite site [STMS]) are tandem repeats scattered throughout the genome. They can be amplified using primers that flank these regions. The technique has been successfully used to construct detailed genetic maps of several organisms and to study genetic variation within populations of
the same species (Shaw et al., 2002a). As the markers are usually species-specific, their development is rather costly, but once they have been developed the method becomes quite inexpensive (McGregor et al., 2000).

Hon et al. (2003) compared the advantages and limitations of some PCR-based techniques, namely RAPD, and AP-PCR, PCR-RFLP and microsatellite marker techniques, and of a hybridisation-based technique, namely DNA fingerprinting with low-cost (rapid reassociating fraction) DNA probes, using ginseng as an example. They conclude that microsatellite marker techniques are most suitable for the authentication of ginseng samples, because unambiguous identification of botanical identity and origin was possible. The authors point out that the main limitations of this technique are the high costs and labour-intensive search for informative loci. However, it is superior to other methods in terms of information content, accuracy, sensitivity, reliability and reproducibility. Moreover, the method can be fully automated, which makes it interesting for large-scale, high-throughput authentication.

**Sequencing-based markers and microarray techniques**

Concerning these techniques, DNA sequences from the nuclear and chloroplast genome are used for identification of plants at several taxonomic levels. Certain sequences such as the 5S rDNA spacer and the internal transcribed spacer (ITS) regions between the 16S and 26S rDNA are highly variable and can thus be used for authentication at species level. Sequences such as nuclear 18S or plastidial rbcL, ndhF or matK however, are conserved among species and therefore suitable for discrimination at genus or family level (Shaw et al., 2002a, 2002b; Joshi et al., 2004; Techen et al., 2004). DNA sequence-based techniques have widely been used for authentication of Chinese herbs.

For example, Zhao et al. (2003) amplified and sequenced the 5S rRNA spacer domains of three different Angelica species, namely *A. sinensis* (Oliv.) Diels (*Danggui*) and its potential substitutes *A. acutiloba* (Sieb. Et Zucc.) Kitag., which is mainly found in Japan as well as *A. gigas* Nakai, which mainly occurs in Korea. The authors demonstrated that the diversity of the spacer regions can be used for genetic differentiation of the three species. Additionally, HPLC analyses were performed, to study the chemical profile of the three species and of different provenances.

In a similar study, Xia et al. (2005) performed a DNA sequence analysis and a chemical fingerprint analysis of five *Curcuma* species, namely *C. wenyujin* Y.H. Chen et C. Ling, *C. phaeoaculus* Val. and *C. kwangsiensis* S.G. Lee et C.F. Liang, which are used as Rhizoma Curcumae, and *C. longa* L. and *C. chuanxuqing* C.K. Hsieh et H. Zhang, which are frequently found as adulterants of Rhizoma Curcumae. Sequence analysis of the 5S-rRNA spacer domains revealed that the three species official as Rhizoma Curcumae are closely related, whereas the other two species show significant DNA differences. The same result was obtained by cluster analysis of the respective HPLC fingerprints.

Microarray-based methods work by hybridisation of RNA or DNA to complementary DNA molecules bound at specific locations on the array. Hybridisation can be detected by labelling with hybridisation indicators or by other changes resulting from the binding event. With microarrays, thousands of sequences can simultaneously be detected quickly, sensitively and selectively. As different species possess different genomes, each species will produce a specific array pattern (Shaw et al., 2002b).

Carles et al. (2001) have been working on the development of a DNA microarray technique for the identification of Chinese medicinal plants, and presented a DNA microarray which is feasible for the authentication of 20 different toxic Chinese herbs (Carles et al., 2005). Species-specific oligonucleotide probes were derived from the 5S rRNA gene, but also from the leucine tRNA gene of the respective plants.

In summary, DNA-based authentication methods have several advantages which make them suitable for the identification of Chinese herbs:

- the techniques are independent from the physical form of the material
- only a low amount of material is required
- DNA-based markers represent the most basic signature of an organism and are therefore much less affected by environmental influences than phenotypic markers.
On the other hand, some limitations have to be considered:

- some of the methods are strongly dependent on DNA quality, which might be a problem in the case of dried or processed materials
- certain plant compounds or fungal contamination may also influence DNA extraction or PCR reaction.

To establish a marker for identification of a particular species, DNA analysis of closely related species and/or varieties as well as common contaminants and adulterants is necessary, a very expensive and time-consuming process (Joshi et al., 2004).

The DNA-based investigation of herbal samples for unknown contaminants is at present extremely difficult and costly because of the broad spectrum of possible admixtures. More comprehensive databases of DNA fingerprints and DNA sequences comprising a wide range of plant species would therefore be required (Techen et al., 2004).

The application of DNA-related techniques in the quality control of herbs is also limited by the fact that the DNA fingerprint of a plant is the same for the whole plant, while the content of biomarker or marker compounds is often strongly dependent on the plant part. Moreover, DNA fingerprinting might allow correct authentication of a plant but at present, it does not give information about the concentration of active constituents or marker compounds. This means that a combination of DNA-related and phytochemical techniques is necessary for quality control applications (Joshi et al., 2004). Some attempts have been made to match the results of DNA-related techniques to chemical profiles of Chinese herbs (Fico et al., 2003; Xia et al., 2005), but it is too early to draw general conclusions on the feasibility of this approach.

Finally, DNA-based techniques generally cannot be used for preparations containing herbal extracts, even though the successful authentication of herbal starting materials based on DNA extracted from small amounts of plant cells which are still present in herbal extracts and tinctures has been recently reported (Novak et al., 2007). However, more experience is required to evaluate the general feasibility of such a technique.

To summarise, DNA-related techniques are a valuable complement, but not a replacement for macroscopic, microscopic and phytochemical methods.

**Immunochemical methods**

Antibodies are very powerful identification tools. A single difference in the amino acid sequence may change the epitope of a protein which is recognised by an antibody (Shaw et al., 2002a). Antibodies can also be raised against conjugates of proteins and naturally occurring plant constituents. These antibodies can then be used for qualitative and quantitative determination of the respective compounds.

As an example, Fukuda et al. (2000) produced a monoclonal antibody against ginsenoside Rg1, which only showed very low cross-reactivity with structurally closely related compounds and is therefore feasible for the determination of ginsenoside Rg1 in crude plant extracts without any pretreatment.

Lu and coworkers (2003) developed a quantitative ELISA using monoclonal antibodies for the detection of paeoniflorin and albiflorin in crude drugs and preparations of *Paeonia lactiflora* Pallas. The results of quantitative determination showed good agreement with results obtained by HPLC analysis. The ELISA kit was about 100 times more sensitive than the HPLC method.

Immunochemical analyses are highly reproducible and show high selectivity and sensitivity. Diagnostic kits can be developed for rapid testing. They can be used for raw materials as well as for processed drugs and extracts. However, development of immunochemical methods is extremely elaborate and time consuming.

**Chromatographic techniques**

Chromatographic techniques are the most versatile tools for the analysis of Chinese herbs. They can be employed for identification and authentication as well as for determination of various adulterants and contaminants and for standardisation purposes. In contrary to macroscopic, microscopic and many molecular biological methods they are not restricted to the raw herb, but can also be applied to pharmaceutical preparations.
There are two approaches in the use of chromatographic methods for quality-control purposes:

- analysis based on marker or biomarker compounds
- chromatographic fingerprint analysis.

A marker compound can be any constituent characterising a plant of interest; biomarkers are bioactive plant constituents, representing a plant’s pharmacological activity (Techen et al., 2004). Conventional research and quality control of herbal medicines focus on the analysis of one or several bioactive or characteristic lead compounds (Bauer, 1998). This approach is widely used in industry and also in many pharmacopoeial monographs.

If the bioactive compound is known, the preparation can be standardised on this compound in terms of a normalisation. This means that the content of the active principle can be adjusted by addition of inert material or by blending with a highly concentrated batch. In case of several bioactive constituents, standardisation is more complicated, because the ratios of active constituents can vary from batch to batch. The material has to be standardised by blending with batches of higher or lower quality. In case the active principles of an herb are unknown, characteristic marker compounds must be used for quality control. However, normalisation on these marker compounds is not recommendable as they might not be related to therapeutic activity (Bauer, 1998; McCutcheon, 2002). For this reason the 2005 European Pharmacopoeia discriminates between standardised extracts (standardisation to a certain content of known active compounds is achieved by mixing with inert material or by blending with other extract batches), quantified extracts (not all active compounds known; standardisation to a defined range of active markers is achieved by blending of extract batches) and other extracts, which are mainly defined by their production process (starting material, solvent, extraction conditions).

In many TCM herbs standardisation referring to one lead compound is difficult, as reference compounds are often not available. In addition the complexity of many herbal medicines makes this kind of analysis during pharmaceutical quality control rather tedious. In this case fingerprint analysis might be a more appropriate method for quality control (Bauer, 1998; Li et al., 2004a; Yang et al., 2005). To additionally represent bioactivity by the chromatographic fingerprint, the suggestion has been made to match the fingerprint profile of an herbal preparation to the results of biological assays or clinical studies (Yuan and Lin, 2000).

The concept of chromatographic fingerprinting for herbal materials is also appreciated by some authorities: The US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) proposed to accept the technique for the identification of herbal materials (FDA, 2000) and the World Health Organization (WHO) has also shown interest (WHO, 2000). Furthermore, in China, the State Drug Administration (SFDA) decided that registration of injections made of Chinese medicines requires chromatographic fingerprints characterising the products (Wong et al., 2002).

A chromatographic fingerprint is a chromatogram representing the chemical characteristics of an herbal material. (HP)TLC, GC, HPLC, CE, high-speed countercurrent chromatography and some hyphenated techniques have already been used for the development of chromatographic fingerprints (Fan et al., 2006). Hyphenated techniques have been shown to be very useful because of the additional spectral information, which allows elimination of instrumental interferences and correction of retention time shifts and leads to better selectivity and measurement precision (Liang et al., 2004).

**Thin-layer chromatography**

The advantages of using TLC for quality control of herbal drugs are its simplicity, versatility, high velocity, specificity, sensitivity and simple sample preparation. With the help of image analysis and digital technologies developed in computer science, the evaluation of similarity between different samples is possible. Various pharmacopoeias such as the 2005 Chinese pharmacopoeia as well as the series Chinese Drug Monographs and Analysis (Wagner et al., 2006) use TLC to provide characteristic fingerprints of Chinese herbs (for example see Figure 28.1). TLC is widely used for a first screening and semi-quantitative evaluation and very often combined with other chromatographic methods.

As an example, Blatter and Reich (2004) developed two improved HPTLC methods for the quality
control of *Stephania tetrandra* S. Moore. The first method allowed unambiguous identification of the herb as well as quantitative determination of the main alkaloid tetrandrin using scanning densitometry at 210 nm. The second method was developed to detect adulteration of the drug with drugs containing aristolochic acid. The method allowed the detection of 1 ppm aristolochic acid after derivatisation with tin(II) chloride.

Zhao *et al.* (2005) developed a densitometric HPTLC method, which allows the simultaneous qualitative and quantitative determination of emodin, resveratrol and polydatin, the main bioactive constituents of *Polygonum cuspidatum* Willd. ex Spreng.

Di *et al.* (2003) used HPTLC with automated multiple development (AMD), a technique which allows gradient elution in TLC, for fingerprint profiling of carbohydrates from the fruiting bodies of various *lingzhi* (*Ganoderma*) species. The method consisted of an optimised acid hydrolysis of the carbohydrates extracted with water from lingzhi followed by AMD separation and post-chromatographic derivatisation with 4-aminobenzoic acid and

---

**Figure 28.1** Thin-layer chromatogram of different *Atractylodes* species and reference compounds (Silica, n-hexane/ethylacetate 95:5; detection: anisaldehyde-sulphuric acid reagent, VIS) (reprinted from Resch *et al*., 1999). Samples: 1 = *Atractylodes macrocephala* rhizomes (TCM-hospital Kötzting, Germany); 2 = *A. japonica* rhizomes (Botanical Garden of the University of Düsseldorf); 3 = *A. koreana* rhizomes (Kang Weon Province, Korea); 4 = *A. lancea* rhizomes (TCM-hospital Kötzting, Germany); 5 = *A. chinensis* rhizomes (Kunming); reference compounds: T1 = atracyton; T2 = atractyloidin I.
densitometric detection. Although some species could be successfully differentiated, the authors had problems with the differentiation of closely related species because of the similarity of the profiles obtained.

**HPLC and hyphenated techniques**

Over the past decades, HPLC has been widely applied for the analysis of herbal medicines because of its high separation capacity. It can be employed to analyse almost all constituents of herbal products provided that an optimised procedure is developed which involves optimisation of mobile and stationary phase (Li et al., 2005). Another advantage of this technique is the possibility of coupling it to various detection techniques such as ultraviolet diode array detection (DAD), mass spectrometry (MS) or even nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR). These hyphenated techniques can provide information about the structure of the compounds present in a chromatogram. In addition, some hyphenated methods provide higher sensitivity compared with conventional approaches.

**HPLC-DAD**

HPLC-DAD is by far the most common hyphenated instrument, and for most TCM manufacturers it is a practical and meaningful technique for efficient quality control. DAD can be used for identification of chromatogram peaks, simultaneous determination, peak purity control, chromatographic discrepancy correction and fingerprint generation (Yan et al., 2005a). The technique is also widely applied for identification and quality control of Chinese herbs in various pharmacopoeial monographs, as well as in the series *Chinese Drug Monographs and Analysis* (Wagner et al., 2006). Only a few examples are mentioned below.

He et al. (2005) analysed methanolic extracts of 44 samples of cassia bark (*Cinnamomum* spp.) and related materials from different regions as well as four types of commercial commodities (debarked cortex, *qi-bian-gui*, bark and twigs) by HPLC with respect to four marker compounds. The chromatographic fingerprint and the content of marker compounds varied considerably depending on species and commercial commodity. Thus, authentication and quality assessment of genuine cassia bark (*C. cassia* Presl.) was possible with this method.

Zschocke et al. (2005) developed an HPLC-DAD method for the analysis of *Ligusticum chuanxiong* Hort. For the unequivocal direct identification of the main constituents of the hexane extract, namely the phthalides senkyunolide A, butylphthalide, neocnidilide and Z-ligustilide, the authors used HPLC-NMR and HPLC-MS, which made isolation of these compounds unnecessary. Having confirmed the structures, HPLC-DAD proved to be a feasible tool for analysis of the extract because, owing to their different chromophores, the DAD spectra of the compounds were very characteristic (Figure 28.2).

Yang et al. (2005) developed a fingerprint-based, quality-control method for *Hypericum japonicum* Thunb. (*tianjihuang*) using HPLC-DAD. Hydroethanolic extracts of 56 authentic samples were compared and similarity was mathematically assessed using a software recommended by the SFDA. They showed that the similarity of fingerprints was very strongly dependent on the geographic origin of the respective herbs. Within the provenances, time-dependent changes in secondary metabolite profiles were found, providing information for optimum harvest time.

Fan et al. (2006) propose multiple chromatographic fingerprinting which involves more than one fingerprint and represents the whole chemical characteristics of the analyte as a strategy for quality control of complex herbal medicines. They demonstrated their approach by developing and validating a binary HPLC fingerprint method for Danshen Dropping Pill, a popular Chinese formulation, which is composed of *Salvia miltiorrhiza* Bunge (*danshen*) and *Panax notoginseng* (Burk.) F.H. Chen (*sanqi*). Two fingerprint chromatograms were produced, one for the depsides and one for the saponins present in the preparation. A data fusion-based method was employed to evaluate the similarity of multiple chromatographic fingerprints, and principal component analysis (PCA) was used for the detection of frauds.

Yan et al. (2005a) propose two-dimensional fingerprint analysis, to fully utilise DAD information. As an example, they used Qinkailing injection, a very complex preparation containing eight medical materials. They achieved the 2D-fingerprint by PCA of the HPLC-DAD data and successfully applied it to classify various Qinkailing samples.
HPLC-MS and HPLC-DAD-MS

The importance of LC-MS has strongly increased in Chinese medicinal product research, because with this technique a wide variety of plant constituents ranging from small molecules to macromolecules such as peptides, proteins, carbohydrates and nucleic acids can be characterised. Apart from quantitative analysis, applications have been expanding rapidly into the area of structural elucidation and characterisation of active compounds (Cai et al., 2002).

Coupling liquid chromatography with mass spectrometry has become possible with the atmospheric pressure ionisation methods, electrospray ionisation (ESI) and atmospheric pressure ionisation (APCI).
(Wang et al., 2003). Other ion sources frequently applied in natural product analysis are thermospray ionisation and matrix-assisted laser desorption ionisation (MALDI) (Wolfender et al., 1998; Wang et al., 2003).

Tandem mass spectrometry (MS-MS) is highly feasible for detection of target compounds in complex matrices. The advantages of this technique are its selectivity, high sensitivity and fast screening capabilities. Among the various mass filters, quadrupole mass filters show excellent properties in terms of quantitative analysis, while ion trap MS has been widely used for structural identification. LC-MS with ion trap mass analysis offers the possibility of multiple-stage tandem mass spectrometry (MSn), as the ion trap produces fragment product ions through multiple generations. This is a powerful tool for the unambiguous identification of plant constituents (Cai et al., 2002).

Continuous MALDI sources, configured with time of flight-mass spectrometers (TOF-MS), which are extensively used in protein, nucleotide and sequence analysis, have also already been used for the analysis of medicinal herbs (Wang et al., 2003). This technique is especially useful for determination of polar plant constituents (Cai et al., 2002).

The main challenge of the application of LC-MS to the analysis of herbal extracts consists in finding an ionisation method suitable for the large variety of compounds present in a crude plant extract. Even though many interfaces are available, no single one allows universal detection of all constituents (Wolfender et al., 1998). Optimum ionisation conditions are structure-dependent, for example, most phenolic acids can only be ionised in the negative ion mode. Thus, analysis of an unknown sample requires the application of different conditions, e.g. different interfaces, to ionise all constituents of interest. The application of other spectroscopic techniques might be necessary in addition. LC-DAD-MS has been used very frequently for the analysis of plant extracts, because it provides on-line ultraviolet and MS information for each peak in a chromatogram, which often allows direct identification (He, 2000). Only a few examples are mentioned below, to illustrate the usefulness of this technique for the quality control of Chinese herbs.

Lin et al. (2005) used an LC-UV-ESI-MS combination for the determination of 12 constituents, most of them isoflavones and their glycosides, in Puerariae Radix 70% methanolic extracts. Parameters such as eluent composition, HPLC column and ion source were optimised, to achieve highly resolved separation and reliable identification of the compounds.

Zschocke et al. (1998) developed TLC, HPLC and LC-MS methods for the differentiation of Angelica sinensis (Oliv.) Diels from its related umbelliferous drugs A. pubescens Maxim. f. biserrata Shan et Yuan, A. dahurica (Fisch. Ex Hoffm.) Benth et Hook, Ligusticum chuanxiong Hort., L. porteri Coulter and Rose and Levisticum officinale Koch. The authors found that HPLC analysis was best suited for differentiation between the four drugs Levisticum officinale, Ligusticum chuanxiong, L. porteri and Angelica sinensis as mainly quantitative differences of their main constituents were found. LC-MS analysis of A. sinensis and L. officinale was not found to be advantageous with respect to differentiation of the two drugs. Nevertheless, the method provided the possibility to identify thermolabile ligustilide dimers in the APCI mode.

Cai et al. (2005) determined the phenolic constituents of an 80% methanolic Rosa chinensis Jacq. extract by LC-ESI-MS. Additionally, the authors used MALDI-QIT-TOF-MS, a hybrid mass spectrometer equipped with a MALDI source and a quadrupole ion trap followed by time-of-flight analysis, to verify the obtained results and to tentatively identify two ellagitannins which could not be identified by LC-ESIMS analysis. This could be done without any further purification of the crude extract. In total, the authors identified 36 phenolics in the extract.

Chen et al. (2004) used a comprehensive two-dimensional LC-DAD-APCIMS system for the separation and identification of Rhizoma Chuanxiong constituents. In a comprehensive two-dimensional system, all analytes from the first dimension separation are acted upon equally as fractions and analysed on the second dimension column. The authors used a CN column for first and an ODS column for second dimension separation. Molecular-weight information achieved from the MS detector adds a third dimension to the system because overlapping peaks can be identified without chromatographic resolution. From a methanolic extract, more
than 52 compounds were separated in less than 215 min and 11 of them could be identified simultaneously. According to the authors, this comprehensive two-dimensional approach is highly feasible for separation and identification of complex traditional Chinese medicines because of its high peak capacity, sensitivity and powerful resolution potential.

LC-MS technique is also frequently applied for the detection of undesired or toxic compounds in Chinese herbal preparations. For example, Wong et al. (2002) used an LC-MS-MS method for qualitative and quantitative analysis of toxic constituents in materials such as Radix Aconiti Lateralis, Radix Sophorae Tonkiniensis, Semen Strychni and Venenum Bufonis. The presence of the respective constituents was verified by their mass spectra, and quantitative determination was performed using multiple reaction monitoring (MRM).

Ioset et al. (2002) developed an LC/DAD-UV/MS method for the detection and quantification of aristolochic acid I in herbal samples. The limit of detection was 2 ng for ultraviolet and for MS in the selective ion monitoring (SIM) mode and 15 ng in the MS full scan mode. Additionally, a TLC prescreening for aristolochic acid I was developed. The authors applied these methods to Chinese phytotherapies and dietary supplements used as slimming regimens (Ioset et al., 2003).

Huang et al. (2005) developed a similar method for the determination and quantification of aristolochic acids I and II in Chinese medical preparations which were suspected to contain aristolochic acids based on previous TLC analysis. Quantification was performed using the very sensitive MRM method (detection limits: 2 ng/mL for aristolochic acid I, 2.8 ng/mL for aristolochic acid II).

Adams et al. (2006) developed an LC-MS method for the determination of trace amounts of atropine in Lycium barbarum L. berries (Gouquizi), which are widely used in China as medicine and functional food. LC-MS analyses were conducted using a quadrupole MS as well as an ion trap operated in the SRM (selected reaction monitoring) mode. Traces of atropine with maximum 19 ppb of dry weight were found in all eight analysed batches. The authors conclude that these amounts are not hazardous to health even at high consumption levels. Concerning MS conditions the authors conclude that the ion-trap method offers better selectivity in complex mixtures because of the quantification of specific fragmentation reactions in the SRM mode, whereas the quadrupole system provides higher sensitivity, less variation and therefore lower limits of quantitation.

**HPLC-ELSD**

In recent years, evaporative light scattering detection (ELSD) has been increasingly used. In contrast to the hyphenated techniques mentioned above, HPLC-ELSD does not provide additional structural information, but it allows the determination of compounds lacking a chromophore without derivatisation. Since this technique shows good applicability to complex mixtures, it seems to offer a useful alternative to conventional detection methods. HPLC-ELSD has already been employed for determination of various non-chromophoric compounds such as saponins, terpenes, steroids and carbohydrates, but it might also be used as a quasi-universal detector for determining all constituents of a preparation.

Wenkui and Fitzloff (2001) used HPLC-ELSD for the determination of astragaloside IV in Radix Astragali methanolic extracts. The compound is difficult to analyse by HPLC-UV because of its poor ultraviolet absorption.

Chai et al. (2005) determined seven triterpenoid saponins in Flos Lonicerae (Jinyinhua) hydroethanolic extracts. According to the 2005 Chinese pharmacopoeia, this herb can be derived from four sources, namely L. japonica Thunb., L. hypoglauca Miq., L. dasystyla Rehder and L. confusa DC. As the saponin profile alone did not allow the clear distinction of botanical origin, the authors suggest combination with conventional identification methods.

Yan et al. (2005b) employed the technique for the simultaneous determination of the major bioactive compounds in Qingkailing injection, namely adenosine, geniposide, chlorogenic acid, baicalin, ursodeoxycholic acid, cholic acid and hyodeoxycholic acid. Because of the poor ultraviolet absorption of some of these compounds, HPLC-DAD analysis cannot be performed, making HPLC-ELSD a useful alternative.

**Gas chromatography and hyphenated techniques**

As many bioactive constituents of herbal medicines are volatile, GC analysis can often be used for
authentication and quality control. By the use of GC-MS, reliable information on the identity of compounds is available and it has very good separation power, which allows generation of fingerprints of high quality. Furthermore, by mass spectrometry and the use of mass spectral databases, the qualitative and quantitative composition of the volatile compounds can be analysed. A disadvantage of this technique is the fact that polar and non-volatile compounds (and adulterations) are not detectable (Liang et al., 2004). To improve the chromatographic resolution of complex mixtures, chemometric methods are often applied.

Guo and coworkers (2004) used this approach to develop a GC fingerprint of *Artemisia capillaris* Thumb. volatile oil. They applied subwindow factor analysis (SFA), to resolve clusters of overlapping peaks. They obtained 75 resolved peaks and identified 43 of them using an MS database. To compare the received fingerprint chromatogram to chromatograms of other samples, an orthogonal projection method was adopted to identify each component directly in the sample chromatograms. Using this technique, tedious similarity search for each single peak and also subjective assumption to the analytical results can be avoided. After comparison of samples from four different sources, 51 common components were identified. It was also shown that differentiation from *Artemisia sacrorum* Lede., a common substitute of the drug, is possible with the developed method.

Li et al. (2003) used GC-MS combined with chemometric resolution methods to compare the volatile fractions from *Schisandra chinensis* (Turcz.) Baill. obtained by six different extraction methods. SFA was applied to confirm the equality of identical chemical components in different volatile fractions by their mass spectra.

Recently, comprehensive two-dimensional gas chromatography (GC × GC) has been described as an appropriate tool to achieve highly resolved chromatograms from very complex mixtures: GC × GC couples two columns with different separation mechanisms via a modulator, which traps, focuses and reinjects the slices into the second column. The advantages of this technique are enhanced sensitivity, superior resolution and group separation that facilitate the identification of unknown compounds (Shellie et al., 2002; Wu et al., 2004). The retention times on the two columns are plotted in a two-dimensional way. Using this plot, it is easy to compare different samples with regard to presence and absence of chromatographic peaks. Improved resolution of sample components and isolation of analyte signals from the chemical background additionally improves the quality of mass spectra. Additional information can be obtained when using bubble plots with the centre of the bubble representing the 1D and 2D coordinate, and the area of the bubble representing the size of a chromatographic peak. Resolution of individual components is best represented when a 3D surface plot or a 2D contour/colour plot of the 2D separation space is used (Shellie et al., 2003).

Shellie et al. (2003) applied two-dimensional gas chromatography with flame ionisation detection (GC × GC) and with quadrupole mass spectrometry detection (GC × GCqMS) to the analysis of the semi-volatile oils of three ginseng species, namely *Panax ginseng* C.A. Mey., *P. notoginseng* (Burk.) F.H. Chen and *P. quinquefolium* L. They performed chromatogram matching by correlating GC × GC-qMS with GC × GC (FID) results. This method allows FID to be used for quantitation of MS-identified peaks, as peak areas can be more accurately determined using FID.

Wu et al. (2004) used GC × GC, hyphenated with a TOFMS instead of a quadrupole MS, for the qualitative analysis of *Pogostemon cablin* (Blanco) Benth. volatile oil. They compared this technique to GC-MS and impressively demonstrated the enhanced sensitivity and superior resolution of GC × GC as compared with one-dimensional GC. Under the same operation conditions, GC-chromatograms displayed only 79 peaks, while about 800 peaks were resolved with GC × GC (Figure 28.3).

**Electrophoretic methods and hyphenated techniques**

As a micro-column separation technique, capillary electrophoresis (CE) has been shown to be effective and convenient in various fields, including the analysis of herbal medicines (Li et al., 2005). The advantages of CE are that only small sample amounts are required and that samples can be rapidly analysed with very good separation efficiency. Additionally,
Figure 28.3 Detailed comparison of 1D-GC with GC × GC chromatograms of Pogostemon cablin (Blanco) Benth. volatile oil (same injection amount, split ratio and the same velocity of carrier gas). (a) Detail of 1D-GC chromatogram; (b) detail of GC × GC contour plot; (c) detail of GC × GC chromatogram. The vertical line at 32.96 min indicates the second-dimension chromatogram that is shown in (c). In (b), peak 1 was modulated three times by GC × GC, therefore, identified three times by TOF MS, the spectra D1, D2, D3 were corresponding deconvoluted mass spectrum. Column: 1D-GC, SOLGELWAX (60 m × 0.25 mm i.d. × 0.25 μm); GC × GC, first: SOLGELWAX (60 m × 0.25 mm i.d. × 0.25 μm), second: cyclodex-B (3 m × 0.1 mm i.d. × 0.1 μm). The modulation time of GC × GC was 5 s. The Chemstation acquired data at 100 Hz for both 1D GC and GC × GC. (Reprinted from Wu et al., with permission from Elsevier.)
the capillaries reach equilibrium more easily than HPLC columns and the problem of column contami-
nation is avoided (Liang et al., 2004; Li et al., 2005).

The techniques most widely used are capillary zone electrophoresis (CZE), capillary gel electrophoresis (CGE) and capillary isoelectric focusing (cIEF) (Liang et al., 2004). Techniques such as micellar electrokinetic chromatography (MEKC), micro-
emulsion electrokinetic chromatography (MEEKC) and non-aqueous capillary electrophoresis (NACE) have also repeatedly been employed in the analysis of herbal extracts (Li et al., 2005).

CZE is a useful method for the separation of charged natural products, especially for polyphenolic compounds such as flavonoids, coumarins and organic acids (Li et al., 2005). For example, Jiang et al. (2005) developed a CZE method for the separation and quantitative determination of chalcones from Carthamus tinctorius L. preparations. Yue et al. (2004) analysed flavonoids in Hippophae rhamnoides L. preparations by CZE.

As it allows good separation of both charged and electrically neutral analytes, MEKC offers wider application possibilities than CZE. Neutral com-
ounds can be separated because of their different partition between the micelle and aqueous phase. Separation is based on a combination of electro-
phoretic and chromatographic mechanisms (Li et al., 2005). This method has been widely used for the analysis of herbal preparations. As a recent example, Yu et al. (2006) developed a MEKC method for the separation and quantitative analysis of paonol and paoniflorin, two bioactive compounds of Cortex Moutan, the dry root bark of Paeonia suffruticosa Andr. The compounds could also be determined in a granulate preparation of the drug. Müller et al. (2004) used MEKC for the qualitative and quantita-
tive analysis of biologically active constituents of Herba Verbenae (Verbena officinalis L.), a herb that is used in European as well as in Chinese medicine. With the optimised MEKC method, five markers belonging to three different classes of compounds (iridoids, phenylethanoids and flavonoids) could be baseline separated within 25 minutes.

MEEKC is a relatively new technique, which is characterised by the use of buffers containing surfactant-coated oil droplets for electrokinetic separations. In comparison with MEKC, the simultaneous separation of compounds with a wide solubility range is enhanced (Zhai et al., 2006).

Zhai et al. (2006) developed an MEEKC method for the separation and quantitative analysis of six aristolochic acid derivatives. With the optimised experimental conditions, baseline separation within 16 minutes was achieved (Figure 28.4). When the method was applied to methanolic extracts of five different samples derived from Aristolochia species, the contents of four of the aristolochic acids were successfully determined with satisfactory recovery, sensitivity and reproducibility.

Non-aqueous CE (NACE) is based on the use of electrolyte solutions prepared from pure organic solvents. Compared with aqueous CE, it offers a number of interesting characteristics such as alter-
ation of selectivity, reduced electrophoretic current and improved MS compatibility as well as enhanced solubility and stability of hydrophobic compounds. The fact that the physical and chemical properties of organic solvents and water differ greatly allows a simple selective manipulation of separation perfor-
mance (Qi et al., 2005). The technique has been repeatedly used for the separation and identification of Chinese herb constituents. For example, Li et al. (2004c) could separate the three toxic Aconitum alkaloids aconitine, hypaconitine and mesaconitine within 6 minutes using an NACE method. The method was successfully applied to determine these compounds in the Chinese drugs Chuanwu (dry root of Aconitum carmichaeli Debx.) and Caowu (dry root of A. kusnezoffii Reichh.).

Qi et al. (2005) determined bioactive flavone derivatives such as eupatilin, artemoflavone and hispidulin in ethanolic extracts of different Chinese herbs using an NACE technique.

In recent decades, hyphenated CE instruments such as CE-DAD, CE-MS and CE-NMR have been developed. This approach combines efficient CE separation with specific and sensitive detection methods, and additionally helps to overcome to a certain extent problems of artefact formation because of separation buffer chemistry or hidden instrumental constraints (Liang et al., 2004).

Feng et al. (2003) used CE-MS to analyse the alkaloids present in Wutou (Radix Aconiti Praeparata) and Maqianzi (the seed of Strychnos pierreana A.W. Hill) before and after detoxicant
processing of the materials. As good separation of the Maqianzi alkaloids was obtained, they could be measured in the total ion current mode. For the aconite alkaloids and their degradation products however, no satisfactory CE separation was achieved, so determination was only possible in the selective ion-monitoring mode.

Hyphenation of CE with less common detection methods such as laser-induced fluorescence detection (Hsieh et al., 2006) or electrochemical detection at a carbon-fibre microdisk electrode (Zhou et al., 2006) has recently been successfully used for sensitive determination of aristolochic acids.

The method developed by Zhou et al. (2006) has also been successfully applied to provide fingerprints of the methanolic extracts of different Aristolochia species, showing that CE is also feasible for fingerprint development.
Despite the widespread acceptance of chromatographic fingerprint techniques for quality control, the establishment of a characteristic fingerprint chromatogram for the quality control of herbal medicines remains a critical task (Wong et al., 2004). The ability to obtain a good chromatographic fingerprint representing phytoequivalence of an herb depends on several factors such as extraction method, measurement instruments and measurement conditions. These factors have to be optimised, to achieve meaningful fingerprints. After having solved these problems the question arises how to evaluate the information provided by a chromatographic fingerprint reasonably and efficiently (Liang et al., 2004).

The chromatographic profile should be featured by the fundamental attributions of ‘integrity’ and ‘fuzziness’, or ‘sameness’ and ‘differences’ which chemically represent the investigated herbal product. This means that by the use of chromatographic fingerprints the accurate authentication and identification of herbal medicines should be possible (‘integrity’), even though the amount and/or concentration of the characteristic constituents vary from batch to batch (‘fuzziness’) or, that chromatographic fingerprints should be able to successfully demonstrate the ‘sameness’ and ‘differences’ between various samples (Liang et al., 2004). Chemometric methods have been shown to be a helpful tool in the generation and evaluation of chromatographic fingerprints.

**Calculation of information content**

A chromatographic fingerprint of an herbal product is a multivariate system and its information content can be calculated by means of various approaches.

For local approaches, signal intensity, retention time, peak area and/or peak height of each independent peak without overlapping, but not the whole chromatographic curve, are taken into consideration. This makes the identification of each single peak and the estimation of the noise and/or error level of a fingerprint necessary, and in case of overlapping peaks, calculation of information content becomes very complex (Gong et al., 2003; Liang et al., 2004).

Gong et al. (2003) used a more global approach, namely information theory, to select the fingerprint with maximum information content from several different chromatograms. In this method, a chromatographic fingerprint is regarded as a continuous signal determined by its chromatographic shape. They applied this method to different chromatographic fingerprints of *Ginkgo biloba* L. and *Rhizoma Chuanxiong*, and selected the fingerprint with the highest information content, which corresponds to an optimum separation degree and a uniform concentration distribution of all constituents.

**Correction of retention time shifts**

Chromatographic retention time shifts are a frequent problem in fingerprint analysis. They occur for several reasons, such as successive degradation of the stationary phase, minor changes in the composition of the mobile phase, detector and other instrumental shifts, column overloading or interactions between analytes. These shifts have to be corrected prior to evaluation of similarity and difference between chromatograms since they might lead to erroneous results (Li et al., 2004d; Liang et al., 2004). There are several approaches for peak synchronisation. A very useful method is the addition of an internal standard (Liang et al., 2004). Mathematical retention time correction can be performed by using methods such as local least squares analysis (LLS) or spectral correlative chromatography (SCC) (Li et al., 2004b; 2004d).

In LLS, the correction of shifts is applied to fingerprint clusters in a piecewise manner, which makes the LLS-corrected fingerprints comparable in compositional distribution (Li et al., 2004b). The idea of SCC is that the same chemical component should possess the same spectrum no matter when it is eluted through diverse chromatographic columns. This means that for this technique also spectral data are required. With the help of this method, it is also possible to determine the presence or absence of compounds of interest among different fingerprint chromatograms (Li et al., 2004d; Liang et al., 2004).

**Similarity evaluation of fingerprints**

As mentioned above, SCC can be employed to demonstrate similarities and dissimilarities of chromatographic fingerprints and to detect frauds (Li et al., 2004d), but the method requires two-way data. A simple method for the evaluation of similarity is the calculation of correlation coefficient or congruence
coefficient. The SFDA suggested to judge herbal chromatographic fingerprints by their similarities which come from the calculation of the correlation coefficient and/or cosine value of vectorial angle of original data (Yang et al., 2005). Yang et al. (2005) used the evaluation software recommended by the SFDA for data analysis when evaluating HPLC-DAD-generated fingerprints of 56 Hypericum japonicum Thunb. (tianjihunang) samples from six Chinese provinces for similarity. The authors used the correlation coefficient for similarity calculation, with a reference fingerprint representing the median of all chromatograms. The chromatogram with the highest correlation coefficient was selected as an authentic reference fingerprint.

Principal-component analysis (PCA) is also frequently used for comparison of chromatographic fingerprints and detection of outliers. PCA is a common method to reduce multivariate data sets to their lowest dimensionality (Johnson et al., 2003). In PCA the original multivariate data are projected on a set of orthogonal axes defining a subspace of the original multivariate data space that maximally describes the variation contained within that multivariate data. The axes are known as principal components. They are arranged in descending order of the amount of variation in the original data they explain. Each principal component has an associated loadings and scores vector (Johnson et al., 2003). By extraction of useful information from object data, PCA is able to construct a theoretical model that has prerequisites or limited validity of principal components. When a fingerprint shows unexpected properties diverging from those of major good fingerprints or features not fitting in the theoretical major good fingerprint model, it is excluded from the model and diagnosed to be different (Li et al., 2004b).

Li et al. (2004b) performed a series of PCAs on the LLS-corrected HPLC-fingerprints of 33 Erigeron breviscarpus samples. They found that direct PCA of the LLS-corrected fingerprints without any further data transformation led to indefinite or unclear classification, and identification of unexpected fingerprints was very difficult with this method. For this reason, data pretreatment prior to PCA was necessary. Normalisation and standard normal variate (SNV) transformation led to an improved classification of fingerprints, the latter technique performing best (Figure 28.5).

Chemometric resolution of two-way data
Data obtained by hyphenated instruments are generally called two-way or two-dimensional data. They are very beneficial for the analysis of complex mixtures such as Chinese medical preparations because of the additional spectral information they provide. However, some problems have to be solved when using these techniques: On one hand, the spectra are often influenced by the background and overlapping peaks, which makes similarity-matching using spectral databases difficult. On the other hand, peak overlapping leads to a loss of analytical information. Several chemometric resolution techniques for two-dimensional data have been developed in the last decade to solve these problems (Li et al., 2003). The resolution methods can be divided into iterative methods such as iterative transformation factor analysis (ITTFA), orthogonal projection approach (OPA) and elementary matrix transformation (EMET), and non-iterative methods, which can be regarded as evolving methods. Examples for this approach are evolving factor analysis (EFA), window factor analysis (WFA), heuristic evolving latent projections (HELP), subwindow factor analysis (SFA) and evolving window orthogonal projection (EWOP) (Guo et al., 2003).

Guo and coworkers (2003) applied an iterative method, namely OPA, and a non-iterative method, namely EWOP, to the chemometric resolution of GC-MS chromatograms of Notopterygium incisum Ting ex H.T. Chang. In general, when separation performance is good, an iterative method is applied for resolution, and in case of bad separation performance, rather a non-iterative method is applied. The authors could separate 98 constituents in the essential oil of the plant, and 65 of them, accounting for 92.13% of the volatile oil, could be identified.

Examples for the application of SFA have already been described in detail in Chapter 3 (Li et al., 2003; Guo et al., 2004).

Spectroscopic techniques

Near-infrared spectroscopy
NIR spectroscopy is rapid, non-destructive, simple to use in routine operation and, since no sample
preparation is required, it is also interesting for the quality control of Chinese medical herbs (Chen and Sørensen, 2000; Fuzzati, 2004).

The major drawback is that for quantitative analysis the instrument has to be calibrated with a set of 20–50 samples with known analyte concentration obtained by suitable reference methods. The calibrations also have to be checked regularly by comparison with reference methods, to assure the compliance between calibration set and analysed samples (Chen and Sørensen, 2000; Fuzzati, 2004). Calibration models are produced using multiple linear regression (MLR), partial least squares (PLS) or principal component regression (PCR). Data pretreatment using mathematical transformation of the NIR spectra can be applied to enhance spectral features and/or to remove or reduce unwanted sources of variation during calibration model development (Fuzzati, 2004).

Chen and Sørensen (2000) used NIR spectroscopy for the determination of glycyrrhizin in Radix Glycyrrhizae and of ginsenosides in Radix Noto-ginseng. The samples could be successfully classified into low-, medium- and high-quality materials.

Woo et al. (2005) developed a NIR spectroscopy method for the discrimination between Chinese and Korean Angelicae Gigantis Radix. Samples of both origins were collected from various cultivation areas during a period of more than one year, and soft independent modelling of class analogy (SIMCA) was used to build a calibration model for classification. Samples could be successfully discriminated by using...
the characteristic band of decursin which provided the most significant difference between the two provenances. Wang et al. (2007) used NIR spectroscopy for the classification of Glycyrrhiza uralensis Fisch. batches and for the prediction of their glycyrrhizin content. The authors could demonstrate that NIR spectroscopy combined with PCA or SIMCA algorithm is suitable for the classification of liquorice samples according to their geographical origins, growing conditions and plant parts. Additionally they applied a combination of NIR spectroscopy and a partial least square analysis using HPLC data as a reference for the prediction of glycyrrhizic acid levels in the samples.

**Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy**

Apart from its frequent application in structure elucidation, NMR spectroscopy has recently become an interesting tool for metabolomic analyses. The term ‘metabolome’ describes the sum of metabolic constituents, observable as chemical profile or fingerprint of the metabolites in whole organisms or parts of them. [$^1$H]NMR spectroscopy in combination with PCA has been successfully utilised to differentiate plants based on their metabolomes. Especially high-resolution NMR and two-dimensional NMR techniques have been shown to be feasible for the analysis of highly complex plant extracts (Yang et al., 2006).

Yang et al. (2006) applied [$^1$H]NMR and J-resolved spectroscopic methods in combination with PCA to the metabolomic fingerprinting of three different commercial ginseng preparations and four kinds of ginseng roots. J-resolved two-dimensional spectra lead to a considerable increase of signal resolution within a short time, and moreover, by projection to a spectral axis, all protons appear as singlets, simplifying the spectra of complex mixtures. From the results obtained, the authors conclude that the presented method is promising for the quality control of other herbal medicinal products.

**Conclusions**

The application of Chinese herbs in Western countries has dramatically increased during recent decades. However, the legal basis for this kind of medicine only exists in rudimentary form, and harmonisation between countries is still missing. In some countries such as Germany, Chinese herbs are regarded as drugs, in others such as the US, they are classified as dietary supplements.

Incidents with Chinese preparations containing hazardous or toxic constituents, such as the toxic effects caused by herbs containing aristolochic acid, led to a serious discussion about the safety of TCM preparations. To minimise the risk of such incidents, it is necessary to ensure that quality and safety of TCM preparations meet Western standards. To a certain extent, this can be achieved by the application of good agricultural, sourcing and manufacturing practices to the production process and by the development of quality-control methods that give consideration to the special properties of Chinese herbal preparations.

Many safety issues do not substantially differ from the problems concerning herbal drugs in Europe, e.g. microbial contamination, pesticide and heavy metal residues. The fact that GAP rules are not yet fully implemented in many Chinese cultivation bases might, however, aggravate these problems in Chinese drugs. Adulteration with undeclared synthetic drugs is a problem more frequently occurring in Chinese herbal preparations than in Western ones, and it is difficult to handle, as the variety of possible adulterations is very large.

Special attention has to be paid to the correct authentication of the plant material. Compared with Western medicinal plants, this is more critical in Chinese plants for several reasons: on the one hand, nomenclature is not always consistent and one name can refer to different drugs in different geographical regions; on the other hand, expensive and scarce drugs are sometimes substituted by cheaper ones. For such cases, appropriate authentication markers are needed. The most common authentication methods are macroscopic and microscopic analysis and chromatographic methods such as TLC, HPLC, GC, CE and hyphenated techniques. In recent years, DNA-related techniques have increasingly been used. It is apparent that no single method exists that allows 100% authentication; instead, a combination of techniques is needed.

Appropriate quality of herbal materials also has to be ensured, as is the case for Western herbal
materials. However, in TCM, herbal mixtures consisting of up to 10 plants are common, which makes quality assurance an extremely challenging task. Apart from standardisation based on markers and biomarkers, fingerprint analysis using hyphenated chromatographic techniques seems to be a promising approach for quality assurance of complex herbal preparations. This concept is also favoured by authorities such as the WHO, the FDA and the Chinese State Drug Administration. However, the development of a meaningful fingerprint as well as the evaluation of similarity is not an easy task and often chemometric methods have to be applied to transform complex chromatographic data into meaningful quality information.

In summary, great scientific efforts have been made to provide appropriate methods that allow quality assurance of Chinese herbal drugs. However, for global safe use of TCM preparations in the future, harmonised legislation for TCM in general and for safety and quality requirements of TCM herbs in Western countries is needed.

References


Performance Liquid Chromatographic Method with Post Column Derivatization and Immunoaffinity Column Clean up. DIN EN 12955.


Johnson KJ, Wright BW, Jarman KH et al. (2003). High-


Introduction

The medicinal uses of plants are classified in WHO monographs according to the level of supporting data (World Health Organization, 1999, 2002). To be included in the highest category, the medicinal indications must be well-established in a number of countries and validated by clinical studies, the results of which have been disseminated through open publication in the international scientific literature. Medicinal uses that are well known in some countries and are incorporated into official pharmacopoeias, national monographs or in traditional systems of medicine, are included in a second category. Well-established indications with a plausible pharmacological basis supported by dated scientific studies requiring confirmation using more up-to-date techniques, are also included in this category. The lowest category includes those uses described in unofficial pharmacopoeias, other similar literature, and in folk medicine. Typically, it is not possible to assess the validity of these claims owing to the absence of supporting experimental or clinical data. The possible use of such remedies should be carefully considered in the light of more appropriate therapeutic alternatives.

Medicinal plants that have been traditionally employed in many countries, perhaps even for centuries, still require clinical evaluation of their efficacy and safety and comparison with the current standard treatment(s). In this context, the clinical trial provides a good example of the need for contemporary society to justify its choice of medication on the basis of the objectivity perceived to be inherent in quantitative and statistical data.

Types of clinical trials

Clinical trials are arranged on several categories.

Phase I

These trials examine clinical pharmacology and toxicity. The studies are usually performed on 20–80 healthy, human volunteers. The objectives of these studies are related to:

- estimation of suitable single dosage causing no serious side-effects
- drug bioavailability and metabolism
• determination of most suitable repeated dose schedule for use in Phase II.

**Phase II**

These trials are the initial clinical studies of efficacy and safety of a drug. They are pilot, small-scale studies on 100–200 patients requiring close monitoring of each patient. The aims of Phase II trials are:

• to estimate the efficiency of the dosing regimen determined in Phase I
• to verify the safety of the treatment.

**Phase III**

These multicentre trials are the full-scale evaluation of treatment, aimed to compare the study drug with the standard treatment(s) for the same condition in large trials involving a significant number of patients.

**Phase IV**

After approval for marketing, monitoring for adverse effects and additional large-scale, long-term studies of morbidity and mortality are essential.

Since the middle of the 20th century, the clinical trial has become firmly established as a standard procedure in the evaluation of new drugs. The key features of such a trial include the involvement of a control group whose members do not receive the experimental treatment, the allocation of subjects to the experimental group or to the control group in a fully randomised manner, and the use of blind or masked assessment so that neither the researchers nor the subjects are aware of which group they are in during the period of study.

In general, clinical trials may be classified as controlled, randomised, double-blind studies, open trials, or as well-documented observations of therapeutic applications. While clinical trials may take a variety of different forms, they are all prospective in that the observations are made over a period of time following application of the treatment. Perhaps the most common design for a clinical trial is the fixed sample size, parallel group design with random allocation of subjects to groups.

However, a different strategy may be required when there is considerable variability in the initial disease state of the subjects or in their response to therapy. Under these circumstances, large numbers of subjects may need to be included in the trial, to estimate the magnitude of any difference between treatments reliably. In such cases a more precise comparison of treatments might be achieved using a crossover design in which each subject receives more than one treatment. An example of this type of trial is the simple $2 \times 2$ crossover study in which one group of subjects receives treatment A followed by treatment B while another group receives these treatments in the reverse order. Clearly such a design is only suitable for use with chronic conditions in which the objective is limited to the study of a patient’s response to relatively short periods of therapy (Everitt and Pickles, 2004).

Possible designs of controlled clinical trials can be described as follows (Deeks et al., 2003).

**Experimental designs**

A study in which the investigator has control over at least some study conditions, particularly decisions concerning the allocation of participants to different intervention groups.

**Randomised, controlled trial**

Participants are randomly allocated to intervention or control groups and followed up over time to assess any differences in outcome rates. Randomisation with allocation concealment ensures that on average known and unknown determinants of outcome are evenly distributed between groups.

**Quasi-randomised trial**

Participants are allocated to intervention or control groups by the investigator, but the method of allocation falls short of genuine randomisation and allocation concealment (e.g. allocated by date of birth, hospital record number, etc.).

**Non-randomised trial/quasi-experimental study**

The investigator has control over the allocation of participants to groups, but does not attempt randomisation (e.g. patient or physician preference). Differs from a ‘cohort study’ in that the intention is experimental rather than observational.
Observational designs
The following categories are used for the various studies where the effect of a treatment on health outcomes is carried out.

Controlled before-and-after study
A follow-up study of participants who have received an intervention and those who have not, measuring the outcome variable both at baseline and after the intervention period, comparing either final values if the groups are comparable at baseline, or change scores. It can also be considered an experimental design if the investigator has control over, or can deliberately manipulate, the introduction of the intervention.

Concurrent cohort study
A follow-up study that compares outcomes between participants who have received an intervention and those who have not. Participants are studied during the same (concurrent) period either prospectively or, more commonly, retrospectively.

Historical cohort study
A variation on the traditional cohort study where the outcome from a new intervention is established for participants studied in one period and compared with those who did not receive the intervention in a previous period, i.e. participants are not studied concurrently.

Case–control study
Participants with and without a given outcome are identified (cases and controls respectively) and exposure to a given intervention(s) between the two groups compared.

Before-and-after study
Comparison of outcomes from study participants before and after an intervention is introduced. The before and after measurements may be made in the same participants, or in different samples. It can also be considered an experimental design if the investigator has control over, or can deliberately manipulate, the introduction of the intervention.

Cross-sectional study
Examination of the relationship between disease and other variables of interest as they exist in a defined population at one particular time point.

Case series
Description of a number of cases of an intervention and outcome (no comparison with a control group).

Regulation of herbal preparations and quality of clinical trials
Herbal preparations can be categorised according to the quality and level of the data (efficacy and safety) supporting the medicinal indications and/or uses claimed. In EC countries, for example, herbal preparations are categorised as:

- herbal medicinal products with a well-established use, a recognised efficacy and an acceptable level of safety
- traditional herbal medicines

In the United States, botanicals can be used as drugs or dietary supplements, while in Russia they may be employed as drugs or biologically active additives. An important consequence of this type of legal classification is that the claims that can be made for each category of herbal preparation are highly restricted.

In the US, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulates dietary supplements as foods, and not as drugs. The FDA does not pre-approve dietary supplements on their safety and efficacy (unlike drugs) and requires that every supplement be labelled a dietary supplement (Kurtzweil, 1998). A dietary supplement sold or promoted on its label or in labelling as a treatment, prevention or cure for a specific disease or condition would be considered an unapproved – and thus illegal – drug.

By law, manufacturers may make three types of claims for their dietary supplement products: health claims, structure/function claims, and nutrient content claims. Some of these claims describe:
Clinical trials as signposts to efficacy

- the link between a food substance and disease or a health-related condition
- the intended benefits of using the product
- the amount of a nutrient or dietary substance in a product.

A disclaimer – ‘This statement has not been evaluated by the FDA. This product is not intended to diagnose, treat, cure, or prevent any disease’ is required by law when a manufacturer makes a structure/function claim on a dietary supplement label. In general, these claims describe the role of a nutrient or dietary ingredient intended to affect the structure or function of the body. In the European Union (EU), the Food Supplements Directive (Directive 2002/46/EC, 2002) requires that supplements be demonstrated to be safe, both in quantity and quality.

Herbal preparations have a limited range of indication on labelling. The indication fields for traditional medicinal products contain the additional statements ‘traditionally used’ and they are: ‘for strengthening ...’, ‘for improvement of the general condition ...’, ‘adjunct treatment of the organic function of ...’, ‘prevention of ...’, ‘mildly acting medicinal product for ...’ (Directive 2004/24/EC, 2004).

In the EC, claims made for ‘herbal medicinal products with well-established medicinal use, recognised efficacy’ and ‘acceptable level of safety’ (EMEA/HMPWG/104613/2005, 2006) must be supported by an adequate level of evidence before marketing approval can be granted to the product (EMEA/CPMP/HMPWG/1156/03, 2004).

Major claims: level I; grade A

- ‘For the treatment, cure or management of any serious disease or disorder.’
- ‘For the prevention of any serious disease or disorder’ should be reserved for products with high level of evidence only.

Medium claims: level IIa, IIb, III; grade B

For products with a medium level of evidence, the following claims may be acceptable:

- reduction of the risk of a disease/disorder
- reduction in frequency of a discrete event
- aids/assists in the management of a named symptom/disease/disorder
- relief of symptoms of a named disease or disorder.

Minor claims: level IV, grade C

For products with a general level of evidence, the following claims may be acceptable:

- relief or management of symptoms of a minor, self-limiting disease/disorder that does not require medical intervention for diagnosis or monitoring
- description of a pharmacological action related to management of symptoms of a minor, self-limiting disease/disorder that does not require medical intervention for diagnosis or, if general evidence is submitted to support such claims, additional supporting evidence, e.g. pharmacological data, may be also necessary.

According to WHO, ‘well-established medicinal use’, and ‘recognised efficacy’ implies a ‘long history of medical use’ which may be defined, depending on the history of a given country (or community), as not less than several decades. Well-established use implies that a sufficient number of patients were treated by the concerned product or by a product essentially similar to the concerned product.

In the case of well-established herbal medicinal products, the requirements for proof of efficacy and the documentation required to support the indicated claims depend on the nature and the level of the indication. For treatment of minor disorders a lower level of evidence may be adequate, especially when the extent of long-term use, the experience with that particular herbal medicinal product and supportive pharmacological data were taken into account. The level of evidence and the grading of recommendations corresponds to the nature of the disease that is treated.

In the assessment of well-established herbal medicinal products, all bibliographic documents on clinical
trials have to be taken into consideration. Old reports are judged for their credibility. Various type of documents are used: controlled clinical trials, other clinical trials, cohort or longitudinal studies, observational (non-interventional) studies, case–control studies, other collections of single cases allowing a scientific evaluation, scientifically documented medical experience, for example, scientific literature and expertise from scientific medical associations. These bibliographic records are assessed, to establish if they can demonstrate a sufficient level of safety and efficacy (EMEA/HMPWG/104613/2005).

When studying clinical safety and efficacy using bibliographic references, the following are evaluated:

- number of patients
- specific diagnosis
- preparation used
- dosage
- duration of administration
- criteria for evaluation (e.g. improvement of symptoms)
- applicable statistical analysis.

The following factors increase the relevance and credibility of published data:

- multiple studies conducted by different investigators and/or independent literature reports where the findings across studies/reports are consistent

- high level of detail in the published reports, including clear and adequate descriptions of statistical plans, analytic methods (prospectively determined), and study endpoints, and a full accounting of all enrolled patients
- clearly appropriate endpoints that can be objectively assessed and are not dependent on investigator judgement (e.g. overall mortality, blood pressure, or microbial eradication). Such endpoints are more readily interpreted than more subjective endpoints such as relief of symptoms
- robust results achieved by protocol-specified analyses that yield a consistent conclusion of efficacy and do not require selected post-hoc analyses, such as covariate adjustment, subsetting, or reduced data sets (e.g. analysis of only responders or compliant patients, or of an ‘eligible’ or ‘evaluable’ subset)
- conduct of studies by groups with properly documented operating procedures and a history of implementing such procedures effectively (EMEA/HMPWG/104613/2005).

Reviews of the literature identify the current level of evidence of the safe and effective use of a herbal medicinal product. WHO recommends following definitions of the types of evidence (Table 29.1) and the grading of recommendations (Table 29.2).

The description of the traditional use of a preparation with no accompanying clinical or experimental data would not be considered sufficient.

### Table 29.1 Levels of evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Type of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ia</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised, controlled trials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ib</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from at least one randomised, controlled trial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from at least one well-designed, controlled study without randomisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed, quasi-experimental study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from well-designed, non-experimental, descriptive studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case–control studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions and/or clinical experience of respected authorities</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Clinical trials as signposts to efficacy

Evidence of efficacy. However, most medicines, the indications of which could be described as well established, are typically supported by numerous clinical studies (EMEA/HMPWG/104613/2005).

The highest level of evidence (Ia) is the Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. Meta-analysis is a statistical method for combining the results from two or more independent studies. It is used when it is felt that the studies are similar enough to make combining the results a sensible thing to do. Judging the advisability of combining drugs requires clinical common sense and an assessment of the quality of the studies carried out on each drug separately. Meta-analysis is a two-stage process. First the data for each study are summarised, and then those summaries are statistically combined. All widely used methods of meta-analysis are of this type (Altman et al., 2002).

While, for a whole variety of reasons, some clinical trials may not provide accurate information concerning the efficacy or safety of a studied drug, those that have been conducted according to GCP standards should offer an acceptable standard of reliability.

In 1996, ICH-consolidated guidelines were developed with consideration of the current good clinical practices (GCPs) of the EU, Japan and the US, as well as those of Australia, Canada, the Nordic countries and the World Health Organization.

GCP is an international ethical and scientific quality standard for designing, conducting, recording and reporting trials that involve the participation of human subjects. Compliance with this standard provides public assurance that the rights, safety and wellbeing of trial subjects are protected, consistent with the principles that have their origin in the Declaration of Helsinki, and that the clinical trial data are credible.

The objective of the ICH GCP guidance was to provide a unified standard for the EU, Japan and the US to facilitate the mutual acceptance of clinical data by the regulatory authorities in these jurisdictions.

The principles of ICH GCP are:

- Clinical trials should be conducted in accordance with the ethical principles that have their origin in the Declaration of Helsinki (World Medical Association, 2000), and that are consistent with GCP and the applicable regulatory requirement(s).
- Before a trial is initiated, foreseeable risks and inconveniences should be weighed against the anticipated benefit for the individual trial subject and society. A trial should be initiated and continued only if the anticipated benefits justify the risks.
- The rights, safety and wellbeing of the trial subjects are the most important considerations and should prevail over interests of science and society.
- The available non-clinical and clinical information on an investigational product should be adequate to support the proposed clinical trial.
- Clinical trials should be scientifically sound, and described in a clear, detailed protocol.
- A trial should be conducted in compliance with the protocol that has received prior institutional review board (IRB)/independent ethics committee (IEC) approval/favourable opinion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A (Evidence levels Ia, Ib)</td>
<td>Requires at least one randomised, controlled trial as part of the body of literature of overall good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B (Evidence levels IIa, IIb, III)</td>
<td>Requires availability of well-conducted, clinical studies but no randomised clinical trials on the topic of recommendation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C (Evidence level IV)</td>
<td>Requires evidence from expert committee reports or opinions and/or clinical experience of respected authorities. Indicates absence of directly applicable studies of good quality</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• The medical care given to, and medical decisions made on behalf of, subjects should always be the responsibility of a qualified physician or, when appropriate, of a qualified dentist.

• Each individual involved in conducting a trial should be qualified by education, training, and experience to perform his or her respective task(s).

• Freely given informed consent should be obtained from every subject prior to clinical trial participation.

• All clinical trial information should be recorded, handled and stored in a way that allows its accurate reporting, interpretation and verification.

• The confidentiality of records that could identify subjects should be protected, respecting the privacy and confidentiality rules in accordance with the applicable regulatory requirement(s).

• Investigational products should be manufactured, handled and stored in accordance with applicable good manufacturing practice (GMP). They should be used in accordance with the approved protocol.

• Systems with procedures that assure the quality of every aspect of the trial should be implemented.

The use of reliable data in support of medical and public health decisions is essential, particularly when it concerns clinical trials of herbal preparations.

While it is practically impossible to ascertain whether certain clinical trials performed before the 1980s complied fully with the principles of GCP, it is possible to evaluate the quality of the reports to some extent.

There are three methods to assess the quality of clinical trials: individual markers, checklists, and scales. Scales have the theoretical advantage over the other methods in that they provide quantitative estimates of quality that could be replicated easily and incorporated formally into the peer review process and into systematic reviews. Most frequently Jadad’s scale is used for assessments of quality of clinical trials (Jadad et al., 1996). The instrument contained the three questions related directly to measure the likelihood of bias in research reports:

• Was the study described as randomised (this includes the use of words such as randomly, random, and randomisation)?

• Was the study described as double blind?

• Was there a description of withdrawals and dropouts?

Points awarded for items 1 and 2 depended on the quality of the description of the methods to generate the sequence of randomisation and/or the quality of the description of the method of double blinding. If the trial had been described as randomised and/or double blind, but there was no description of the methods used to generate the sequence of randomisation or the double-blind conditions, one point was awarded in each case. If the method of generating the sequence of randomisation and/or blinding had been described, one additional point was given to each item if the method was appropriate.

A method to generate randomisation sequences was regarded as adequate if it allowed each study participant to have the same chance of receiving each intervention, and if the investigators could not predict which intervention was next. Methods of allocation using date of birth, date of admission, hospital numbers, or alternation should be not regarded as appropriate. A study must be regarded as double blind if the word ‘double blind’ is used.

Double blinding was considered appropriate if it was stated or implied that neither the person doing the assessment nor the study participant could identify the intervention being assessed or if in the absence of such a statement the use of active placebos, identical placebos or dummies is mentioned. Conversely, if the method of generating the sequence of randomisation and/or blinding was described but not appropriate, the relevant item was given zero points. The third item, withdrawals and dropouts, was awarded zero points for a negative answer and one point for a positive. For a positive answer, the number of withdrawals and dropouts and the reasons had to be stated in each of the comparison groups. If there were no withdrawals, it should have been stated in the report (Jadad et al., 1996).

In the absence of randomised, controlled trials (RCTs), healthcare practitioners and policymakers rely on non-randomised studies to provide evidence
of the effectiveness of healthcare interventions. However, there is controversy over the validity of non-randomised evidence, related to the existence and magnitude of selection bias. Systematic evaluation of non-randomised intervention studies (Deeks et al., 2003) showed that results of non-randomised studies sometimes, but not always, differ from results of randomised studies of the same intervention. Non-randomised studies may still give seriously misleading results when treated and control groups appear similar in key prognostic factors. Standard methods of case-mix adjustment do not guarantee removal of bias. Residual confounding may be high even when good prognostic data are available, and in some situations adjusted results may appear more biased than unadjusted results. Although many quality-assessment tools exist and have been used for appraising non-randomised studies, most omit key quality domains.

Healthcare policies based upon non-randomised studies or systematic reviews of non-randomised studies may need re-evaluation if the uncertainty in the true evidence base was not fully appreciated when policies were made. The inability of case-mix adjustment methods to compensate for selection bias and our inability to identify non-randomised studies that are free of selection bias indicate that non-randomised studies should only be undertaken when RCTs are infeasible or unethical. Recommendations for further research include:

- applying the resampling methodology in other clinical areas to ascertain whether the biases described are typical
- developing or refining existing quality-assessment tools for non-randomised studies
- investigating how quality assessments of non-randomised studies can be incorporated into reviews and the implications of individual quality features for interpretation of a review’s results
- examination of the reasons for the apparent failure of case-mix adjustment methods
- further evaluation of the role of the propensity score (Deeks et al., 2003).

The value of evidence concerning the effectiveness of healthcare interventions derived from studies involving non-randomised designs is somewhat controversial. Advocates for quasi-experimental and observational (QEO) studies argue that evidence from randomised, controlled trials (RCTs) is often difficult or impossible to obtain, or is inadequate to answer the question of interest. Advocates for RCTs point out that QEO studies are more susceptible to bias and refer to published comparisons that suggest QEO estimates tend to find a greater benefit than RCT estimates. However, comparisons from the literature are often cited selectively, may be unsystematic and may have failed to distinguish between different explanations for any discrepancies observed.

QEO study estimates of effectiveness may be valid if important confounding factors are controlled for. The small size of discrepancies for high-quality comparisons also implies that psychological factors (e.g. treatment preferences or willingness to be randomised) had a negligible effect on outcome. However, the authors caution against generalising their findings to other contexts, for three main reasons:

- Few papers were reviewed, and the findings may depend on the specific interventions evaluated.
- Most high-quality comparisons studied RCT and QEO study populations that met the same eligibility criteria, which may have reduced the importance of controlling for confounding.
- The literature reviewed is likely to have been subject to some form of publication bias.

Authors of papers appeared to have strong a priori views about the usefulness of evidence from QEO studies, and the findings of papers appeared to support these views (MacLehose et al., 2000).

Clinical trials of selected medicinal plants

Table 29.3 summarises the results of clinical trials of selected medicinal plants that are included in WHO and ESCOP monographs (World Health Organisation, 1999, 2002; ESCOP Monographs, 2003).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plant name and part used</th>
<th>Dosage forms</th>
<th>Diagnosis/indications/use</th>
<th>Pharmacological effect related to indication/use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absinthii Herba, <em>Arememisia absinthium</em> L., Wormwood</td>
<td>Infusions or decocts, dry alcoholic extract suspended in water</td>
<td>Hepatopathy, anorexia, dyspeptic complaints</td>
<td>Increases gastrointestinal secretions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agni Casti Fructus, <em>Vitex agnus castus</em> L., Chaste tree fruit</td>
<td>Extracts</td>
<td>Premenstrual syndrome (mastodinia, mastalgia) and menstrual cycle disorders (polymenorrhoea, amenorrhoea, oligomenorrhoea)</td>
<td>Reduction of frequency and severity of premenstrual symptoms and cholesterol lowering, fibrinolitic and antihypertensive effects, vasodilatation of precapillary arterioles, improve of elastic property of the aorta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allii Sativi Bulbus, <em>Allium sativum</em> L., Garlic</td>
<td>Fresh bulbs, dried powder, volatile oil, oil macerates, juice, aqueous or alcoholic extracts, aged garlic extracts, tablets, capsules, powder</td>
<td>Atherosclerosis, hyperlipidemia; age-dependent changes in blood vessels</td>
<td>Antibacterial, antifungal effect, inhibition of platelet aggregation, cholesterol lowering, fibrinolitic and antihyperglycaemic effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allii Cepae Bulbus, <em>Allium cepa</em> L., Onion</td>
<td>Fresh juice, 5% and 50 % EtOH extracts. Dried bulbus</td>
<td>Atherosclerosis, age-dependent changes in blood vessels, loss of appetite</td>
<td>Laxative effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe Capensis, <em>Aloe vera</em> (L.) Burm.f.</td>
<td>Powdered, dried juice and preparations thereof for oral use</td>
<td>Dry cough, irritation of the oral, pharyngeal or gastric mucosa</td>
<td>Mucous protective effect from local irritation. Anti-tussive, anti-inflammatory, immuno-modulatory effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altheaeae Radix</td>
<td>Crude drug, and galenic preparation thereof</td>
<td>For short-term use in cases of occasional constipation</td>
<td>Antiviral, immunostimulatory, anti-inflammatory, antipyretic, antihepatotoxic activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrographidis Herba</td>
<td>Crude drug, capsules, tablets and pills</td>
<td>Prophylaxis and symptomatic treatment of upper respiratory infections, such us common cold, uncomplicated sinusitis, bronchitis, pharyngotonsilitis, lower urinary tract infections, acute diarrhoea</td>
<td>Secretolitic, antispasmodic and secretomotor effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anisi Fructus</td>
<td>Crude drug for infusions</td>
<td>Dyspeptic complaints such as mild spasmodolytic gastrointestinal complaints, bloating, flatulence. Catarrh of upper respiratory tract</td>
<td>Secretolitic, antispasmodic and secretomotor effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angelicae Sinensis Radix</td>
<td>Powdered crude drug and fluid extracts</td>
<td>Menopausal symptoms</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, antimicrobial, cytotoxic and tumour-inhibiting effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arnicae Flos</td>
<td>Ointments, creams, gels or compresses made with 5–25% tinctures, extracts, dicuted extracts or decoctions of dried flowers</td>
<td>Treatment of bruises, sprains and inflammation caused by insect bites, gingivitis and aphthous ulcers, symptomatic treatment of rheumatic complaints, chronic venous insufficiency</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, antimicrobial, cytotoxic and tumour-inhibiting effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant name and part used</td>
<td>Dosage forms</td>
<td>Diagnosis/indications/use</td>
<td>Pharmacological effect related to indication/use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Astragali Radix, Astragalus membranaceus (Firch.) Bunge</strong></td>
<td>Crude plant material, extracts</td>
<td>Common cold</td>
<td>Immunostimulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Betulae Folium</strong></td>
<td>Crude plant material for infusion, tincture, fresh juice</td>
<td>Irrigation of urinary tract, especially in cases of inflammation and renal gravel, and as an adjuvant in the treatment of bacterial infections of the urinary tract</td>
<td>Diuretic effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bruceae Fructus, Brucea javanica (l) Merr.</strong></td>
<td>Seeds for decoction, or capsules</td>
<td>Amoebic dysentery</td>
<td>Amoebicidal and antibacterial activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bupleuri Radix, Bupleurum falcatum L.</strong></td>
<td>Decoction</td>
<td>Common cold, malaria, influenza, pneumonia/fever</td>
<td>Antipyretic activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Calendulae Flos</strong></td>
<td>Infusion for topical use, extracts, tinctures and ointments</td>
<td>Symptomatic treatment of minor inflammations of the skin and mucosa as an aid to the healing of minor wounds</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory, antibacterial, antiviral, anti-inflammatory and wound healing activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cheledoni Herba</strong></td>
<td>Tea infusion, standardised extracts, tinctures</td>
<td>Symptomatic treatment of mild to moderate spasms of the upper gastrointestinal tract; minor gall bladder disorders; dyspeptic complaints such as bloating and flatulence</td>
<td>Antispasmodic, choleretic and anti-inflammatory effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Centellae Herba, Centella asiatica (L.) Urban</strong></td>
<td>Dried drug for infusion, galenic preparations for oral administration, powder or extract for topical application</td>
<td>Treatment of wounds, burns, and ulcers of skin ailments. Prevention of keloid and hypertrophic scars. Stomach and duodenal ulcer</td>
<td>Stimulation of collagen and mucopolysaccharide synthesis in foreskin fibroblasts, inhibition of the inflammatory phase of hypertrophic scars and keloids. Reduction of stress-induced gastric ulceration by stimulation of GABA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chamomillae Flos, Chamomilla recutita (L) Rauschert</strong></td>
<td>Extracts, tinctures and other galenicals</td>
<td>1. Treatment of digestive ailments such as dyspepsia, epigastric bloating, impaired digestion, flatulence 2. Insomnia 3. Inflammations of the skin and mucosa (skin cracks, bruises, frostbite, insect bites), including irritations and infections of the mouth and gums, and haemorrhoids</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cimicifugae Racemosae Rhizoma</strong></td>
<td>Crude drug, extracts</td>
<td>Treatment of climacteric symptoms such as hot flushes, profuse sweating, sleeping disorders and nervous irritability</td>
<td>Oestrogenic activity, a decrease in serum luteinising hormone and climacteric symptoms Anti-depressive effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Coptidis Rhizoma, Coptis chinensis Franch</strong></td>
<td>Crude plant material, powder, and decoction</td>
<td>Cholera and non-cholera diarrhoea</td>
<td>Antibacterial activity, antisecretory effect in enterotoxigenic E. coli-induced diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued overleaf)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plant name and part used</th>
<th>Dosage forms</th>
<th>Diagnosis/indications/use</th>
<th>Pharmacological effect related to indication/use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crategi Folium cum Flore</td>
<td>Crude drug for infusion and extracts</td>
<td>Treatment of congestive heart failure stage II</td>
<td>Increases myocardial performance, improves myocardial circulatory perfusion and tolerance in cases of oxygen deficiency, antiarrhythmic Inotropic, chronotropic, antihypertensive effects, effect on coronary blood flow Vasodilatatory, potassium channel agonist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcumae Longae Rhizoma Curcuma longa L.</td>
<td>Crude plant material, powder in galenic preparations</td>
<td>Treatment of acid, flatulent and atonic dyspepsia</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, inhibition of gastric secretion, stimulation of gastric wall mucus and increase in the mucin content in gastric juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cynarae Folium</td>
<td>Dried leaf aqueous dry extract or infusion</td>
<td>Adjuvant to a low-fat diet in the treatment of mild to moderate hyperlipidaemia. Digestive complaints (e.g. stomach ache, nausea, vomiting, feeling of fullness) and hepatobiliary disturbances</td>
<td>Cholioretic, hypolipidaemic, thermogenic, antisepsic, hepatoprotective effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea Pallidae Radix</td>
<td>Hydroethanolic extracts</td>
<td>Adjuvant therapy and prophylaxis of recurrent infections of the upper respiratory tract (common cold)</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory and antioxidant effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea Purpureae Herba</td>
<td>Powdered aerial part, pressed juice and galenic preparations thereof for internal and external use</td>
<td>Supportive therapy for colds, the respiratory tract and urinary infections. External used include promotion of wound healing</td>
<td>Immunomodulatory and antiviral effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea Purpureae Radix</td>
<td>Crude plant material, powder in galenic preparations</td>
<td>Supportive therapy for colds, the respiratory tract and urinary infections</td>
<td>Stimulation of the immune system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eleutherococci Radix</td>
<td>Powdered crude drug or extracts in capsules, tablets, teas, syrup, fluid extracts</td>
<td>As a prophylactic and restorative tonic for enhancement of mental and physical capacities in cases of weakness, exhaustion and tiredness, and during convalescence</td>
<td>Adaptogenic and antistress activity, immunomodulating, antioxidant, antiviral, hepatoprotective and endocrine effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ephedrae Herba</td>
<td>Powdered plant material, extracts and other galenicals</td>
<td>Nasal congestion due to hay fever, allergic rhinitis, acute coryza, common cold and sinusitis. Bronchodilator in the treatment of bronchial asthma</td>
<td>Sympathomimetic effect, stimulation of α-adrenoreceptors when applied topically to nasal and pharyngeal mucosal surface. Stimulation of β-adrenoreceptors in lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eucalypti Aetheroleum</td>
<td>Essential oil in solid, semisolid or liquid preparations and galenical preparations</td>
<td>Symptomatic treatment of common cold, reducing in nasal congestion</td>
<td>Stimulation of nasal cold receptors, Antimicrobial, anti-inflammatory activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant name and part used</td>
<td>Dosage forms</td>
<td>Diagnosis/indications/use</td>
<td>Pharmacological effect related to indication/use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filipendulae Ulmariae Herba</td>
<td>Local allocation of an ointment containing decoction</td>
<td>Cervical dysplasia</td>
<td>Anticancerogenic effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frangulae Cortex</td>
<td>Finely cut and powdered crude drug, powder, dried extract, liquid and solid preparations</td>
<td>Short-term treatment of occasional constipation. As a single dose for total intestinal evacuation</td>
<td>Laxative effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentianae Radix</td>
<td>Decoction, macerate and tincture</td>
<td>Anorexia, dyspeptic complaints (heartburn, vomiting, nausea, constipation, flatulence), inflammatory conditions of gastrointestinal tract</td>
<td>Stimulation of secretion of gastric juice and bile. Improvement in dyspeptic symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo Folium</td>
<td>Coated tablets and solutions prepared from standardised extracts</td>
<td>Symptomatic treatment of mild to moderate cerebrovascular insufficiency (dementia syndromes) with the following symptoms: memory deficit, disturbance of concentrations, depressive emotional conditions, dizziness, tinnitus, headache. Peripheral occlusive disease and post-phlebitis syndrome. Treatment of inner ear disorders</td>
<td>Multiple effects: to improve global and local blood flow and microcirculation, to protect against hypoxia, to improve rheology, including inhibition of platelet aggregation, to improve metabolism and to reduce capillary permeability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng Radix</td>
<td>Crude plant material, capsules and tablets of powdered drugs, extracts, tonic drinks, wines, and lozenges</td>
<td>A prophylactic and restorative agent for enhancement of mental and physical capacities, in cases of weakness, exhaustions, tiredness and loss of concentrations, and during convalescence</td>
<td>Multiple activities producing an adaptogenic effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycyrrhizae Radix</td>
<td>Crude plant material, dried extract, liquid extract</td>
<td>Peptic and duodenal ulcers</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, cytoprotective effect due on the gastric mucosa to inhibition of 15-hydroxy-prostaglandin dehydrogenase and D13-PG reductase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamamelidis Folium et Cortex</td>
<td>Dried leaves and bark for decoctions, steam distillate, ointment and suppositories. Fresh leaves and twigs are used for preparation of a steam distillate</td>
<td>Topically for minor skin lesions, bruises and sprains, local inflammation of the skin and mucous membranes, haemorrhoids and varicose veins</td>
<td>Astrigent and venotonics activities. Antibacterial and anti-inflammatory activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamamelidis Aqua</td>
<td>Water solutions and semi-solid preparations</td>
<td>Atopic dermatitis, atopic eczema, treatment of bruises, skin irritation, sunburn, insect bites. Minor inflammatory conditions of the skin and mucosa. Episiotomy pain</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory and analgesic effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamamelidis Cortex</td>
<td>Ointment containing fluid extract</td>
<td>First-degree haemorrhoids</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory. Improvement in symptoms (pruritus, bleeding, burning sensation and pain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant name and part used</td>
<td>Dosage forms</td>
<td>Diagnosis/indications/use</td>
<td>Pharmacological effect related to indication/use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamamelidis Folium</td>
<td>Cream containing fluid extract</td>
<td>Atopic neurodermitis</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory and analgesic effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harpagophyti Radix</td>
<td>Hydro-ethanolic extracts</td>
<td>Arthrosis and arthritis, relief of low back pain</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory and analgesic effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hederae Helicis Folium</td>
<td>Hydro-ethanolic dry extracts in oral liquids</td>
<td>Cough associated with hypersecretion of viscous mucus. As adjuvant treatment of bronchial diseases</td>
<td>Spasmolitic and anti-inflammatory effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hippocastani Semen</td>
<td>Crude drug and extracts</td>
<td>Internally, for the treatment of symptoms of chronic venous insufficiency, including pain, feeling of heaviness in the legs, nocturnal calf-muscle spasms, itching and oedema. Externally, for the symptomatic treatment of chronic venous insufficiency, sprains and bruises</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory and vasoactive effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiperici Herba</td>
<td>Dried crude drug for decoction, powdered drug or extracts in capsules, tablets, tinctures and drops. Topical preparations include the oil, infusions, compresses, gels and ointments</td>
<td>Symptomatic treatment of mild and moderate depressive episodes</td>
<td>Antidepressant activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lichen Islandicus</td>
<td>Decoction, pastilles containing aqueous extract</td>
<td>Dry cough; irritation or inflammation of the oral and pharyngeal mucosa</td>
<td>Antibacterial, antiviral, immunomodulatory and antiproliferative activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lini Semen</td>
<td>Seeds, powdered and soaked in water</td>
<td>Constipation, irritable bowel syndrome, diverticular disease, gastritis and enteritis. Painful skin inflammations – externally</td>
<td>Laxative effect, effect on gastrointestinal complaints. Oestrogenic effect, effects on blood glucose and lipid level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matricariae Flos</td>
<td>External use: hydroalcoholic extracts in solid and semisolid preparations (ointment, cream, etc.), infusions, extracts. Internal use: infusions, dry and fluid extracts</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal complaints (gastritis, flatulence or minor spasms of the stomach), dermatoses, haemorrhoids, wounds healing. UV-induced erythema</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, antispasmodic, wound healing effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meliloti Herba</td>
<td>Hydroalcoholic extract taken orally or applied topically</td>
<td>Symptomatic treatment problems related to varicose veins, lymphoedema and mastalgia</td>
<td>Myotropis action, anti-inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melaleucae Alternafpliae Aethroleum</td>
<td>Essential oil</td>
<td>Topical application for symptomatic treatment of common skin disorders such as acne, tinea pedis, bromidrosis, furunculosis and mycotic onychia, and of vaginitis due to <em>Trichomonas vaginalis</em> or <em>Candida albicans</em>, cystitis and cervicitis</td>
<td>Antimicrobial activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant name and part used</td>
<td>Dosage forms</td>
<td>Diagnosis/indications/use</td>
<td>Pharmacological effect related to indication/use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melissae Folium</td>
<td>Comminuted crude drug, powder, tea bags, dried and fluid extracts for infusions and other galenical preparations</td>
<td>Externally, for symptomatic treatment of herpes labialis</td>
<td>Antiviral activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menthae Piperitae Aethroleum</td>
<td>Internal use: essential oil (in lozenges or enteric-coated capsules), for digestive disorders and irritable bowel syndrome External use: essential oil in dilute, semisolid or oily preparations</td>
<td>Internally for symptomatic treatment of irritable bowel syndrome and digestive disorders such as flatulence and gastritis</td>
<td>Antimicrobial and antispasmodic activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrrha</td>
<td>Solutions, volatile oil</td>
<td>Schistosomiasis and fascioliasis</td>
<td>Anthelmintic antiparasitic effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myrtilli Fructus</td>
<td>Dry fruit, decoction</td>
<td>Periheral vascular diseases (limb varicose syndrome, chronic venous insufficiency), ophthalmic disorders (tapetoretinal degeneration, refractory defects, etc.)</td>
<td>Antioxidant, vasoprotective, anti-inflammatory, antiatherogenic and ophthalmic activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocimi Sancti Folium</td>
<td>Crude drug and preparations thereof</td>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>Hypoglycaemic activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oenotherae Biennis Oleum</td>
<td>Fixed oil, neat or in capsule form</td>
<td>Internally for symptomatic treatment of atopic eczema, diabetic neuropathy, mastalgia and rheumatoid arthritis</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, inhibition of nerve conduction velocity, inhibition of platelet aggregation. Inhibition of clinical symptoms in atopic eczema, mastalgia, diabetic neuropathy, menopausal flashing, rheumatoid arthritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthosiphonis Folium</td>
<td>Infusions</td>
<td>Irrigation of urinary tract – inflammation and bacterial infections: uratic diathesis, cholecystitis and cholangitis</td>
<td>Diuretic and choleretic activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passiflorae Herba</td>
<td>Infusions, tincture</td>
<td>Tenseness, restlessness and irritability with difficulty in falling asleep, anxiety, opiate addictions</td>
<td>Sedative effect, inhibition of GABA receptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piperis Methystici Rhizoma, Kava kava</td>
<td>Comminuted crude drug and extracts for oral use</td>
<td>Short-term symptomatic treatment of mild states of anxiety or insomnia, due to nervousness, stress or tension</td>
<td>Behavioural and neuroprotective effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plantaginis Ovatae Semen</td>
<td>Seeds, powder and granules</td>
<td>Chronic and temporary constipation due to illness or pregnancy, duodenal ulcer and diverticulitis. Irritable bowel syndrome. Softening of stool of those with haemorrhoids</td>
<td>Laxative, increases the volume of the faeces by absorbing water, which stimulates peristalsis. Antidiarrhoeal effect due to increase in the viscosity of the intestinal contents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued overleaf)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plant name and part used</th>
<th>Dosage forms</th>
<th>Diagnosis/indications/use</th>
<th>Pharmacological effect related to indication/use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plantaginis Lanceolatae Folium/Herba</td>
<td>Extract</td>
<td>Catarrhs of the respiratory tract – acute bronchitis</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, immunostimulant and spasmolitic activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plantaginis Ovatae Testa</td>
<td>Crude drug</td>
<td>Idiopathic constipation, diarrhoea. Mild to moderate hypercholesterolaemia</td>
<td>Laxative, antidiarrhoeal and cholesterol-lowering effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygalae Radix</td>
<td>Extract</td>
<td>Productive cough, catarrh, chronic bronchitis</td>
<td>Expectorant effect – reduction of expectorant fluid viscosity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pruni Africanae Cortex</td>
<td>Lipophilic extract of the crude drug</td>
<td>Treatment of lower urinary tract symptoms of benign prostatic hyperplasia stages I and II</td>
<td>Inhibition of cell proliferation, anti-inflammatory activity, improvements in the clinical symptoms of nocturia, daytime polyuria, dysuria, hesitancy and urgency of micturition. Enhancing of the secretory activity of the prostate and seminal vesicles, testosterone-antagonistic activity. Inhibition of oestrogen binding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rauwolfiae Radix</td>
<td>Crude drug and powder</td>
<td>Mild essential hypertension</td>
<td>Hypotensive effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhamni Purshianae Cortex</td>
<td>Finely cut crude drug powder, dried extracts, liquid and solid preparations</td>
<td>Short-term treatment of occasional constipation</td>
<td>Laxative effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhei Radix and Rhizoma</td>
<td>Dried plant material and standardised preparations</td>
<td>Short-term treatment of occasional constipation</td>
<td>Stimulates and irritates the gastrointestinal tract due to stimulation of colonic motility, and increasing the pareacellular permeability across the colonic mucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rusci Rhizoma</td>
<td>Solid or liquid extracts</td>
<td>Supportive therapy for symptoms of chronic venous insufficiency (tired and heavy legs, tingling and swelling), varicoses. Haemorrhoids</td>
<td>Vasoprotection and vasoconstriction, effect on permeability and lymphatic vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salcis Cortex</td>
<td>Hydroalcoholic and water extracts</td>
<td>Relief of exacerbation of chronic low back pain. Symptomatic relief of mild osteoarthritis and rheumatic complaints</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory and antipyretic effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salviae Officinalis Folium</td>
<td>Aqueous extracts</td>
<td>Hyperhidrosis</td>
<td>Reduction in sweat secretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sambuci Flos</td>
<td>Crude drug for decoctions and infusions</td>
<td>Diaphoretic activity for the treatment of fever</td>
<td>Increases the response of the sweat glands to heat stimuli and increase diaphoresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senegae Radix</td>
<td>Chopped crude drug for decoctions and extracts</td>
<td>Cough due to bronchitis and catarrh of the upper respiratory tract</td>
<td>Expectorant activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant name and part used</td>
<td>Dosage forms</td>
<td>Diagnosis/indications/use</td>
<td>Pharmacological effect related to indication/use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sennae Folium</td>
<td>Dried plant material, powder, oral infusion, and</td>
<td>Short-term treatment of occasional constipation</td>
<td>Stimulation of peristaltic contraction and inhibition of local contraction, resulting in an accelerated colonic transit, thereby reducing fluid absorption. Stimulation of mucus and active chloride secretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>standardised extracts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sennae Fructus</td>
<td>Crude plant material, powder, oral infusion, and</td>
<td>Short-term treatment of occasional constipations</td>
<td>The same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>standardised extracts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serenoae Repentis Fructus</td>
<td>Crude drug, lipophilic extracts and preparations</td>
<td>Treatment of lower urinary tract symptoms (nocturia, polyuria, dysuria, urinary retention)-secondary to BPH stages I and II, in cases when diagnosis of prostate cancer is negative</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, antigonadotropic effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thereof</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silybi Mariae Fructus</td>
<td>Standardised extracts, crude drug for decoction</td>
<td>Supportive treatment of acute or chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis induced by alcohol, drugs or toxins</td>
<td>Antioxidant, antihepatotoxic, anti-inflammatory activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solidaginis Virguitariae Herba</td>
<td>Infusions</td>
<td>Irrigation of the urinary tract – inflammation and renal gravel. Adjuvant treatment of bacterial infections of the urinary tract</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, diuretic, spasmodic effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanaceti Parthenii Herba</td>
<td>Crude drug for decoction; powdered drug or extracts</td>
<td>Prevention of migraine</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory activity, inhibition of platelet aggregation and inhibition of serotonin binding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in capsules, tablets, tinctures and drops</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thymi Herba</td>
<td>Dried herb for infusion, extract and tincture</td>
<td>Uncomplicated respiratory tract infections, bronchial catarrh and bronchitis</td>
<td>Spasmolytic, antimicrobial, anti-inflammatory effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigonellae Foenograeci Seed</td>
<td>Powdered seeds</td>
<td>Adjuvant therapy in diabetes mellitus: type II diabetes (non-insulin-dependent). As an adjunct in the treatment of mild to moderate hypercholesterolaemia</td>
<td>Hypoglycaemic and hypocholesterolaemic effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urticae Radix</td>
<td>Crude drug for infusion; hydroalcoholic extracts</td>
<td>Symptomatic treatment of lower urinary tract disorders (nocturia, polyuria, dysuria, urinary retention) secondary to BPH stages I and II, in cases when diagnosis of prostate cancer is negative</td>
<td>Effects on benign prostatic hyperplasia: sex hormone-binding globulin, prostate growth, enzymatic activity (5-a-reductase) and aromatase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urticae Folium and Herba</td>
<td>Hydroalcoholic extracts, infusions</td>
<td>Adjuvant treatment of arthritis, arthroses and/or rheumatic conditions</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, analgesic effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uvae Ursi Folium</td>
<td>Crude drug for infusion or cold macerates,</td>
<td>Internally, mild urinary antiseptic for moderate inflammation of urinary tract and bladder</td>
<td>Antibacterial activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hydroalcoholic extracts and solid forms for oral</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>administration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some peculiarities in the evaluation of the efficacy of medicinal plants

A very important problem in evaluation of efficacy of herbal medicinal products is the complex chemical composition of plant extracts, containing as a rule several active compounds. Their content in the extracts is dependent on many factors, such as geographic region, soil and climate where it was growing, harvesting season, day time, drying, storage conditions, processing method, etc. Consequently the content of active and inactive compounds varies from batch to batch, but must be standardised in the final product, to have reproducible results in clinical trials. Meanwhile, the contribution of each ingredient in efficacy of the product can have an importance, because of its possible effects on:

- the stability of the product during the storage
- the absorbance of the active ingredients into the blood, their distribution and bioavailability
- possible interactions with other ingredients in the organism.

As a result, synergistic, when the cumulative effects of two active ingredients is more than just their sum, or antagonistic interactions of active and inactive ingredients can take place (Williamson, 2001).

Therefore, results of clinical trials of a standardised extract produced by one manufacturer, cannot be extended to the similar extracts of the same plant produced by other manufacturers, even if the chemical content of the active ingredients is the same.

Assuming that the product was produced in accordance with GMP standards, this implies reproducible from batch to batch chemical composition not only of active but of all other ingredients of plant extract. An even more complicated situation is with combinations of various plants extracts.

Finally, to come to a conclusion regarding the efficacy of a medicinal plant based on results of various clinical trials, the bioequivalence of studied drugs has to be taken into account. If they are not bioequivalent, the results of meta-analysis cannot be considered as trustworthy. It should be mentioned that many contradictory results concerning efficacy or safety of plant extracts are caused by lack of any data related to their chemical and bioequivalence.

Some plant extracts contain many active compounds acting via different mechanisms and unique interactions collectively have very high efficacy. Thus, treatment of cerebral insufficiency in humans with *Ginkgo biloba* extracts has been shown to improve global and local blood flow and microcirculation (Költringer *et al.*, 1989; Jung *et al.*, 1990), to protect against hypoxia (Schaffler and Reeh, 1985), to improve rheology, including inhibition of
platelet aggregation (Witte, 1989; Artmann and Schikarski, 1993), to prevent damage to membranes by free radicals (Kleijnen and Knipschild, 1992), to improve metabolism and to reduce capillary permeability (Lagrue et al., 1986). Moreover, the same extract is used for the treatment of other conditions, such as peripheral occlusive disease, post-phlebitis syndrome and inner ear disorders.

A characteristic feature of many medicinal plants is that they are usually used for treatment of many disorders. What is really efficient, and what is not? That is the key question for practitioners while they search for the most efficient drug for the treatment of a particular disorder – as a rule there is a very large choice of various plants, but very scarce information about their comparative efficacy.

References


Introduction

The use of medicinal plants dates back to prehistoric times. From time immemorial, humans have always recognised the great value of various herbs, plants and plant products.

Hence it is not surprising that there are a wide variety of these herbs and herbal products still in use. In addition to their use in industrialised nations, herbal prescriptions are commonly employed in developing countries for the treatment of various diseases, this practice being an alternative way to compensate for some perceived deficiencies in orthodox pharmacotherapy (Sofowora, 1989). Unfortunately, there is limited scientific evidence regarding safety and efficacy to back up the continued therapeutic application of these natural remedies. The rationale for the utilisation of herbal medicines has rested largely on long-term clinical experience (Zhu, 2002). However, with the upsurge in the use of these remedies coupled with the increasing demands made by regulatory bodies (e.g. the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA); the Committee on Safety of Medicines in the UK, the National Agency for Food and Drug Administration and Control), it has now become imperative to provide adequate clinical and toxicological data to support their continued folkloric applications.

This chapter introduces a rational approach for the toxicological assessment of herbal medicines. In particular, attention is drawn to the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) test guidelines on toxicity studies in experimental animals, since this represents a harmonised approach in the application of toxicological study protocols. No doubt the reader will benefit from having a closer look at these guidance documents in addition to consulting other guidelines as may be set out by the relevant authorities in each country. Efforts aimed at establishing the no-observed adverse effect levels (NOAEL), tolerable daily intakes (TDI) and margins of safety (MOS) for each herbal medicine should be...
actively encouraged. In fact, these are the major challenges for toxicologists and risk assessors in various regulatory agencies.

**What are herbal medicines?**

Herbal medicines consist of products used in therapies that utilise plants, plant extracts or other plant remedies in the treatment of diseases, and can rightly be regarded as the oldest known form of medicine. Through serendipity, careful observation of animals or by trial and error, our ancestors found the most effective curative remedies for their ailments. But with the advent and rapid progress in scientific knowledge, we can now identify the exact chemical constituents of these plants, and therefore can rationalise the pharmacological bases of their healing powers. One of the most remarkable things about herbal medicine is that it takes a more holistic approach in the treatment of diseases. Herbalists are either naturally gifted or are trained in comparable diagnostic skills as orthodox doctors but in their own case, they look for the underlying cause(s) of the ailment. In the world of herbal medicine, symptomatic treatment or suppression of symptoms is insufficient to achieve total cure since diseases can only occur when there is a perturbation or imbalance in one of the body systems. That is why herbalists use different plants or plant remedies to restore the balance of the body first and foremost, enabling the body to muster its own natural healing powers. Herbal preparations in the form of tablets, powders, capsules, fluid extracts, syrups, tinctures, creams and ointments promote health as a positive state and can be employed in a wide range of conditions including malaria, arthritis, insomnia, stress, headaches and migraines, tonsillitis and influenza; allergic responses such as hay fever and asthma; skin problems such as acne, dermatitis and eczema; digestive disorders such as peptic ulcers and irritable bowel syndrome; circulatory diseases such as angina, high blood pressure, varicose veins; and gynaecological disorders such as premenstrual syndrome.

**Perspectives on toxicity of herbal medicines**

One of the major issues with herbal medicines is the fact that there is still insufficient scientific evidence to back up their safety and efficacy. This may in part be due to the relative difficulty of evaluating a complete mixture of herbal medicines using the conventional battery of pharmacological and toxicological assays. However, we must bear in mind that herbal medicines work on a holistic basis and herbalists use either whole plant extracts or parts of the whole plant (e.g. leaf, root, bark, fruit) and these contain hundreds (maybe thousands) of different chemical entities.

Of course, many orthodox medicines and pharmaceuticals in use today are based on the principle of single-chemical isolation from plants or large-scale synthesis of these chemicals in the laboratory. But from the point of view of herbal medicine, it is not a good idea to try to isolate one active chemical compound for therapeutic purposes because, more often than not, these single chemical entities elicit unwanted or adverse effects when used alone. On the contrary, herbalists believe that the active constituents in a plant are rightly balanced within the plant and any possible untoward or toxic effects of one component would be neutralised by the presence of complementary constituents.

For instance, synthetic diuretics such as furosemide seriously deplete potassium levels in the body prompting co-medication with potassium supplements or alternative prescriptions containing potassium-sparing diuretics. In contrast, dandelion leaves have potent diuretic effects, yet contain potassium to replace the ions lost during treatment naturally (Bradley, 1992). That is why it is important to note that the toxic effect produced by the active principle(s) isolated from a plant may be totally different from the effects produced by the whole plant extract.

However, being herbal does not mean a remedy is innocuous, since there are several published reports on the potential toxic effects of herbal medicines in the population (Vora and Mansoor, 2005; Schoepfer et al., 2007). These may have several causes.

**Contamination of herbal medicines**

A worrisome trend on the toxic effects of herbal medicines and dietary supplements is related to reports on the hepatotoxicity, nephrotoxicity, neurotoxicity, haematological, mutagenic and cardiovascular
toxicities of some herbs. Hepatotoxicity seems to be the most common observation and effects can range from mild elevations of liver enzymes to fulminant liver failure. However, the reported toxicities of herbal products could be complicated because of the presence of confounding factors such as contamination with pesticides, herbicides, naturally occurring toxins, microbes or adulteration with orthodox medicines (El-Nahhal, 2004). Some so-called herbal products and dietary supplements actually contain other synthetic compounds, which are less well characterised. Hence it is the duty of regulatory agencies and lawmakers to impose strict labelling conditions for all herbal medicinal products, especially for products with the potential for significant toxicity. The labels should contain a frank declaration of the composition of these products and will aid in the evaluation and reporting of any adverse effects or interactions.

In-vivo versus in-vitro toxicity studies

There is much debate about the replacement of experimental animals with in-vitro toxicology models (for instance, see Funds for the Replacement of Animals in Medical Experiments [FRAME] website: http://www.frame.org.uk/). The objectives of FRAME are linked to the three Rs – refinement, reduction and replacement. It is possible that a wide range of in-vitro techniques, using both transformed and unmodified human and rodent cells, could serve as useful media in various toxicity assays. These in-vitro assays can play a big role in flagging or pointing out possible toxicological endpoints, with subsequent animal studies following on a lower scale (reduction). However, the complete replacement of whole animal studies with in-vitro techniques may never be a realistic option since there are marked differences in the behaviour of similar cells under in-vivo and in-vitro conditions. The most realistic target is to refine the procedures for animal experiments such that:

- The minimum number of animals required to establish the desired toxicological endpoints could be used.
- Little or no suffering is inflicted on the animals used for in-vivo studies.

Approaches to integrated safety assessment of herbal medicines

Toxicology as hazard-identification stage of safety assessment

There is no doubt that toxicological studies provide an appropriate platform for hazard identification. Most regulatory agencies rely on the results of in-vivo toxicity studies conducted according to standard protocols (e.g. OECD, FDA or WHO test guidelines) for risk assessment purposes. The type, nature and extent of effect obtained during toxicity studies can help in adequately classifying herbal medicines as non-toxic, moderately toxic or severely toxic on selected body systems. The following are dealt with in this chapter:

- acute, subacute and sub-chronic toxicity studies
- combined chronic toxicity and carcinogenicity studies
- developmental and reproductive toxicity studies
- genotoxicity and neurotoxicity assays.

Table 30.1 summarises the various types of toxicity studies.

Acute toxicity studies

This describes the toxic effects elicited by any substance or mixture of substances when administered in single (or in rare cases, multiple) doses to experimental animals over a period not exceeding 24 h. It is useful in providing preliminary identification of target organs of toxicity and, occasionally, revealing delayed effects. Acute toxicity studies may also aid in the selection of starting doses for Phase 1 human studies or dose-ranges for subsequent repeat-dose studies. In addition, acute toxicity studies are invaluable in cases of acute overdosing in humans. The test compound should be administered (up to the maximum feasible dose) to animals to identify doses causing no adverse effect and doses causing major life-threatening toxicities. Ideally, the acute toxicity studies in animals should be conducted using the route intended for human administration (orally in most cases).
Preliminary considerations

Test material

The test material should be clearly defined (e.g. part of plant or herb used, what sort of extract – freeze-dried aqueous, organic; extraction method; percentage yield, etc.). If test substances are stored in the fridge or freezer, they should be allowed to attain room temperature (22 ± 3°C) prior to dosing. To avoid causing excessive pain or tissue damage in the animals, preparations with irritant or caustic properties are not recommended. Results of any other in-vivo or in-vitro toxicity tests on herb or toxicological data on a compound structurally related to those found in the plant will be invaluable in the selection of the most appropriate starting doses.

Selection of animals

The choice of animals to be used would depend on the regulatory requirement in each country and any prior sensitivity issues with the herb in question. Young, healthy, adult rats of either sex could be used (age range 8–12 weeks). The OECD, however, recommends nulliparous and non-pregnant female rats for acute toxicity testing (OECD, 1998). This is because in certain instances where there are sensitivity differences between male and female rats, females are usually more sensitive than males in picking up subtle effects.

Before the test, animals should be randomised and assigned to the required number of test groups. The weight variation in animals or between groups used in a test should not exceed ±20% of the mean weight. Feeding should be done ad libitum with standard feed and the test animals should have free access to drinking water. If test substance is to be given orally, an overnight food starvation is recommended. In addition, the animals should be maintained under standard conditions of humidity (30–70%), temperature (22 ± 3°C) and 12 h light/darkness cycle and should be acclimatised to the environment for a week prior to commencement of the studies.

It is advisable to follow both the standard good laboratory practice (GLP) regulations of the OECD and WHO (OECD, 1982; WHO, 1990) and the Guide for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals (NIH, 1985). In general, studies should be designed so that the maximum amount of information is obtained from the smallest number of animals. Moreover, calculating lethality parameters such as LD₅₀ as done previously using large numbers of animals, is no longer required.

Preparation and administration of test doses

The maximum volume of freshly prepared herbal medicine that can be administered at once in rodents is usually 1 mL/100 g of body weight (although in some cases 2 mL/100 g has been used). For vehicles other than water, the toxicological characteristics of the vehicle should be known. The preparation should be administered in a single dose by gavage using a

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Toxicity type</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>OECD test guidance</th>
<th>Routes</th>
<th>Test system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acute</td>
<td>≤14 days</td>
<td>420/423/425</td>
<td>Oral/inhalation</td>
<td>Rat (female)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subacute</td>
<td>14–28 days</td>
<td>407</td>
<td>Oral/diet/drinking water</td>
<td>Rat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subchronic</td>
<td>30–90 days</td>
<td>408</td>
<td>Oral/diet/drinking water</td>
<td>Rat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic</td>
<td>≥ 6 months</td>
<td>452</td>
<td>Oral/diet/drinking water</td>
<td>Rat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined chronic and carcinogenicity</td>
<td>18 months to 2.5 years</td>
<td>453</td>
<td>Oral/dermal/inhalation</td>
<td>Rat/mice/hamster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinogenicity</td>
<td>2 years</td>
<td>451</td>
<td>Oral/dermal/inhalation</td>
<td>Rat/mouse/hamster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genotoxicity</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>473–486</td>
<td>In vitro/in vivo</td>
<td>Variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Developmental and reproductive</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>414/415/416</td>
<td>Oral</td>
<td>Rat, dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurotoxicity</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>424</td>
<td>Oral/dermal/inhalation</td>
<td>Rat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 30.1 Summary of the various types of toxicity studies and test systems required
stomach tube or a suitable intubation cannula. In the unusual circumstance that a single dose is not possible, the dose may be given in smaller fractions over a period not exceeding 24 hours. After the substance has been administered, food may be withheld for a further 3–4 h in rats or 1–2 h in mice.

Observations and data monitoring

Animals should be observed individually after dosing at least once during the first 30 min, periodically during the first 24 h (with special attention given during the first 4 h), and daily thereafter, for a total of 14 days. The times at which signs of toxicity appear and disappear are important, especially if there is a tendency for toxic signs to be delayed. Systematic observations for each animal should include changes in skin and fur, eyes and mucous membranes, respiratory, circulatory, autonomic and central nervous systems; somatomotor activity and behaviour pattern including cases of convulsions, salivation, diarrhoea, lethargy, sedation and coma. Gross necropsies should be performed and recorded for each animal including those sacrificed moribund, found dead, or terminated at day 14. It may be necessary to perform histopathological examination of organs showing evidence of gross pathology in animals surviving for 24 h or more after the initial dosing.

Data collection and test reporting

Individual animal and group data should be summarised in tabular form and the test report must include the following information, as appropriate:

- test substance (physical nature, purity, and physico-chemical properties)
- test animals (number, age, and sex of animals)
- housing conditions, diet, etc.
- test conditions including dosing volumes and time of dosing
- details of food and water quality
- the rationale for the selection of the starting dose
- tabulation of response data and dose level for each animal
- tabulation of body weight and body weight changes
- individual weights of animals at the day of dosing, in weekly intervals thereafter, and at the time of death or sacrifice
- date and time of death if prior to scheduled sacrifice
- time course of onset of signs of toxicity, and whether these were reversible for each animal
- necropsy and histopathological findings for each animal, if available (OECD, 1998).

Methods

Previous methods of acute toxicity testing were based on the techniques proposed by Miller and Tainter (1944), Litchfield and Wilcoxon (1949) and Lorke (1983). These traditional methods for assessing acute toxicity relied on deaths of animals as endpoints, thus giving an LD$_{50}$ value for each substance investigated. However newer and better techniques are now set out in the OECD test guidance documents no. 420 (fixed dose procedure), no. 423 (acute toxic class method) and no. 425 (up and down procedure). The following is a brief summary of the currently recommended methods for acute toxicity testing. For more detailed information on the application of these techniques, the reader should consult the relevant OECD documents and other references at the end of this chapter.

Fixed-dose procedure

As the name suggests, this technique relies on the observation of clear signs of toxicity at one of a series of fixed-dose levels, thus avoiding death as an endpoint. The procedure has been validated in a series of studies (Stallard and Whitehead, 1995) using mathematical models and has been shown to be reproducible in addition to allowing a substance to be ranked according to the globally harmonised system (GHS) for the classification of chemicals and mixtures, which cause acute toxicity (OECD, 1998). Basically, after an initial sighting study, groups of animals of a single sex are dosed in a stepwise procedure using the fixed doses of 5, 50, 300 and 2000 mg/kg. The initial dose level is selected on the basis of a sighting study and is expected to produce evident toxicity. In the absence of any data on the toxicity of the substance, starting doses should be 300 mg/kg. A minimum of 24 h is allowed between the dosing of each animal, after which all treated animals should be observed for at least 14 days for clinical signs and conditions associated with pain, suffering and impending death. Further groups of
animals may be dosed at higher or lower fixed doses, depending on the presence or absence of signs of toxicity or mortality. This procedure continues until the dose causing evident toxicity or no more than one death is identified, or when no effects are seen at the highest dose or when deaths occur at the lowest dose. A total of five female rats (including one from the sighting study) will normally be used for each dose level investigated. Treatment of more animals at the next dose should be delayed for 3–4 days until one is confident of survival of the previously dosed animals.

**Acute toxic class method**

The acute toxic class (ATC) method (Roll *et al.*, 1986) is a reproducible, step-wise procedure based on biometric evaluations (Diener *et al.*, 1995; Diener and Schlede, 1999) with adequately separated, fixed doses of a substance to allow for GHS ranking and classification. Three female rats are used per step and depending on the mortality and/or the moribund status of the animals, a total of two to four steps may be necessary to allow judgement on the acute toxicity of the test substance.

The procedure uses very few animals and ranks substances in a similar manner to test guidelines 420 and 425. Four predefined doses of 5, 50, 300 and 2000 mg/kg body weight are used and the starting oral dose should most likely produce mortality in some of the dosed animals. Although the method is not intended for the calculation of a precise LD$_{50}$, it does allow for the determination of defined exposure ranges where lethality is expected, since death of a proportion of the animals is still the major endpoint of this test.

If one dose level causes a mortality lower than 100% and another dose level results in lethality higher than 0%, then an LD$_{50}$ can be determined. Depending on the results obtained at one dose level, actions taken may be:

- no further testing needed
- dosing three additional animals at the same dose
- dosing three additional animals at the next higher or the next lower dose level.

A limit test should be conducted when available information suggests that mortality is unlikely at the highest starting dose level (2000 mg/kg body weight) but otherwise, for animal welfare reasons, starting doses of 300 mg/kg body weight are recommended. The time interval between treatment groups is determined by the onset, duration and severity of toxic signs but usually this is about 3–4 days to account for any delayed toxicity.

**Up-and-downprocedure**

The FDP allows for the estimation of LD$_{50}$ and confidence intervals in addition to observation of signs of toxicity (ASTM, 1987). Substances are subsequently ranked and classified according to the GHS method. Computer simulations have shown that starting doses in the region of 175 mg/kg and using a dose progression of factor 3.2 (corresponding to half-log units) between doses will produce the best results. The main test consists of a single, ordered dose progression in which animals are dosed, one at a time, at a minimum of 48-h intervals. The first animal receives a dose a step below the level of the best estimate of the LD$_{50}$. If the animal survives, the dose for the next animal is increased 3.2 times the original dose; if it dies, the dose for the next animal is decreased by a similar factor. Using the default progression factor, doses would be selected from the sequence 1.75, 5.5, 17.5, 55, 175, 550, 1750, 2000 or 5000 mg/kg for specific regulatory needs.

The testing stops when one of the following stopping criteria first is met:

- three consecutive animals survive at the upper band
- five reversals occur in any six consecutive animals tested
- at least four animals have followed the first reversal and the specified likelihood-ratios exceed the critical value (OECD, 1998).

For most applications, testing will be completed with only four animals after initial reversal in animal outcome. The LD$_{50}$ is calculated using the maximum likelihood method (SAS Institute Inc., 1990), except in some cases where the geometric mean of doses for the animals in the current nominal sample is used as a rough estimate of the LD$_{50}$. All deaths, whether immediate or delayed or humane kills, are incorporated for the purpose of the maximum likelihood analyses.
Preliminary considerations for repeat-dose studies

Repeat dose studies include 28-day, 90-day, 6-month and other studies lasting for a year or more. The determination of oral toxicity profiles of herbal medicines using repeat doses may be accomplished after initial acute toxicity testing. This study provides information on the possible health hazards that may occur over a specified period of time. The method should give an indication of herbs which have neurological, immunological or reproductive toxicity. It is critical to have in place the right experimental design before the commencement of these studies.

Selection of animal species

Selection of animal species and housing conditions are similar to the acute toxicity studies. The preferred rodent species is the rat, although other rodent species may be used. Animals may be housed individually, or be caged in small groups of the same sex; for group caging, no more than five animals should be housed per cage. At least ten animals (five female and five male) should be used at each dose level. If interim kills are planned, the number should be increased by the number of animals scheduled to be killed before the completion of the study. Consideration should be given to an additional satellite group of ten animals (five per sex) in the control and in the top dose group for observation of reversibility, persistence, or delayed occurrence of toxic effects, for at least 14 days after treatment.

Selection of dose levels

By regulatory requirement, at least three test groups and a control group should be used. But if from assessment of other available data, no effects are expected at 1000 mg/kg body weight per day, then a limit test may be performed at this dose level. There are many factors which come into play in the choice of dose levels for repeat dose toxicity studies, including intra- and interspecies variation, differences in metabolic and toxicokinetic profiles between rodents and humans, etc. But generally, the lowest dose is usually a simple multiple of the therapeutic dose whereas the highest dose is normally chosen to be a nearly toxic dose. However, the highest dose level should not cause a body weight decrease greater than 10–12% relative to concurrent control values and in a dietary study should not exceed 5% of the total diet because of potential nutritional imbalances caused at higher levels or produce severe toxic, pharmacological or physiological effects. The median dose lies somewhere between these two extremes (possibly a geometric mean of the two). If LD₅₀ values are available, the recommended doses should be 0.1%, 1% and 10% of the oral acute toxicity LD₅₀ values. Alternatively, two- to fourfold intervals are frequently optimal for setting the descending dose levels. Ideally, the lowest and median dose levels should be selected with a view to demonstrating any dose–response relationships while the lowest dose is expected to cause no observable adverse effects (i.e. NOAEL).

Preparation and administration of doses

The test compound should be administered by gavage or via the diet or drinking water. The animals are dosed with the test substance daily 7 days each week for the required duration. Substances administered via diet or drinking water should be monitored to ensure that the quantities of herbs involved do not interfere with normal nutritional status or cause water imbalance.

Clinical and functional observation battery

General clinical observations should be made at least once a day but recordings for morbidity and mortality should be done at least twice daily. Observed signs should include:

- changes in skin, fur, eyes, mucous membranes, occurrence of secretions and excretions and autonomic activity (e.g. lachrymation, piloerection, pupil size, unusual respiratory pattern)
- changes in gait, posture and response to handling as well as the presence of clonic or tonic movements
- stereotypies (e.g. excessive grooming, repetitive circling) or bizarre behaviour (e.g. self-mutilation).

In the fourth exposure week, sensory reactivity to stimuli of different types (e.g. auditory, visual and proprioceptive stimuli, assessment of grip strength
(Meyer et al., 1979) and motor activity assessment (Crofton et al., 1991) should be conducted. The availability of data on functional observations from a repeat dose study may enhance the ability to select dose levels for a subsequent sub-chronic study.

**Body weight, food and water consumption**

The body weight of each animal should be assessed using a sensitive balance during the acclimatisation period, once before commencement of dosing, at least once weekly during the dosing period and once on the terminal day. Measurements of food and water consumption should be made daily or at least weekly.

**Absolute and relative organ weights**

At the end of the dosing period, all the animals should be killed humanely and the different organs such as the heart, liver, lungs, brain, spleen, kidneys, uteri, testes should be carefully dissected out and weighed in grams (absolute organ weight). The relative organ weight of each animal should then be calculated as follows:

\[
\text{relative organ weight} = \frac{\text{absolute organ weight}}{\text{terminal body weight}} \times 100.
\]

**Haematology**

The following haematological examinations should be performed at the end of the treatment period:

- haematocrit
- haemoglobin concentration
- erythrocyte count
- total and differential leucocyte counts
- platelet count
- erythrocyte morphology
- mean corpuscular volume
- mean corpuscular haemoglobin
- mean corpuscular haemoglobin concentration
- a measure of blood-clotting potential.

**Chemical pathology (clinical biochemistry)**

All animals should be investigated for major toxic effects in tissues such as the liver, kidney and heart using clinical chemistry measurements. Overnight fasting of the animals prior to blood sampling is recommended. Plasma or serum analyses should include:

- sodium
- potassium
- glucose
- total cholesterol
- urea
- creatinine
- total proteins and albumin
- at least two enzymes indicative of hepatocellular effects (such as alanine aminotransferase, aspartate aminotransferase, alkaline phosphatase, \(\gamma\)-glutamyl transpeptidase, lactate dehydrogenase and sorbitol dehydrogenase)
- factors related to metabolic profiles (e.g. calcium, phosphate, fasting triglycerides, specific hormones, methaemoglobin and cholinesterase).

In the last week of study, urinalysis could be performed to determine appearance, volume, osmolality, specific gravity, pH, protein, glucose and blood cells.

**Gross necropsy and histopathology**

A full, detailed, gross necropsy should be conducted for all animals. The wet weights of the liver, kidneys, adrenals, testes, epididymes, thymus, spleen, brain and heart of all surviving animals should be measured soon after dissection. Thereafter preservation of the following tissues in the most appropriate fixation medium (e.g. formol saline) should be carried out:

- all gross lesions
- brain (e.g. cerebrum, cerebellum)
- spinal cord
- stomach
- small and large intestines
- liver
- kidneys
- adrenals
- spleen
- heart
- thymus
- thyroid
- trachea and lungs
- gonads
- accessory sex organs (e.g. uterus, prostate)
- urinary bladder
- lymph nodes
- peripheral nerve and bone marrow sections.
Full histopathology should be carried out on all gross lesions and also on the preserved organs and tissues of all animals in the control and high-dose groups.

**Toxicokinetics and metabolism data**

Toxicokinetics (absorption, distribution, metabolism and elimination) can be very useful in the evaluation and interpretation of subchronic and chronic exposure studies (Paynter, 1984). For each herb in particular information can be obtained on:

- rate of absorption
- pattern of distribution in tissues, organs and fluid compartments
- reversible binding to tissue sites and plasma proteins
- pattern and rates of metabolism and excretion profiles.

However, the toxicokinetic evaluation of herbal medicines may pose difficult problems since the chemical constituents in most plants may be in the region of hundreds or thousands (e.g. alkaloids, glycosides, flavonoids, quinines, tannins, polyphenols, sugars). In any case, if the chemical composition of a plant is well known, then it may suffice to do a toxicokinetic profiling of the major active constituents.

**Data analyses and test reporting**

This is similar to reporting of acute toxicity testing, with the inclusion of additional toxicity parameters, e.g.

- nature, severity and duration of clinical observations (reversibility or otherwise)
- sensory activity, grip strength and motor activity assessments
- haematological tests with relevant baseline values
- clinical biochemistry tests plus baseline values
- terminal body and organ weight data
- necropsy findings
- a detailed description of all histopathological findings
- toxicokinetic data if available
- statistical analyses in addition to discussion of results and appropriate conclusions.

**Subacute toxicity studies**

An example of a subacute toxicity study is the repeat-dose, 28-day, oral toxicity study in rodents. This study provides information on the possible health hazards likely to arise from repeated exposure over a relatively limited period of time and comprises the basic repeat-dose toxicity study that may be used for herbal medicines, for which a 90-day study is not warranted. Test parameters to be monitored are similar to those outlined previously.

**Subchronic toxicity studies**

Subchronic toxicity studies are short-term, repeat-dose studies carried out as a follow-up to the 28-day, subacute toxicity studies. A short-term study has been defined (WHO, 1990) as ‘having a duration lasting up to 10% of the animal’s lifespan, 90 days in rats and mice, or 1 year in dogs’. The main purpose of subchronic testing is to identify any target organs and to establish dose levels for chronic exposure studies.

The 90-day study provides information on major toxic effects, target organs and the possibility of accumulation, and can provide an estimate of a no-observed-adverse-effect level of exposure, which can be used in selecting dose levels for chronic studies and for establishing safety criteria for humans. The herb should be orally administered daily in graduated doses to three groups of experimental animals and a concurrent control group for a period of 90 days. At least 20 animals (10 female and 10 male) are recommended at each dose level but, if interim kills are planned, the number should be increased accordingly. An additional satellite group of 10 animals (five per sex) in the control and in the top dose group may be included for observation of reversibility or persistence of any toxic effects post treatment. Toxicological parameters to be monitored are similar to those outlined earlier except that interim haematological and clinical chemistry evaluations may be performed at selected times.

**Combined chronic toxicity and carcinogenicity studies**

These long-term observations are defined as studies lasting for the greater part of the lifespan of the test
animals, usually 18 months in mice and 2 years in rats (WHO, 1990). Typically the rat weanlings or post-weanlings have been used for a combined chronic toxicity/carcinogenicity assessment. Ideally, the design and conduct of the test should allow for the detection of neoplastic effects and a determination of carcinogenic potential as well as general toxicity, including neurological, physiological, biochemical, and haematological effects and exposure-related morphological effects. Preliminary studies providing data on acute, subchronic and toxicokinetic responses should have been carried out to permit an appropriate choice of animal species and strain (selected strains should not have a high spontaneous background tumour incidence). Dosing of the rodents should begin as soon as possible after weaning and acclimatisation, and preferably before the animals are 6 weeks old.

**Experimental design and dosing**

For a thorough biological and statistical evaluation, each dose level and concurrent control group should have at least 50 animals of each sex. A high-dose satellite group for evaluation of pathology other than neoplasia should contain 20 animals of each sex, while the satellite control group would contain 10 animals of each sex. If interim sacrifice is planned, the initial number should be increased accordingly. Based on the results of previous subchronic toxicity studies, at least three dose levels should be used in addition to the concurrent control group. The highest dose level should elicit signs of minimal toxicity without substantially altering the normal lifespan caused by effects other than tumours. The lowest dose should not interfere with the normal growth, development and longevity of the animal; and it must not otherwise cause any indication of toxicity (low dose is usually 10% or more of the high dose). For chronic toxicity testing, additional treated and concurrent control satellite groups are included in the study. The highest dose for satellite animals should be chosen so as to produce frank toxicity, to elucidate a toxicological profile of the test substance. Frequency of exposure is usually daily but may vary according to the route chosen – oral, dermal or inhalation. At interim periods of 3 months, 6 months and at every 6-month interval, urinalysis, haematological and biochemical examinations and should be performed. A complete gross and histopathological examination should be done on all animals including those that died during the experiment or were killed in moribund conditions.

**Developmental and reproductive toxicity studies**

The guidelines and procedures for developmental and reproductive toxicity studies are well documented in Korach (1998) as well as the OECD guidelines 414–416. Briefly, these studies are designed to provide general information on critical endpoints relating to potential toxic effects on reproductive parameters, including effects on mating behaviour (both sexes), fertility (both sexes), blastocyst implantation, gonadal function, oestrus cycling, conception, parturition, lactation, weaning, neonatal mortality, fetal development and survival. These studies could be one-generation (OECD 415), two-generation (OECD 416) or three-generation tests.

Important endpoints to assess within each generation include:

- time after pairing to mating
- mating behaviour
- percentage of females pregnant
- number of pregnancies going to full term
- litter size
- number of live births
- number of stillborns
- pup viability and weight at parturition, and postnatal days 4, 7, 14 and 21 days of age
- fertility index
- gestation index
- viability index
- lactation index
- gross necropsy and histopathology on selected parents.

Developmental toxicity studies (also called teratology studies) are designed to look at a wide spectrum of possible in utero outcomes for the conceptus, including death, malformations, functional deficits and developmental delays in fetuses. Exposure during sensitive periods may alter normal development resulting in immediate effects, or may subsequently compromise normal physiological or behavioural
functioning. The following assessments are usually carried out:

- number of live litters
- sex ratio of fetuses
- fetal/litter weights
- number and percentage of fetuses/litter with malformations
- number and percentage of fetuses/litter with variations
- types of malformations and variations.

**Genotoxicity and neurotoxicity studies**

These are designed to determine whether test chemicals can perturb genetic material to cause gene or chromosomal mutations. A large number of assay systems, especially in-vitro systems, have been devised to detect the genotoxic or mutagenic potential of agents. These tests include:

- bacterial reversal mutations tests (e.g. Ames test)
- tests in mammalian systems (e.g. chromosomal aberration tests, erythrocyte micronucleus test, sister chromatid exchange assay, unscheduled DNA synthesis)
- in-vitro gene mutation assays in yeast
- dominant lethal test in rodents and the mouse spot test.

Newer assays, which could provide additional information, include the Comet assay (DNA damage and repair), mutations in transgenic animals, fluorescent in-situ hybridisation and cell transformations.

In addition to genotoxicity tests, current thinking has also focused on epigenetic mechanisms of toxicity. In this regard, future evaluations could include effects on DNA methylation, histone acetylation, chromatin remodelling and transcription factors, which all act in concert to influence gene expression.

Neurotoxicity studies are aimed at identifying if the nervous system is permanently or reversibly affected by the treatment and to understand the underlying mechanisms involved. The following parameters are usually evaluated in addition to aforementioned clinical observations:

- functional tests (e.g. auditory, visual)
- ophthalmological examinations
- limb grip strength
- motor activity
- incidence of specific neurobehavioural, neuropathological, neurochemical or electrophysiological abnormalities.

If other toxicology data indicate potential neurotoxic effects, the inclusion of more specialised tests of sensory and motor function or learning could be considered.

**Interpretation of toxicology data**

The importance of choosing the right doses and toxicological endpoints cannot be overemphasised. The use of high doses, which overwhelm normal metabolic and detoxification pathways, or which cause tissue necrosis, could give rise to misleading conclusions. Moreover, responses produced by herbs in humans and experimental animals may differ markedly and could be physiological, pharmacological, toxic or adaptive (e.g. liver enzyme induction leading to hyperplasia). Hence, not all observed responses within a study would represent toxicity per se.

In terms of data analyses, there may be limitations associated with the use of statistics in toxicology (Gad and Weil, 1986, 1989; Waner, 1992). The key issues include the relationship between statistical and biological significance and the fact that lack of statistical significance does not necessarily prove safety. Findings should be considered on the basis of both statistical significance and likely biological variability. A non-statistically significant finding may have biological significance when considered in the light of predictable toxicological or pharmacological action of the test material or when combined with results from other studies. It is also essential to separate artefactual deaths from toxicity-induced deaths. The former includes deaths through age, acute or chronic infections, negligent handling or accidents. Deaths, which are clustered at a specific time period may reflect a spontaneous epidemic outbreak of limited duration.

Body weight changes are usually related to food intake, and analysis of one without an analysis of the
other is of limited value (Weil and McCollister, 1963; Roubicek et al., 1964; Heywood, 1981). Weight decrement may not always be related to toxicity per se (Seefeld and Petersen, 1984). The incorporation of herbal medicines into the diet may either increase or reduce palatability or may have no effect on appetite.

In clinical chemistry measurements, it is critical to consider the most relevant enzymes for analyses. For instance, in the assessment of hepatocellular function, alanine amino transaminase provides a more sensitive marker of hepatocellular damage than aspartate amino transaminase and within limits can provide a quantitative assessment of the degree of hepatocellular damage (Al-Mamary et al., 2002). Creatine phosphokinase is mainly located in skeletal and heart muscle and is the most appropriate enzyme to detect muscle damage. For hepatobiliary function, alkaline phosphatase, γ-glutamyl transferase and total bilirubin are the most relevant measurements.

It is always important to ascertain whether changes in biochemical or haematological parameters are linked to changes in organ weight, gross pathology or histopathology. Age-related changes in animals may have over-riding influences on haematological, biochemical, toxicokinetic or histopathological parameters (Grice and Burek, 1983; Mohr et al., 1994, 1996). Hence it is essential in all cases to differentiate between age-related and treatment-induced lesions with respect to the observed physiological, pharmacological and toxic responses. Overall, the evaluation and interpretation of test results should be correlated with more specific, sensitive, and reliable histopathological findings. The reader should consult Bush (1991) for a good review of factors that can complicate the interpretation of findings in toxicity studies.

**Conclusions**

After hazard identification through a battery of toxicity tests, the next step in safety assessment is to determine the exposure levels of the herbal medicine (i.e. how much of these herbs can an individual consume in a given period of time). The subsequent risk assessment is defined by the relationship between hazard and exposure (i.e. risk = hazard × exposure).

In this case, a direct comparison is made between the NOAEL and exposure levels, giving a ratio referred to as the margin of safety (MOS). The MOS should be sufficiently large to such a degree that there is high enough confidence that the doses of herbal medicines taken will not cause adverse human health effects. A tolerable daily intake should also be defined for each herbal medicine. Following the risk-characterisation phase, a risk-management decision needs to be made as to whether the risk is acceptable or not. If unacceptable, suitable controls should be put in place to minimise the risk and this should be communicated appropriately (Figure 30.1).

**References**


![Figure 30.1](image-url) A simplified approach for the integrated risk assessment of herbal medicines.


Following the advances in biomedical sciences in the 20th century, the use of herbal medicinal products (HMPs) strongly declined. However, in recent years a revival in the interest of herbal medicines has been observed (see Chapter 1). The main reason for the renewed interest seems to be the general belief that natural products are harmless or, at least, have fewer side-effects than synthetic drugs. Going along with the needs of consumers, pharmaceutical industries have started marketing an increasing number of (new) HMPs. A survey in The Netherlands in 1998, for instance, yielded a list of over 1500 products containing almost 800 different plant species (Commissie Toetsing Fytotherapeutica, 1999).

As a result of this growing popularity of HMPs, the necessity for the assessment of quality, safety, and efficacy of these products is increasingly felt. In particular, the evaluation of safety aspects should have priority since the above-mentioned assumption that HMPs only have beneficial effects has proven to be incorrect. Reports on toxic effects and/or adverse events associated with, amongst others, accidental or deliberate contamination or adulteration/substitution of plant material, the use of toxic plant (constituents), hypersensitivity reactions and herb–drug interactions have been regularly published (see, for example, Sharff and Bayer, 1982; Kumana et al., 1983; De Smet, 1992; Fugh-Berman and Ernst, 2001; Cosyns, 2003; Palanisamy et al., 2003; Cusack and Buckley, 2005; Izzo, 2005). Nevertheless, the number of these accounts still represents only a small proportion of the total amount of adverse drug reactions in the database of the World Health Organization (WHO) (Barnes, 1998).

This chapter gives a brief overview of the points to consider in relation to the safe use of HMPs. Approaches to deal with the evaluation of potential health risks of medicinal plants will also be described. In this respect, the combined application of analytical techniques and bioassays to obtain phytochemical markers to predict toxicity as well as a methodology to assess the clinical relevance of...
herb–drug interactions will be given as illustrative examples.

**Health risks related to HMPs**

Health risks associated with the use of HMPs may have multiple causes, but in general three categories can be distinguished. Two of these categories relate to the HMP itself. The first can be designated as extrinsic or non-plant-associated (Halkes, 2000); toxic effects or adverse reactions originating from accidental or deliberate contamination or adulteration/substitution of the plant material described on the label or from poor quality control.

The second category is more intrinsic or plant-associated in nature (Halkes, 2000). In this category, the plant material – as active ingredient in the HMP – produces health risks, for example, because it contains toxic constituents, or constituents that are known to affect the bioavailability and pharmacokinetic and/or pharmacodynamic interaction of other (plant) compounds or drugs, or it has been subjected to specific manufacturing processes resulting in highly concentrated or otherwise non-conventional extracts. The third category are ‘consumer-dependent’ causative factors, i.e. health risks associated with users or patients who show, for instance, hypersensitivity reactions or belong to a specific population which is much more prone to toxic effects and/or adverse events (De Smet, 2004). Each of these aspects will be discussed separately in the following sections.

**Contaminations and adulterations/substitutions**

A critical evaluation of the available reports in which toxicity of and/or adverse drug reactions to HMPs have been described shows that the detrimental effects in many cases were due to contamination or adulteration/substitution of the plant material. The risks associated with the use of such contaminated or adulterated products have been extensively reviewed (De Smet, 1992; De Smet, 2004). Therefore, this aspect of herbal safety will only be briefly commented upon here since they are discussed in Chapter 27. Contaminants and adulterants are often the result of ignorance or incompetence but cases of deliberate substitution by cheaper or more common plant species and conventional drugs are not uncommon.

**Toxic plants and/or constituents**

It has long been recognised that certain plants or plant constituents are (extremely) toxic and that their use can provide serious health risks. Amongst these plants are *Aconitum napellus* L., *Croton tiglium* L. (fatty oil from the seeds), *Digitalis* species, *Ricinus communis* L., and plants containing aristolochic acid or pyrrolizidine alkaloids (Sharff and Bayer, 1982; Kumana *et al.*, 1983; Roth *et al.*, 1984; Cosyns, 2003). The application of these plants as herbal medicines is generally obsolete and is legally restricted in many countries. However, despite the legislatorial exclusion of some notorious toxic plant species, the use of other potentially harmful herbs still persists, as may be concluded from a Dutch survey (Commissie Toetsing Fytotherapeutica, 1999) which confirmed previous observations from the German HMP market (Thesen, 1988).

**Aristolochic-acid-induced nephrotoxicity**

From the point of view of safety, the availability and use of potentially noxious plants, and HMPs is an obvious cause for concern. A striking example in this respect comes from Belgium where in 1992 a number of women using a Chinese herbal mixture to lose weight developed severe end-stage renal disease caused by interstitial nephritis and uroepithelial malignancies (Vanherweghem *et al.*, 1993; Depierreux *et al.*, 1994; Cosyns, 2003). To inhibit appetite, these women were intended to be treated with *Stephania tetranda* S. Moore and *Magnolia officinalis* Rehder and E.H. Wilson. However, root extracts of *S. tetranda* (in Chinese: *fangji*) were exchanged for or contaminated with roots of *Aristolochia fangchi* Y.C. Wu ex L.D. Chow and S.M. Hwang (Chinese name: *guang fangji*) (Vanhaelen *et al.*, 1994). *Aristolochia* species contain aristolochic acids, nephrotoxins and carcinogens which have been shown in both animal and human studies to induce tumours in the urinary tract (Thiele *et al.*, 1967; Mengs *et al.*, 1982, 1988). Aristolochic acids – in particular the nitrophenanthrene carboxylic acids aristolochic acid I and II – form DNA adducts after metabolic activation.
Such adducts were identified in the kidneys and urethric tissue of the Belgian patients (Schmeiser et al., 1996). DNA damage by aristolochic acid may also lead to destructive fibrotic processes in the kidney (Lebeau et al., 2001). This example highlights the need for adequate quality control and proper identification of ingredients in HMPs as this could have prevented this dramatic case, in particular since HMPs containing aristolochic acid are still marketed (Martena et al., 2007).

Plants and/or constituents affecting bioavailability and pharmacokinetics

Several plants or plant constituents are renowned for their ability to affect bioavailability and pharmacokinetics of coadministered drugs. The most well-known and by far the best-investigated example in this respect is St John’s wort (Hypericum perforatum L.). Numerous clinical studies and case reports have documented that St John’s wort preparations lower serum concentrations of concomitantly used drugs and in this way – when serum concentrations are reduced to suboptimal or even below therapeutically effective levels – may pose health risks (for more details, see below). Hypericum extracts contain many (bioactive) constituents, including hyperforin, hypericin, flavonoids, and polyphenols. Of these compounds, hyperforin markedly induces cytochrome-P450 (CYP) 3A4 expression via activation of the pregnane receptor (Moore et al., 2000). Since this isoenzyme is involved in the hepatic metabolism of a wide array of drugs, these findings provide a molecular mechanism for the interaction between St John’s wort and these drugs.

Besides St John’s wort, many other plant constituents have been shown to alter bioavailability and pharmacokinetics. Thus, the major alkaloid component in Piper species, piperine, has been reported to increase serum concentrations of drugs, such as the bronchodilator theophylline and the beta-blocker propranolol (Bano et al., 1991) after oral administration in humans. This enhancement of systemic availability by piperine is most probably related to the inhibition of glucuronidation in the liver and the small intestine (Atal et al., 1983; Singh et al., 1986). Other plant constituents that may influence the biopharmaceutical parameters of a HMP include saponins and essential oil constituents; the former being able to increase the water solubility of non-polar compounds (Nakayama et al., 1986; Schöpke and Bartlakowski, 1997) and the latter improving percutaneous absorption (Hori et al., 1991; Williams and Barry, 1991). Plants containing this kind of constituents may constitute distinct safety problems. Especially when they are used in complex or combined preparations, the ability of such compounds to influence the bioavailability and pharmacokinetics of additional ingredients may significantly alter the toxicological profile of these products. A specific group of HMPs that should be considered in this respect are Ayurvedic preparations, since extracts of Piper species are part of most formulations used in this Indian traditional medical system.

Highly concentrated or otherwise non-conventional extracts

In the past decade, an increasing number of HMPs have been marketed which contain highly concentrated, enriched, partially purified extracts or extracts that have been prepared with non-conventional solvents. The profile of constituents present in such preparations substantially differs from traditionally used extracts (decoctions, percolates, macerates, tinctures, etc.), both in qualitative and quantitative aspects. Accordingly, the toxicological characteristics of such products may also significantly differ from traditional preparations. Safety data obtained for the latter, therefore, cannot provide an accurate and reliable insight into the actual dangers of extracts that have been subjected to specialised manufacturing processes. As a consequence, unexpected intoxications resulting from the use of products containing these highly concentrated or otherwise non-conventional extracts may emerge. This can be illustrated by recent case reports on hepatotoxic effects of kava (Piper methysticum G. Forst). Traditional extracts of kava – infusions of ground roots in cold water – have been consumed in the South Pacific for ages, apparently without serious side-effects (Steiner, 2000; Moulds and Malani, 2003).

When the use of kava for the treatment of anxiety and nervous disorders became popular in the Western world, concentrated alcohol and acetonic extracts replaced the traditional beverages. From
1990 to 2002, 39 patients were identified who had developed hepatic necrosis or cholestatic hepatitis following the use of these commercial products (Stickel et al., 2003). Eight of these patients required liver transplantation and in total three lives were lost (Stickel et al., 2003). Although the risk–benefit ratio of kava extracts still is considered to be good in comparison with that of other drugs used to treat anxiety, these casualties resulted in withdrawal of market authorisation and a ban on sales in many countries (Clouatre, 2004).

Initially, it was speculated that both immunoallergic and idiosyncratic reactions might underly the liver damage (Stickel et al., 2003). However, several, more recent publications also suggest that differences in concentration and ratio of plant constituents in commercial preparations versus traditional kava beverages may play a role in hepatotoxicity. Thus, the concentration of kava-lactones in extracts prepared with organic solvents is significantly higher than that of aqueous extracts (Stickel et al., 2003; Whitton et al., 2003; Côté et al., 2004) and has been linked to a more potent inhibition of the drug-metabolising potential of the liver (Côté et al., 2004). Along with this, the kava-lactone to glutathione ratio is negatively affected when extracts are prepared according to commercial methods which may result in glutathione depletion in the liver and subsequent saturation of its enzymatic detoxification pathways (Whitton et al., 2003).

Finally, the use of non-polar extraction solvents has been associated with an increased hepatocellular toxicity, an effect that was due to preferential extraction of the hydroxylchalcone flavokavain B from kava roots (Jhoo et al., 2006). Likewise, introduction of a modified extraction procedure leading to St John’s wort products with a higher hyperforin content has been associated with an increased number of herb–drug interactions (see also below) (Madabushi et al., 2006).

**Consumer-dependent toxic effects and/or adverse events**

Toxic effects and/or adverse events are not always dependent on the HMP itself but may also be due to consumer-related factors, such as age, renal and hepatic functioning, hypersensitivity reactions, nutritional state or disease-related physiological disturbances (Huxtable, 1990; De Smet, 2004). Furthermore, otherwise perfectly well-tolerated HMPs may cause health problems under specific circumstances. In particular, long-term users, consumers of large amounts or many different HMPs simultaneously, and people who use prescribed drugs concomitantly (herb–drug interactions; see below) may be prone to detrimental effects, but also pregnant and lactating women or patients undergoing surgery are at risk (Huxtable, 1990; De Smet, 2004).

**HMPs during pregnancy and lactation**

Ever since the early sixties, when the world was shocked by the dramatic effects of thalidomide on the unborn child, there is consensus that the use of drugs during the first phases of pregnancy should in general be avoided. Only drugs that can be classified as pregnancy-category A and lactation-category I according to the Swedish classification can be considered safe for use by pregnant women (Sannerstedt et al., 1980; Berglund et al., 1984).

Similar precautions should be taken when HMPs are used during pregnancy and lactation since genotoxic, abortifacient, uterine stimulatory, and emmenagogue effects have been reported for many herbs (Ernst, 2002). At present, only a few herbs have been clinically tested for safety and efficacy during pregnancy. Ginger (*Zingiber officinale* Roscoe.), as a herbal remedy for pregnancy-associated nausea and vomiting, is one of these exceptions, since its efficacy is proven in several randomised clinical trials and the incidence of birth defects, miscarriages or deformities in ginger-treated women is not higher than in the normal population (Boone and Shields, 2005; Borrelli et al., 2005). However, for the vast majority of HMPs sufficient data on safety during pregnancy and lactation is lacking. Until this information is available, pregnant women should limit the use of HMPs or only do so after consultation of a general practitioner and/or gynaecologist.

**Methods to evaluate the safety of herbal medicines**

From a scientific point of view, it does not come as a surprise that health risks are associated with the use
of HMPs since drug targets, e.g. receptors, enzymes or DNA, do not discriminate between the origin of molecules, whether these are derived from the plant kingdom or have been synthesised. Therefore, safety of a HMP is not dependent on its naturalness but on its chemical fingerprint and its ability to interact with physiological substrates of the human body (De Smet, 1995). Both of these aspects need to be considered in the safety evaluation of HMPs. This requires a multidisciplinary approach, involving analytical techniques and methodologies common to botany, pharmacology, pharmacotherapy, toxicology and epidemiology. Distinct features of HMPs which set these products apart from synthetic drugs – their complexity and available knowledge from traditional use – should, however, also be taken into account during safety evaluation.

**Quality control**

Quality control is dealt with in Chapter 28 so is mentioned here only to emphasise its important link with safety. Increased resolution chromatographic systems and sensitivity of detection methods have made it possible to detect and identify plant constituents in ever-decreasing concentrations (Hostettmann et al., 1997; Kerns et al., 1998; Vogler et al., 1998).

Quality assurance is not only important to prevent the detrimental effects that contaminated or adulterated/substituted preparations may inflict on general health, or at least minimising these risks to occur, but also for another reason. Thus, it is inherent to the production process, as a result of differences in growing and harvesting conditions, that the chemical profile of the plant material used to prepare HMPs is not constant. This is valid both for the concentration of (biologically active) markers (Repčák et al., 1998; Vogel et al., 1999; Beekwilder et al., 2006) but also for the levels of potentially noxious plant constituents (Table 31.1). Efforts to guarantee a constant quality – for instance, by standardisation to fixed (low) concentrations of active and/or toxic metabolites – as well as methods to quantify this are therefore necessary as they are a prerequisite for obtaining reproducible data on efficacy and safety and the reliable assessment of benefit-to-risk ratios.

Nevertheless, phytochemical standardisation alone may not be completely satisfactory, since HMPs that are comparable in content and/or pattern of one or more constituents still have been shown to vary in biological activity and bioavailability (Rininger et al., 2000a,b; Kressmann et al., 2002). In this respect, use of bioassays has been advocated as an instrument to better predict therapeutic efficacy (McLaughlin et al., 1998; Rininger et al., 2000a). By

---

**Table 31.1 The concentration of (potentially) noxious constituents in HMPs depends on the plant variety, growing and harvesting conditions, and the plant part used. Standardisation to fixed (low) concentrations of these metabolites may help to obtain reproducible data on safety and to establish a positive benefit-to-risk ratio (Halkes, 2000)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plant Part</th>
<th>Constituent</th>
<th>Concentration Range</th>
<th>Plant Variety</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Roots of <em>Symphytum asperum</em></td>
<td>Have higher levels of alkaloids in comparison to the aerial parts (Roitman, 1981)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>叶子 of <em>Ginkgo biloba</em></td>
<td>Ginkgolic acids are detectable in both the leaves and seed covers but relative concentrations in the leaves are so low that allergic responses, especially dermatitis, can be excluded (Wagner et al., 1989)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaves of <em>Senecio</em></td>
<td>Similar results were obtained with regard to the seasonal variation in the amounts of the neurotoxin 4'-O-methylpyridoxine in <em>Ginkgo biloba</em> leaves and seeds (Arenz et al., 1996)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roots of <em>Senecio</em></td>
<td>The concentration of alkaloids in <em>Senecio</em> spp. was found to be affected by the area in which the plants are collected (Johnson et al., 1985)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
analogy, toxicological testing in combination with quality control may serve to identify safety/toxicological markers more adequately. Thus, inhibitory activity of kava extracts towards various cytochrome-P450 isoenzymes (CYP 3A4, CYP 1A2, CYP 2C9, and CYP 2C19) was found to be dependent on kavalactone composition (Côté et al., 2004). Likewise, the mutagenic potential of commercial ethanolic plant extracts could be correlated with their quercetin content (Schimmer et al., 1988). Another example of combined application of analytical techniques and bioassays to identify phytochemical markers to predict potential toxic effects of herbal extracts is highlighted below.

**Gallic acid content in tannic acid samples as a predictive marker for toxicity**

Hydrolysable tannins are present in many different (medicinal) plants and have been included in many older editions of pharmacopoeias and are specifically referred to as Acidum Tannicum or tannic acid (Halkes et al., 2001a). Tannic acid became the standard in local treatment of burn wounds in the first half of the 20th century when most clinicians agreed upon its effectiveness, but nowadays its use is generally considered to be obsolete, mainly because of early reports on hepatotoxicity (Hupkens et al., 1995; Halkes et al., 2001a).

Using analytical techniques in combination with a bioassay, we were able to establish that the toxic effects observed in patients with burns were not related to tannic acid itself but rather were, at least in part, caused by degradation products present in preparations used in early clinical trials and toxicity studies. A haemoglobin precipitation test was used as a model to study the protein-binding capacity, using tannic acids from different commercial sources. A highly purified tannic acid extensively used in the food and pharmaceutical industry was found to be most potent in this respect but other tannic acid samples, however, showed considerably less activity or were even unable to precipitate haemoglobin in the dosage range tested (Halkes et al., 2001b).

Qualitative and quantitative analysis of these tannic acids demonstrated that the ability to bind proteins was inversely proportional to the content of free gallic acid, one of the constituents found after hydrolytic degradation of tannic acid (Figure 31.1a; Halkes et al., 2001b). In subsequent experiments it was proven that gallic acid, even when present in such low concentrations of approximately 1–2%, (completely) blocked haemoglobin precipitation (Figure 31.1b) and that highly purified tannic acid with a gallic acid content below 0.1% did not elicit signs of hepatotoxicity (Halkes et al., 2002). On the basis of these experiments, it was concluded that the free gallic acid concentration in tannic acid products is a predictive marker for safety. Too-high levels of gallic acid, by attenuating protein precipitation in the burn wound, may on the one hand hamper the fixation of endogenous toxins produced in the skin after thermal injury, thereby constituting a potential hazard to the liver as has been seen in several clinical trials (Halkes et al., 2001a). On the other hand, inhibition of protein binding may also have caused an increase in the bodily uptake of topically applied tannic acids, thereby elevating the plasma concentrations to potentially toxic levels which might explain the adverse effects observed in several animal experiments (Halkes et al., 2001a).

**Safety assessment of traditionally used HMPs**

In contrast to new chemical entities, many medicinal herbs have a long history of use and this may have generated a significant amount of published toxicological information including scientifically accepted monographs, clinical experience and epidemiological studies, as well as data from post-marketing surveillance programmes. This information may be used as a basis for a simplified registration procedure and may serve as a substitute for animal experiments and reduce the number of clinical trials in humans (Anonymous, 2004b; Committee on Herbal Medicinal Products, 2006).

Although prescribers and consumers of traditional HMPs will be able to recognise and report on major acute adverse events, such as dermatological reactions, nausea, and disturbances of the gastrointestinal tract, it has proven to be difficult to associate other more subtle symptoms of toxicity or long-term detrimental effects with the use of a particular herb and these may therefore have easily been missed. Consequently, data on traditional use are unlikely to provide information on chronic
toxicity, carcinogenic, mutagenic, and/or teratogenic effects. Legislative bodies have acknowledged this problem and have given the right to national and European authorities to demand such supplementary safety testing when bibliographic evidence is deemed to be insufficient to prove safety before marketing authorisation as a traditional HMP is issued (Anonymous, 2004b, 2006a).

Methods to establish safety of non-traditional HMPs

Safety evaluation of non-traditional HMPs requires a multidisciplinary approach involving a wide variety of data, including the chemical profile of (toxic) constituents present in the plant material, results from in-vitro or in-vivo pharmacological and toxicological

Figure 31.1 Use of analytical techniques in combination with bioassays to identify predictive markers for toxicity. (a) High-performance liquid chromatography profiles from some commercial tannic acids. High-molecular-weight polygalloyl-glucose esters elute between 12 and 40 min. The degradation-product gallic acid has a retention time of 4.7 minutes; (b) haemoglobin precipitation – measured as a decrease in absorbance at 405 nm – of tannic acids is markedly inhibited by the presence of low concentrations of gallic acid.
studies, as well as information on toxic effects and adverse events observed in clinical trials or obtained from post-marketing surveillance databases. In particular, the human data are best suited to establish potential health risks and should take precedence in determining safety. When the number and rigour of the human studies is deemed sufficient by expert judgement, non-clinical testing may not even be required (Bast et al., 2002).

**Chemical profile of (toxic) constituents**

Qualitative and quantitative determination of the (toxic) constituents present in a plant extract or HMP is fundamental to the evaluation of safety (see above). Quality control should guarantee levels of known, relevant toxins to be within acceptable limits which may be defined on the one hand by hazard characterisation of the substance(s) involved and on the other hand by their possible contribution to therapeutic efficacy. In this respect, products derived from *Valeriana officinalis* L. may serve as an example. Valepotriates present in this herb have been shown to possess in-vitro cytotoxic and mutagenic activity, most probably attributable to their alkylation properties (Bos et al., 1997). However, reasonable doubt may be raised as to whether the toxic effects of valepotriates are of relevance in humans, since they are quite unstable and little is resorbed from the intestinal tract in unchanged form (Wagner and Jurcic, 1980). Thus, hazards associated with the presence of valepotriates may be graded as low. Nevertheless, since it is questionable whether the presence of valepotriates contributes to the beneficial effects of valerian preparations in the treatment of sleep disorders (Bos et al., 1997), limits of these constituents may be set at the absolute minimum.

This applies even more so in the case of plants containing constituents which have been implicated in more severe toxic effects such as pyrrolizidine alkaloids or aristolochic acids. However, in other instances complete reduction of the levels of a potentially toxic component is not always possible. This is in particular true when a HMP contains constituents which are both pharmacologically active or detrimental, depending on the dosage; removal of these constituents will also render the product ineffective. It may then be useful to set specific limits, e.g. as done in the 2005 *European Pharmacopoeia* for the content of hydroxyanthracene derivatives in standardised *Aloe* dry extracts (Anon., 2004a).

Even if no known toxins are present, identification of (minor) constituents in a HMP may be of use during safety evaluation since it may provide input for a recently developed pragmatic risk assessment tool, the threshold of toxicological concern (Kroes et al., 2004, 2005). This concept refers to the establishment of a level of exposure for all kind of substances below which there would be no appreciable risk to human health. The threshold of toxicological concern principle proposes that such levels can be identified – also in the absence of full-range toxicity data – on the basis of the molecular structure of the (plant) constituent and the known toxicity of chemicals that share similar structural characteristics (Kroes et al., 2004, 2005).

**Experimental, pharmacological and toxicological data**

Where insufficient data are available or reasonable doubt exists as to whether or not a specific HMP can be safely used – e.g. when information on traditional use is lacking or (potentially) noxious constituents are present – complementary evidence should be supplied to prove the harmlessness of such a preparation. In this regard, like all new chemical entities that are being filed for a marketing authorisation, HMPs should satisfy the requirements for the acceptance of safe use as laid down by, for example, the European Union (Anon., 2001). Usually, this will require thorough research into the extracts or products in question; knowledge about the acute, subacute and chronic toxicity, potentially harmful effects on reproduction including embryo/fetal and perinatal toxicity, mutagenic and carcinogenic activity, tolerance, pharmacokinetic parameters, etc., should be established to minimise the health risks of these products (Anon., 1995, 1997, 2001). Based on the results of these toxicity tests, risks associated with the use of a HMP can be characterised and a safe dosage or acceptable daily intake established. In general, the safe dosage is determined based on the highest no observed adverse effect level (NOAEL) or the lowest observed adverse effect level (LOAEL) obtained from in-vivo experiments or human studies, which are divided by a safety or uncertainty factor (Bast et al., 2002).
Human studies

Systematic studies in healthy volunteers or patients, whether these are clinical trials or case reports, may – in addition to providing evidence for efficacy – also be used to determine potential health risks (Anonymous, 2001). Clinical trials have their limitations in this respect, so the health risks of a HMP in daily practice can better be examined in population-based studies such as epidemiological and/or pharmacovigilance studies. Although confounding variables can influence the results, these studies may indicate unusual adverse events but, for instance, also herb–drug interactions. Implementation of HMPs in (inter)national post-marketing schemes, as has been done now for several years in the WHO Collaborating Centre for International Drug Monitoring (Barnes, 1998), may provide such evidence. However, since most herbal preparations are not authorised as medicines and consumers do not report to their healthcare professionals in this respect (Cuzzolin et al., 2006), existing post-marketing systems may not adequately monitor reports on adverse events in these cases. Post-marketing surveillance studies specifically focusing on herbal preparations which have not been authorised as medicines and allowing for direct submission of consumer comments should therefore be developed (Bast et al., 2002).

Direct evidence of toxic effects and/or adverse events from human studies is the most important source of information to establish health risks associated with the use of HMPs. Nevertheless, critical appraisal of these data is necessary during the process of safety evaluation. In particular, weighing of the clinical relevance of reported detrimental effects is essential as will be illustrated in the next section.

Assessment of the clinical relevance of herb–drug interactions: St John’s wort as an example

A great number of possible herb–drug interactions can be found in scientific literature, e.g. a survey in 2001 yielded 250 plant species or genera being mentioned in connection with herb–drug interactions (Wijbenga et al., 2004a). However, there is much variation in the level of evidence underlying these reports and, interactions are often merely assumed on the basis of (claimed) pharmacotherapeutic activity of the herb or its constituents. Sometimes, data from in-vitro or animal studies do suggest potential herb–drug interactions but it remains questionable whether these findings can be extrapolated to humans. Only in a limited number of cases are reports of herb–drug interactions substantiated by clinical trials and/or case reports (Wijbenga et al., 2004a).

To be of use in daily practice, clinically relevant herb–drug interactions need to be distinguished from non-significant and putative ones, since too many warnings of unclear clinical significance will only increase the likelihood that healthcare professionals will ignore herb–drug interaction alerts. At present, the available literature mainly comprises of enumerations of herb–drug interactions (Izzo and Ernst, 2001; Bressler, 2005a,b; Hu et al., 2005; Izzo, 2005; Van den Bout-Van den Beukel et al., 2006). Although a non-validated scoring system to rate the probability of herb–drug interactions has been described (Fugh-Berman and Ernst, 2001), the clinical relevance of herb–drug interactions has, to our knowledge, not yet been systematically assessed. However, a structured procedure for the assessment of drug–drug interactions has been successfully adopted and included in computerised drug-interaction surveillance systems (Van Roon et al., 2005), which has also been proven suitable to assess herb–drug interactions (Wijbenga et al., 2004b,c,d,e,f; De Smet, 2006). Central to this algorithm to assess the clinical relevance of the interaction are two parameters: the evidence supporting the reported interaction, and the severity of the adverse event resulting from the interaction. In short, evidence is graded from 0 to 4; in-vitro and/or animal studies are graded 0; case reports are graded 1 or 2 – depending on the quality of documentation; clinical studies are graded 3 when they concern surrogate endpoints, or 4 when they concern clinically relevant endpoints. When only abstracts or posters from scientific meetings are available, they are graded 1 or (if the study is not published within three years) as 0. Severity is graded from A to F in order of increasing seriousness.

Although no strict limits can be defined, effects can broadly be categorised A or B when adverse events have not (yet) been observed or are considered minor (for instance lowered plasma levels in healthy
volunteers, headache), C or D when moderately severe adverse events are observed or when there is an increased risk of serious but non-lethal disease, and E or F in cases of serious adverse events or increased risk of failure of life-saving therapies. The National Cancer Institute’s Common Toxicity Criteria provides a useful six-step scale for gradually dividing adverse reactions of drugs (Van Roon et al., 2005).

Of all medicinal herbs, St John’s wort (Hypericum perforatum) has been most frequently mentioned in literature in connection with herb–drug interactions, so will be used as an example. Close to a hundred case reports and clinical studies could be identified in which herb–drug interactions were associated with the use of St John’s wort (Table 31.2; updated from Wijbenga et al., 2004c). Of these, the ones that undoubtedly had the greatest impact were those case reports and clinical trials reporting decreased cyclosporine blood levels resulting in a weakened immunosuppressant activity, in some cases even to such extent that rejection episodes in patients with organ transplants were observed. Both the level of evidence and severity of the adverse events can in this case be rated as high.

Cyclosporine is a substrate of both the cytochrome-P450 isoenzyme CYP3A4 and P-glycoprotein and St John’s wort induces both of these enzymes, which can be seen within 2 weeks of starting its use (Dürr et al., 2000). Other substrates of CYP3A4 and/or P-glycoprotein that have been reported in case reports and/or clinical studies to be influenced in patients who concomitantly use St John’s wort, are digoxin, irinotecan, methadone, nevirapine, oral contraceptives, sildenafil and tacrolimus. Except for sildenafil, the level of evidence and/or severity point to a high clinical relevance (see Table 31.2).

In clinical studies with healthy volunteers, other substrates of CYP3A4 and/or P-glycoprotein have also been stated to be affected by St John’s wort. The clinical relevance for patients in need of these therapies is not as strong, but still can be considered relatively high (see Table 31.2). Against expectations, no changes in pharmacokinetic parameters of the CYP3A4 substrates alprazolam and carbamazepine were observed in two studies with healthy volunteers (Burstein et al., 2000; Markowitz et al., 2000). Likely explanations for these discrepancies are the short period of use of St John’s wort in the study with alprazolam and auto-induction of CYP3A4 in the study with carbamazepine.

An effect of St John’s wort on other CYP-isoenzymes has also been suggested. For instance, several accounts of increased drug clearance and reduction of the international normalised ratio (INR) during simultaneous use of phenprocoumon or warfarin and St John’s wort have been published (see Table 31.2). Since both phenprocoumon and warfarin are mainly metabolised by CYP2C9, this would imply an inducing effect of St John’s wort on this isoenzyme. However, in clinical studies using the CYP2C9–substrate tolbutamide, induction of this isoenzyme by St John’s wort could not be confirmed, possibly because the induction of other CYP-isoenzymes such as CYP3A4 was substantial enough to cause the observed effects. Nevertheless, taking into account the evidence and severity of the clinical effect, the interaction between St John’s wort and phenprocoumon or warfarin can be considered as clinically relevant.

Initial indications of induction of CYP2C19 are not fully substantiated and the clinical relevance of these (potential) interactions is as yet unclear. For instance, clinical studies with theophylline and the CYP1A2–probe caffeine are not in agreement with the hypothesis arising from one case report that St John’s wort might affect the metabolism of theophylline (see Table 31.2). Finally, no effect on the induction of CYP2D6 has been found in clinical studies using debrisoquin or dextromethorphan (see Table 31.2).

Aside from pharmacokinetic interactions such as those mentioned above, pharmacodynamic interactions might also be elicited by St John’s wort. Case reports have linked it with symptoms of the serotonin syndrome when used in combination with a variety of drugs, e.g. fenfluramine, sertraline and venlafaxine. Manic symptoms have been observed when St John’s wort was added to, or exchanged by the patient for other psychoactive drugs and an episode of delirium was reported when loperamide, valerian and St John’s wort were used concomitantly. Although the implications may in some cases have been serious, the level of evidence for these pharmacodynamic interactions is still limited (see Table 31.2).
### Table 31.2 Case reports and clinical studies of St John’s wort-associated drug interactions with an assessment of their clinical relevance (modified and updated (June 2006) from Wijbenga et al., 2004c)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prescribed drug</th>
<th>St John’s wort preparation</th>
<th>Reported effect</th>
<th>Reference relevance</th>
<th>Clinical relevance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blood-glucose-lowering drugs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosiglitazone</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Increased clearance</td>
<td>Hruska et al., 2005</td>
<td>1A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolbutamide</td>
<td>Esbericum capsules</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Arold et al., 2005</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolbutamide</td>
<td>Capsules from Sundown Herbals</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2001</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cardiovascular drugs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin</td>
<td>St John’s wort herbal tea</td>
<td>Digoxin poisoning after cessation of St John’s wort</td>
<td>Andelic, 2003</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin</td>
<td>Esbericum capsules</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Arold et al., 2005</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin</td>
<td>LI 160 extract</td>
<td>Decreased AUC</td>
<td>Dürr et al., 2000</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin</td>
<td>Jarsin 300 (LI 160 extract)</td>
<td>Decreased AUC, $C_{\text{max}}$ and trough concentrations</td>
<td>Johne et al., 1999</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin</td>
<td>Powder from Kneipp-Werke hyperforin-rich; powder from Kneipp-Werke low in hyperforin; Jarsin 300 tablets (LI 160 extract); Johanniskrautöl-Kapseln S (oil extract); Sidroga Johanniskraut tea; Johanniskrautöl-Kapseln S; tea; Johanniskrautöl-Kapseln S; tea; Remotiv tablets (ZE 117 extract)</td>
<td>Decreased AUC, $C_{\text{max}}$ and trough concentrations (hyperforin-rich powder; Jarsin 300 tablets; no change (powder low in hyperforin; Johanniskrautöl-Kapseln S; tea; juice; Remotiv tablets)</td>
<td>Mueller et al., 2004</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nifedipine</td>
<td>unknown</td>
<td>Reduced plasma concentration</td>
<td>Smith et al., 2001</td>
<td>0C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenprocoumon</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Decreased INR</td>
<td>Bon et al., 1999</td>
<td>1C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenprocoumon</td>
<td>LI 160 extract</td>
<td>Decreased AUC free phenprocoumon</td>
<td>Maurer et al., 1999</td>
<td>0A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pravastatin</td>
<td>TruNature caplets</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Sugimoto et al., 2001</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simvastatin</td>
<td>TruNature caplets</td>
<td>Decreased plasma concentration</td>
<td>Sugimoto et al., 2001</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verapamil</td>
<td>Movina tablets</td>
<td>Decreased plasma concentrations</td>
<td>Tannergren et al., 2004</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warfarin</td>
<td>Bioglan tablets</td>
<td>Increased clearance; decreased INR</td>
<td>Jiang et al., 2004</td>
<td>4C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warfarin</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Decreased INR</td>
<td>Yue et al., 2000</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drugs for the central nervous system</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alprazolam</td>
<td>Esbericum capsules</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Arold et al., 2005</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alprazolam</td>
<td>Solaray capsules</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Markowitz et al., 2000</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alprazolam</td>
<td>Kira tablets (LI 160)</td>
<td>Increased clearance</td>
<td>Markowitz et al., 2003</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amitriptyline</td>
<td>Jarsin 300 (LI 160 extract)</td>
<td>Decreased AUC of amitriptyline and metabolites</td>
<td>Roots et al., 2000; Johne et al., 2002</td>
<td>3C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribed drug</td>
<td>St John's wort preparation</td>
<td>Reported effect</td>
<td>Reference relevance</td>
<td>Clinical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bupropion; nortriptyline</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Manic symptoms</td>
<td>Moses and Mallinger, 2000</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buspirone</td>
<td>Hypericum 2000 Plus</td>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of serotonin syndrome</td>
<td>Dannawi, 2002</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buspirone; fluoxetine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Hypomanic symptoms</td>
<td>Spinella and Eaton, 2001</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine</td>
<td>Tablets from Hypericum Buyers Club</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Burstein et al., 2000</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clonazepam; lithium; olanzapine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Manic symptoms</td>
<td>Moses and Mallinger, 2000</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenfluramine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of serotonin syndrome</td>
<td>Beckman et al., 2000</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midazolam</td>
<td>Jarsin 300 dragees (LI 160)</td>
<td>Increased clearance</td>
<td>Dresser et al., 2003</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midazolam</td>
<td>Product from Wild Oats Markets</td>
<td>Increased metabolism</td>
<td>Gurley et al., 2002</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midazolam</td>
<td>Extract from Rexall-Sundown Pharmaceuticals</td>
<td>Increased clearance</td>
<td>Gorski et al., 2002; Hall et al., 2003</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midazolam</td>
<td>Capsules from Sundown Herbals</td>
<td>Decreased AUC</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2001</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nefazodone</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of serotonin syndrome</td>
<td>Lantz et al., 1999</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxetine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of serotonin syndrome</td>
<td>Beckman et al., 2000</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxetine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of serotonin syndrome</td>
<td>Gordon, 1998</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxetine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of serotonin syndrome</td>
<td>Waksman et al., 2000</td>
<td>0D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quazepam</td>
<td>Caplets from TruNature</td>
<td>Decreased plasma concentration</td>
<td>Kawaguchi et al., 2004</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sertraline</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of serotonin syndrome</td>
<td>Lantz et al., 1999</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sertraline; testosterone</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Manic symptoms</td>
<td>Barbenel et al., 2000</td>
<td>1E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trazodone</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of serotonin syndrome</td>
<td>Fugh-Berman, 2000; Miller, 2001</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venlafaxine</td>
<td>St John's wort mother tincture</td>
<td>Symptoms suggestive of serotonin syndrome</td>
<td>Prost et al., 2000</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Drugs against HIV**

| Indinavir                        | Tablets from Hypericum Buyers Club | Reduced AUC | Piscitelli et al., 2000 | 3A       |
| Nevirapine                       | Unknown                             | Increased clearance | De Maat et al., 2001 | 1E       |
### Table 31.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prescribed drug</th>
<th>St John’s wort preparation</th>
<th>Reported effect</th>
<th>Reference relevance</th>
<th>Clinical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels</td>
<td>Ahmed et al., 2001</td>
<td>1E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Herbal tea mixture</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels</td>
<td>Alscher and Klotz, 2003</td>
<td>1E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Your Life tablets; St John’s wort tablets</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels; chronic transplant rejection</td>
<td>Barone et al., 2000; Barone et al., 2001; Turton-Weeks et al., 2001</td>
<td>1F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Jarsin 300TM tablets</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels</td>
<td>Bauer et al., 2003</td>
<td>4E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Neuroplant</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels</td>
<td>Beer and Ostermann, 2001</td>
<td>1E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels; transplant rejection</td>
<td>Bon et al., 1999</td>
<td>1E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Jarsin 300 dragees (LI 160)</td>
<td>Increased clearance</td>
<td>Dresser et al., 2003</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels; transplant rejection</td>
<td>Karliova et al., 2000</td>
<td>2E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Jarsin 300</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels</td>
<td>Mai et al., 2000</td>
<td>2E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Jarsin 300; Jarsin 300 after supercritical carbon dioxide extraction to remove hyperforin</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels (Jarsin 300); no change (CO₂-extracted Jarsin 300)</td>
<td>Mai et al., 2004</td>
<td>4E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels</td>
<td>Mandelbaum et al., 2000</td>
<td>2E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Jarsin (LI 160 extract)</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels; transplant rejection</td>
<td>Rey and Walter, 1998</td>
<td>1E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Jarsin 300 tablets</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Mai et al., 2003</td>
<td>4A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrolimus</td>
<td>Neuroplant</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels; decreased creatinine in serum</td>
<td>Bolley et al., 2002</td>
<td>1E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrolimus</td>
<td>Tablets from Lichtwer Pharma</td>
<td>Increased clearance</td>
<td>Hebert et al., 2004</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrolimus</td>
<td>Jarsin 300 tablets</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug levels</td>
<td>Mai et al., 2003</td>
<td>4E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oncolytics</td>
<td>Imatinib (LI 160)</td>
<td>Increased clearance</td>
<td>Frye et al., 2004</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued overleaf)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prescribed drug</th>
<th>St John's wort preparation</th>
<th>Reported effect</th>
<th>Reference relevance</th>
<th>Clinical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imatinib</td>
<td>Product from HBC</td>
<td>Reduced AUC</td>
<td>Smith et al., 2004a,b</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irinotecan</td>
<td>Tablets from Bio Nutrition Health Products</td>
<td>Decreased plasma levels of active metabolite SN-38; lower degree of myelosuppression</td>
<td>Mathijssen et al., 2002</td>
<td>4E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Miscellaneous**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anaesthetic drugs</th>
<th>Unknown</th>
<th>Delayed emergence</th>
<th>Crowe and McKeating, 2002</th>
<th>1B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Caffeine</td>
<td>Esbericum capsules</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Arol et al., 2005</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caffeine</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Gewertz et al., 1999</td>
<td>0A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caffeine</td>
<td>Product from Wild Oats Markets</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Gurley et al., 2002</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caffeine</td>
<td>Capsules from Sundown Herbals</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2001</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caffeine</td>
<td>Jarsin 300</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Wenk et al., 2004</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorzoxazone</td>
<td>Product from Wild Oats Markets</td>
<td>Increased metabolism</td>
<td>Gurley et al., 2002</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debrisoquin</td>
<td>Product from Wild Oats Markets</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Gurley et al., 2002</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextromethorphan</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Markowitz et al., 2000</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextromethorphan</td>
<td>Solaray capsules</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Markowitz et al., 2003</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextromethorphan</td>
<td>Tablets from Hypericum Buyers Club</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Roby et al., 2001</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextromethorphan</td>
<td>Capsules with extract from Sundown Herbals</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2001</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextromethorphan</td>
<td>Jarsin 300</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Wenk et al., 2004</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fexofenadine</td>
<td>Jarsin 300 dragee (LI 160)</td>
<td>Increased clearance</td>
<td>Dresser et al., 2003</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fexofenadine</td>
<td>Sundown capsules</td>
<td>Decreased plasma concentration</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2002</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loperamide; valerian</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Delirium</td>
<td>Khawaja et al., 1999</td>
<td>1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methadone</td>
<td>Jarsin</td>
<td>Decreased drug concentration; withdrawal symptoms</td>
<td>Eich-Höchli et al., 2003</td>
<td>4C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omeprazole</td>
<td>Tablets from Hypericum Buyers Club</td>
<td>Decreased plasma concentration</td>
<td>Wang et al., 2004, see also discussion in Xie et al., 2005</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Breakthrough bleeding</td>
<td>Bon et al., 1999</td>
<td>1C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive</td>
<td>Extract from Rexall-Sundown Pharmaceuticals</td>
<td>Increased clearance; increased breakthrough bleeding</td>
<td>Gorski et al., 2002; Hall et al., 2003</td>
<td>4C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Breakthrough bleeding; unintended pregnancy</td>
<td>Henderson et al., 2002</td>
<td>1F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Finally, when considering herb–drug interactions, it is important to keep in mind that individual preparations of any one herb may significantly vary in composition and, consequently, in the effect they bring about. In the case of St John’s wort, for instance, the occurrence of interactions with cyclosporine, digitoxin or oral contraceptives has been associated with the presence of hyperforin (Will-Shahab et al., 2001; Mai et al., 2004; Mueller et al., 2004; Arold et al., 2005; Madabushi et al., 2006). This, again, emphasises the indispensability of adequate quality control in the process of safety evaluation.

### Conclusions

The consumer should be provided with reliable and safe HMPs, so it is essential to assess the health risks associated with these preparations. An objective scientific attitude should be adopted in this respect, i.e. it should neither be assumed that all HMPs are harmless nor should the use of botanicals be unconditionally rejected as dangerous nonsense. Like all drugs, this kind of products should be adequately controlled for pharmaceutical quality, to prevent contamination, substitution or adulteration of the plant material and to determine concentrations of (potentially) toxic constituents.

Quality control is also of importance to guarantee batch-to-batch consistency, which is essential for the effective and safe use of HMPs. Proper evaluation of existing data on traditional use, and pharmaco-(toxico)logical and clinical research as well as post-marketing monitoring with an adequate system of pharmacovigilance, may further enhance the rational use of herbs and minimise (potential) health risks.

Information acquired should be disseminated to healthcare professionals and consumers in such a way that they are better aware of the hazards that inappropriate use of HMPs may incur. In this respect, the indirect health risks associated with the use of HMPs, particularly where a well-proven conventional approach is reduced, retarded or replaced by unsatisfactorily proven treatments – as well as the dangers of free and uncontrolled availability of herbal remedies via the Internet should also be pointed out to the public (De Smet, 1995, 2004). Nevertheless, despite all efforts to provide safe HMPs, unexpected negative effects, such as a rare idiosyncratic reaction, can never be prevented.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prescribed drug</th>
<th>St John’s wort preparation</th>
<th>Reported effect</th>
<th>Reference relevance</th>
<th>Clinical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive</td>
<td>Capsules from Hypericum Buyers Club</td>
<td>Reduced dose exposure; increased breakthrough bleeding</td>
<td>Murphy et al., 2005</td>
<td>4C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive</td>
<td>Jarsin tablets (LI 160 extract)</td>
<td>Decreased AUC 3-ketodesogestrel; increased intracyclic bleeding</td>
<td>Pfrunder et al., 2003</td>
<td>4C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive</td>
<td>LI 160 extract</td>
<td>Breakthrough bleeding</td>
<td>Ra-umlauttz et al., 2001</td>
<td>1C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive</td>
<td>Helarium 425; unknown</td>
<td>Unexpected pregnancy</td>
<td>Schwarz et al., 2003</td>
<td>1F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive</td>
<td>Remotiv (Ze 117 extract)</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Will-Shahab et al., 2001</td>
<td>0A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptive</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Breakthrough bleeding</td>
<td>Yue et al., 2000</td>
<td>1C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sildenafil</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Lack of effect</td>
<td>Chen et al., 2001</td>
<td>1C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td>TruNature caplets</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Morimoto et al., 2004</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Subtherapeutic drug level</td>
<td>Nebel et al., 1999</td>
<td>1B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voriconazole</td>
<td>Jarsin (LI 160 extract)</td>
<td>Increased clearance</td>
<td>Rengelshausen et al., 2005</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 31.2 (continued)
completely; HMPs in this respect are not different from synthetic drugs. Proper safety evaluation may, however, minimise the chance of such adverse events occurring.

Acknowledgement

Parts of the work described here were financially supported by Stichting Achmea Slachtoffer en Samenleving, the Dutch Burn Foundation, and the Dutch Ministry of Health, Welfare, and Sport (project 1075459).

References


Gurley BJ, Gardner SF, Hubbard MA et al. (2002). Cytochrome P450 phenotypic ratios for predicting


Mai I, Kruger H, Budde K et al. (2000). Hazardous pharmacokinetic interaction of Saint John’s wort


Index

Note: page numbers in italics refer to figures and tables

acclimatisation of plants  45
acetylcholine  283
acetylcholinesterase inhibition
   in-vitro screening methods  285–7
   Salvia  194, 195
acne vulgaris, essential oil treatment  360–1
Acorus calamus (sweet flag)  287
active components  24
   see also bioactivity; plant products, biologically active
acute toxic class method  449
adaptogens  67–9
adjuvant-induced arthritis model  249–50
adjuvants  15
administration form of products  15
adulteration of herbal products
   Chinese herbal products  10, 48, 387, 393, 395–7
   health risk  458
   star anise  389–90
   synthetic drugs  396–7, 446
   see also contamination of herbal products
advanced glycation endproducts (AGEs)  342, 344, 345
   diabetic nephropathy  348, 349, 350
adverse drug reaction (ADR)  xiii, 47
   serious xiv–xv
   spontaneous reporting  25
   surveillance systems, China  50
   traditional Chinese medicine  47–8, 49
adverse event (AE)  xiii, 47
   serious xiv–xv
aerosol inhalation  210
aesculetin  254
aflatoxins  124
   contamination  399, 402
   hepatic carcinogenesis  124, 125
   agar diffusion techniques  137
   agar dilution method  137, 138
   antifungal assay  143–4
   MIC determination  141–2
   aged garlic extract (AGE)  77, 78
   ageing, gingko therapies  192–3
   Ageratina pichinchensis  145
   airway hyperactivity disorders  205, 206–9, 209–10
   ajmalicine  99
   akhtar shops  28, 29
   Allium sativum (garlic)  62
   antiherpetic activity  310
   Allamanda athartica  235
   allergic reactions, essential oils  364–5
   allicin  78
   antiherpetic activity  303
   antioxidant activity  78, 273
   asthma treatment  209
   cardiovascular protection  77–8
   Helicobacter pylori treatment  150, 152
   hepatocellular carcinoma treatment  127–8
   hypertension treatment  77–8
   immune system  78
   ischaemic heart disease  164
   phagocytosis  78
   traditional Chinese medicine  62, 76–8
   allyl sulphides  77
   S-allyl-L-cysteine  77
   allylthiopyridazine  127–8
   Aloe vera, wound healing  237
alprazolam 466
α-fetoprotein 124
Alpinia 91
Alzheimer’s disease
  amyloid β protein infusion-induced model 284
  animal models 283–5
  *Curcuma longa* use 332
  galantamine treatment 187
  ginkgo treatment 75–6
  *Salvia* use 91
*Amaranthus paniculatus* (amaranth) 288
Ames test 117
gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) ginkgo 76
  ginseng 71–2
  valerian 191
aminoguanidine 344, 345
amla
  *Phyllanthus emblica* 102
  see also *Embilica officinalis* (emblica, amla)
amplified fragment length polymorphisms (AFLP) 403–4
amyloid β protein infusion-induced model of Alzheimer’s disease 284
amyloid precursor protein transgenic mouse model 284–5
anandamide 251
*Andrographis paniculata* (creat) 129
angiogenesis 174–5
  assays 175–7
  blood vessel growth within a matrix 175
  disease associations 175, 176
  excessive 175, 176
  genetically modified zebra fish 175–6
  hepatocellular carcinoma 125
  herbal product inhibitory activity 178–83
  inhibition by green tea 64
  pathological 174–5
  plant extract effects 175–7
  three-dimensional endothelial cell sprouting assay 176–7
  wound healing 237
angiogenic modulators 178–83
angiogenic balance 178
angiotensin II 167
anisodamine 52
anisodine 52
anthocyanins 123, 253–4
antranoloid laxatives 21
anthranoids, mutagenic 21
anthraquinones 297
antiallergic actions, ginseng 74
antiangiogenic agents 174–84
antibiotic resistance, *Helicobacter pylori* treatment 150,
  154
antibodies 406
anticholinergic drugs 204, 209
antidepressants, tinnitus therapy 315–16
antidiarrhoeal compounds 116
antifungal agents
  essential oils 361
  turmeric 324, 331
antifungal assays 143–5
  test methods 143–4
antigens, bronchospasm induction 211
antihepatotoxic medicinal plants, Turkish 37–8
anti-inflammatory medicinal plants 8, 249–55
  essential oils 360–1, 362–3
  evaluation 249–50
  Turkish 31–4
  turmeric 324
anti-inflammatory response, ginseng 74
antimalarial drugs 51, 86
  assays 145
antimicrobial activity 133–43
  assay methods 137–40
  essential oils 360–1
  studies 142
  in vivo studies 140–1
antimicrobial test methods 136–40
antiinociceptive medicinal plants, Turkish 31–4
antioxidants 7, 249, 261–8, 269–72, 272–5
  activity tests 266–8
  Corni Fructus 345, 347
  curcumin 273, 332
  directly acting 262–3
  garlic 78
  gastric mucosal injuries 36
  ginseng 69, 70, 74
  green tea 63
  herbal products 268, 269–72, 272–5
  ischaemic heart disease 164
  turmeric 273, 324, 332
antiparasitic agents, essential oils 362
antiparasitic assays 145–6
antiulcer remedies, Turkish 34–7
antiviral assays 145–6
Anupan 15
anxiety
  ginkgo therapies 193
  ginsenosides 193
  valerian therapy 191
apigenin 123, 253
apolipoprotein knockout models 285
apoptosis
allylthiopyridazine-induced 127–8
genistein-induced 129
green tea effects 64–5
ischaemic heart disease 163
silybin-induced 127
arabinogalactan-proteins (AGP) 218, 223
arabinogalactans 218, 223
arachidonic acid pathway 243
Aristolochia debilis 48
Aristolochia fangchi (fangchi) 10, 48, 387, 395, 458–9
aristolochic acid 22, 48
nephrotoxicity 458–9
toxicity 464
arjuna bark see Terminalia arjuna (arjuna bark)
Arnica chamissonis ssp. foliosa 252
Arnica montana 252
Arogyawardhani formula 99
artemesinin 51, 86
Artemisia annua 51, 86
Artemisia dracunculus 8
artichoke leaf extract 112, 117
aryl amines/amides 124, 125
ascorbic acid, bioavailability 24
ashwagandha 179–81
antioxidant activity 273
cognitive/memory disorders 291
asiaticoside 237–8
Aspalathus linearis (rooibos) 204, 209
Aspergillus 124
aspirin 160, 244
assay 19, 20
asthma 203–4
bronchial 205, 206–9, 209–10
pathogenesis 204
atherosclerosis 161, 162
endothelial dysfunction 167
free radical hypothesis 264–5
atopic eczema, Chinese formula 7–8
authentication 19–20, 383–91
botanical 386–7, 402
chemical characterisation 389–91
Chinese herbal drugs 393, 395
methods 399, 402–13, 414, 415–20
harvest conditions 387
identification 386–7
macroscopic characterisation 387–8, 402
microscopic characterisation 388, 402
physical identification 386–9
automated multiple development TLC 408–9
Ayurvedic, Siddha and Unani (ASU) drugs 5
administration form 15
Anupan 15
shelf-life of preparations 369
solvents 15
Ayurvedic Formulary of India 369, 370
Ayurvedic medicine 5
Andrographis paniculata use 129
arjuna bark use 129
drug development 99, 101
immunomodulators 217–18
knowledge database 100
phytomedicines 100–1
reverse pharmacology 97
Semecarpus anacardium use 128–9
shelf-life 369, 370
wound healing 229
Azadirachta indica (neem) 288
azo dyes, hepatic carcinogenesis 124, 125
Bacopa monniera (water hyssop, brahmi) 191–2
antioxidant activity 272–3
cognitive/memory disorders 288
bacterial inhibition, *Curcuma longa* activity 331
bactericidal activity
*Helicobacter pylori* 154–5
see also antimicrobial activity
band of Broca 283
barberry 34
basil, holy 274, 290
basophils 238, 239
Bauninia 129
BAY 43–9006 125
before-and-after study 428
benzodiazepine-binding sites, ginkgo 76
benzodiazepines, tinnitus therapy 315
berbamine 55
berberine 22, 143
anti-inflammatory 254
*Berberis* 55
*Berberis asiatica* (zirk) 34
*Berberis crataegina* (barberry) 34
β2-agonists 204
betulinic acid 145
bilobalide 192
bioactivity
chromatographic fingerprinting 407
concentration in plants 461
mechanisms 442–3
see also plant products, biologically active
bioassays
  antifungal 144
  shelf-life of herbal remedies 378
  therapeutic efficacy assessment 461–2
bioautography 138–40
  antifungal assay 144
bioavailability 24
  ascorbic acid 24
  plants affecting 459
bioequivalence 442
bioimpedimetric method for antimicrobial activity 138
biolobalide 90
biomarkers 21, 57
biopiracy 11
bitter melon see Momordica charantia (bitter melon)
black cumin oil 30
black pepper 91
Black Physician 32
black seeds 209, 303
blackcurrant 254
blood pressure
  regulation 164
  see also hypertension
Borago officinalis (borage) 210
Boswellia serrata (Salai guggul) 102
botanical reference standards 388–9
botanicals/botanical drugs xiii, 385–6
  authentication 383–91
  Chinese herbal drugs 402
  chemical characterisation 389–91
  chemical reference standards 391
  combinations 386
  harvest conditions 387
  herb quality 387
  identification 386–7
  macroscopic characterisation 387–8
  microscopic characterisation 388
  physical identification 386–9
  post-harvest conditions 387
  quality assessment 383–91
  quantitative analytical methods 390–1
  reference standards 388–9
  see also herbal medicinal products (HMPs); herbal preparations; phytomedicines; plant products, biologically active
brahmi 191–2, 272–3
  cognitive/memory disorders 288
brain
  free radical actions 263
  function 282
  inflammation models 285
  lesion models 284
  see also cognition; cognitive disorders; memory disorders; neurodegeneration
British Pharmacopoeia 6
bromotetrandrine 54, 55
bronchodilators 204, 205
bronchodilatory activity assays 210
bronchospasm, induced 211
broom, Spanish 35–6
brucine 255
Buddleja 90
Buddleja globosa 237
Butea monosperma 235
butyrylcholinesterase inhibition, Salvia 194, 195
cafestol 252
caffeic acid, antitherpetic activity 306
caffeic acid phenethyl ester (CAPE) 306
calcium antagonists 204, 205, 209
calcium channel blockers 205, 210
Calendula officinalis 238
Camellia sinensis (green tea) 62, 63–6
  angiogenesis
    inhibition 64
    modulation 182
  anticancer effects 63–6
  antioxidant activity 63
  apoptosis effects 64–5
  catechins 65–6
  Helicobacter pylori treatment 151, 152
  hepatocellular carcinoma treatment 127
  polyphenols 63, 64
  tNOX inhibition 65–6
  wound healing 231
cancer
  Curcuma longa/curcumin activity 332
  gastric 149
  see also carcinogenesis; hepatocellular carcinoma
  cannabinoids, inflammatory processes 251
capillary electrophoresis 413, 415–16
  hyphenated 415–16
  capillary electrophoresis–mass spectrometry (CE-MS) 415–16
  capillary gel electrophoresis (CGE) 415
  capillary zone electrophoresis (CZE) 415
capsaicin 113, 116
  anti-inflammatory 254–5
  Capsibiol-T 66
  Caranthus roseus 234
carbamazepine 466

carcinogenesis 122

inhibition 123

carcinogenicity studies 117, 452–3

carcinogens, chemical 124

cardiovascular diseases 160–70

congestive heart failure 167–70

coronary vasodilator activity screening 162–3

efficacy screening of herbal preparations 161

endothelial dysfunction 163–7

free radicals 264–6

ischaemic heart disease 161–4

cardiovascular protection
garlic 77–8
ginseng 70, 72–3

Carmint 117

β-carotene–linoleic acid assay 268
carotenoids 253
carrageenan-induced paw oedema 250

Carum copticum 209

case series 428

case–control study 428

Cassia (senna) 92

catalase 262

catechins 123

green tea 65–6

Cedrus libani 150

Celastrus paniculatus (staff tree) 288–9

cell transformations 454

Centaurea solstitialis ssp. solstitialis (yellow starthistle) 36

Helicobacter pylori treatment 150

Centella asiatica (gota kola) 223, 235, 237–8

cognitive/memory disorders 289

central nervous system (CNS) disorders 187–96

cognitive performance disorders 191–5

ginseng effects 70–2

mechanism of herbal extract effects 195–6

mood disorders 188–90

sleep disorders 191

cepharanthine, antitherpetic activity 310

Cetaria islandica (lichen) 151

citral 363

Chelidonium majus 255

citronella, antimicrobial activity 360

chemical reference standards 391

chemical studies 20–1

chemokines 247, 253

chemopreventive phytochemicals 123

Chenopodium ambrosioides (chenopodium) 362

China see Peoples’ Republic of China

Chinese herbal medicines see traditional Chinese medicine

Chinese materia medica 42, 43

traditional processing 46

Chinese pharmacopoeia 42–3

heavy metals 398

microbiological contamination 398

substitution 395

Chinese star anise 389–90

chlorogenic acid, antitherpetic activity 306

CHO chromosomal aberration test 117

cholesterol 162

raised levels 266

cholinergic hypothesis 283

cholinesterase inhibitors 54

chondroitin 235

chromatographic fingerprinting 407, 417–18

similarity evaluation 417–18, 419

chromatographic quantitative analytical methods 390–1

chromatographic testing 20–1

chromatography

chemometric resolution of two-way data 418

Chinese herbal drugs 57, 58, 406–13, 414, 415–18

column 326, 327

hyphenated techniques 407, 409–12, 415–16

iterative methods 418

non-iterative methods 418

retention time shifts 417

see also gas chromatography (GC); high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC); thin-layer chromatography (TLC)

chronic myelocytic leukaemia 51

chrysin 253

chrysoeriol 204, 209

Churnas (Ayurvedic dosage form) 373

Chyavanprash awaleha 218

1,8-cineole 194

Cinnamomum cassia (cinnamon), Helicobacter pylori treatment 152–3

Cinnamomum zeylanicum (cinnamon) 150

antimicrobial activity 360

antiparasitic activity 362

Cistus laurifolius (rockrose) 32, 35

Helicobacter pylori treatment 150

citral 363

Citrus aurantium var. sinensis 363

claims for herbal medicinal products 429–31

extravagant 9
claims for herbal medicinal products (cont.)
  major 429
  medium 429
  minor 429–31
clarithromycin, Helicobacter pylori resistance 150, 154
Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) 153
guidelines 154
clinical research 23–5
  authentication of botanicals 383–91
  botanical identification 386–7
  chemical characterisation 389–91
  harvest conditions 387
  identification 386–7
  macroscopic characterisation 387–8
  microscopic characterisation 388
  physical identification 386–9
  quality assessment of botanicals 383–91
  chemical reference standards 391
  herb quality 387
  post-harvest conditions 387
  quantitative analytical methods 390–1
  reference standards 388–9
trials/studies xiii, 24
  functional gastrointestinal disorders 112–13
  pharmacovigilance requirements 47
  phytomedicines 102
  randomised controlled 9, 117–18, 427, 431
  safety 22
cognitive disorders 191–5, 282–92
ginkgo 75–6
ginseng 70–1, 72
herbal product effects 287–91
neurochemistry 283
see also memory disorders; neurodegeneration
cohort studies 428
Coix lacryma-jobi subsp. Ma-yuen 54–5
collagen 235
collagen-induced arthritis model 249
collection see plant collection
colony-forming units (CFUs) 140–1
colorimetric tests 389–90
column chromatography, turmeric constituents 326, 327
Comet assay 454
Commiphora wightii (guggulu) 100
complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) 3
  research funding 5
congestive heart failure 167–70
  animal models 168–70
  causes 167
conservation
  plant collection 44–5
  threats to 11–12
consumers
  choice 8–9
  information on traditional medicines 6
  shelf-life communication 378–9
  toxicity 22
contamination of herbal products 18
  Chinese herbal drugs 393, 395–9, 400–2
  fungal 18, 399, 402
  health risk 458
  heavy metals 397
  infection treatment samples 135
  microbiological 19, 398–9, 400–1
  mycotoxins 399, 402
  pesticides 397–8
  risk 21
  toxic effects 445–6
  see also adulteration of herbal products
controlled before-and-after study 428
Convention on Biological Diversity (Rio de Janeiro, 1992) 11
COP9 signalosome 178–9
Coptis 22
Coptis chinensis 289
Corni Fructus 341–2
  activity 342, 343, 344–6, 347
  antioxidant activity 345, 347
  diabetic nephropathy effects 345, 347
  efficacy 344–6, 347
fractions 344–6, 347  
renal function 345–6, 347  
coronary vasodilator activity screening 162–3  

cosmetics, turmeric use 323  
costus essential oil 364  
coughing, pathology 204–5  
coumarins 254  
antiherpetic activity 307, 308  
Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) New Millennium Indian Technology Leadership Initiative (NMITLI) 100, 101  
cranberry juice, *Helicobacter pylori* treatment 152, 153  
creat 129  
crisis management 47  
*Crocus sativus* (saffron), mood disorders 188  
cross-sectional study 428  
*Croton*  
antiparasitic activity 362  
wound healing 232  
crude drugs 44, 46  
traditional processing 46  
cucumber, squirting 31–2  
cucurbitacin B 31–2  
cultivation of plants 11, 12  
China 45, 46  
culture media, infection treatment 134–5  
*Curcuma longa* (turmeric) 113, 322–4, 325–6, 326, 327–8, 329, 330–4  
active constituents 324, 325–6  
Alzheimer’s disease therapy 332  
angiogenesis modulation 178–9  
antibacterial activity 331  
anticancer activity 332  
antidiabetic activity 333  
antifertility activity 332  
antifungal activity 324, 331  
anti-inflammatory activity 324  
antioxidant activity 273, 324, 332  
biological activities 330–3  
botanical origin/distribution 323  
bronchodilatory effect 209  
chemical components 324  
clinical studies 333  
cognitive disorders 289–90  
curcuminoids  
extraction/isolation 324, 326–8  
quantitative analysis 328  
ethanolic extract 328, 329–30  
ethnomedical uses 323–4  
*Helicobacter pylori* treatment 151  
hepatocellular carcinoma treatment 125–6  
medicinal applications 333  
memory disorders 289–90  
nutritative composition 324  
peptic ulcer disease 331–2  
pharmacological actions 330–3  
raw material standardisation 328, 329–30  
Thai products 334  
toxicity 333  
wound healing 231, 236, 323  
curcumin 322–34  
anticancer activity 332  
antidiabetic activity 333  
antifertility activity 332  
antimutagenic activity 332  
antioxidant activity 273, 332  
biological activities 330–3  
clinical studies 333  
functional gastrointestinal disorders 113  
cognitive disorders 289–90  
*Helicobacter pylori* treatment 151  
medicinal applications 333  
memory disorders 289–90  
neurodegenerative disease use 332  
pharmacokinetic studies 333  
pharmacological actions 330–3  
properties 324  
toxicity 333  
wound healing 231  
curcuminoids  
development 97  
extraction 324, 326–8  
quantitative analysis 328, 329  
cyclo-oxygenase (COX) 245  
inhibition 74, 244  
cyclosporine 466, 469  
*Cymbopogon nardus* (citronella), antimicrobial activity 360  
*Cynodon dactylon* 238, 239  
cytokines  
angiogenesis modulation 182  
congestive heart failure 167–8  
*Helicobacter pylori* inflammatory parameters 156  
inflammatory mediators 246–7, 248, 253  
cytopathic effect (CPE) screening 297–8
Index

cytotoxicity 116–17
testing 116–17
valeropiates 464
daidzin 51
Danshen 23
*Daphne oleoides* 33
daphnetin 33
dead-space wound model 234
debrisouquin 466, 470
1,2-dehydrodaphnetoxin 33
delphinidin 183
dementia
gingko therapies 192–3
lemon balm therapy 190
*Salvia* therapy 195
see also Alzheimer’s disease
deoxyribose degradation assay 268
depression, St John’s wort therapy 188–9
dermatan sulfate 235
desoxycorticosterone acetate–salt-induced hypertension 166
developed world, herbal product use 3
developmental studies 453–4
Devil’s claw 250–1
dextromethorphan 466, 470
diabetes mellitus
type 1
Hachimi-jio-gan effects 342, 343, 344–6, 347, 348, 349, 350–1
hyperglycaemic control 340–1
type 2
curcumin activity 333
ginseng 74
Hachimi-jio-gan effects 351–4
herbal remedies 29–31, 36
pancreas 351–4
Turkish remedies 30–1
diabetic nephropathy
advanced glycation endproducts 348, 349, 350
Corni Fructus effects 345, 347
Hachimi-jio-gan effects 342, 347, 348, 349, 350–1
oxidative stress 350
polyol pathway 350
protein glycation reaction 348, 349, 350
renal function 350–1
diabetic wound model 234
diallylsulfide 127
diarrhoea, turmeric therapy 323
dietary supplement xiii
Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act (DSHEA, US) 394
dietary supplements, traditional Chinese medicine 62–78
diffusion methods 137
*Digitalis purpurea* (digoxin) 160, 467, 471
development 97
dilution methods 137–8
Directive 99/83/EEC on ‘well-established use’ xiii
diterpenes 8, 252
diuretics, tinnitus therapy 316
DNA, tissue in wound healing 235
DNA hybridisation techniques 402–3
DNA nicking assay 268
DNA-based techniques, Chinese herbal drugs 402–6
DPPH (2,2-diphenyl-1-picrylhydrazyl) scavenging assay 267
drug development 98–102
drug discovery process 88
Drugs and Cosmetics Act (1940, India) 5
DT diaphorase 262
duodenal ulcer, *Helicobacter pylori* 149
dysentery, turmeric therapy 323
dyslipidaemia 161
dyspepsia, functional 108, 112
efficacy studies 117–18
visceral hyperalgesis 116

*Ecballium elaterium* (squirting cucumber) 31–2
Echinacea efficacy 9
efficacy 23–5
clinical evidence 7–8, 9
clinical research 14, 433, 434–42
Echinacea 9
evaluation
clinical trials 433, 434–42
peculiarities 442–3
evidence base 7–8, 9
functional gastrointestinal disorder treatments 113, 117–18
St John’s wort clinical evidence 9
studies 23–5
testing 99
EGb-761, tinnitus therapy 316–18
elastin 235
electron microscopy 388
electrophoresis 413, 415–16
Ellman reaction 285–6
Embelia ribes 231, 234
embelin 231
Emblica officinalis (emblica, amla) 128
antioxidant activity 274
ischaemic heart disease 164
shelf-life studies 377
emulsifiers, infection treatment 135–6
endangered species 45
endothelial cell sprouting assay, three-dimensional 176–7
endothelial dysfunction 167
endothelium-dependent vasorelaxation, ginsenosides 73
enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) 406
eosinophils 238, 239
epicatechin gallate (ECG), antiherpetic activity 307
epigallocatechin gallate (EGCg) 63–5, 123
angiogenesis modulation 182
mechanism of action 142
wound healing 231
Epilobium angustifolium 253
Erice Declaration, pharmacovigilance 47
Eriobotrya japonica 252
erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), wound healing 238, 239, 240
essential oils 359
adverse reactions 364
allergic reactions 364–5
antifungal activity 361
antifungal assays 144–5
antitherapeutic activity 308–9
anti-inflammatory activity 360–1, 362–3
antimicrobial activity 360–1
antiparastic activity 362
drug interactions 365–6
formulation 359
hair growth stimulation 362
infection treatment 142
insect repellent 363
percutaneous absorption 363
skin diseases 359–66
toxicity 360, 363–6
turmeric extraction 324, 326–8
wound healing 361
ethnobotanical knowledge, Middle East 29
ethnomedicine 98
ethyl gallate 143
eucalyptol 252
eucalyptus oil, toxicity 363–4
Eucalyptus paniculata 361
Euphorbia neriifolia 233, 235
Euphorbia peplus 252
European Medicines Agency (EMEA) 369
European Pharmacopoeia 6
heavy metals 397
microbiological contamination 398–9, 400–1
pesticides 398
standardisation 407
toxin limits 464
European Scientific Cooperative on Phytotherapy 16
European Union
approval costs for new active substance 385–6
herbal medicinal product claims 429–31
herbal preparation categories 428
Traditional Medicines Directive 5, 395
evidence base
efficacy 7–8, 9
lack 9
evidence-based approaches, traditional Chinese medicine 62–3
Evodia fructus 255
Evodia rutaecarpa (Gosyuyu) 151, 255
evodiamine 255
excision wound model 233
excretion, duration of activity of herb 92
exercise performance, ginseng 67–9
extraction systems, infection treatment 134
extracts
efficacy testing 99
screening 98–9
eye medicines 15
fake drugs 11
fang ji 10, 387, 395, 458
fangchi 10, 458–9
fenugreek 30
fertility, turmeric effects 332
feverfew 252
fibroblasts 237
fibrosis, wound healing 237
Ficus benghalensis 238, 239
Ficus septica 254
flag, sweet 287
flavone glycosides 74
flavonoids 8, 86, 253–4
antiherpetic activity 307
carcinogenesis inhibition 123
immunomodulatory 223
synergism 143
fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) 454
Food and Drug Administration (FDA, US) 369, 428–9
Forum on Harmonization of Herbal Medicine (WHO) 50
Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (FTIR) 390
fractional effect (FE) 87
fractionation 86
free radical(s) 261
atherosclerosis 264–5
brain actions 263
cardiovascular diseases 264–6
chronic heart failure 265
defence 262–3
disease states 263–6
hypercholesterolemia 266
hypertension 265
inflammatory mediators 248–9
left ventricular hypertrophy 265–6
myocardial damage 265
respiratory conditions 263
skeletal muscle dysfunction 266
see also oxidative stress
free radical scavenging, ginseng 69
friedelin 145
Fructus Schizandrae Chinensis 51
fucoxanthin 253
Fumaria vailantii 38
functional gastrointestinal disorders (FGIDs) 107–8,
clinical studies 112–13, 114–15
dyspepsia 108, 112, 116, 117–18
efficacy of herbal medicines 113, 117–18
evaluation of herbal medicines 113, 116–18
irritable bowel syndrome 107, 112, 116, 117–18
safety of herbal medicines 113, 116–17
funding, research 5
fungal contamination 18
mycotoxins 399, 402
fungal infection 124
essential oil therapy 361
see also antifungal agents
galactans, antitherpetic activity 310
galactofucan, antitherpetic activity 310
galangin 143
antitherpetic activity 307
galantamine 187
Galanthus woronowii (Caucasian snowdrop) 187
gallic acid 462, 463
galloylquinic acid 253
7-O-galloyl-D-sedoheptulose 346
Ganoderma 52
Garcinia 274
garlic see Allium sativum (garlic)
gas chromatography (GC) 390–1
Chinese herbal drugs 412–13, 414
two-dimensional 413
gas chromatography–mass spectroscopy (GC-MS) 413
gastric adenocarcinoma, Helicobacter pylori 149
gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT), Helicobacter pylori 149
gastric ulcer, Helicobacter pylori 149
gastritis
Helicobacter pylori 149, 150
treatment 150
gastrointestinal disorders
diarrhoea 323
animal studies 117
clinical studies 112–13, 114–15
dyspepsia 108, 112, 116, 117–18
evaluation of herbal medicines 113, 116–18
irritable bowel syndrome 107, 112, 116, 117–18
peptic ulcer disease
Curcuma longa activity 331–2
Helicobacter pylori 149
turmeric therapy 323
see also Helicobacter pylori
gastro-protective remedies, Turkish 34–7
genechip technology 56
genetic diseases, hepato-cellular carcinoma association 124
genistein 123, 129, 253
genkwadaphnin 33
genotoxicity studies 117
gentamicin, intratympanic therapy 315
Gentiana olivieri (Oliver’s gentian) 30, 37–8
geo-authentic crude drugs 44
Geranium sanguineum, antitherpetic activity 303, 306
Germany, regulations 21
aflatoxin contamination 399, 402
Chinese herbs 394, 399, 402
ginger see Zingiber officinale (ginger)
gingerols 150–1
ginkgetin 90
Ginkgo biloba (ginkgo) 8, 62, 74–6
antioxidant activity 272
CNS disorders 188
cognition effects 75–6
cognitive performance 192–3
GABA effects 76
memory effects 75–6
polyvalency 90
synergy 86–7
Index | 489

tinnitus therapy 316–18
traditional Chinese medicine 62, 74–6
ginkgolides 86–7, 192
ginseng see Panax ginseng (ginseng)
ginsenosides 66–7, 70
cognitive performance 193
endothelium-dependent vasorelaxation 73
memory dysfunction reversal 72
near-infrared spectroscopy 419
glucocorticosteroids 204
glucoregulation, ginseng 194
gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) 124
 glutathione peroxidase 262, 265
Glycine max (soybean) 129
Glycyrrhiza glabra (liquorice root) 253
antiherpetic action 297
Glycyrrhiza uralensis (liquorice root) 420
glycyrrhizin 253
antiherpetic action 297
near-infrared spectroscopy 419, 420
good agricultural and collection practices (GACP) 45
good agricultural practice (GAP) 18
China 44, 45, 46
Chinese herbal drugs 393, 395–6, 398, 399
good clinical practice (GCP) xiv, 431
Chinese herbal medicines 48
ICH guidance 431–2
good collection practice (GCP) 18–19
good laboratory practice (GLP) 447
good manufacturing practice (GMP) 19, 384
ASU products 5
Chinese herbal medicines 395
Gosyuyu 151, 255
gota kola 223, 235, 237–8
cognitive/memory disorders 289
government funding 5
Granthis (Ayurvedic texts) 370
granulation, wound healing 237
green tea see Camellia sinensis (green tea)
growth factors, wound healing 229
guanfangji 395
Guduchi (Tinospora cordifolia) 102
guggulu 100

Hachimijio-gan 340–2, 343, 344–5, 346, 347–8, 349, 350–4
composition 341
constituent activities 342, 343, 344–6, 347
Corni Fructus 341–2
diabetes mellitus type 1 342, 343, 344–6, 347, 348, 349, 350–1
diabetic nephropathy effects 342, 347, 348, 349, 350–1
efficacy evaluation 342, 343, 344–6, 347
oxidative stress suppression 342, 349, 350
pancreatic fibrosis effects 352
pancreatic oxidative stress effects 352–4
renal function/structure effects 350–1
sorbitol reduction 349, 350

Hair growth stimulation 362
Hange-koboku-to 117
Harpagophytum procumbens (Devil’s claw) 250–1
harvesting see plant collection
health risks of herbal medicines 458–60
adverse effects 460
bioavailability effects 459
consumer-dependent toxic effects 460
highly concentrated extracts 459–60
non-conventional solvents 459–60
pharmacokinetic effects 459
toxic plants 458–9
see also adverse drug reaction (ADR); adverse event (AE)
healthcare interventions, value of evidence 433
heart failure, chronic 265

heavy metals
contamination of herbal products 397
toxic 18
Helicobacter pylori 107, 113, 116, 149–58
animal studies 155–7
antibiotic resistance 150, 154
bactericidal activity 154–5
clinical data 152–3
clinical studies 157
clinical syndromes 149–50
combination studies 154
epidemiology 149–50
gastric lesions 155–6
gastric mucosa colonisation detection 156
inflammatory parameter determination 156–7
in-vitro methods 153–5
in-vivo data 151–2
in-vivo methods 155–7
susceptibility testing 153–4
time-kill studies 154–5
treatment 150–3

henbane, asthma treatment 209
hepatitis B virus 123
Phyllanthus amarus treatment 128
hepatitis C virus 124
hepatocellular carcinoma 122–30
  aetiology 123–4
  chemical for initiation studies 124–5
  cytogenetic analysis 124
  markers 124
  rodent models 124
  treatment 125–30
hepatotoxicity
  Turkish remedies 37–8
  wall germander 25
herbal extracts 14–15
herbal medicinal products (HMPs) xiv, 3
  clinical evidence of efficacy 7–8, 9
  commercial promotion 9
  definition 445
  development path 99
  increased use 3–12
  quality of materials 9–10
  reference books 4
  sales figures 4
  use in developed world 3
  use in developing world 4
  worldwide use 3–12
  see also botanicals/botanical drugs; phytomedicines;
    plant products, biologically active; traditional
    herbal medicinal products
herbal preparations xiv, 18, 19
  quality 387
  see also botanicals/botanical drugs; traditional herbal
    medicinal products
herbal substances xiv
herpes simplex virus (HSV) 296
  compounds from herbal extracts activity 303, 304–6,
    306–10
  crude herbal extract activity 302–3
  in-vivo models 300, 301, 302
  mechanism of action of herbal products 300, 301,
    302
  screening of herbal agents 297–300
herpes virus diseases 295–300, 301, 302–3, 304–6,
  306–11
  compounds from herbal extracts activity 303, 304–6,
    306–10
  crude herbal extract activity 302–3
  infection control 296–7
  mechanism of action of herbal products 300, 301,
    302
  screening 297–300
herpes viruses 295–6
hesperidin, antitherpetic activity 307
hesperitin 123
high density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol 162
highly concentrated extracts 459–60
high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC)
  acetylcholinesterase inhibitor identification 286–7
  chemical characterisation 390–1
  curcuminoids quantitative analysis 328
  hyphenated techniques 409–12
  shelf-life studies 377
  traditional Chinese medicine quality assurance 52–3
high-performance liquid chromatography–evaporative
  light scattering detection (HPLC-ELSD) 412
high-performance liquid chromatography–mass
  spectrometry (HPLC-MS) 409, 410–12
high-performance liquid chromatography–ultraviolet diode
  array (HPLC-DAD) 409, 410
high-performance liquid chromatography–ultraviolet diode
  array–mass spectrometry (HPLC-DAD-MS) 411–12
high-performance thin-layer chromatography (HPTLC)
  automated multiple development 408–9
  chemical characterisation 390
  Chinese herbal drugs 407–9
high-speed countercurrent chromatography, curcuminoids
  327
high-throughput screening technology (HTS) 14–15
  herpes simplex virus screening 299
  traditional Chinese medicine 53
histamine, bronchospasm induction 211
holistic path 99
holy basil 274, 290
homeostatins 179
homocysteine 73
host defence responses 215–16
5-HT3 receptors 108
huperzine A 54
Hydrastis canadensis 151
4-hydroxyisoleucine 30
hydroxyl radicals 248, 261
hydroxyproline, tissue 235–6
Hylocereus undulatus 234, 235
Hyoscyamus niger (henbane) 209
hyperalgesia, visceral 116
hypercholesterolaemia, free radicals 266
hyperforin 90
  angiogenesis modulation 181
  bioavailability effects 459
hyperglycaemic control, diabetes mellitus type 1 340–1
hypericin 24, 90
  angiogenesis modulation 181–2
  mood disorders 188
Hypericum perforatum (St John's wort) 8, 24, 37
angiogenesis modulation 181–2
bioavailability effects 459
bronchodilatory effect 209
clinical evidence of efficacy 9
CNS disorders 188
CYP4A upregulation 92
CYP450 enzymes 466
drug interactions 465–6, 467–71, 471
Helicobacter pylori treatment 150
mood disorders 188–9
polyvalency 90
secondary metabolites 196
uses 37
hypertension
animal models 165–7
desoxycorticosterone acetate–salt-induced 166
drug development 165
essential 265
experimental 165–6
free radicals 265
garlic treatment 77–8
geneic in rats 166–7
ischaemic heart disease 164–7
neurogenic in dogs 166
pathogenesis 164
target organ damage 165
hypoglycaemic activity of herbs 30–1, 36
ginseng 74
hypolipidaemia 161–2
hyssop, water see Bacopa monniera (water hyssop, brahmi)
Iberogast 112, 117
Id proteins 179
identification of plant products 20
Illicium anisatum (Japanese star anise) 389–90
Illicium verum (Chinese star anise) 389–90
immune system
garlic 78
ginseng 73
immunoadjuvants 216
immunochemical analysis methods 406
immunomodulation 215–16
classification 216–17
immunomodulators 217
Ayurvedic 217–18
immunomodulatory products 215–18, 219–23, 223–4
flavonoids 223
medicinal plants 218, 219–23, 223
plant polysaccharides 218, 223
immunoregulators 217
immunostimulants 216–17
immunostimulating complex (ISCOM) 216
immunosuppressants 217
incision wound model 233–4
Independent Ethics Committee (IEC) xiv
India 5
quality control 16, 17–18
regulatory requirements 369
standardised herbal formulations 100
see also Ayurvedic, Siddha and Unani (ASU) drugs;
Ayurvedic medicine
Indian gooseberry see Emblica officinalis (emblica, amla)
Indigo Naturalis 51
indirubin 51
infection treatment 133–46
active plant extracts 142–3
antifungal assays 143–5
antimicrobial activity 133–43, 360–1
antimicrobial test methods 136–40
antiviral assays 145–6
culture media 134–5
emulsifiers 135–6
experimental conditions 133–6
extraction systems 134
fungal 124, 361
isolated natural products 142–3
microorganisms 135
respiratory 205
results of studies 136
sample preparation 135–6
solvents 134, 135–6
in vivo studies 140–1
see also antifungal agents; parasitic infections
inflammation 243–55
anti-inflammatory medicinal plants 249–55
in-vitro models 250
in-vivo models 249–50
plant extracts 250–5
process 250–5
wound healing 232
inflammatory mediators 243, 245–9
signalling pathways 244
inflammatory response, acute 263–4
ingredients of herbal medicines 15
insect repellants, essential oils 363
integrated pest management 46
integrated safety assessment 446–54
intellectual property rights (IPR) 11
inter simple sequence repeat (ISSR) 404
interactions with pharmaceutical drugs see pharmaceutical drugs, interactions with HMPs
intercellular adhesion molecule 1 (ICAM-1) 253
International Conference on Harmonization (ICH), good clinical practice guidance 431–2
intratympanic therapies 315
introduction of plants, China 45
irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) 107, 112
efficacy studies 117–18
visceral hyperalgesia 116
ischaemia–reperfusion injury
free radicals 264
Ginseng 72–3
ischaemic heart disease 163
ischaemic heart disease 161–4
anti-ischaemic effect screening 163
cardiac preconditioning effect screening 163–4
hypertension 164–7
ischaemia–reperfusion injury 163
isoboles 87–8
isobolograms 87–8
isoorientin 38
Japanese herbal medicine, tinnitus therapy 318
Japanese star anise 389–90
Jordan, diabetes mellitus herbal remedies 29
journals 4–5
kaempferol 152, 253
kahweol 252
Kampoo medicine 117
kanglaite 32
karyogenesis 235
kava see Piper methysticum (kava)
kavain 24
kavalactones 190, 462
kidney damage 22
Chinese herbal medicines 10, 395, 458–9
Kutki 99–100
hepatocellular carcinoma treatment 128
lavender oil 364–5
laxatives 23
anthracene-derivative glycosides 92
anthranoid 21
lebbeck 287
lectins, antidermatitis activity 310
left ventricular hypertrophy, free radicals 265–6
legislation 5, 10–11
Leishmania amazonensis 362
lemon balm see Melissa officinalis (lemon balm)
lethal dose 50 (LD_{50}) 140, 447, 448, 449
leucocytes, wound healing 238, 239
leukotriene modifiers 204
licensing systems 21
lichen 151
lidocaine, tinnitus therapy 316
lignans, antidermatitis activity 309
limonene 363
linalool 364
linalyl acetate 364
antidermatitis action 297
near-infrared spectroscopy 419, 420
liver damage, kava 459–60
liver receptors (LXRs) 247
local anaesthetics, tinnitus therapy 316
local least squares analysis 417, 418, 419
loganin 342
low density lipoprotein (LDL) 161
atherosclerosis 264–5
low density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol 162
lubiprostone 112
lung parenchyma slicing 211
lupeol 145
luteolin 123, 253
macromorphological evaluation of products 19
macrophages 73, 78
host defence 216
madder root 21
Magnolia grandiflora 252
malaria 51
malignant conversion/transformation 122, 123
Mangifera indica (mango), antioxidant activity 273
marker analysis 19–21
marker compounds 20–1, 24
marking nut 128–9
mass cell stabilisers 204
mass spectrometry
tandem 411
traditional Chinese medicine 58
quality assurance 52–3
mast cell stabilisation studies 211–12
Matrigel gel assay 177
matrix metalloproteinase(s) (MMPs) 176
myocardial damage 265
wound healing 236
matrix metalloproteinase 2 (MMP-2), angiogenesis
modulation 182, 183
matrix metalloproteinase 9 (MMP-9), angiogenesis
modulation 178, 181–2, 183
maximal inhibitory dilution (MID) 136
maximum sustainable yield, plant collection 46
medicinal product xiv
Melaleuca alternifolia (tea tree oil) 145, 252
allergic contact dermatitis 364, 365
antibacterial activity 361
antiparasitic activity 362
Melissa officinalis (lemon balm)
CNS disorders 188
mood disorders 189–90
melon, bitter see Momordica charantia (bitter melon)
memory disorders 282–92
ginkgo therapy 75–6
ginseng therapy 193–4
herbal product effects 287–91
Salvia therapy 195
see also cognitive disorders; neurodegeneration
Ménière’s disease 316
menthol 362
meta-analysis 431
metabolomics 11, 56, 57–8
metabonomics 11, 56, 58, 96
5′-methoxyhydnocarpin 143
methylsterols 77
metronidazole, Helicobacter pylori resistance 150, 154
micellar electrokinetic chromatography (MEKC) 415
microarray techniques 405–6
microatmosphere method 137
microdilution technique 137, 138
microemulsion electrokinetic chromatography (MEEKC) 415, 416
microorganism growth inhibition 137
microorganisms, infection treatment 135
microscopical evaluation of plant products 19
microscopy, botanical 388
Chinese herbal drugs 402
microwave-assisted extraction (MAE), curcuminoids 327
Middle East 28, 29
millet 235
minimal inhibitory quantity (MIQ) 137
minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC) 136, 138
minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) 87, 88, 89, 136, 138
determination 141–2
Helicobacter pylori 154
misidentification of plants 10, 17–18
misoprostol, tinnitus therapy 316
mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) 247–8
molecular systems, predictive models of behaviour 96
Momordica charantia (bitter melon) 36–7
Helicobacter pylori treatment 150–1
monoclonal antibodies 406
monocytes 238, 239
monophosphoryl lipid A 216
monoterpenes 251–2
mood disorders 188–90
morroniside 342, 346
mosquito bites, turmeric therapy 323
mosquito repellants 363
MTT reduction assay 116, 298–9
multicentre trial xiv
muscarinic receptors, airway 203
muscle dysfunction, free radicals 266
mutagens
curcumin activity 332
valepotriates 464
mutations in transgenic animals 454
mycotoxins, Chinese herbal drug contamination 399, 402
myocardial damage, free radicals 265
myocardial stress 168
Myrica rubra, antipheretic activity 306
myricetin 143
myricetin-3–ObD-glucuronide 253
Myristica fragrans 151
Myrtus communis (myrtle) 30–1
NADPH oxidase 223
National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS) 153
guidelines 154
natural products, isolated 142–3
near-infrared spectroscopy 418–20
neem 288
neoplastic cells 123
Nepeta cataria, bronchodilatory effect 209
nephrotoxicity
  aristolochic acid 458–9
  see also kidney damage
Nerium oleander (oleander) 33–4
nerolidol 362
nettle, stinging 30
neurodegeneration
  animal models 283–5
  assessment 283–7
  curcumin use 332
neurones 282
  cholinergic 283
neurotoxicity studies 454
neurotransmission, herbal product effects 287–91
neutrophils 238, 239
Nigella sativa (black seeds) 209
  antitherpetic activity 303
nitric oxide 261
  coronary vasodilator activity 162
  ginseng 69–70, 73
  homeostasis 196
  inflammatory mediator 246, 248, 251
  production 196
  radical scavenging assay 267
nitric oxide synthase
  ginseng 69–70, 73, 74
  inducible 73, 74, 246
  pancreatic β-cells in diabetes 353–4
  neuronal 196
nitrosamines, hepatic carcinogenesis 124, 125
non-aqueous capillary electrophoresis (NACE) 415
non-randomised trials 427, 432–3
non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) 244
tNOX inhibition, green tea 65–6
nuclear factor-κB (NFκB) 246
  pancreatic β-cells in diabetes 353
nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy (NMRS) 420
  biomarkers 57
  metabolomics 58
  quality assurance 52–3
observation trial designs 428
Ocimum gratissimum (ocimum oil) 361
ocimum oil 360–1, 362, 363
toxicity 363, 365
Ocimum sanctum (tulsi, holy basil) 274, 290
Oleaceae allergen 211
oleander 33–4
Oliver’s gentian see Gentiana olivieri (Oliver’s gentian)
Ophiorrhiza nicobarica, antitherpetic activity 310
Opuntia ficus-indica, wound healing 232
oral contraceptives 470–1, 471
orchid, wound healing 235
Organisation for Economic Co-operation and
Development (OECD)
  good laboratory practice 447
  guidelines on toxicity studies 444–5, 447
  developmental and reproductive studies 453
organisations contributing to scientific knowledge on
medicinal plants 383, 384
organochlorine pesticides 398
organoleptic evaluation of products 19
oryzacystatin, antitherpetic action 297
osteoarthritis, phytomedicine drug development 101
overcollection of plants 11–12
oxidative stress 249, 340–1
  diabetic nephropathy 345, 350
  Hachimi-jio-gan
    pancreatic effects 352–4
    suppression 342, 349, 350
  ischaemic heart disease 162
  pancreatic 352–4
  oxygen free radicals 261
  see also reactive oxygen species (ROS)
oxymatrine 255
Padma Lax, functional gastrointestinal disorders 112, 117
paeoniflorin 342
pain, Turkish treatments 31–4
Panax ginseng (ginseng) 66–74
  angiogenesis modulation 179
  anti-allergic actions 74
  anti-inflammatory response 74
  antioxidant activity 69, 70, 74
  cardiovascular protection 70, 72–3
  central nervous system effects 70–2
  cognitive disorders 290
  cognitive function 72
  cognitive performance 193–4
  COX inhibition 74
  diabetes mellitus 74
  exercise performance 67–9
  free radical scavenging 69
  GABA effects 71–2
  hepatocellular carcinoma treatment 129
  immune system 73
  inflammation treatment 253
| **ischaemia–reperfusion injury** | 72–3 |
| **l lipid peroxidation inhibition** | 69 |
| **memory disorders** | 290 |
| **nitric oxide role** | 69–70, 73 |
| **nitric oxide synthase** | 74 |
| **traditional Chinese medicine** | 62, 66–74 |
| **panaxatriols** | 179 |
| **pancreas** |  |
| **diabetes mellitus type 2** | 351–4 |
| **fibrosis** | 352 |
| **Hachimi-jio-gan effects on oxidative stress** | 352–4 |
| **paraimmunity** | 216–17 |
| **parasitic infections** |  |
| **antiparasitic assays** | 145–6 |
| **essential oils** | 362 |
| **parthenolide** | 252 |
| **patents** | 11 |
| **Peoples' Republic of China** | 5, 43 |
| **acclimatisation of plants** | 45 |
| **adverse drug reaction surveillance system** | 50 |
| **cultivation of plants** | 45, 46 |
| **introduction of plants** | 45 |
| **plant collection** | 44, 46 |
| **plant resources** | 45–6 |
| **regulation of traditional Chinese Medicine** | 49 |
| **see also traditional Chinese medicine** |
| **pepluanone** | 252 |
| **pepper** | 91 |
| **black** | 91 |
| **Helicobacter pylori** treatment | 152 |
| **peppermint oil** | 364 |
| **peptic ulcer disease** |  |
| **Curcuma longa** activity | 331–2 |
| **Helicobacter pylori** | 149 |
| **tumeric** | 323 |
| **peripheral benzodiazepine receptors (PBRs)** | 76 |
| **peroxisome proliferator activator receptors (PPARs)** | 247 |
| **peroxyl radicals** | 248 |
| **Peru, traditional leads** | 231 |
| **pesticides, contamination of herbal products** | 397–8 |
| **phagocytosis, garlic** | 78 |
| **pharmaceutical drugs** |  |
| **adulteration of herbal products** | 396–7, 446 |
| **contamination of plant products** | 18 |
| **interactions with HMPs** | 10, 22–3, 465–6, 467–71, 471 |
| **pharmacokinetics** |  |
| **compounds modifying** | 91–2 |
| **plants affecting** | 459 |
| **studies** | 24 |
| **pharmacopoeial monographs** | 5–6 |
| **pharmacovigilance** | 25, 47 |
| **Sarpagandha** | 99 |
| **Phase I clinical trials** | 426–7 |
| **Phase II clinical trials** | 427 |
| **Phase III clinical trials** | 427 |
| **Phase IV clinical trials** | 427 |
| **phenanthroindolizidine alkaloids** | 254 |
| **phenolic acids** | 254 |
| **phenolics/phenolic compounds** | 253 |
| **antiherpetic activity** | 303, 304, 306–8 |
| **phenprocoumon** | 466 |
| **phloroglucinol** | 297 |
| **antiherpetic activity** | 307 |
| **phospholipase A₂** | 245 |
| **phototoxicity** | 365 |
| **Phyllanthus amarus** | 128 |
| **Phyllanthus emblica** (amla) | 102 |
| **phytochemical leads** | 231–2 |
| **phytoequivalence** | 23–5 |
| **phytomedicines** |  |
| **development** | 95–102 |
| **clinical studies** | 102 |
| **exploratory studies** | 101 |
| **product development** | 101–2 |
| **drug development** | 98–102 |
| **mechanisms of action** | 99–100 |
| **see also** botanicals/botanical drugs; herbal medicinal products (HMPs); plant products, biologically active; traditional herbal medicinal products |
| **phyto-pharmacovigilance** | 22 |
| **Picrorhiza kurroa** (Kutki) | 99–100 |
| **hepatocellular carcinoma treatment** | 128 |
| **Piper** alkaloids | 459 |
| **Piper methysticum** (kava) | 24 |
| **cytochrome P450 enzymes** | 462 |
| **liver damage** | 459–60 |
| **mood disorders** | 190–1 |
| **Piper nigrans** (black pepper) | 91 |
| **piperine** | 459 |
| **piperine 18** | 91 |
| **plant(s)** |  |
| **acclimatisation** | 45 |
| **misidentification** | 10, 17–18 |
| **rare species** | 45 |
| **see also** toxicity of plants |
| **plant collection** |  |
| **China** | 44, 46 |
| **conservation** | 44–5 |
| **good practice** | 18–19, 45 |
plant collection (cont.)
  maximum sustainable yield 46
  overcollection 11–12, 44
plant products, biologically active 24
development 14–15
quality 15–18
safety 15, 16
see also bioactivity
plant resources
  sustainability 44–6
  sustainable harvesting 11, 46
plant stress, secondary metabolites 196
Plantago major, antitherpetic activity 306
Platycodon grandiflorum (Platycodi Radix) 253
polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons 124, 125
Polygonum tinctorium 152
polymerase chain reaction (PCR)
  arbitrarily primed 404
  Chinese herbal drugs 403–5
polyol pathway, diabetic nephropathy 350
polypeptides, antitherpetic activity 310
polypharmacy 7
polyphenols
  antitherpetic activity 297, 303, 304, 306–8
  green tea 63, 64
polysaccharides 297
  antitherpetic activity 310
  immunomodulatory 218, 223
polyvalency 7, 85–6, 88–92
  compounds modifying pharmacokinetics 91–2
  compounds with more than one biological effect 91
  herbal extract activity testing 92
  variety of types of chemical compounds 90
pomegranate, antioxidant activity 273–4
potassium channel openers 204
potency determination 20
preconditioning mimetics 163–4
pregnancy 460
prevention strategies 7
principal-component analysis 418, 419
proanthocyanidins 254
  antitherpetic activity 306–7
proliferation, wound healing 232
propolis 145
  antitherpetic activity 306
prostaglandins 156
proteomics 96
protocol xiv
protohypericin, mood disorders 188
protolichesterinic acid 151
protopine 151
protopseudohypericin, mood disorders 188
pseudohypericin, mood disorders 188
Pterocarpus santalinus 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239
publications 16–17
  journals 4–5
  pharmacopoeial monographs 5–6
  see also named pharmacopoeias
Pueraria lobata 51
puerarin 51
pulmonary function tests 210
Punica granatum (pomegranate) 273–4
purity 19, 20
pyrrolizidines 464
QS-21 216
quality assessment of botanicals 383–91
  chemical reference standards 391
  herb quality 387
  post-harvest conditions 387
  quantitative analytical methods 390–1
  reference standards 388–9
quality assurance (QA) xiv, 19–20, 461
  Chinese herbal drugs 52–3, 393–4
quality control (QC) xiv, 16–18, 461–2, 464
  Chinese herbal drugs 393–421
  methods 399, 402–13, 414, 415–20
  problems 15
quality evaluation 21
quantitative analytical methods 390–1
quasi-experimental and observational (QEO) studies 433
quasi-experimental studies 427
quasi-randomised trials 427
quercetin 123, 142
Quillaja saponaria 216
Rabdosia trichocarpa 150
random amplified polymorphic DNA (RAPD) techniques 404
randomisation xiv
randomised controlled trials (RCTs) 9, 117–18, 427
  meta-analysis 431
rare species 45
rasayan chikitsa (rejuvenation therapy) 216
rasayana drugs 216, 217
  immunomodulatory 217–18
Rauwolfia serpentina (Sarpagandha, reserpine) 97, 99, 160
reactive chlorine species (RCS) 248
reactive nitrogen species (RNS) 248
reactive oxygen species (ROS) 7, 261, 262
endothelial dysfunction 167
gastric mucosal injuries 36
inflammatory mediators 248–9
ischaemic heart disease 163
myocardial damage 265
pancreatic β-cells 352–3
red wine see Vitis vinifera (red wine)
reference books 4
regulations/regulatory requirements 10–11, 369, 428–33
Chinese herbal medicine 49
German 21
Regulatory Authorities xiv
rejuvenation/rejuvenation therapy 216
remodelling, wound healing 232
renal function
Corni Fructus effects 345–6, 347
diabetic nephropathy 350–1
renal hypertension, animal models 165–6
reperfusion injury 264
reproductive studies 453
research
efficacy 14
funding 5
see also clinical research
reserpine 99, 160
development 97
respiratory conditions 203–5, 206–9, 210–12
free radicals 263
herbal preparations 205, 206–9, 209–10
infections 205
in-vitro studies 211–12
in-vivo studies 210–11
respiratory smooth muscle, hyperactivity 203
respiratory system physiology 203–4
restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RFLPs) 403
resveratrol
antioxidant activity 274–5
Helicobacter pylori treatment 151
wound healing 231
reverse pharmacology path 95, 96–8
phases 97
revitalisation 216
rhamnogalacturonan type I 223
rheins 92
rheumatic pain, Turkish treatment 32, 33, 34
Ribes nigrum (blackcurrant) 254
ringworm, turmeric therapy 323
risk
assessment 22–3
minimising 21
RNA, tissue 235
rockrose 32, 35
rooibos 204, 209
rosmarinic acid, antiherpetic activity 306
Rosmarinus officinalis (rosemary) 151
Rubia tinctorum (madder root) 21
rutaecarpine 255
S3A 223
safety 9, 10, 21–2
Chinese herbal medicines 47–50, 56–7
evidence 16
functional gastrointestinal disorder treatments 113, 116–17
hazard identification 446
plant products 15, 16
safety evaluation 457–66, 467–71, 471–2
animal testing 117
assessment 446
clinical trials 465
experimental data 464
health risks of herbal medicines 458–60
human studies 465
integrated assessment 446–54
methods 460–6, 467–71, 471
minor constituents 464
non-traditional herbal medicinal plants 463–5
pharmacological data 464
quality control 461–2
toxicological 446, 464
traditional Chinese medicines system 49–50
traditionally used herbal medicinal plants 462–3
saffron, mood disorders 188
sage see Salvia
Salai guggul (Boswellia serrata) 102
salicylates 243–4
Salix (aspirin) 160
Salvia (sage)
Alzheimer’s disease use 91
CNS disorders 188
cognitive disorders 290–1
cognitive performance 194–5
memory disorders 290–1
Salvia miltiorrhiza (Danshen) 23, 91
Salvia officinalis (sage)
antioxidant activity 274
cognitive performance 194–5
Salvia prionitis 53
salvicine 53–4
Sambucus ebulus (elder) 32–3
Helicobacter pylori treatment 150
Index

Sambucus nigra (elder) 32–3
Sanguinaria canadensis 151
sanguinarine 151, 255
Santal tribal people 229–31
Santolina oblongifolia 254
saponins, antitherpetic activity 297, 309
Sarcococca saligna 210
Sarpagandha see Rauwolfia serpentina (Sarpagandha, reserpine)
Saussurea lappa (costus) 364
Saw Palmetto 8
schiprizine (ZT-1) 54
Scopolia tangutica (Tangchom Nagbo) 52
scopolin 254
secondary metabolites 196
Semecarpus anacardium (marking nut) 128–9
senna 92
sensitisation procedures 211
sequencing-based markers 405–6
serious adverse drug reaction (serious ADR) xiv–xv
serious adverse event (SAE) xiv–xv
serotonin syndrome 466
sesquiterpenes 252
antitherpetic activity 309
lactones 364
shelf-life of herbal remedies 369–71, 372, 373, 374–5, 375–9
accelerated stability studies 377
bioactivity determination 378
colour of formulation 373, 374, 375
communicating to consumers 378–9
critical point/parameter determination 371, 372, 373, 374–5
documentation of studies 377
evaluation methods 373, 375–7
evaluation parameters 376–7
factors affecting 370–1
labelling 379
moisture content 373
need for marking 370
prospective studies 375–6
real-time studies 376
retrospective studies 373
studies 371
Shilajit 218
shortages of plant materials 12
Shunthi (Zingiber officinale) 102
side-effects 47
see also adverse drug reaction (ADR); adverse event (AE); health risks of herbal medicines
silver bullet concept 88
silybin 127
Silybum marianum (milk thistle) 127
antioxidant activity 275
silymarin 127
simple sequence repeat (SSR) 404–5
single chemical entity (SCE) pharmaceuticals 8
traditional Chinese medicines 53–5
skeletal muscle dysfunction, free radicals 266
skin diseases, essential oils 359–66
sleep disorders 191
Smallanthus uvedalius 252
snowdrop 187
solvents 15
infection treatment 134, 135–6
non-conventional 459–60
non-polar extraction 460
Sophora flavescens 255
sophoraflavone G 142
sorbitol 349, 350
source documents xv
South Indian traditional folklore 229–31
Soxhlet extraction, curcuminoids 327
soybean 129
Spanish broom 35–6
Spartium junceum (Spanish broom) 35–6
spasmolytics 116
spectral correlative chromatography (SCC) 417
spectrophotometric quantitative analytical methods 390–1
spectroscopic techniques, Chinese herbal drugs 418–20
speedwell, water 33
squirting cucumber 31–2
St John’s wort see Hypericum perforatum (St John’s wort)
staff tree 288–9
standardisation 19–21, 461–2
active compounds 24
Chinese herbal drugs 407
methods 399, 402–13, 414, 415–20
star anise 389–90
starthistle, yellow 36, 150
Stephania cepharantha, antitherpetic activity 310
Stephania tetranda (fang ji) 10, 54, 387, 395, 458
anti-inflammatory action 255
sterilisation methods 137
steroid anti-inflammatory drugs 244
stilbenes, antitherpetic activity 307
stinging nettle 30
stress, ginsenosides 193
stroke prevention and therapy with traditional Chinese medicine 53
Strychnos nux-vomica 255
STW 5 117
clinical study for functional gastrointestinal disorders 112
stylopine 255
substitute drugs/substitution 11
Chinese pharmacopoeia 395
health risk 458
traditional Chinese medicine 395–7
supercritical fluid extraction, turmeric constituents 326
superoxide anion radical scavenging assay 267–8
superoxide dismutase 262, 265
superoxide radicals 261
sustainability, plant resources 44–6
sustainable harvesting 11
maximum sustainable yield 46
sweet flag 287
synapses 282
synergy 7, 85–8, 143
definition 86–7
efficacy evaluation 442
measurement 87–8
synthetic drugs
adulteration of herbal products 396–7, 446
see also pharmaceutical drugs
systems biology 95–6
Tanacetum parthenium (feverfew) 252
Tangchom Nagbo 52
tannic acid 463
gallic acid content 462
tannins 254
antiherpetic activity 307–8
tanshinones 91
Tarchonanthus camphoratus 88, 89
taspine 232
taxol 160
Taxus brevifolia 160, 252
tea see Camellia sinensis (green tea)
tea tree oil see Melaleuca alternifolia (tea tree oil)
tegaserod 112, 116
tensile strength, wound healing 234–5
Terminalia arjuna (arjuna bark) 129
ischaemic heart disease 164
wound healing 232
Terminalia bellerica 209
Terminalia chebula 303
Terminalia spinosa 150
terpenes 251–3
terpenoids 308–9
tetraterpenes 253
Tetracium chamaedrys (wall germander) 25
Thailand, turmeric products 334
thin-layer chromatography (TLC) 139–40
automated multiple development 408–9
bioautography assay 286
chemical characterisation 390
Chinese herbal drugs 407–9
shelf-life studies 377
turmeric constituents 326, 327, 328
thiobarbituric acid reactive substances (TBARS) 267
assay 268
thistle, milk 127, 275
thymoquinone 30
Thymus vulgaris 150
Tibetan traditional medicine 52
time-kill studies, Helicobacter pylori 154–5
tinnitus 314–19
animal models 319
conventional medications 315–16
herbal remedies 316–19
Tinospora cordifolia (Guduchi) 102
tNOX inhibition, green tea 65–6
Toll-like receptor family 247–8
Tong-xie-ning 112, 117
total protein, wound healing 235
toxic plants 458–9
toxicity of plants 22
chemical profile of constituents 464
consumer-dependent 460
consumers 22
predictive markers 462, 463
wound healing 232
toxicity studies
acute 446–9
methods 448–9
acute toxic class method 449
animal species selection 447, 450
body weight 451, 454–5
carcinogenicity 117, 452–3
clinical and functional observation battery 450–1
clinical chemistry 451, 455
combined chronic and carcinogenicity 452–3
data analysis 452
data collection 448
data interpretation 454–5
data monitoring 448
developmental studies 453–4
dose level selection 450, 453
experimental design 453
oxide studies (cont.)
  fixed dose procedure 448–9
  food consumption 451
  genotoxicity 454
  gross necropsy 451–2
  haematology 451, 455
  histopathology 451–2
  in-vitro 446
  in-vivo 446
  metabolism data 452
  neurotoxicity 454
  observations 448
  organ weights 451
  repeat-dose 450–4
  reproductive 453
  subacute 452
  subchronic 452
  test dose preparation/administration 447–8, 450
  test materials 447
  test reporting 448, 452
  toxicokinetics 452
  up-and-down procedure 449
  water consumption 451

otoxicokinetics 452

toxicological evaluation 444–55
  acute studies 446–9
  data interpretation 454–5
  hazard identification stage 446
  integrated safety assessment 446–54, 455
  OECD guidelines 444–5
  safety assessment 464
    hazard identification stage 446
  tracheal strips, isolated 211

traditional Chinese medicine 42–58, 43
  active compounds 52
  adulteration of herbal products 10, 48, 387, 393, 395–7
  adverse drug reactions 47–8
  ancient literature 51–2
  authentication 393, 395
    methods 399, 402–13, 414, 415–20
    botanical extract evaluation 62–78
    chromatographic fingerprinting 407, 417–18
    chromatography 57, 58
    techniques 406–13, 414, 415–18
  classification of herbs 394
  contamination of materials 395–9, 400–2
    heavy metals 397
    microbiological 398–9, 400–1
    mycotoxins 399, 402
    pesticides 397–8
  crude drugs 44, 46
  cytochrome P450 activity 48
  dietary supplement evaluation 62–78
  DNA-based techniques 402–6
  effectiveness 56
  electrophoresis techniques 413, 415–16
  evidence-based approach 62–3
  garlic 62, 76–8
  ginkgo 62, 74–6
  ginseng 62, 66–74
  good agricultural practice 393, 395–6, 398, 399
  heavy metal contamination 397
  immunochemical analysis methods 406
  kidney damage 10, 395, 458–9
  metabolomics/metabonomics 57–8
  microbiological contamination 398–9, 400–1
  modern techniques/methods 57–8
  molecular–biological methods 53
  mycotoxin contamination 399, 402
  new drug research/development 50–8
  pesticide contamination 397–8
  pharmacological activity classification 52
  pharmacovigilance 47–8
  processing 46
  quality assurance 52–3, 393–4
  quality control 393–41
    authentication issues 393, 395
    methods 399, 402–13, 414, 415–20
  quality standardisation 56
  resources 44–6
  safety 47–50, 56–7
    evaluation system 49–50
  single chemical entity drugs 53–5
  spectroscopic techniques 418–20
  standardisation 407
    methods 399, 402–13, 414, 415–20
  stroke prevention and therapy 53
  substitution of plant species 395–7
  tinnitus therapy 318
  toxicity groupings 48–9
  in Western countries 394–5

traditional herbal medicinal products xv, 15
  development 15
  modernisation in China 5

see also botanicals/botanical drugs; herbal medicinal products (HMPs); phytomedicines; plant products, biologically active

traditional medicine 385
  definition 386
  proper use 6
Traditional Medicines Directive (EU)  5, 395
trichlorabdal  150

Tridax procumbens 234

Tripterygium wilfordii 8, 251
tripoldide 252
triterpenes 145, 252–3
antitherpetic activity 297, 309
tryptanthrin 152

Tripterygium wilfordii 252
tulsi 274, 290
Turkey

akhtar shops 28, 29
anhepatotoxic medicinal plants 37–8
anti-inflammatory medicinal plants 31–4
antinociceptive medicinal plants 31–4
antiulcer remedies 34–7
diabetes mellitus remedies 30–1
folk medicine 29
gastro-protective remedies 34–7
natural remedies 28–39

U
ubiquitin proteasome pathway 180–1
ulcers, treatment 32, 34–7
ultraviolet light (UV) spectrophotometry, curcuminoid quantitative analysis 328
Unani medicine
wound healing 229
see also Ayurvedic, Siddha and Unani (ASU) drugs

Uncaria tomentosa 250
United Kingdom, Chinese herb regulation 394–5
United States
Chinese herb regulation 394
herbal preparation categories 428
up-and-down acute toxicity procedure 449
ursolic acid 252–3
antitherpetic activity 309

Urtica dioica (stinging nettle) 30

valepotriates 90, 464
valerenic acid 387

Valeriana officinalis (valerian) 90
post-harvest processing 387
sleep disorders 191
toxicity 464

Vanda roxburghii (orchid) 235
vanillin 363
vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) 177
vascularisation, insufficient 175, 176

Veronica arborea 234

Veronica anagallis-aquatica (water speedwell) 33
very low density lipoprotein (VLDL) cholesterol 162

Vitis vinifera (red wine)
angiogenesis modulation 182–3
antioxidant activity 274–5
Helicobacter pylori treatment 151
polyphenolic compounds 182–3
wound healing 231

Vyadhirodbak Chamatav 217

wall germander, hepatotoxicity 25
warfarin 466
water hyssop see Bacopa monniera (water hyssop, brahmi)
water speedwell 33
well-being of trial subjects xv
Western countries, traditional Chinese medicine 394–5
withaferin A 177, 180, 181

Withania somnifera (ashwagandha) 177
angiogenesis modulation 179–81
antioxidant activity 273
cognitive/memory disorders 291

withanolide D 180

World Health Organization (WHO)
classification of herbal medicinal plants 426
definitions of types of evidence 430
Forum on Harmonization of Herbal Medicine 50
good laboratory practice 447
grading of recommendations 430, 431
guidelines

good manufacturing practice 19
quality control 18

traditional medicines 6
scientific monographs 16
wound(s)
classification 228
management 229

wound healing 228–38, 239, 240
angiogenesis 237
animal models 233–4
Ayurvedic medicine 229
biochemical parameters 235–6
cicatrisation 237
clinical evidence 236–8, 239, 240
dosage form 232
epithelialisation 237
erythrocyte sedimentation rate 238, 239, 240
essential oils 361
evaluation of plants 232
fibrosis 237
granulation 237
wound healing (cont.)
  growth factors 229
  haematological observation 238, 239, 240
  histological investigations 236
  leucocytes 238, 239
  molecular biological investigations 236
  period 235
  phytochemical profile of plants 232
  plant extract preparation 232
  resveratrol 231
  stages 232–3
  tensile strength 234–5
  tissue DNA 235
  tissue hydroxyproline 235–6
  tissue repair 229
  tissue RNA 235
  total protein 235
  toxicity of plants 232

  traditional leads 229–31
  turmeric 323
  Unani medicine 229
  wound-contraction size 234, 236–7
  Wuweizi (Fructus Schizandra Chinensis) 51

  xenobiotics, toxicity 22
  X-gene 123

  yangonin 24
  yatein 309
  yohimbe 22

  *Zingiber officinale* (ginger) 91, 102
  *Helicobacter pylori* treatment 150–1
  pregnancy-associated nausea/vomiting 460
  respiratory conditions 209–10

  zirk 34
  ZT-1 54